



Sultan Mahomet Han y^e
present Emperour of the
Turks Aged 34 years &c



Sultan Mahomet Han y^e
present Emperour of the
Turks Aged 34 years &c

THE
HISTORY
Of the
TURKS.

DESCRIBING

The Rise and Ruin, of their first Empire in *Persia*; the Original of their Second.

CONTAINING

The Lives and Reigns of their several Kings and Emperors, from *Ottoman* its first Founder to this present Year, 1683.

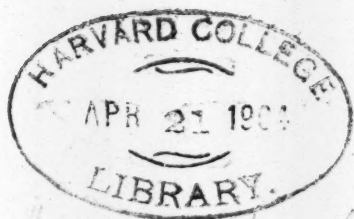
BEING

A Succinct Series of History, of all their Wars (Forreign and Domestick) Policies, Customs, Religion and Manners; with what else is worthy of Note, in that great Empire.

L O N D O N,

Printed by Ralph Holt, for Thomas Passenger upon London-Bridge, William Thackery in Duck-Lane, and Thomas Sambridge in Little-Brittain, 1683.

~~OH 169.10~~



Holcott fund

37-2

TO THE
READER.

SINCE the late Alarms the Port
has given to *Christendom*, I
have thought it both Profit-
table and Convenient, to describe
the Original of that Great Em-
pire, which now spreads over
near half the World, and to de-
monstrate by what means it a-
spired to its Immensity, and by
what Policies maintained; as in
the

To the Reader.

the Series of this History, it is fully and at large discoursed; not so only, but the *Turks* various Successes in their Wars at Land and Sea; Including their Religious Customs, Manners, and extent of that Empire, as it remains at this day; being deduced from the Original of the first and second Empire, for the space of six hundred years, attended with Circumstances too tedious here to be recited. So that all may plainly comprehend how easily those *Infidels* might at first have

To the Reader.

have been hindred from Incroaching, and how often (had not the Divisions of the *Christians*, upon which they founded their Empire) they might have been brought low; but as God, in whose Eternal Wisdom all Affairs are centered, has not of late permitted, and should they extend their Arms (as at this time they threaten) yet a hearty Unanimity in the Empire, and the Kings and Princes of *Christendom*, may through God's blessing impede the growing Greatness of this great Monarch,

To the Reader.

Monarch, and hinder the Effusion of *Christian* Blood. Here you have an impartial Account of their Rise and Ruin in the first Empire; and the Continuation of the second, to this present time; Faithfully Collected, which I hope will prove to the Satisfaction of the Ingenious Reader, which is all desired by,

Your Friend, I. S.

*This Should have. been bound m atⁱ
the End of this Book.*

A Continuation of the preceding History to this present time ; Containing the Remarkable Siege of *Vienna* for Sixty dayes, the raising of it by the Imperial Forces, and the King of *Poland*: The Ruine of their Army before it, and a Second Fight in *Germany* ; together with a Table to the whole Book.

New-Hausel Besieged by 13000 Imperial Horse and Foot, they run their Trenches within a hundred yards of the Wall, and with the Cannon on the Battery raised on the East part continually for the space of two dayes, Thundered against it, insomuch that divers houses were beaten down, and a great number of the Enemy slain, yet encouraged by a Party of Turks who had posted themselves upon an Eminence near *Gran*, watching their opportunity to annoy the Christians, they made divers brisk sallies so that often coming to handy blows ; the disputes grew hot, many on either side being slain, but after several unsuccessful attempts to take the place by Storm, and notice had that the Grand Visier was on his way from *Belgrade* with sixty or seventy thousand Horse and Foot, resolving though at the hazard of a Battle to raise the Siege. The Duke drew off the Besiegers having for that purpose received an expresse Command from the Em-
perour

perour and Council of War, assembled to debate the important affaires of the Empire, and uniting them to his other Forces kept close in his Camp before *Comora*, immediately upon whose departure the Turks in the Town fired all their Cannon for joy of their deliverance, being a little before in great distress for Provision and other necessities, having over and above lost five hundred of their most resolute Souldiers.

During the Siege of *New-Hausel* the Palatine of *Hungary* with a thousand Foot, and five hundred Horse, marching to *Scaroe* a Fortress of the Turks, so suddainly Belieged it, that the Garrison being altogether unprovided, after a short Battery sounded a parly, and upon condition that they might march out with Bag and Baggage, offered to surrender the place; but that not being granted, they to save their lives were contented to become Prisoners of War, in all being but sixty eight persons, of which eight had been killed with the shot of the Culverines, upon which the Palatine having put a Garrison of *Hungarian* Soldiers into it, and sufficiently stored it with Provision, returned to have an eye upon *Teckelely*, who was moving towards the Frontiers of *Silesia*, daily expecting a re-inforcement from the Bassa of *Buda*, and to joyn some *Tartarian* Troops who were on their March.

These things passing the King of *Poland* used all diligence to draw his Forces together near *Cracow*, giving great encouragement to his Souldiers, and such of the nobility as sent any Forces to his assistance; nor was the Grand Visier slow in his March, as hoping thereby to draw the Imperialists to a Battle before that conjunction, and so swift was he in passing Rivers by Bridging them over with Boats,

Boats, Floats, Cask, and plashing of Trees, that beyond expectation, he arrived at *Stat-Wesseberg*, not above six Leagues from *Commora*, before the Imperialists had notice of his passing the *Gran*, and there encamping received the complements of divers traiterous *Hungarian* Lords, who encouraged him to undertake the siege of *Vienna*, and seize upon the Hereditary Countreys of the Emperour.

The sudden advancement of the *Turks* caused the Emperour to send an Express to Count *Chakay* Commander in chief of the Garrisons upon the Banks of the River *Neytray*, to demolish such as he supposed not tenable, which was accordingly done. And now the two potent Armies approaching, great was the expectation of a battle, but the *Turks* expecting a supply of twenty thousand *Tartars*, who were on their march through *Moldavia*, protracted the time, as likewise did the Imperialists, expecting something from the *Transilvanian* Prince, who (secretly envying *Teckelies* advancement, who had by this time proclaimed himself Prince of *Hungary*, Coyning money in his own name, and using the antient Insigns of Royalty) had underhand promised to put himself under the Emperours protection, and take the field with eighteen or twenty thousand men. But on the second of *July* 1683, the Duke receiving notice that a body of *Turks* and *Tartars* having passed the *Waag* at *Segith*, and used all manner of hostilities, burning and plundering, killing and taking prisoners all that fell into their hands, with a thousand other outrages and insolencies, he drew off a party to oppose their advancing further into the Countrey and oblige them to repass the *Waag*, the which he effected, but they retiring as if they intended to lay siege either to *Leopoldstadt* or *Raab*, to prevent

that purpose the Imperial horse posted near *Altemberg* and the foot in the Isle of *Scutz*, to assist upon the first offered occasion, but it being soon perceived that the *Turks* intention was no other then to get between the horse and foot, and so render them unserviceable to each other.

The Duke sent away the Baggage under a convoy of six hundred horse towards *Altemberg*, to seize upon which the *Turks* advanced with a party of three thousand horse, so that a sharp dispute happened till the *Turks* by the courage of the Imperialists were obliged to a disorderly retreat, but being reinforced by eight hundred fresh horse, they rallied, whereupon the Duke of *Lorraine* and divers great Commanders, with all convenient speed advanced, and the Forces on either side increasing the fight grew hot, the Imperialists behaving themselves very resolutely, but especially the Duke of *Lorraine* who with his Regiment of Guards charged through the thickest of the enemies squadron, but the *Turks* power still increasing, and the Imperialists not being so suddenly able to pass the River as the Action required, after two hours resolute fighting, those that convoyed the Baggage were most of them cut in pieces, and to the value of forty thousand Guilders fell to the enemy, and in the whole action twelve hundred Imperialists and seventeen hundred *Turks* were slain, amongst the former the Prince of *Savoy*, General *Rabatta*, the Count d' *Lamberg* and Prince of *Aremberg*; after which the Imperial horse having made good their retreat, passed the River and joyned their foot, who could not though they were spectators of the Action come up, which gave the *Turks* this considerable advantage, and so exalted their spirits, that upon receiving a new supply of
eight

eight thousand foot, they besieged *Raab*, but received such welcome from the mouthes of the murdering Cannon, that they were glad to draw off, when having burnt some few Villages, with what plunder they had got, they marched to the Grand Visiers Camp; upon which reinforcement, he trusted up his Tents and marched directly towards *Vienna* the Imperial chief City, scituate in *Austria*, on the banks of the River *Danubius*, burning and ruining all his way, insomuch that the Imperial Army being found too weak to encounter him, the Duke retired with it under the walls of that City, to expect the Forces of the Confederate Princes, whilst Count *Staremburg* Governour thereof, who had been abroad with a party to observe the motion of the enemy, was obliged to fight his way through the Vaunt-Corriers of the *Turks* Army, to get into the City, through which likewise the Duke of *Lorraine* passed, when he had given such necessary orders as were convenient for maintaining a strenuous siege, leaving therein eighteen or twenty thousand souldiers under the command of the aforesaid Count, who sallying out fired the Suburbs, dislodging and killing a great number of *Turks*, that he found there plundering the houses, and upon his return calling together the Chief Citizens, he admonished them to behave themselves like men against the enemies of their Countrey, and Religion, from whom notwithstanding the specious pretences they might make, they should receive little mercy at the hands of the Infidels if they became victors; he likewise with speech and large promises of reward, animated his Captains and souldiers, whom he found resolved to live and dye with him in the defence of that City,

which is the glory of the Empire, protesting rather to suffer the worst extremity then hearken to any surrender.

The Duke of *Lorraine* having passed through the City with his Army, incamped himself strongly near *Kremps*, resolving there to expect the King of *Poland*, and the Troops of the Confederate Princes, which were on their march, and as opportunity offered both to encourage and succour the besieged, whom by this time the Visier had with his Army consisting of one hundred thousand men blocked up, being the flower of the *Ottoman* Empire, running his Trenches with great celerity, though to hinder it, the Cannons from the walls incessantly played, and the besieged frequently sallied, killing and repulsing the Infidels, following the execution even to their Camp, yet the number of their Pioniers increasing, they under the shelter of the night, and favour of their Cannon, in two dayes lodged themselves, running their works to a great depth, leaving the earth arch-wise, thinking so to reach the walls and blow them up, by springing their Mines, but such diligence was used by the *German* Enginiers, that a great number of the Infidels were buried in their works, & several poisoned by the stench of dead bodies they met with in their Subterranean Progress, which had been buried in the last plague, which the Visier perceiving commanded eight thousand *Janizaries* to lodge themselves in the ruins, and immediately from six batteries containing thirty whole Cannon, he caused the City to be battered a whole day without intermission, and having thereby made a breach near the *Carinthian* Gate, commanded his men to enter, who in a desperate man-
ner

ner came on, but were so warmly received by the besieged, that after three thousand were slain upon the place, they were obliged to retire, which so enraged the Visier that he commanded them to make a second Attack, which was done but with altogether as bad success as the former.

The City of *Vienna* thus straitned, the Bishop of *Aichstadt* the Imperial Minister, represented the danger it was in, to the Diet for that purpose assembled at *Ratisbone*, recommending it especially to the care of the Electoral Princes, requiring them in the name of the Emperor to find out such effectual and speedy ways to raise men and money for its relief, that it might not fall into the hands of the Infidels, and thereby open a way for them to conquer all the Cities of *Austria*. This matter being debated, it was resolved that a fund of money should be speedily raised, and all other necessities provided, for the subsistence and relief of the besieged, and to stay the further progress of the *Turkish* Arms. Upon notice of which the Elector of *Bavaria* drew his forces into the field, and ordered them to the number of ten or eleven thousand, immediately to march and joyn the Duke of *Lorraine*, whom they found encamped near *Krenps*.

Whilst these things were doing, the Rebels under the command of Count *Teckely* made great spoil upon the borders of *Croatia* and *Silesia*: besieging and taking *Budekim* by storm, ravaging and destroying all the pleasant places about it, which put the adjacent Garisons into such consternation, that several whether through fear or treachery is uncertain, put themselves under his protection, whereby he was puffed up to that extravagance

that he sent Summons to divers of the Nobility to attend him in Arms as their Prince, under the Penalties of Confiscation, Imprisonment and death, which so afrighted divers, that they came in, but many there were whose Loyalty could not be shaken which so enraged the Rebel that he destroyed their Country dwellings, and seized on whatsoever of theirs he could find.

By this time the *Turks* had far advanced their Trenches, and began to throw their Bombs into the City, whereupon the Citizens covered many of their houses near the wall with earth, and with the shot of the Cannons from the Tower, overthrew the mortars, fallying out at the same time, and making a terrible slaughter of the enemy, who were advancing to the wall with a design to enter the new breach, recovering from them a Bastion of which they had possessed themselves, and cutting in pieces all they found therein.

This bad success making it apparent that the City was not so easie to be taken as the Visier had supposed, he commanded Arrows to be shot over the walls, with Letters fastened to them, containing his admonition to the besieged, speedily to surrender and receive liberty in their persons, a free exemption of their goods, and such treatment as they should desire, but if they refused, and held out obstinately, till the City should be taken by storm, or reduced by famine, no mischief should be left unpractised that wit or horror could invent, but this device not at all prevailed, but rather induced the besieged to contemn the besiegers, whose weakness thereby they the better understood, as observing from former acts of the like nature, they never capitulate underhand, till they

they despaire of obtaining their ends, or grow weary of the siege. All this while the Duke of *Lorraine* lay close in his Camp within sight of the City, the better to incourage the besieged, daily increasing his number, and as earnestly expecting the *Polonian* King, who had sent the Prince *Lubomirskie* before him with six thousand horse, and daily Curriers passed between him and the Emperor, who with the Court was retired to *Pashaw*, there to expect the great event, on which the eyes of all Nations were fixed.

The increase of the Christian Camp did not a little trouble the Visier, who well knew that if he could not make himself master of the City before the King of *Poland* arrived, he must be obliged to give battle, or raise his siege, and that if he miscarried in the former, it would greatly redound to his disgrace, if not hazzard his life, by rendring him obnoxious to the Grand Signiours displeasure, whom he had assured of taking the City; whereupon to hasten the enterprize he spared not his men, but thrust them on even into the mouth of slaughter, swearing by *Mahomet* that in whomsoever he found the least mark of cowardise, or neglect of duty he should be put to death, and thereupon he commanded the Cannon from all the Batteries to play without ceasing, but such was the care and skill of the Christian Engineers, that they with their great shot dismounted divers of them, overthrowing their battery, and burying such as were there posted in their ruins, yet having made two breaches in the wall, one near the red Tower, and the other not far from the Imperial Pallace, he commanded five thousand *Janizaries*, and ten thousand other souldiers to enter the Breach, but

Count

Count *Staremborg* having drawn his chief strength on that side to oppose the Torrent, although as men desperate they came on, yet the besieged sallying out and coming to hand strokes, by plain force drove them back, killing about three thousand, and recovering the Raveling, and Counterescarp, of which they had strongly possessed themselves, yet in this sally five hundred of the Imperialists fell, and two hundred wounded.

This hot dispute over, and the *Turks* beaten out of divers of their Trenches, they lay still for two days, not attempting any thing, when on the third the Visier sent to the Count *Staremborg* for a Cessation, or a five days Truce to bury the dead, whose noisome smells greatly afflicted his Camp with sickness, but the Count returned for an answer, that he had no need of a Truce, nor would he accord to any, upon which under the shelter of the night, the *Turks* in great numbers approached the walls, but being discovered by lights thrown out for that purpose, the shot from the Flankers and Battlements, gauled them so desperately, that they were obliged to return two thousand less than they came on, when upon their retreat three thousand of the Imperialists sallyed, and did great execution; whereupon the Visier storming, and finding the greatness of the loss he had at divers times sustained, in his unsuccessful attempts, repaired his Batteries, and plaated as near as he could his Mortars to the wall, with which he threw divers Granadoes and Bombies into the Town, setting some houses on fire, and killing many of the inhabitants, the which he continued all the 21 and 22 of *July*, but by the extraordinary diligence of the besieged, who still counter-mure

mured the breaches, repaired what was shattered and earth behind to keep the Bullworks from renting, and the wall from shaking by the force of the furious shot, the *Turks* at that vast expence of powder and shot were little advantaged.

The Duke of *Lorraine* having received another supply of five thousand men, part of the Troops of the Circle, and certain notice from the King of *Poland*, that he was advancing with all diligence, he the better to encourage the besieged, sent a Fisherman to assure them of speedy succour, commanding him to give him notice of his safe arrival, by setting up a blew flag upon the battlements of the Tower, and that the besieged if they were in danger should set up a red flag, and that rather then the City should fall into the hands of the Infidels, he would without the King of *Poland* endeavour to raise the siege, though at the hazard of a Battle, nor was it long e'r he safely arrived, by swimming over the *Danubius*, and gave the first signal, but so far were the besieged from giving the second, that they encouraged thereto by their renowned Governour the Count d' *Staremborg*, sallied early in the morning, and finding the *Turks* advancing their Mines, fell upon them with such fury, that they overwhelmed the Miners, and beat the *Janizaries*, who were appointed to guard them, insomuch that the noise arose so great that the Grand Vizier not well assured, supposed the Christian Army had at that time attempted the relief of the City, and for his own safety caused him to draw up his Army in Battalia.

Things being at this pass, the Duke of *Lorraine* in his Camp where he lay had notice that a Convoy

voy of provision and Ammunition was on its way to the *Turkish* Camp, and arrived within three Leagues thereof; whereupon he commanded out a party to intercept it, who accordingly performed his desire, killing and taking prisoners, and putting to flight those *Turks* who guarded it, nor was the booty less worth then forty thousand Dollars.

On the 24 of *July* the besieged made a vigorous sally with five thousand horse and foot, and charging the *Turks* in their Trenches with much bravery and resolution, drove them thence, thereby recovering, though not without considerable slaughter on either part, divers redoubts of which they had possessed themselves, firing the bavins and planks with which they attempted to fill up the Ditch, in order to a storm, which the next morning was intended, but seven thousand *Turks* being sent to reinforce those that were routed, they with fresh fury returned upon the Imperialists, to succour whom two thousand issued out of the Town, at what time the fight was renewed, and for a long time continued bloody and doubtful, and most of the works the Christians had possessed themselves of were recovered, the *Turks* still pressing on to enter the Town with the besieged, but being within danger, the Imperial Engeniers sprung a mine, and thereby destroying about two hundred of the forwardest, put a stop to the courage of the rest, and gave fresh vigor to the besieged, insomuch that again charging the enemy with the former courage and bravery, they overthrew them far and near, insomuch that five thousand were computed to fall during the action, which carnage so infected the *Turkish* Camp, that the soldiers dyed in great numbers, which obliged the
Visier

Visier to remove three or four miles further with the gross of his Army, leaving onely a competent number to guard his former Camp, and cover the siege.

The Elector of *Bavaria* according to his promise, having raised an Army of thirteen or fourteen thousand men, for the service of the Empire, after having mustered them in the presence of the Emperor, caused them to march directly towards *Kremps*, to joyn the Imperial Forces, resolving in person to follow them with all convenient speed, when in the mean while General *Dunwalt*, having notice that seven or eight thousand of the enemy were fallen into the upper *Austria*, he strengthening himself with what Forces he could, marched with all diligence to oppose their progress, in which they made such devastation that the like had not been formerly known, and such was his good success, that coming upon them at unawares, he put them to the rout, killing a great many of them, and rescuing two thousand Captive Christians, whom they had taken in their progress, as also recovered a great booty.

Upon notice of these and the like successes the Imperial Confederates hastned their quotas to joyn the Army, and for that purpose a Conference was held at *Hausford* on the 27 of *July* between the deputies of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Bishop of *Bamberg* and *Wittenberg*, the Princes of *Hanspach*, *Bereith*, &c. wherein it was resolved that the Troops of *Franconia*, designed for the assistance of the Emperor should set forward on the second of *August*, and that the Bishop and Chapter of *Wirtzberg* should for this service furnish out two Regiments of foot, and that four Companies of the Guards of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, over and
above

above his Quota, as likewise a Regiment of new raised horse should be employed against the *Turks* under the command of the Velt Marshal *Dorfling*.

Fresh Troops daily arriving at the Imperial Camp, and the besieged receiving new assurance of being suddenly relieved, would by no means admit of any Treaty with the *Turks*, but generously scorned their pretended advantageous proposals, which not a little enraged them, so that on the 30 of *July* they renewed their Battery with great fury against the Red Tower and *Scotenburg Gate*, continually thundring against them for twenty four hours, when having made two small Breaches they came on with great resolution, but were by the sallyers as strongly opposed, whilst the Cannon from the Tower, Battlements and Flankers, made such destruction amongst them, that they retired in great disorder, but whilst the Imperialists hotly pursued, their own Cannoniers not discerning them from the enemy, by reason of a great mist that fell about that time, divers of them were killed by the great shot, and scarcely was the mistake rectified e'r the *Turks*, being seconded with six Regiments of *Janizaries* and *Spabies* returned upon them, so that the fight on all sides was continued with great fury; each being desirous of honour and victory, but at length the *Turks* not being able to endure the Force of the Christians retired, yet being commanded to a third assault, and receiving fresh supplies from the Camp, they again returned, strongly possessing the works out of which they had been before beaten, but Count *Staremburg* accompanied with divers Commanders and one thousand foot soldiers coming upon them, so encouraged his weary men,

who

who had been in the heat of the action, with little intermission for the space of ten hours, that a greater slaughter then ever was made, and in fine the *Turks* put to flight.

During these three assaults not less then eight thousand of the Besiegers were slain, nor fewer then three thousand of the besieged. So that the Visier fearing the noisomness of the Carnage might oblige his men to forsake their Trenches, again desired a Cessation to bury his dead, but it would not be granted, but rather the slaughter Increased by another sally the besieged made, whilst their Cannon on the wall being skillfully mounted, overthrew the *Turks* Cannon, and ruined their new Battery against the *Scotenburg* Gate.

This great City; in the siege of which the *Turks* have been alwayes unfortunate, had not above sixteen hundred Garrison soldiers in it the morning of the day wherein it was besieged, and but lightly stored with provision; but so providence ordered it that in the sight of the *Turkish* Army, two great Vessels laden with provision coming up the River *Danubius*, got into the Port safely, and the Garrison augmented by sixteen thousand horse and foot, left there by the Duke of *Lorraine* as he marched through the City in his retreat, nor were the Burgers and Religious Orders less diligent in the defence thereof then the souldiers, being by the women animated thereto, but more especially by the unwearied example of their Governour, who spared no pains nor labour, being ever seen in places of greatest danger, sacrificing his rest and safety to the Publick good of Christendom, and preservation of his Country, of which that great City is the only Bulwark; and since

mony

money was mostly wanting, he borrowed it of the Monasteries and Religious foundations, promising to refund it with great interest if the City escaped falling into the hands of the Infidels, or if it did, so be it, his Life and Liberty remained to him they should lose nothing.

By this time the King of *Poland* having mustered his Army under the walls of *Cracovia*, and furnished himself with all things necessary, divided it into two parts, and by hasty Marches advanced to joyn the Imperial Camp, now swelled big by the daily arrival of fresh Troops, and longing to be in action, which the Grand Vizier well noting, used all diligence in running his Trenches chiefly trusting to his Mines, many of which being successfully sprung, ruined a great part of the outworks, but such was the indefatigable endeavours of the besieged that they made them for the most part good e'r the Turks could enter, and frequently by digging deep sounds, laying pibbles upon drums, and setting basons of water near the walls, discovered their Mines, which they countermining frustrated, destroying the Miners in them for the most part, or taking thence the powder.

Teckely imagining that the Duke of *Lorraine* durst not adventure out of his Camp for fear of being attacked by the *Ottoman* Forces, he with twenty five thousand *Turks* and *Hungars* advanced towards *Presburg* with a design to besiege it, of which the Duke having notice, drew out a strong power, and came upon him so suddenly, that in great disorder he retired, but the Imperialists falling in with his rear, cut off six or seven hundred of his men, taking a like number prisoners, together with a thousand Waggons laden with

with Ammunition Tents and Provision, as likewise burnt a great number of Boats and Casks, brought to pass a branch of the River *Danube*, sending after him the Prince *Lubomirskie* with the *Polish* Horse under his command, to prevent his falling into *Moravia*, who still cut off his rear, so that from the beginning to the end of the action fifteen hundred of the Rebels and *Turks* were slain and taken prisoners, with the remainder of which Army *Teckely* passed the *Waag*, where the *Turks*, separating from him returned to the Garisons, out of which they were drawn, yet the Duke stayed upon the banks of the River *Merck*, two miles from *Presburg*, till he had certain notice thereof, when increasing the Garison of that City he returned to his Camp near *Kremps*, where upon his arrival he had certain notice that the King of *Poland* was within ten dayes March of *Vienna*, when to assure the besieged thereof, he sent a person into the City, who safely arrived there, and thereby gave them great incouragement, in somuch that sallying about twilight, they made a terrible slaughter of the *Janizaries*, that were lodged in the Counterscarp, taking divers of them Prisoners, who being strictly examined, confessed the *Turkish* Camp was exceedingly weakened through sickness and want of provision, but especially since the Convoy that was on it's way thither fell into the hands of the Imperialists.

During these Transactions a body of *Turks* and *Tartars* fell into *Croatia*, burning and destroying all before them, leaving no manner of cruelty unpractised; to oppose which Torrent, the Vice-Roy gathered the strength of the Country, and

B

coming

coming upon them at unawares, put them to flight, following the execution for ten or twelve miles; Nor was the success of Count *Lesbly* less against another party of the Infidels, who greatly infested the Frontiers of the fruitful Countrey of *Moravia*, from whom, after he had put them to flight, he took 78 Waggons laden with the spoils of those Countreys, and became the deliverer of divers Christians, whom the Infidels were leading fast manacled into miserable Bondage.

The Duke of *Lorraine* fearing by this time that the besieged were in some strait for that he had received frequent advice that the *Turks* pressed the siege with great resolution, he to be the better satisfied sent another person into the City, who in the habit of a *Hungarian* Rustick safely passed the Leaguers, and under the shelter of the night swam over the *Danube*, giving upon his arrival the signal agreed on, and the same night returned with advice that the besieged were not as yet in any want either of men or provision, though the *Turks* almost without intermission kept them in action, but that which annoyed them most, was the bloody flux, of which thirty or forty died in a day.

The *Turks* having advice of the daily increase of the Imperial Forces now encamped at *Enzesdorf*, nearer then before to the City of *Vienna*, to the great encouragement of the besieged, the more eagerly pressed the siege, the Visier no way sparing his men, but rather as a man desperately resolved rather to lose the whole Army than go without that City, whose Keyes he had promised to lay at his Masters feet. He on the twelfth of

August

August caused the Cannon from all the Batteries to fire upon the *Scottenburg* Gate and Red Tower, commanding at the same time sixteen thousand *Grecians*, *Hungarians*, and people of other Nations subject to the *Ottoman* Scepter, to make the Attack, and enter the Breach by plain force, promising a 1000 Sultanas to him that should plant the first ensign upon the Wall, which so animated them that like men altogether careless of their lives, they threw themselves into the Ditch, where many of them were impaled upon stakes, and although a storm of small shot, and the loud mouths of eighty pieces of Cannon, plyed them with fearful slaughter, yet they pressed on and lodged themselves in the ditch, but upon the besiegeds fallying and springing a Mine, they were driven thence, and although great scarcity raged in the *Turkish* Camp, insomuch that horse-flesh was accounted dainty fare, and an Ammunition loaf of bread sold at five Dollars, yet the proud Bassa sent again to summon the Governour to surrender, but the Messenger not being admitted to enter the City, or parley with such as kept the outworks.

That evening a Letter from the Governour to the Duke of *Lorraine* which the *Turks* had intercepted, was shot into the City, and another paper in it signed by the *Visier*, admonishing the Governour timely to provide for his own and the peccles safety, and not by obstinately resisting Irritate the Grand Signior, but this so little availed that in stead of a surrender early in the Morning the besieged fallyed, and entring that part of the Counterscarp, of which the *Turks* had possessed themselves, drove them back, and seconding it by springing a Mine, which intercepted their Retreat,

treat most of them were cut in pieces, yet in this action divers of the besieged fell.

The better to incourage the besieged a party of Imperial horse sent by the Duke of *Lorraine*, passing a branch of the *Danube*, landing upon a small Island, fell upon three hundred *Turks*, put most of them to the sword, and with inconsiderable loss on their own part, returned with two hundred Camels laden with provision, and other necessaries which good success was seconded with certain Intelligence of the King of *Polands* advancing with all speed, and that for haste he with his horse was four dayes march before his foot, as fearing the ill consequences that might happen by the least delay.

The *Turks* finding the time grow short in which they must of necessity win the City or fight a Battle, they pressed the siege with more eagerness, especially upon their receiving a supply of men and provision; So that on the fourteen, fifteen, and sixteenth of *August* they advanced their works in the Ditch, and lodged themselves upon the point of the Ravelin, from whence they had been before beaten, gave two fierce assaults, in which they were repulsed, with great loss on either side, and on the seventeen day, being about to make another attack, the Governour and Count *d' Souches* sallied, and having beaten them back, ruined their works in the Ditch, making a terrible slaughter of such of the Infidels as they found too far advanced, and then returning into the City with the Turkish Ensigns, the ensuing day they made another sally wherein they beat the enemy from the point of the Ravelin, which they had again possessed, killing about three thousand of them, in which

which Action Count *Staremborg* was wounded in the head with a stone raised by a Cannon bullet that fell three yards short of him, and the Count *de Souches* received a hurt in his leg by an arrow from one of the Trenches, yet like men devoting their lives to the service of their Countrey, they pressed on couragiously, animating the soldiers to pursue the flying enemy, which they did, making great slaughter, and recovering almost all the works they had possessed, till such time as eight thousand *Fanizaries* advancing, the *Turks* thereby encouraged, returned furiously, insomuch that the besieged not being able to stand the charge, under the favour of the Cannon, retreated into the Town, where during the sally the breaches had been made good, yet in this action they lost two thousand men, and amongst them divers officers of note, yet as men not dismayed, finding still the *Turks* incroach, they on the 22 sallyed again, and finding the enemy had made great lodgments in the Ditch, beat them thence, and ruined their works, and the better to hinder their approaches made several retrenchments within the Bastion, which the *Turks* perceiving, threw that day a great many Bombies into the Town, which killed twenty men, and fired six or seven houses, playing very furiously from four Batteries, and by this time having possessed themselves of divers small Islands in the River *Danube*, as it were blocked up the City by water, yet the Governour resolving to hold out the siege to the last extremity, rather than to deliver the City, or come to any capitulation, he on the twenty sixth made another resolute sally, in which, coming to handy blows with the enemy, and the fight continuing hot for the

space of eight hours ; the loss was great on both sides, yet in the end the *Turks* were beaten out of all their works, and three great Mines of theirs being discovered, the powder was taken out, but so much Christian blood was shed in the action, that the Garrison was greatly weakned, and great was the want of Officers, for since the beginning of the siege were slain one Colonel, five Lieutenant Collonels, thirty Captains, and thirty eight Lieutenants, besides divers that dyed of the bloody flux, and were at that time sick, insomuch that it was resolved not so frequently to Sally, but use all endeavours to discover the enemies Mines, and Subterranean Traverses, and thereby defeat them, and that it was convenient to give the Duke of *Lorraine* notice of the strait the City was in, whereupon the Count *d' Starenberg* wrote a Letter, wherein he gave his Highness to understand as followeth.

The

The Copy of a Letter from the
Count *D' Staremburg* Govern-
our of *Vienna*, to the Duke
of *Lorrain*, bearing Date *Aug-*
ust 27th. 1683.

I Cast my self at your Highness
feet, humbly to thank your High-
ness for the good Opinion you
were pleased to expresse towards me
in your last Letter : Your Highness
knows I am perfectly devoted to you,
and that I desire nothing more pas-
sionately, than by my Humble Ser-
vice to render my self worthy there-
of. Since my last, the Enemy have
sprung six Mines in the Ravelin,
which after having repulsed them,

we presently repaired, and still we keep our Retrenchment. The Enemy have hitherto gained no more than a Lodgment on the point of the Ravelin: We search above and under ground, and have Countermined three of the Enemies Mines, and sprung two Mines, which had good Effect, and would have had better, were our Miners braver, and more expert; but being people that we are fain to get together any way, it is impossible to make them re-enter the Mine, if they hear the Enemy at work. In the Counterfarp the Enemy have likewise sprung three Mines near a Retrenchment: Palisadoes which we still maintain to cover the Caponiers,
we

we have in the Ditch, and though the Palisadoes were in some places beaten down by the last Mine, yet our men maintained the Post with their Swords in their hands, until such time they were made good again, and we do still keep it. The Enemy have made two other descents in the Ditch, one towards the Bastion Lebeland, and the other towards that of the Court; out of which our men under the favour of the fire we gave, did in open day dislodge them, whilst others commanded for that purpose filled up their works, and burnt their Gabbons and Galleries, so that they must begin anew: But Sir, it is time to succour us, we lose a great many
many

Many Men, and many Officers, more by the Bloody Flux, than by the fire of the Enemy; for there dies almost every day sixty of this Distemper: We have no more Granadoes, which were our best defence; our Cannon are partly spoiled by the Enemies Battery, and partly burst e're they had endured fifty shot, by reason of the ill Temperament of the Mettal; and the Enemy finding they cannot with small numbers lodge themselves in the Ditch, make great Lodgments on the Counterscarp, and keep a great number of men there, to make Extraordinary Efforts. For the rest it is certain the Enemy have lost, and do dayly lose a great many
Jani-

Janizaries, and that they have a great multitude wounded, and no less number sick of the Bloody Flux, which rages amongst them. They have several Camps far enough from each other, and may be easily beaten if they stay for Your Highness, which I do not believe they will do: They are not at present 60000 fighting men, and one Camp may be beaten before it can be assisted by the other. We expect your Highness with the greatest impatience, but I not so much to be delivered of this Siege, as to have the Honour to assure your Highness of the Respect which I am, &c.

Post-

Postscript.

AT this Instant my Miners Informed me, that they hear the Enemy working beneath them, under the Bastion of the Court. they must have passed the Ditch under ground, and there is no more time to be lost.

This

This advice greatly alarmed the Imperial Camp, not so much for fear as with a desire immediately to march, and adventure the relief of the City, at the hazard of a Battle, whereupon the Duke assembled the Great Commanders in his own Tent, laying before them the Danger the City was in, and at the same time informed them that he was resolved to attempt its relief, though at the hazard of a Battle, which resolve was liked by most, though some there were, who alledged that seeing the King of *Poland* was near at hand, it was not safe to attempt any thing till both Armies were joyned, and that it was better to hazard the City, than the Army, upon which the safety of the Empire depended. Notwithstanding the Army had exprefs orders to March, and had set forward the next day, had not advice in the mean while arrived in the Camp from the Count d' *Staremburg*, informing his Highness that he had discovered and defeated the great Mine under the Court Bastion, and dislodged the *Turks* in the Counterscarp, by successfully springing two Mines, which had inabled him to hold out much longer then he supposed, therefore he earnestly besought his Highness not to hazard any thing rashly.

This advice altered the former resolves, especially upon notice of the near approach of the *Polonian* Horse, yet the Scouts giving information that a great body of *Turks* and *Hungarians*, were on their way to joyn with the Beliegers, under the leading of the *Bassa* of *Buda*; Prince *Lubomirskie*, with the horse under his command, and three Regiments of Imperial Dragoones, advanced to meet them, upon whom coming unexpectedly

pectedly, after a hot dispute he put them to flight, with the slaughter of four or five thousand of them, taking many prisoners, and a great Convoy of Provision and Ammunition, such as escaped flying to *Gran, New-haussel*, and other adjacent Garrisons.

The Prince was no sooner returned with these spoiles to the Camp, but an Officer arrived from the King of *Poland*, assuring the Duke of *Lorraine*, that the King was with thirty Regiments of Horse within twelve or fourteen hours of the Imperial Camp, whereupon his Highness dispatched the Margrave of *Baden*, to complement him upon his arrival, and immediately drew up his Army in Battalia, to receive him at the head thereof, resolving with all convenient speed to give the *Turks* a Camisado, and withal sent an express to the Emperour lying at *Pashaw*, to let him understand the *Polonian* Kings Approach, and his resolves to fight the *Ottoman* Army with the first advantage offered, as also in what danger the City of *Vienna* had been, and was in, giving at the same time strait command to every officer throughout the Army to be in readiness to March upon six hours notice.

The Imperial Camp being put into good order, and a resolution taken to fight the Infidels, the King of *Poland* on the 29 of *August* arrived with all his Chivalry, and was immediately followed by the remaining Troops of horse, his foot being at the same time advanced, within 8 *German* Miles of the Imperial Camp; when upon his arrival, having been by the Margrave congratulated, first in the name of his Imperial Majesty

jeſty, and then in the name of the Duke and all the great Commanders of the Army; he encamped about a mile on the left of the Imperialiſts, and the next day a Tent Royal was pitched between both Armies, where the King, the Duke of *Lorraine*, the Electors of *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, and divers other Princes met, and after paſſing the uſual complements, fell to debate about the neceſſity of their attempting to raiſe the ſiege, and that no time was to be loſt in that affair, for that the Garrifon Souldiers from twenty thouſand were by divers diſtempers and the fire of the enemy, reduced to five or ſix thouſand, nor were they ſlow in coming to a reſolve upon the Method to be obſerved therein.

During theſe tranſactions the *Turks* inceſſantly Battered the City of *Vienna*, labouring earneſtly in their works, as being greatly deſirous to take it by ſtorm, and more eſpecially to ſave the Grand Viſiers oath, who had ſworn by the head of *Mahomet*, to take it or dye under the walls, though afterward it appeared he had not ſtrength enough to acquire the former, nor courage ſufficient to keep his word in the latter, for ſuch was the courage of the beſieged, that ſallying they beat the enemy once more out of all their works, but by the former ſallies and ſickneſs as before mentioned, they were exceedingly weakened, inſomuch that they deſpaired much longer to maintain the City, againſt the aſſaults of ſuch ſo numerous and reſtleſs enemies, ſo that on the fourth of *September* Count *Staremberg* at the earneſt intreaty of the *Burghers*, cauſed it to be ſignified from *St. Stephens* Tower, by ſetting up a purple flag, the ſignal appointed that the City was in diſtreſs,

distress, which being perceived by the Imperial Scouts, they acquainted the King and Duke, who thereupon drew up in Batalia, and sent out four hundred horse, to observe whether the enemy had possessed the Forrest, and immediately set forward with the whole Army, altogether full of courage and brave resolution, desiring nothing more than to be in action with the Infidels, when in the mean time, the City being pressed by two successive assaults, and a Mine sprung on the point of the Bastion, the Besieged on the eight, made another sign from the Tower of the great danger they were in, and sent out two Enginiers to inform the Duke of *Lorraine* thereof by word of mouth, the better to hasten relief before the enemy had finished the new Batteries within Musquet shot of the *Scottenburg* Gate, but one of them was taken by the *Turks* Scouts, and the other supposed to be drowned in passing the *Danube*.

But the General having received sufficient notice (and dreading of what evil consequence the least delay might prove) in good order passed the Forrest of *Vienna*, which the Turks to their great disadvantage had no where Fortified. But coming to the hill of *Calemberg* on the 11th. of *October* found it strongly possessed; whereupon a squadron of horse, and eight Regiments of foot ascended to Attack the enemy, and remove them from their post, who charged up with such bravery, that after a hot dispute, the Turks gave ground, and retired in great confusion to a strong retrenchment, made at the bottom of the hill towards their Camp, where being reinforced, they made a stand, and again disputed it, but being cut off in great numbers by the shot of the Imperial

Imperial Cannon, from the hill, on which by this time they were planted, and charged on the one hand by the *Polonian* horse, and on the other by the *Bavarian* foot, they after an hours dispute were driven thence, leaving an open field to the Imperial Army, which under the Duke of *Lorraine*, advanced in good order to charge the Bassa of *Sielistra*, who as the forlorn, with ten or twelve thousand men, advanced, though in some disorder, by reason his Ranks were broken by the shot from the Hill, which played furiously, till the Dukes squadron of horse under the leading of the Margrave of *Baden*, caused the Bassa, after a sharp dispute to retire to the main Body, when the Duke of *Lorraine* with fifteen thousand horse, taking the advantage, fell into the left wing, with such fury, that the *Turks* in spite of the resistance they made began to fall into disorder, when as the King of *Poland* charging on the Right, where the Visier fought in person, great was the slaughter, till in the end, the *Turks* as men discouraged and dismayed, began to shrink together, which the Margrave of *Baden* perceiving, drew off to relieve the besieged, and by six in the evening posted himself before the *Scotch* gate, yet did not the *Turks* in the Trenches desist from assaulting the City, but like men desperately resolved to lose their lives, or win it, but the scale of victory, by this time turning apparently on the Christians side they being seconded by six thousand fresh horse made great slaughter, though the Bassas laboured to encourage their men, and restrain their flight in vain, for by this time the King of *Poland* with his own Troops, and such Imperial Auxiliaries as seconded him, having broken and quite disordered the left wing, pierced

even to the flank of the right, which the Visier perceiving, and finding his Forces two weak longer to maintain the field, fled with the foremost, whilst the Confederate Princes followed, making great slaughter, having the execution of the enemy even till night came on, at what time they prudently weighing that the *Turks*, as their custom is, might Rally, returned to charge the Turkish Camp, in which were left almost all the *Fanizaries*, but the King of *Poland* breaking in with great fury, after a hot encounter possessed himself of it, putting such as he found there to the sword, whilst the like success had the Margrave of *Baden*, who perceiving the *Turks* Army in rout, entered the Trenches and Works, of which (assisted by the besieged, who at the same time sallied) he soon became Master, cutting in pieces the *Turks*, that were left to continue the siege, and possessed himself of all the Cannon, Mortars, Powder, and Granado shells, entering the same evening the almost ruined City, which was by sixty dayes close siege brought to such distress that the most couragious doubted to defend it against another assault, which the enemy was about to make, had they not been prevented; for in it at the time it was delivered, no more then four thousand five hundred fighting men were found, and all the works so ruined, that it was left in a manner open to the approaches of the enemy; the Cannon spoiled, the powder spent, and the store of Provision brought to its ultimate Crisis.

This so great and memorable victory, obtained over the daring Infidels on the eleventh of *October*, and the City *Vienna* intirely left at liberty; all that

that night the Christian Army stood in Battalia in the enemies Camp, to prevent any surprize, and the next morning the King of Poland, to whom the greatest share of plunder fell, found besides the Tent-Moveables and horse of Cera, Mustapha, the Prime Visier, the value of a Million of Crowns, the greatest part thereof being in ready money, nor did any souldier want to furnish himself with something; there were likewise found 80 pieces of Cannon, besides those on the Batteries, three thousand Quintals of Powder, and Provision sufficient for the subsistence of the Turkish Army for three moneths, and immediately thereupon the Polish horse were sent out to pursue the flying enemy, who upon their return brought into the Camp many prisoners, some Camels laden with Tents and Provision, and two great pieces of Cannon, the one drawn by sixty, the other by eighty yolk of Oxen, having likewise cut off a considerable number of such as Marched in the Rear, and pursued them almost as far as Iba-Regalis; so that in this Battle the Turks lost ten or eleven thousand of their best men, and by the bloody flux and fire of the besieged thrice the number.

The City of Vienna thus freed, with the loss of not above three hundred Christians, on the twelfth of October his Imperial Majesty, who had resided at Passaw, to give necessary Orders, in all great and weighty affairs, came to Cister-Newburg, whither the Count Staremberg, and the chief Officers of the Garrison went to pay their duty, and were received with great respect, when on the fourteenth the Emperor came up the Danube in his Barge, and arriving at the Port Royal, was received at his landing by the Electors of Bavaria

and *Saxony* (attended by their Guards) By the Count d' *Staremburg* most of the great Commanders, Magistrates, &c. the Garrison Souldiers being posted on the Bastion as they were during the Siege, the Burghers in Arms, and all the Cannon round the Town thrice discharged, where his Imperial Majesty passing on took a view of the Bastion and other works, ruined during the Siege, and the several Retrenchments the besieged had made within the Town, and so went to *St. Stephens* Church, where *Te Deum* was sung, after which he went to the Arch Dukes Pallace (his own being so much indamaged by the enemies Cannon, that it was not capable of receiving him) where he gave Publick Audience, and in the evening the Duke of *Lorraine* arrived, and was by the Emperor received in a most obliging manner, and had a long Conference with him relating to the present war, at what time the King of *Poland* sent his under Chancelor in his name to congratulate his Arrival, and presented him with the *Ottoman* Imperial Standard, richly Imbroidered and set with precious Stones, to a great value, the which together with two horse-tailes the usual signals of war amongst the *Turks*, he found in the Visiers Tent; as likewise the original Copy of a Letter signed by divers *Hungarian* Lords, wherein they congratulate the Visier upon the succesfull progressse of his Arms, and encouraged him to undertake the Siege of *Vienna*, and withal the Vice-Chancelor had it in charge to invite his Imperial Majesty into his masters Camp.

The day following the Emperor left the City
and

and went to visit the Army, which was encamped about 2 miles from thence, the two wings reaching towards *Ebersdorf* and *Laxemborough*, when coming first to the *Bavarian* Troops, the Elector at the head of them, saluted him with his sword, and having performed his complements, accompanied him to the *Polish* Camp, where the King had drawn up his Army in Battalia, at the head of which, attended by the Great Marshal, and divers Senators of *Poland*, he advanced to meet the Emperor, each approached the other on horseback, expressing all possible demonstration of Reciprocal love and friendship, and after a short interview, the Emperor took a view of the *Polish* Army, and then returned to *Vienna*, whereupon the King of *Poland* decamped, and marched to *Wischa*, and was followed by the Imperial Troops under the Leading of the Duke of *Lorraine*, accompanied with the Electors of *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, &c. resolving to strip the *Turk* out of his Garrisons in *Hungary*, and now the Emperor, as a signal of his love and respect to Count *Staremberg*, made him great master d' Camp, and the Magistrates of *Vienna* attributing their preservation next Heaven, to his courage and conduct, in recompence of so great service, made him a present of two thousand Ducates, and by a Publick act under their seal, freed his house for ever of all Taxations or other duties, to the payment of which it before was lyable.

The Grand Visier by this time, having considered and well weighed the greatnesse of his loss, and the excessive expence his master had been at, in Levying and maintaining so vast an Army,

the conduct of which himself had undertaken promising at his setting out no less then the subversion of *Austria, Croatia, Silesia* and *Moravia*, and now defeated without acquiring any thing memorable, he greatly fearing his head must pay the price of his presumption; the better to cast the blame upon another, and thereby frame a plausible excuse, he in a great rage sent to strangle the Bassa of *Buda*, which was performed in his Tent, the Visier laying to his charge, that he had basely and Cowardly suffered the overthrow of those Forces he was conducting to the Camp, and had not afterwards taken timely care to recruit his Forces, nor send provision and other necessaries to the Camp. This Bassa thus made away, one *Hamet Chellif* was made Bassa in his stead, but long enjoyed not his honour, for at the fight at *Barkan* he with divers other Bassas, was slain, as in the sequel of this History will appear.

The Visier having notice that the Christian Army had entred *Hungary*, with a resolution to set down before some important place, and that the Generals had eye upon *Gran* and *New-Hassel*, he collected his scattered Forces, to the number of twenty five thousand, encamping near the walls of *Stoel-Weissenburg*, but not thinking himself safe there, retired before the Christian Army, which marched with all diligence to find him out, but the King and Duke having notice that the lower *Hungary* was intirely ruined, and left desolate, they repassed the *Danube* near *Comora*, with a resolution to possess themselves of *Barkan*, a Garison of the *Turks* covering the Bridg of *Gran* and *Pest* over against *Buda*, the better to secure

secure their winter Quarters in the upper *Hungary*, which the Visier mistrusting had posted there a body of ten or twelve thousand *Janizaries* and *Spahies* or *Timarii*, whilst himself marched to *Alba-Regalis*, to be at hand to joyn them in case they should be attacked, and caused another small body drawn out of the Garrisons, to possess the banks of the River *Gran*, to hinder the Christians passing over. But this letted not the progress of their Arms, for the King of *Poland* by swift marches advancing a *German* mile and a half before the Imperial Army, coming near *Barkan*, the *Turks* came out in small parties, to skirmish with whom, and to attack the Garrison, the King caused his Dragoons to alight, who after some dispute caused the enemy to retire, but their retreat proved only a delign to draw the *Poles* into their Ambush, for whilst the King furiously pursued, six thousand *Janizaries* passing undiscovered behind a hill, charged the Kings Battle so strongly in the Flank, that piercing the Array, they put it into some disorder, the horse notwithstanding the King was present, breaking rank and giving ground, yet wheeling off he soon brought them to recover their order, and continued the fight bloody and doubtful, when being seconded by foot, the *Turks* were slain in great numbers, and about to fly, had they not been reinforced by two thousand horse, brought on by the Bassa of *Buda*, who in the first charge was himself slain, yet they obstinately maintained the fight, which making the King doubt that the Visier with a greater power was at hand, as having no certain intelligence of his march, he sent an express to the Duke of *Lorraine* to let him know

know he was engaged, and to desire him to advance with all convenient speed, which he did, but not with such celerity as was expected, by reason he had a long defile to pass, but upon the first approach of his Troops the *Poles* retired, to avoid the confusion they were falling into, but being reinforced by six Regiments of Imperial Dragoons, they again returned in good order, and every where put the *Turks* to the rout, following the execution to the Bridge of *Barkan*, over which a few made their escape, but the Bridge once broken, and all hope of flight cut off, they resolutely threw themselves into the River, and their perished, so that of the whole body a very small number escaped the sword and drowning, unless eight hundred that were taken Prisoners, amongst whom was the Bassa of *Silesia*, and the Bassas of *Buda* and *Aleppo*, fell amongst the slain, which were not computed less than ten thousand, upon which defeat the Garrison surrendred upon discretion, in which was found a rich booty, containing part of the spoils of *Austria*, *Croatia* and *Moravia*; In this Battle fought on the 9 of *October* thirteen hundred *Poles*, and one hundred Imperialists fell, the King himself was much indangered by the enemies shot, and Prince *Alexander* his son had his horse shot under him; none of note being killed on the part of the Christians but *Kirotski* a *Polish* Palatine.

This second overthrow greatly discouraged the Visier, who was advancing to joyn this body, but upon the news of the defeat, he in great perplexity retired to *Belgrade*, there to expect new supplies, whilst the King and Duke
after

after thanks for this unexpected Victory returned to Almighty God, kept on their way to *Gran*, beating the stragling parties appointed to let their passage, and on the 18 of *October* coming near the City sent out a commanded party to burn the Suburbs, the which after a hot dispute which such *Turks* as sallied to prevent it, in part they performed, and thereupon prepared formally to besiege that important Garrison, which no doubt will fall into their hands.

And now *Tekely* finding the *Ottoman* sword too feeble to maintain his usurped Title, and support him in his Rebellion, sent his deputies to the King of *Poland*, earnestly to implore his mediation with the Emperor to pardon his past offences, and accept of his future obedience, but that king not finding him real in his intentions, refused to meddle in that affair.

And thus much Reader have I thought fit for your satisfaction impartially to recount, and conclude with my hearty prayers to Almighty God, that as the Christian Arms have been of late successful, so may they continue till the haughty Infidels by sad experience know, that the crucified God, whom they impiously condemn, blaspheme and revile, is not only able to deliver his people from their merciless cruelties, but in his just displeasure to break in pieces their aspiring Monarchy with a Rod of Iron.

F I N I S.

The Contents.

The Heads of each Chapter or Division contained in the History, directing to the Revolutions of the *Turkish* Empire, and Reigns of their several Kings and Emperors.

C H A P. I.

THE Original of the Turks according to the opinion of Sundry Learned Authors, with the means by which they acquired their first Monarchy in Persia, together with the Reign and Death of Tangrolipix their First King.

Page 1. Part 1.

C H A P.

The Contents.

C H A P. II.

*The Reign and memorable Atchievements
of Axan the Second Turkish King, or
Sultan of Persia. The Division of the
Turkish Monarchy, and the Expedition of
the Christians to the Holy Land, in or-
der to regain it from the Turks.* page 8.
part 1.

C H A P. III.

*The Reign of Solyman, Son to Cutlu-
Muses, his Wars with the Christians;
Their taking Jerusalem from the Infidels,
their various successes in the Holy Land
against the Turks, Sarazens, &c.* p. 11.
part 1.

C H A P. IV.

*The second Expedition of the Western
Princes for the recovery of the Holy Land.*
p. 28. part 1.

CHAP.

The Contents.

C H A P. V.

The ruine of the Turks first Kingdom in Asia by the Tartars. p. 33. part 1.

C H A P. VI.

The rise of the powerful Empire of the Turks under Othoman it's first Founder, with his Life and Actions. p. 57. part 1.

C H A P. VII.

The Life and Actions of Orchanes, otherwise Urchan, Second King of the Turks in Asia. p. 68. part 1.

C H A P. VIII.

The Life and Actions of Amurath, the First of that Name, and Third King of the Turks. p. 74. part 1.

C H A P. IX.

The Life of Bajazet the First of that Name, and Fourth King of the Turks, his Wars and Captivity. p. 80. part 1.

C H A P. X.

The Contents.

C H A P. X.

The Life of Mahomet, the First of that Name, Fifth King of the Turks, and the Restorer of their Kingdom ruined by the Tartars.

p. 87. part 1.

C H A P. XI.

The Life of Amurath, the Second of that Name, and Sixth King of the Turks, his Wars, Victories, and Defeats.

p. 93.
part 1.

C H A P. XII.

The Life of Mahomet, the Second of that Name, Seventh Monarch, and the First that took upon him the stile of Emperor of the Turks, who for his many Victories was Surnamed Great.

p. 108.

part 1.

C H A P. XIII.

The Contents.

C H A P. XIII.

The Life of Bajazet the Second of that Name, and Second Emperour of the Turks, his memorable Exploits, Victories, and Death.

p. 132. part 1.

C H A P. XIV.

The Life of Selymus the First of that Name, Third Emperour of the Turks, his bloody Reign, and woful Death.

p. 153.
part 1.

C H A P. XV.

The Life of Solyman the First of that Name, and Fourth Emperour of the Turks, who for his many great Exploits, or rather lofty Carriage, was Sirnamed the Magnificent.

p. 181. part 1.

C H A P. XVI.

Selymus the Second of that Name, and Fifth Emperour of the Turks, his Life and Actions.

p. 45 . part 2.

C H A P.

The Contents.

C H A P. XVII.

The Life, Reign, and Memorable Transactions of Amurath, the Third of that Name, and Sixth Emperor of the Turks.

P. 73. part 2.

C H A P. XVIII.

The Life of Mahomet, the Third of that Name, Seventh Emperor of the Turks.

P. 123. part 2.

C H A P. XIX.

The Life of Achmat the Eighth Emperor of the Turks, and first of that Name.

p. 162. part 2.

C H A P. XX.

Mustapha, the First of that Name, Ninth Emperor of the Turks, his Life and Actions.

p. 196. part 2.

C H A P. XXI.

The Life and Actions of Osman, the First of that Name, Tenth Emperor of the Turks.

p. 198. part 2.

C H A P. XXII.

The Contents.

C H A P. XXII.

Mustapha reinthronized with an Account of his proceedings till his second deposing.

p. 214. part 2.

C H A P. XXIII.

The Life and Reign of Morat , or Amurath the Fourth of that Name , and Eleventh Emperor of the Turks.

p. 222. part 2.

C H A P. XXIV.

The Life of Sultan Ibrahim , the Twelfth Emperor of the Turks.

p. 256. part 2.

C H A P. XXV.

The Reign of Mehomet, or Mahomet the Fourth of that Name, and Thirteenth Emperor of the Turks, who now Reigneth.

p. 272. part 2.

C H A P. XXVI.

A Description of the Power, Policies, Forces, Revenues, Religion, and Greatness of the Ottoman Empire, and by what means it subsists, and maintains its Grandeur, &c.

p. 378. part 2.

F I N I S.

THE
HISTORY
OF THE
TURKS.

DESCRIBING

The Rise and Ruin of their first Empire in *Persia*;
the Original of their Second.

CONTAINING

The Lives and Reigns of their several Kings and Emperours, from
Ottoman its first Founder to this present Year, 1683.

BEING

A Succinct Series of History, of all their Wars (Forreign and Domestic) Policies, Customs, Religion and Manners; with what else is worthy of Note in that Great Empire.

WITH A

Continuation of the History to this present time; Containing the Remarkable Siege of *Vienna* for Sixty dayes, the raising of it by the Imperial Forces, and the King of *Poland*: The Ruine of their Army before it, and a Second Fight in *Germany*; with their Successful Entrance into the Bowels of *Hungaria*. Together with a Table to the whole Book.

L O N D O N,

Printed by *Ralph Holt* and *John Richardson*, for *Thomas Passinger* upon *London Bridge*, *William Thacker* in *Duck-Lane*, and *Thomas Sawbridge* in *Little-Britain*, 1684.

ni
T
th
th
T

T H E

Turkish History

EPITOMIZED:

C H A P. I.

The Original of the Turks according to the Opinion of sundry Learned Authors , with the Means by which they acquired their first Monarchy in Persia ; Together with the Reign and Death of Tangrolipix their first King.

IT has, and at this day does cause sundry Disputes amongst the Learned, from what Nation or People the Turks, now so formidable by extending their Empire o're a third part of the known World, are sprung or derived; some being of opinion that they are descended of the Remnant of the Trojans that scaped the Sword at the Destruction of the City of *Troy*, and strengthen their Argument with this Reason, viz. That the Word *Turcii* signifying a Trojan, is corruptly called *Turci* or *Turk*, and that on

B

all

all hands it is affirmed that they originally inhabited the lesser *Asia*, where the City so much Renowned in Story for its holding out a ten years Siege against the Power of the then Grecian Empire stood; others affirm they sprung from the ten Tribes carried away captive by *Salmanaſer* the Assyrian King, and that from them likewise sprung the *Tartars* inhabiting the Northern Climes, and their Reasons are, for as much as the great Lords of *Tartary* derive their Pedigree from Tribes, calling themselves Danists, Zebulonians and Napthalists, and that the Word *Turk* in the Hebrew signifies a banished man, or one in disgrace; and further, that they still retain many Ceremonies of the Jewish Nation, as Circumcision, and the like, as also frequently to repeat to themselves Lamentations, though corruptly for the fall of *Jerusalem*, and *Damascus* the chief Cities of *Judea* and *Syria*, affirming they know not the meaning of such their Lamentations, but that they have been taught of their Ancestors so to do. Others are of Opinion that they were *Scythians*, who left their Country by reason of the Scarcity thereof, and Coldness of the Clime, and falling on *Armenia*, grasped it with so hard a hand, that all the Power of the *Roman* Empire then flourishing could not rescue it, but as a Token of their first Success in their issuing out of the *Caspian* Straits, they named it *Turcomania*, which name remains to this day. And that there were such a People long before their aspiring to Empire in *Asia*, *Pomponius Mella*, *Pliny*, and *Ptolomy* do aver; but about the time of their Eruption, *Blondus Platina*, and *Segonius* disagree, the two former declaring it to be in the year of our Lord 755, and the latter in 844. yet conclude upon the reason of their coming forth as aforesaid.

Their Rise and aspiring to Greatness, was after this manner; *Mahomet* the Persian Sultan wresting the Government

vernment from the *Caliph* or Successor of *Mahomet* the Impostor, or as they falsely called him, their Great Prophet, whose Erroneous Doctrine had infected all *Asia*, *Affrick*, and part of *Europe*, to provide against the worst strengthned himself, and the better to do it, sent to the Turkish Chief in *Armenia* to furnish him with a competent number of Men of War, who in compliance to the Sultans Command caused 3000 to March under the Leading of one of his chief Captains named *Tangrolipix*, by the help of which he overthrew the Caliph of *Babylon*, with an incredible Slaughter of his Army; and being further minded to make an Expedition against the *Indians* that bordered his Country, and knowing by Experience the great courage of the *Turks*, and their singular dexterity in Archery, he resolved to retain them for his further Service; so that when they desired to be conducted over the River *Araxis*, he not only refused to permit it, but also threatned them, if they offered to make any further mention of their departure, which Indignity caused them to take the opportunity of withdrawing themselves into the Desert of *Caranonitis*, and there like Out-laws to live upon Spoil; the News of which no sooner reached the Sultan's ear, but he commanded ten of his Captains to March against *Tangrolipix* with an Army of 20000 choice Soldiers composed of divers Nations, which Incamping by the border of a Forrest, wherein the Turkish Captain resided with his Forces, they were in the dead of the night set upon and put to flight with great Slaughter; so that the *Turks* furnishing themselves with the Spoils of the slain appeared more boldly in the Field, and were in a short time increased to 50000 fighting men by such Outlaws and other Villains, as upon the bruit of their Success resorted to 'um, which caused *Mahomet*, now jealous of his other Subjects revolt to raise a great Army and to advance against *Tan-*

grolipix. First, having put out the Eyes of those Captains overthrown in the fight, and threatned to disgrace the Souldiers that escaped the slaughter by attiring them in Womans Apparel, which afterward redounded to his loss by causing them to avoid future punishment to fly to his Enemy. In fine, both Armies met on the great Plain before the City *Ispahan* in *Persia*, and began a dreadful Battle, which with great Slaughter lasted till Sultan *Mahomet* fell from his Horse, and broak his neck, at what time both Armies ceased from fight, and by unanimous consent chose *Tangrolipix* Sultan of *Persia*, and the Dominions appertaining to that large Kingdom, who was no sooner seated in his Throne, but he caused the Garrisons that kept the Passage over *Araxis* to be removed, and called in the Turks his Country-men then dwelling on the other side, and by degrees advanced them to all the chief Places of Trust, deposing the *Persians* and *Sarazens*, the Ancient Inhabitants of those Dominions; but long he had not wielded his Scepter e'r he made War upon *Pisafiris* the Caliph of *Babylon*, and after sundry Battles having slain him annexed his Kingdom to *Persia*.

This Success firing him with a desire to extend his Dominions wider, he sent *Cutlu-Muses* his Nephew to war on the *Arabians*, but those People as dexterous in Archery as the *Turks* soon overthrew him with the slaughter of a great part of his Army, and therefore in his Return requested of *Stephen* the Greek Emperours Lievtenant in *Media*, that he might pass through those Territories into his own Country; but he not only denied him passage, but opposed him with a powerful Army, which was by the *Turks* defeated, and the Lievtenant taken Prisoner: After which the Sultan in Person made an Expedition against the *Arabians*, thinking to revenge the late disgrace, but procured a greater for himself, was likewise overthrown, which
caused

caused him to bend his Forces to the Conquest of *Media* to effect which he sent his Brother *Asan*, but in the mean while his Nephew fearing his displeasure for disobeying his Command fled, and gathering to him a strong Power, seized on *Pasar* a strong City of *Chorasmians*, yet the Expedition was not thereby obstructed; but his Army had scarce entred the Confines of *Media* before the Emperor's new Lievtenant gave Battle, and put the *Turks* to flight following the Execution for many miles.

This defeat intraged the Sultan, and caused him to send an Army double the number of the former under the Conduct of *Humbramy-Alim* his other Brother, who after six days Siege took *Arzen* a Town rich in Merchandize, but the Lievtenant having joyned his Forces with those of *Liperates* Governour of *Iberia*, who came to his Assistance, the Battle was joyned, which continued bloody and doubtful for the space of four hours, at the end of which the Victory fell to the Christians, who followed the Execution till Night put an end to it, yet *Liperates* fighting valiantly was taken and carried into *Persia*, for whose Ransom the Emperor sent great Presents; but the Sultan out of a generous bravery sent him home Ransom-free, only admonishing never to bear Arms against him more, and with him sent *Seriph* a Mahumetan Priest as his Ambassador, to demand of the Emperor that he would become Tributary to the Sultan, and that thereby an Eternal Peace might issue, which the Emperor rejected with just disdain. Whereupon the Sultan invaded the *Roman* Provinces with great Forces, but understanding upon his approaching *Casarea* that the Emperor's Army was upon the March, resolving to give him Battle, and that if he should be overthrown there was little hopes of retreating by reason he had left so many Enemies at his back, he returned into *Media* and laid Siege to the

strong City of *Mantizichiert*, furiously assaulting it for thirty days without intermission; but after the loss of *Alcan* his chief Captain, and 20000 *Turks* and *Persians* he in great perplexity raised the Siege, and upon his return being displeased with his Brother *Habrainim*, he fled by Night and joyned such Forces as he could raise with *Cutlu Muses*, against whom the Sultan marched, and overthrowing them in plain Battle took *Habrainim* Prisoner, and immediatly commanded his head to be struck off, when in the mean while *Cutlu Muses*, and his Cousin *Melech* fled into *Armenia* with the remainder of the broken Army, and from thence sent Ambassadors to the Greek Emperor to take them into protection, but the Sultan following them close with his Army, they removed from thence and fled into *Arabia*, upon which the Sultan leaving the pursuit, turned his Army upon *Iberia* and wasted the Country with fire and sword in many places; but upon the approach of *Acolubus* the Emperor's Lievtenant he retired to *Tauris*, leaving behind him one *Sannich* with 3000 *Turks* to infest the Imperial Territories. At which time the Emperor *Constantius* died, leaving his Empress and three Children, the former being obliged in an Oath not to marry, though afterwards that Oath was dispensed with by the Patriarch, and she married to one *Diogines* whom she pardoned as the Sentence of death was about to pass upon him for conspiracy to dismember the Empire: So that he being proclaimed Emperor, advanced with an Army against the *Turks* passing over into *Asia*, where they were wasting the Provinces with fire and sword, upon whose approach the Sultan doubting the Event, sent one part of his Army into the South, and the other into the North, the latter surprising upon its arrival new *Cesarea*, and so laden with rich Booties departed, upon notice of which the Emperor pursued them, and after a sharp Encounter

put them to flight, recovering the Booty and Prisoners, at which time the City of *Hierapolis* was surrendered to him, and many other Cities which the *Turks* had taken; and then dividing his Army, past on with one part of it to *Syria*, and left the other part to defend the new Conquest, which in his absence was overthrown by the *Turks*, upon News of which the Governour of *Aleppo* revolted from him. But whilst the *Turks* supposed they had him in a Toil, he without any noise fell in with their Army and put them to flight, making great slaughter of such as fled, and then receiving the Homage of the several Countries he passed through, he came to *Alexandria* in *Calicia*, and there quartered his Army, and so returned to *Constantinople*.

The Emperor having recruited himself all Winter, early in the Spring hasted to his Army to oppose the *Turks* that were abroad ravaging the Country about new *Casaria*, and after having repressed them passed on to the River *Emphrates*, where leaving part of his Army with his Lievtenant for securing the Frontiers, he retired into *Capadocia*; but in his absence his Lievtenant was routed by the Turkish Army which the Emperor understanding at *Sabestia*, he sent the Governour of *Antioch* with part of his Army to oppose them at *Mopsiphestia*, but they before were broken by the *Armenians*, who had took from them the rich Booties they had acquired by the Sacks of many Cities.

And thus this Emperour continued to defend the *Roman* Provinces with great Success against the powerful Forces of a furious Adversary all the Reign of *Tangrolipix* the first Turkish Sultan of *Persia*.

C H A P. II.

The Reign and Memorable Atchievements of Axan the second Turkish King or Sultan of Persia. The Division of the Turkish Monarchy, and the Expedition of the Christians unto the Holy Land, in order to regain it from the Turks.

T*Angrolipix* being dead, his Son *Axan* was chosen by the general Consent of the Souldiery, Sultan in his stead, who sent his Ambassadors immediately upon his Election to the Emperor *Diogenes* to conclude a Peace, but some of his Counsellors perswaded him that thereby the *Turk* only sought to gain time till he could increase his Army, insomuch that the Treaty broke off abruptly, though in an ill time, for the Emperor had sent away part of his Army, yet was he spurred on to engage the *Turks* by such of his Predecessors Relations as envied his Greatness, and after Battle joyned, the *Turks* retiring, the Emperor supposed they did it to fetch a Compass, in order to surprize his Camp, and thereupon himself caused a Retreat to be sounded, which *John Ducas* his Predecessor's Brother and his *Cesar*, under whose command a great part of the Army was, perceiving, laid hold of that opportunity to ruin the Emperor by, turned Tail and commanded a Retreat to be sounded, which created so general a fear in the Army, that they fled in all Parts, the Emperor not being able to stay their flight, which unexpected advantage the Sultan perceiving, charged with fury upon the Christians; so that the Emperor fighting with a brave resolution amongst the thickest Squadrons, was at last taken Prisoner, together with several of his
great

great Commanders after several wounds received, yet comforted by the Sultan, and within a while honourably dismiss'd, when during the time of his Captivity *John Ducas* his *Cesar*, *Pfellus* one of the Senators, and other of the Faction had thrust the Empress into a Monastery, and proclaimed *Michael Ducas* her Eldest Son Emperor, and when they heard that the Emperor *Diogenes* was at liberty, they sent out Letters to the Lieutenants of the Provinces to apprehend him. which made him gather a great Power, but being discomfited by *Andronicus* the Eldest Son of *John Ducas*, he was forced to resign his Claim to the Empire; nor were his Enemies content with that, but afterward put out his eyes in such sort that he died miserably. To revenge which by reason of a perpetual League made at his dismissal, the Sultan with great Forces invaded the *Roman* Provinces, whereupon several Battels were fought with various Success; in which the *Cesar* and *Roselius* the Emperor's Lieutenant were taken, but both ransomed, the former by the Emperor, the latter by his Wife.

The Affairs between the Empire and Sultan of *Persia* being at this pass gave *Cuthu Muses* opportunity to strengthen himself, inasmuch that resolving to cast a Hazard for the *Persian* Dominion, he drew his Army into the Field, near the City of *Eres*, to encounter which the Sultan likewise drew forth his; but (fatal to Christendom) just as they were about to give Battle, the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, who as Priest of *Mahomet*, was held in great Esteem amongst the Infidels, came running between either Army, and conjured them not to weaken the Religion of their great Prophet by shedding each others blood, but rather stand to his award; the which they having consented to do, he instantly decreed that the Sultan should quietly enjoy what ever he possessed, and that his Couzen aided by him should

should possess in himself and Posterity whatsoever should thenceforward be gained from the *Christians* upon which the *Christians* were on all sides invaded by the *Turks* and *Sarazens*, their own Divisions in many Parts rendring them easie to be subdued: So that the *Turkish* Empire spreading wide, the *Christians* were grievously oppressed, especially in the Holy Land, which caused them to send a Letter filled with Lamentations, by one *Peter* a Hermit to Pope *Urban* the Second, who taking their sufferings into consideration, called a Council at *Charemont* in *France*, at which were present upwards of three hundred Bishops, besides several Princes; when to stir them up, he caused the Patriarch of *Jerusalem's* Letter, and other Letters to be publicly read; as likewise ordered the Hermit to relate the deplorable state of the *Christians*, suffering under the cruelty of the *Infidels*, which with such Eloquence and feeling commiseration he delivered, that it moved the hearts of all present; nor was the Pope himself wanting to exhort them to stir up the *Christian* Princes to undertake a War for the deliverance of the *Eastern Christians*, which was so effectually ordered, that within a short time an Army of 300000 men were raised, wearing on their breasts red Crosses, under the Lead of *Godfrey* of *Bulloin*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and his two Brothers *Eustace* and *Baldwin*, *Hugh* the *French* King's Brother, *Raymond* and *Robert* Earls of *Flanders*, *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, Son to the Conqueror, *Stephen* *Devalois*, Earl of *Chartiers*, *Ademar* the Pope's Legate, Bishop of *Podie*, with many other honourable Princes and expert Warriours, who passing through part of the *Greek* Empire, with a Promise from *Alexus* the Emperor, that they should be from time to time provided with necessaries, they passed over the *Hellefont* with their Armies, covering the Shores of *Asia* to the great Terror of the *Turks* and *Sarazens*,

who

who notwithstanding to oppose the Tempest of War, which from *Europe* threatned their overthrow ; they gathered huge Forces , and falling upon part of *Peter* the Hermit's Army , which was too far advanced before the rest of the Princes , and consisted of forty thousand men raised in the Territories of the Church, they cut them off , and caused him with the remainder to betake himself to *Civite*, a Town before abandoned by the *Turks*, where he stayed till the Arrival of Duke *Godfry*.

This Loss inspired the *Christians* with rage and desire of revenge, so far that they made a terrible destruction in all places, when in their Progress they had notice that *Cutlu Muses* the most politick Prince of the *Turks* was dead, and had left large Dominions to his Son *Solyman*, of the Proceedings during whose Reign I shall treat in the following Chapter.

C H A P. III.

The Reign of Solyman Son to Cutlu Muses, his Wars with the Christians , their taking of Jerusalem from the Infidels, their various Success in the Holy Land against the Turks, Sarazens, &c.

CUtlu Muses Nephew to *Tangroklix* having as aforesaid accorded with the Sultan by the means of the *Babylonish Caliph* , he by his Aid won many Provinces from the *Christians*, which were now left in the possession of his Son *Solyman*. The *Christian* Army resolved to recover them again if possible, and he as obstinately to defend what he had in possession : So that gathering

gathering huge Forces with which he approach'd *Nicea* where the *Christian* Army lay in Leaguer, Anno 1097. and after on the Fifth of *July* took it, having spent fifty days in the Siege, but were well recompensed by the rich Booties they found in it, and amongst the rest *Solyman's* Wife and two Children, which they sent Prisoners to *Constantinople*; yet the bad Success put not a stop to the advancement of *Solyman* with the whole power of the lesser *Asia*, consisting of 60000 Horse and Foot; So that within a short space the Battle began with great fury on both sides, the *Christians* eager to revenge their Fellows so lately slain, and the *Turks* to secure their Country, made horrible slaughter, but after a long and obstinate fight, where nothing but blood and slaughter appeared, nor nothing but cries and dying groans to be heard, the *Turks* were put to flight; the *Christians* following the Execution, so that 40000 of them fell in the Battel and pursuit. Though *Solyman* flying with the remainder of his broken Army, gave out that himself had Victory on his side, the less to dismay his Subjects; yet so far the Terror of the *Christians* wrought, that the *Infidels* fled into fenced Cities, leaving the Villages desolate; whereupon they besieged *Antioch*, which with little difficulty they subdued, being joyfully received by the *Christians* there dwelling; next *Iconium* and *Heraclea*, two Cities of note surrendred upon Summons. *Solyman* still flying before the Victors, and duly sending Letters to his Couzen *Axan* the *Persian* Sultan for Aid; but he not being able to supply him against such powerful Opponents, the *Christians* recovered all that had been torn from the *Greek* Empire, the which according to their Contract made with the Emperor they restored.

The Princes thus Victorious in *Asia*, called a Council, in which it was decreed that an Oath should be administered as well to the Princes Commanders as to the common

common Soldiers, that none should return till they had won *Jerusalem*, which was joyfully embraced.

And now the *Turks* perceiving they were no ways able to oppose the *Christians* in open fight, endeavoured to surprise and cut off as many as they might by Ambushment, and therefore sent several stragling Troops to face *Antioch*, upon which the *Flemings* sallied and followed hard till within the danger of the Ambush, where they had been inevitably lost, had not the Citizens, who were *Christians*, timely come in to their assistance, and put the *Turks* to flight, and then the Armies drawing forth, marched as far as the River *Orontes* before they met with any resistance, but there the *Turks* had fortified the Bridge and Banks on the other side, but being overwhelmed with showers of English Arrows sent from the Squadron commanded by *Robert Duke of Normandy*, they soon gave ground, and left the Passage open, and so the Princes passing the River, came to the other *Antioch* in *Syria*, of which one *Cassianus* was Governour, to the Relief of which the *Turks* came with an Army of 100000 Horse and Foot, but were repulsed by the *Christians*, and returned with 20000 less than they brought; so that the City on the third day of *June*, 1098. was secretly and contrary to the knowledge of the Governour delivered by one *Phirrus* to Prince *Bohemund of Tarentum*, who furiously entering a dismal slaughter ensued, insomuch that the Streets run with blood. The Governour upon notice of what had hapned fled, but falling into the hand of the *Armenians* that were expelled *Jerusalem*, he was slain.

The loss of *Antioch* being made known to *Corbanus* the *Persian* Sultan's Lievetenant, as he lay before *Edeffa*, he raised the Siege, and with all his Forces marched towards *Antioch*, resolving to put all upon the Hazard of a Battle, against whom the Princes drew out their Strengths

Strengths, leaving the Earl of *Tholous* with a competent number to secure the City from a revolt, by reason the *Turks* still held the Castle, and after a long and doubtful fight overthrowing with such incredible slaughter of his men, that all the Valleys were filled with blood and bodies of the slain, 100000 *Turks* being adjudged to fall in that Battel, and not above 4000 *Christians*, and the next day they took 5000 Cammels with their lading, as also a new Castle built but the year before by the aforesaid Lieutenant. And thus conquering they passed on taking several Cities of note till they came within the view of *Jerusalem*, upon sight of which they shouted so loud, that all the Country resounded with the joyful Acclamations, and with their hands and eyes extended towards Heaven, they called upon the name of Jesus, and many in humility to the place where our Blessed Lord had so often preached his Gospel, fell to the Ground and kissed it with great Affection, making fresh Vows never to leave the City till they had delivered it from the *Infidels*; but their strength was much impaired by reason of a Pestilence that had the Autumn before hapned in the Army; yet in a Council of the Princes and chief Commanders, it was resolved that the Siege should immediately be begun, and carried on with all the vigour imaginable.

The Governour having notice of the *Christians* approach, and what was intended, delayed not to prepare all things that might conduce to the making a strenuous defence, having a little before received a strong recruit of able Soldiers, and a supply of all things necessary; yet the *Christians* after having got what knowledge they could of the state of Affairs within the City, sat down before it on the North, for towards the East and the West the broken Rocks and shattered Hills render it very incommodious. Next the Wall incamped

incamped *Godfry Duke of Lorrain* with his *Germans* and *Lorainers*, near unto him on the right pitched their Tents *Robert Duke of Normandy*, and the Earl of *Flanders*, before the West Gate lay incamped *Tancreed*, and the Earl of *Tholous*. *Bohemund* and *Baldwin* being absent, the one remaining King at *Antioch*, and the other Governour of *Edassa*.

The *Christians* having refreshed themselves, it was concluded amongst the Princes, that the fifth day the Assault should be given, which accordingly was done with such bravery, that the *Turks* were beaten from their Defences and miserably slaughtered by the shot of the Archers; but they wanting scaling Ladders, and the weather being exceeding hot, the retreat was sounded, but being desirous of nothing more than winning the City, five days after they gave it another fierce Assault, which made the Walls to tremble, nothing that Policy or Valour could afford being wanting on the part of the *Christians*, but scarcity of Water afflicting them with drought, and the excessive heat of the Weather frustrated this second Attempt; for the Enemy had either stopped up or poisoned all the Wells about the City, unless that of *Siloe*, whose Water had worked out the Poison, and was become wholesome, but that yielded not half enough to suffice the Army.

During the time that the *Christians* besieged *Jerusalem*, a Fleet of *Genoeses* arrived at *Joppa*, where having notice that a far greater Fleet of the *Egyptian* Sultans lay at *Ascalon* with an intent to relieve the besieged, they after having taken out all things necessary, sunk their Gallies, and marched over land to the Camp, where they became very serviceable in making Engines for Assault, and moving Towers covered with raw Hides to prevent their being fired, one of which they set to the Walls, and from it greatly annoyed the besieged,

sieged, which they perceiving prepared to set it on fire, but the wind favouring the *Christians*, drove it full in the besiegers face, insomuch that the Duke of *Lorrain* with his *German* Foot getting upon the Engine beat the *Turks* and *Sarazens* from the Wall with great slaughter, and leaping thereon fixed his Standard, keeping his Ground, though the Enemies shot flew as thick as Hail, which venturous Attempt so encouraged the rest of the Princes, that they pressed on with great fury, insomuch that a terrible slaughter ensued, the Souldiers in their rage sparing neither Man, Woman, nor Child, which made the most couragious of the *Turks*, *Sarazens*, and *Jews* retire to *Solomon's* Temple; in the Entrance whereof they maintain'd a bloody and obstinate fight, spreading all the Pavement with the bodies of the slain, and bedewing it with streams of blood, and so eager were the *Christians* to charge the *Infidels*, that they for haste thrust one another upon the Enemies Weapons; yet after great slaughter they gave back and betook them to the Vaults on the top of the Temple, from whence they defended themselves till the fury of the *Christians* was over, and a Trumpet sounded to give Quarter, upon which they yielded, and had their Lives spared.

Thus was the Famous City of *Jerusalem* retaken by the *Christians* in 30 days, *Anno* 1099. after it had remained in the hands of the barbarous *Infidels* for the space of 409 years, and so great was the joy conceived by the *Christians*, who inhabited it, and had suffered miserable Persecution under the *Turks*, that they embraced the Souldiers, weeping for gladness, and every where singing praises for their deliverance.

Things being at this pass, the Princes consulted amongst themselves whom to constitute King of the Holy City, and after some deliberation thought none fitter than the valiant Duke of *Normandy*, but he hearing

hearing of his Brothers death declined it, as desirous to return and take possession of his Kingdom of *England*, but at his return found it possessed by his younger Brother *Henry*, who not only deprived him of his Kingdom, but soon after of his Dutchy of *Normandy*: And finally of his life, by putting out his eyes, which many held as a Judgment for his refusing the Scepter of *Jerusalem*.

Upon the Duke's declining, the Princes unanimously chose *Godfrey* of *Boloin*, Duke of *Lorain*, who accepted the honourable and glorious Trust, but at the time of his Inauguration refused to be crowned with a Crown of Gold, saying, that it became not a Christian to wear a Crown of Gold, where Christ the Son of God had for the Salvation of mankind sometime worn a Crown of Thorns; but long he had not enjoyed his new acquired Dignity e'r News was brought that 100000 *Turks*, *Sarazens*, and *Jews* were upon their march to recover the City, against whom the Christian Army advanced and gave them battle with so fearful an overthrow that all the Field and Plains for the space of ten miles were covered with the bodies of the slain, and then passing on won many famous Cities, every where putting the Infidels to the rout, but not long after a great Mortality happening, the Heroick *Godfrey* King of *Jerusalem* died, and was interred in the Church of the Sepulcher of our Saviour on Mount *Calvary*: And *Baldwin* Count of *Edassa* his Brother succeeded him, who with many Victories and Cities taken, much enlarged the Territories of *Jerusalem*; but besieging the City of *Ptolemais*, he was in a Skirmish with those *Turks* wounded, yet took the City, and lived many years after, but the wound being as was supposed given with an imployed weapon, and not perfectly cured, he died thereof in the eighteenth year of his Reign, and was most favourably buried by his Brother, his Sepulcher remaining yet visible.

After him succeeded his Couzen *Baldwin Brugeses*, against whom the *Caliph* of *Egypt* aided by the King of *Damasco*, and the *Turks* came with a great Army, but they returned without effecting any thing; yet not long after *Gazi* the greatest Prince of the *Turks* in the lesser *Asia*, aided by the King of *Damasco*, and *Debeis* King of *Arabia* came against *Antioch* with a great power, and incamped at *Aleppo*, against whom *Roger* Prince of *Antioch* advanced without staying for King *Baldwin*, who was on his march with a great Army, and unadvisedly joyning battel, his Army was overthrown, and himself slain; but King *Baldwin* coming upon the *Turks* grown secure by reason of their new acquired Victory, put them to the rout far and near, filling all the Plains with the bodies of the slain; but within a while after, encountring with *Balac* General of the *Persian* Sultan's Army, he was taken prisoner, and his Army overthrown; but after eighteen Months imprisonment, for the Ransom of 100000 Ducats set at liberty, and afterwards obtained many signal Victories over the *Infidels*; and in his Reign was settled the order of the Knights Templers, *Hugh Paganus* being the first great Master of that Order; but King *Baldwin* the Second being tired and disordered with the many battels, and having received many wounds, after he had married *Margaret* his Eldest Daughter to *Foulk* Duke of *Turin*, *Anjoy* and *Mayn*, fell sick in the thirteenth year of his Reign, Anno 1131. and constituting his Son in Law to succeed him, gave up the Ghost, and was buried in the Temple upon Mount *Calvery* near his Predecessors.

After the death of *Baldwin* *Foulk* was crowned King of *Jerusalem*, viz. on the Sixth of *September*, Anno 1131. by *William* the Patriark; but the Devil envying the spreading of the *Christian* Religion, endeavoured to stir up Division amongst the *Christians*, in the beginning

ning of this King's Reign; for *Pontius* Count of *Tripolis* by force of Arms endeavoured to rend the City and Territories of *Antioch* from the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, and *Hugh* Count of *Joppa* being highly concerned in the Treason for fear of punishment joyned with the *Sarazens* that held the strong City of *Ascalon*, but God prevented the mischief that thereby might have ensued, by taking the former away by the Sword of the *Turks*, and the latter being driven out of *Ascalon*, died in Exile, the very Heathens abhorring a Traytor.

These stirs were no sooner over, but the *Turks* invaded *Antioch* with a powerful Army; but the King coming suddainly upon them, put them to flight with much slaughter, and got in the plundering of their Camp great Riches.

After which *John* the Greek Emperor raised a great power to seize upon *Antioch*, pretending it a part of his Empire; but the Kings of *Europe* interposing, he was content it should be holden by the present Prince the Earl of *Poitou*, he paying him Homage for his Principality; but being a man of a restless Spirit, he soon after came again with a powerful Army, thinking to have admittance into the City, and so to surprize it, but found his expectations frustrate, for the Citizens would not admit him to enter, unless with some few of his Followers, in revenge of which he caused the Suburbs to be sacked, and so returned into *Cilicia*, where hunting a Boar, whilst the furious Beast pressed on the Spear the Emperor held against him, the Emperor's hand pressed upon the point of a poysonous Arrow he had in his Quiver, which entring the flesh, the force of the poyson was such, that in great pain he shortly died, upon which *Emanuel Elexus* his Son was chosen in his stead.

Jerusalem by this means being at peace, the King, Queen, and many great Commanders went without the Walls to take the Air, when there chanced a Hare to

be started, after which the King and those that accompanied him rid, and he forcing his Horse he fell: so that the King's head fell under him, of which mortal bruise he in three days dyed in great torment, viz. on the thirteenth of *November*, Anno 1142. and was buried by his Predecessors, greatly lamented of all good *Christians*, and after him succeeded *Baldwin* his Son, the third of that name, he being about thirteen years of Age, and in his Reign came *Conrade* the Third, Emperor of *Germany* with a powerful Army to the Assistance of the *Christians* in *Syria*, who by the way being opposed by the *Turks* at the River *Meander* gave them battel and overthrew them with the slaughter of 30000 of the Enemy, so that the River for many miles ran blood, and then marching forward, without the least Impeachment, came to *Iconium*, the Chief Seat of the *Turkish* Kings in the lesser *Asia*, which he besieged; but it being strongly fortified and Want increasing, in the Camp a Mortality hap'ned which destroyed so many of the Souldiers, that the Emperor was forced to raise his Siege and to return home. The occasion of this Mortality was said to be occasioned by eating of Meal, which the *Greek* Emperor upon their passing through his Dominions, had caused to be mingled with Lime, as no less envying the success of the *Christians* in *Syria* than the *Turks*; and by such like Treacheries he frustrated the Expedition of *Lewis* the Eighth King of *France*, who after a long Siege lay'd to *Damasco*, without prevailing against it, was forced to return with half his Army, the other half being through want and diseases lost.

But to return to *Baldwin* King of *Jerusalem*, after he had given the *Turks* and *Sarazens* several Overthrows, twice relieving *Pencad*, fortified *Gaza*, and taken all the Cities the *Infidels* held in the Territories of *Jerusalem*, he by his Ambassadors accorded a Marriage with the *Greek* Emperor's Niece, which Emperor in requital thereof,

thereof, desired in Marriage one of the King's near Kinswomen; whereupon he offered him *Mathildas*, an honorable Lady, Sister to the Count of *Tripolis*, but he refusing her, and taking *Mary* the Daughter of *Raymund* Earl of *Antioch*, the Count was greatly displeased, and with certain Ships of War greatly infested the Emperors Territories, and upon the King's coming to *Antioch* to solemnize the Marriage, he was supposed to be poisoned by one *Barac* a Jew, the Courts Physician, for he taking Physick to prevent Winter sickness, immediately fell into a bloody Flux, and afterwards a Consumption, of which he died at *Berinus*, Anno 1163. when he had reigned prosperously 21 years, being generally lamented of his Friends and Enemies, *Noridan* the Turkish General and King of *Damasco* declaring that the world afforded not his Peer.

During these stirs in *Syria*, Sultan *Solyman*, and *Mahomet* his Successor being dead, *Mansal* having upon the overthrow of the Greek Emperor's Army grasped the Scepter of *Persia*, divided his Dominions at his death between his three Sons, viz. to *Clizasthilon* his Eldest he gave *Persia*, with the Towns and Provinces thereunto appertaining; to *Jagupasan* his Second Son he gave *Amasa* and *Ancyra*, with the fruitful Country of *Cappadocia*, and to *Dadun* and his Third Son gave he the Cities of *Cesaria* and *Sabaftia*, which Division caused a greater amongst the Brethren; so that mortal hate ensued, which at its heels brought an Intestine War; the Elder who bore the name of Sultan seeking to destroy and dispossess the two younger, which intestine broyls the Greek *Emanuel* fought to augment, covertly assisting them both, that they by rending the Persian Monarchy might give him an easie means to recover what had been dismembred from his Empire; but finding the Sultan powerful, he supposed it best to side with him openly, which he doing by that means,

Jagupasan was overthrown in a bloody and doubtful battel, and he flying into *Arabia*, had all his Dominions seized, upon which an interview was had between the Sultan and the Emperor, wherein a Peace was concluded between those Potentates, the former promising at his return to take *Casaria* and *Sebastia* from *Dadune*, and deliver them to the Emperor; the former part of this promise he performs, viz. the taking the Cities, but the latter part of restoring them, as he never intended, so he never performed, but forgetting all former curtesies, invaded the Imperial Provinces with Fire and Sword, doing great mischief, taking by storm *Laodicea* in *Phrygia*, upon which the Emperor passed the *Hellespont* with a great Army, and fortified *Dorileum* and *Subleum*, with other strong Holds, to hinder the Inroads of the *Turks*; nevertheless they ceased not to infest his Frontiers, whereupon the Emperor grievously complained of the Sultan's Ingratitude and breach of Promise, and he on the other side of his breach of League, in fortifying the Frontier Towns; whereupon the Emperor raised the whole power of his Empire, resolving to rase *Iconium* marching with his whole Army, *Phrygia*, *Laodicea*, *Chonas*, and other Countries, the *Turks* keeping aloof, as not daring to give him battel; but the Sultan sent his Ambassadors with offers of Peace, but the Emperor driven headlong on as it were by the Destinies, trusting his power, slighted all his Proposals, willing the Ambassadors to tell their Master, he would give him answer under the Walls of *Iconium*; whereupon order was given to the *Turks* to impoyson the Well, and destroy all Corn and Forrage by the way the Emperor should pass, which was accordingly put in Execution; so that by such means many of the Soldiers and some prime Commanders died; and further they fortified the Straights of *Zibrica*, through which the *Christians* were to pass
upon

upon their departure from *Myria-Cephalon*, which are seven narrow Valleys of five miles long each, over which hang Rocks, craggy Clifts and Mountains, that almost touch at the top, yet through these the Emperor would needs pass, though he had notice that the *Turks* had strongly possessed themselves of the said Valleys, having first divided his Army into three Battalia's; but he was no sooner entred, but the *Turks* appeared upon the Rocks and Mountains on every side, sending showers of poysonous Arrows upon the *Imperialists*, themselves remaining as it were secure under the shelter of the Rock, insomuch that e'r he had got through, three parts of his Army were destroyed, filling the Valleys with blood, and the Carcasses of the slain; but in the middle of his distress, it pleased God, to move the Sultan to pity him, and conclude a Peace on condition that the fortified Towns should be rased, and so dismissed him with the remainder of his broken Army; but after repenting that he had suffered his Enemy to escape his hand, permitted such as would to fall upon his Rear, by which means many were slain, yet at last he arrived at *Chovas* in his own Territories, and caused *Subleum* to be rased, but not the other Towns, whereupon the Sultan complained of the *non-performance* of the Articles, but receiving no satisfaction to his mind, he sent *Atapatch* one of his great Captains with an Army of 24,00 Horse and Foot to destroy the Emperor's Territories, even to the Sea-side, and in token thereof to bring an Oar, some of the Sea water, and Sea Sand, which the said Captain undertook, spoyling *Phrygia*, and all the Cities upon the Banks of the River *Meander*, taking a great Spoyl, but in his return he was met withal by *John Bataza*, the Emperor's Nephew, and *Ducase Constantine*, who setting upon him about to pass the *Meander*, destroyed him and all his Army, recovering the rich Booty.

And thus the Emperor *Emanuel* passed over in continual Wars, yet by so doing he gave the *Christians* in *Syria* rest, who after he had sat Emperor for the space of thirty eight years died, leaving *Alexius Comnenus* his Son, a Child of twelve years of Age to Reign in his stead under the protection of the Empress, both of which were barbarously murdered by *Andronicus* the deceased Emperor's Couzen, who proved so inhuman and unmerciful, that one *Isaac Angelus*, whom he designed to murder, caused the Citizens to mutiny against him, and put him to a shameful death himself, being afterwards chosen Emperor in his stead; but he reigned not long, for proving almost as Tyrannical as the former, he was deposed, and his Brother *Alexius* chosen to succeed him, who getting him into his power to make all safe, put out his eyes, and thrust him into a Monastery; so that in these suddain alterations the *Turks* made great spoyl of the Imperial Provinces, greatly dismembring the Empire, sore shaken with intestine broyls: But *Clisalthan* dying gave some Rest, by reason his Sons fell at variance among themselves, as he and his Brothers had done; for he leaving four all grown to Mens estate, viz. *Masul*, *Coppatine*, *Reucratine*, and *Caichofroes*, he divided his Dominions amongst them; but they thinking each other wronged, unless every one had all, would not content themselves with what their Father had allotted them, though Dominions large enough to suffice twenty Kings, raised impious Broils: But after long contention, *Masut* the Elder seized by force all the Dominions in *Persia*, making himself thereby absolute Sultan, where I shall leave him settling his Dominions, and return to *Jerusalem*.

After the death of *Baldwin*, *Almericus* his younger Brother was crowned King, on the seventeenth day of *February*, Anno 1163. who was no sooner settled in his Throne,

Throne, but he warred upon *Dargan* the *Egyptian* Sultan for refusing to pay him the accustomed Tribute, and in a dreadful battel overthrew him, who to stay the pursuit cut the Banks of *Nilus*, and lay'd the Country under water: But whilst he was busie in *Egypt*, *Noridin* the King of *Damasco* making Inrodes upon the *Christians* near *Tripolis* was fought with by *Gilbert Lacy* an english man, then great Master of the Templars, and by him overthrown with the loss of three parts of his Army; but the next year laying Siege to *Arethusa*, the *Christian* Princes gathered their Forces to oppose him, who upon their approach raised his Siege and departed, and whilst they eagerly pursued, he trained them into certain miry Fens, where turning upon them he overthrew their Army with incredible slaughter, and the Captivity of all the Princes commanding, after which Victory he again laying Siege to the City had it yielded to him; but *Almericus* was more successful in *Egypt*, for he so prevailed against the *Turks* and *Sarazens*, that they were obliged to purchase their Peace with the delivery of the City of *Alexandria*, and most of the Prisoners taken by *Noradin* in the late overthrow; and within a short while after the *Turks* infringing the Articles, he aided by the Knights Templars, and other *Christians* lay'd Siege to *Pelusium*, which he after three days setting down before it, won and gave it to the great Master, and the Knights of the Order. In this City they took the Sultan of *Egypt*'s Son, and Nephew, for whose ransom the King received 100000 Ducats, and so he returned to *Jerusalem*, when shortly after *Saracoon* the *Turkish* General in those Parts, under pretence of Friendship, slew the Sultan of *Egypt* in his Tent, and was in his stead proclaimed Sultan, being first *Turk* that ever governed *Egypt*; yet he enjoyed not his ill got Dominion above the space of a year before death surprized him, when in his stead *Sa-*
ladine

ladine his Nephew was crowned Sultan, who desirous to be rid of the *Caliph*, who as Successor to the Impostor *Mahomet* ruled in effect the Kingdom, he upon some disgust with his horseman's Mace, beat his brains out at a blow, and then taking the chief Places of Trust from the *Egyptians*, and giving them to his *Turks*, so well secured himself and his Posterity, that for the revolution of many years that fertile Kingdom remained in subjection to the *Turks*.

Being by the means aforesaid settled in his Kingdom, he raised a great power and entered *Palestine*, and after a short Siege took the City of *Daron* e're *Almericus* could come to relieve it, and now the *Turks* increasing in great numbers, the King of *Jerusalem* was obliged to send to the *Christian* Princes of the West for aid, and in the mean while stoutly defended his Territory, which the former Kings had extended to the uttermost borders of *Arabia Felix*, larger than what ever the *Israelites* possessed; and *Anno* 1173. *Noridon* King of *Damasco* died, the forest Enemy the *Christians* had; but as Joy seldom comes without some taste of sorrow to allay it; so now, for *Almericus* the Sixth famous King of *Jerusalem*, returning from the Siege of *Peanead*, the same year fell into a Fever, which after a short sickness deprived him of life.

Upon the death of *Americus*, his Nephew *Baldwin* was crowned King, who mightily opposed the *Turks*, giving them many fatal overthrows, but was in the flower of his youth cut off by death the sixteenth of *May*, 1185. when as he had reigned twelve Years and some Months.

In this King's stead his Son *Baldwin* the Fifth of that name, and Eighth King of *Jerusalem* was crowned; but long he had not reigned e'r his perfidious Mother to advance her second Husband *Guy* to the Throne, poisoned him; But Heaven left not such wickedness unrevenge

revenged, not long after *Guy* the Ninth and Last King of *Jerusalem* took upon him the Scepter, the *Christians* fell at variance amongst themselves, ready to turn their Swords upon each other, of which *Saladine* the *Egyptian* Sultan taking the advantage, won many Cities, and finally in a bloody battel the *Christian* Army was overthrown, the King and most of his Nobles, together with the great Master of the Templers, were taken Prisoners, which altogether broke the strength of the *Christians* in *Syria*; for hightned with this success, the Sultan with an Army of 200000 Horse and Foot besieged *Jerusalem*, which being naked of men, and wanting a Head, was after fourteen days Siege, and many fierce Assaults delivered up to the Enemy, Anno 1187. after it had been in the hands of the *European Christians* for the space of 100 years, upon condition that such *Christians* as would might still remain there, with free exercise of their Religion, and those that were minded to depart might be permitted so to do, with as much of their Goods as they could carry upon their backs.

And thus the Holy City again fell into the hands of the *Pagans*, who poluted it with their prophane Idolatries and superstitious Worship, through the *Christians* lukewarmness and disrespect of God's Divine Worship, who living in abundance of plenty, forgot the hand that protected them, trusting in their own arms, as the *Israelites* to their cost had done before them.

After *Jerusalem* the Metropolis of the Kingdom was taken, *Antioch* was betrayed by the Patriarck (such little regard had *Christians* of their Fidelity) into the hands of the *Turks*, for a certain sum of Gold, and afterward most of the other Cities either revolted, or were taken by force.

C H A P. IV.

The Second Expedition of the Western Princes for the Recovery of the Holy Land, &c.

Jerusalem and most of the Cities of *Palestine* being lost, as aforesaid, the *European* Potentates were not a little grieved, and to recover the same raised a mighty power; and first that advanced was *Frederick* the *German* Emperor, who setting forth from *Vienna* passed with a puissant Army through *Hungary*, *Bulgaria*, and *Thracia*, and so to *Constantinople*, where he passed over into *Asia*, and entring *Lyconia* gave the *Turks* a great overthrow, after which he besieged and took *Iconium* giving the Spoys thereof to his Soldiers; and from thence passing into *Celicia* in the *Straights*, where the *Greek* Emperor some years before received his fatal overthrow, he had a second conflict with the *Turk*, whom he put to flight with great slaughter, and took the City of *Philomela*, and put the Inhabitants to the sword, for executing his Messengers he sent to treat with them about delivering it peaceably; and then entring *Armenia* the less, he took the City of *Melitene*, and subdued all the Territories round about, and there gave the *Turks* an other fearful overthrow, which Army was no sooner vanquished, but another not inferiour to it appeared under the heading of *Saphadine Saladin* the Sultan's Son, which with an undaunted bravery he charged, and put to rout, with incredible slaughter (but the joy of Victory was soon turned into Mourning) for the good Emperor zealous for the *Christian* Cause, following hard upon the flyers, his Horse floundered in the River *Salephie*, and threw him out of the Saddle, with his right foot hanging in the Stirrup, after which
manner,

manner, e'r he could be relieved, he was drag'd through the River, and hitting by the way on certain Stumps, so bruised, that when he was taken up, he was heard to say no more then, *Lord receive my Soul*, e'r he gave up the Ghost, in the seventieth year of his Age, and of his Reign 38. Anno 1190. Whereupon his Body was carried to the City of *Tire*, and there in the Cathedral with all Solemnity interred.

This Heroick Emperor being dead, his Son *Frederick* Duke of *Suevia*, then in the Army was saluted Emperor and General by the consent of the great Commanders; but now (the Country being purposely destroyed before them) pale Famine began to stare them in the face, yet on they marched, and charging *Dodequin Saladin*, General, sent to oppose their Passage, gave him a great overthrow, and had all the Cities rendered as they passed, till they came to *Ptolomais*, where the power of the *Christians* in *Syria* were incamped, headed by *Guy* late King of *Jerusalem*, who for a great Sum had obtained his Liberty.

Upon the Arrival of *Frederick*, the *Christians* gave a fierce Assault to the City on all Parts, and had taken it by Storm, had not *Saladine* the *Egyptian* Sultan, who lay hovering aloof with his Army, fallen upon their Camp, and thereby in the hottest of the Assault obliged them to draw off to defend the same, and having forced him to retire with the loss of a few men, they returned again to the Siege, expecting the Arrival of *Richard* the First, King of *England*, and *Philip* the Second, King of *France*, who were upon their way with great Forces; but they wintering in the Isle of *Sicilia*, the *French* King out of Envy to the Glory of the *English*, and an old grudge having been formerly about King *Richard*'s refusing the *French* King's Sister, and marrying the Daughter of the King of *Navar*, the *French* King not long after returned home, and withdrew

withdrew his Army to the frustrating the whole design of recovering *Jerusalem*; yet at present he dissembled the matter, and loosing first from the Port of *Mesina*, arrived at *Ptolomais*, where the *Christians* lay still incamped, after whom King *Richard* shortly followed; but sayling by *Cyprus*, his Fleet was dispersed by a Storm, and two of his Ships falling on ground on that Coast, the Islanders spoyled them, and when the rest of the Fleet put in there, they rudely withstood their landing, which so enraged King *Richard*, that he landing by force, seized the Island, and took the King thereof Prisoner, and sent him bound in Chains of Silver to *Syria*.

The King having secured the Island to his use, disanchored and sailed to *Ptolomais*, where he was joyfully received of the *Christian* Princes, upon whose Arrival the City after a hot Assault, and a great breach in the Wall, was surrendred upon condition the Garrison might depart with safety, for which they were likewise to pay a great Ransom to deliver the Holy Cross they had in possession, and a certain number of them to remain as Hostages, that the *Saladine* should deliver such *Christian* Prisoners as he had in his power, whereupon the *Germans* of *Austria* entered first the breach, and advanced the Standard of their Duke upon the Wall, as if by their only valour the City had been gain'd, which so offended King *Richard*, that he caused the Standard to be thrown down, and trampled on, which Indignity the Duke resented so heinously, that to the great hindrance of the Wars in *Syria*, he returned with his Forces into *Austria*; as likewise did the King of *France* with the greatest part of his Army, under pretence he did it for want of health in so hot a Clime, but indeed out of secret Envy to King *Richard*.

Saladin hearing of the lessning of the *Christian* Army,

my, and that there still remained amongst them discontent, refused to pay the money for the Ransom of the Hostages, or deliver up the *Christian* Prisoners; but threatened that if any Extremity was used by the King towards them, he would behead all the *Christian* Prisoners, the which notwithstanding the Hostages were not hurt, he most barbarously performed; in return whereof the King commanded 2500 of the Hostages to be executed in the sight of the *Infidels* Camp, and resolved to give him battel, which he perceiving raised his Camp, and departed along the Sea Coast, ruining the strong Towns, to prevent their falling into the hands of the *Christians*, who leaving *Protoplais* strongly fortified, followed close at his heels, resolving to besiege *Jerusalem*, which he perceiving, and taking such advantage as the time and place would afford, faced about: So that both Armies meeting about Noon, a dreadful conflict began, which continued with great slaughter, especially on the part of the *Turks*, till Evening: at what time the Victory fell to the *Christians*, who had the Execution of the *Infidels* for seven miles; but Winter coming on, they disposed of the Army till Spring, in the Towns that *Saladine* had ruined, repairing and fortifying them stronger than before; but when Spring came, upon must'ring the Army, they were found greatly decreased by diseases and absenting, and at the same time the King found the Duke of *Burgundia*, under whose command the *French* King had left part of his Army, still to cross his purpose, as desirous to return home, having received such Orders privately from the King his Master, who was contrary to his Oath taken at his departure warring upon the *Normans*, then King *Richard's* Subjects, and that others were of the like mind, found himself altogether too weak to besiege *Jerusalem*, and hearing how the *French* King had incited his younger Brother *John* to take up-

on

on him the Government of the Kingdom of *England*, fearing lest while he was warring abroad, he might loose his Kingdom at home, he resolved to make such conditions with the Sultantain, as might be best for the advantage of the *Christians* in *Syria*, and so imbarque for *England*, which the crafty *Infidel* understanding, and finding his power daily to decay, would hearken to no other Proposals, than that the *Christians* should surrender all the Towns they had taken, *Protomais* excepted, and in consideration thereof be suffered to live in Peace, which being concluded on, the King leaving Count *Henry* of *Champaigne* his Lievetenant of *Syria*, imbarked with his fair Queen, who had accompanied him in his tedious Expedition; but by the way being separated from the rest of his Fleet, suffered wrack upon the Coast of *Histria*, and attempting with a small retinue to walk over land in the Habit of a Templar, he was discovered, and by the command of the Duke of *Austria* (in whose Territories, and whom he had disgraced at the Siege of *Protomais*, by throwing down his Standard) taken Prisoner, and by him sold to the Emperor *Henry* for 40000 pounds, who kept him prisoner a year and three months, and then received for his Ransom 150000 pounds. But the Ship that the Queen and her Ladies were in, arrived safe in *England*.

Soon after the King's delivery, news came that *Saladine* the great Sultan was dead, which caused the Princes of *Germany*, animated by Pope *Celestines*, to undertake a third Voyage for the Recovery of *Jerusalem*. The Dukes of *Saxony* and *Austria* commanding in Chief, and with them went many Bishops, who upon their Arrival joyned with the *Christians* they found there, and repaired *Joppa*, the which whilst they were doing, the *Turkish* Army approached, whereupon they drew out, and in pitched battle overthrew them, but

to the Loss of their two Generals, the former dying within four days after the Victory of a Fever, and the latter of the Wounds he had received. And in fine, news coming that *Henry* the Emperour was dead, most of the chief Captains returned home, in hopes to be elected Emperour. After which the Turks took *Joppa* and put all they found in it to the Sword, but at the instance of Pope *Innocent* the third, *Philip* the French King sent 5000 Souldiers, under the leading of *Simon* Count of *Mont-ferat* to joyn the Christians, by whose good conduct things were so ordered that they procured to live at peace in *Tyre* and *Ptolomais*, where I shall leave them and return to the Lesser *Asia*, and relate by what means the *Turks* first Empire in *Persia* was brought to nought.

C H A P. V.

The ruin of the Turks first Kingdom in Asia, by the Tartars.

THE *Turks* having flourished in *Persia* and the Lesser *Asia* by the Space of about 200 years under the Succession of divers Sultans and Kings: The *Tartars* a rough Savage People, dwelling in the cold barren parts of *Asia* Northward, under the leading of *Zingis* their pretended Prophet, having wasted all before them, passed the high Mountain *Caucasus*, and part of the Mountain *Taurus*, came on upon the more fertile part of *Asia*, like a deluge, whose huge numbers were such that in a short time under the leading of *Hoccata*, old *Zingis*'s Son, himself being dead, before they had far proceeded they in a trice overrua *India*, *Persia*, and almost

D

almost all the other Countries of *Asia* none being able to stand before, nay so fearful were they to the Nations that at their Approach without giving battle Kings with their People fled not into fenced Cities but their Contries and amongst the rest *Cursumes* or as the *Greek* will have it *Corfautes*: The *Turkish* Sultan of *Persia* leaving all the Cities naked to be possessed without resistance by the Barbarous Enemy, who in his flight dyed being the last King Linaly defended of the *Selzuccian* Family Reigning in *Persia*, whereupon his Son *Ugnarchan* taking upon him the leading the People that followed his Father seized upon *Babylon*, now called *Bagadet*, supposing it the safest place of refuge, and the better to secure it put to the Sword all the Inhabitants, but kept it not long, for the *Turks* followed hard after him, took the City by Storm, and in it him a Prisoner, expell'd all his People, and so passing on Conquered *Armenia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and many other Countries both in the Great and Lesser *Asia*, formerly possessed by the *Turks*, they by this means being quite driven out of *Persia*, about the year of our Lord, 1202. yet there was found one of the *Selzuccian* Family though not of the Royal Stem, named *Aladine* Son to *Kei Husein* who gathering the scattered *Turks* who flocked to him in great numbers and taking the advantage of the *Greeks* divisions amongst themselves, Seized upon *Cilicia* and the Countries adjoyning and there first at *Sabestia* and Secondly at *Iconium* erected their new Kingdom, which of this *Aladine* is by the *Turks* called the Kindom of the *Aladine* Kings. And by this means the *Turkish* Monarchy in *Persia* was received; the Tartar *Hocata* Stiling himself great King and Lord of all the Eastern Countries.

During this mutation, the *Constantinopolitan* Empire groaned under Intestine broyles, which caused *Alexius* who had deprived his Elder Brother *Isaac* of the Empire

pire for the Settlement thereof and securing himself in his throne to seek after the Life of the young Prince his Brothers Son, who was active in recovering to his Father the Empire that of right appertained unto him, which inforced the Prince to crave aid of *Philip* the Emperor of *Germany*, and the rest of the Princes of that Empire, and so prevailed by means of his Sister, who was Married to the said Emperor that being recommended by him and the *French* King to the Army, then making an other expedition into the Holy Land and by them taken into protection with a Solemn promise of restoring him to his rightful Inheritance: In consideration of which, he obliged himself to pay the *French* a great sum of Money, and to make Restitution to the *Venetians* the losses they sustained in the time of the Emperor *Emanuel* by reason of an *Imbargo* lay'd upon their gallies and seizure of the goods of their March and Recompence the *Italians* by reducing the *Greek* Churches to the obedience of the See of *Rome*, for of those three Nations was mostly this Army composed which consisted of near two hundred thousand Horse and Foot.

Upon these considerations was the Voyage, in order to the Recovery of what was lost in *Syria* put off and all the forces bent against *Constantinople* where the Usurper resided, who held his Brother the rightful Emperour in Prison, having deprived him of his sight, and coming before the port with their huge fleet that almost covered the Ocean, they soon broke the chain and entered with their Galley, upon sight of which those that kept the *Greek* Gallies in the port fled and left them as a prey to the *Latins*, for so they called the Western *Christians*, who not content therewith but resolutely thrusting on shore a hot Skirmish, forc't those that guarded it to retire, and for Safety re-enter the City, which the Usurper perceiving and well weighing he

was no ways able to oppose such an Army, taking with him all his Treasure, and several of his trusty Friends, fled by night, upon which the Citizens to avoid being sacked took the Old Emperor out of Prison; and the Second time proclaimed him Emperor, and immediately opened their gates, and admitted the Army calling them their deliverers; but this their Alacrity lasted not, for the Prince having made known his promises, and the Old Emperor confirmed the same, the People upon Settlement of the Taxes whereby such Sums should be raised as might satisfy the Conquerors, they grew dissatisfied, and raised tumults in several parts of the City; the better to Allay which, and to bring them to a Compliance, the good Emperor desired the *Latins* to retire to their Camp; which was performed, but ere he could prevail with the Citizens to pay the Tax required, he through loss of Sight and other Infirmities died, and had the Prince his Son Saluted Emperor in his Stead, who desirous to perform his Promise with the *Latins*, proceeded where his Father left off, but to no purpose; for when he pressed the raising of the Money before mentioned, they rose in Armes, and flowing like a Torrent to the Palace, threatned to deprive him both of his Life and Empire if he did not desist, which so affrighted him that he sent to the *Latin* General, to enter with a part of his Army privately into the City, at a gate which he would deliver him at a time prefixed; to which Intention of the Emperors one *Alexius Ducas* being privy, Surnamed for his Beetle Brows *Mursusle*, one who by the Emperors Father had been raised from a low condition to the height of Preferment, and thinking no opportunity more fit to aspire to Empire, after which he had a long time thirsted then the present occasion, he gathered the People in tumults and informed them what was intended, and then under a Simile of Friendship came to the young

young Emperour, and seizing upon his Person, caused him to be Imprisoned, and by insinuating himself into the good liking of the Mobile, procured himself to be proclaimed, which was no sooner done but he strangled the Emperor, and attempted to fire the *Venetian Gallies*, which so enraged the *Christians*, that they resolved to lay close Siege to the City, the which after the overthrow of the Usurpers Army under its Walls they did, and firing it in divers Places entered, upon which the Tyrant fled.

The City of *Constantinople* thus taken the 12 of April 1204, or as some will have it 1200, the Citizens Lives at the request of the Religious were spared, but their Wealth became a prey to the Souldiers, so now those that refused to part with a little at the request of their Natural Lord for the support of his Honor and their Safety, were now obliged to part with all. After the Sack of this City most of the Cities of the Empire yeilded, whereupon the Princes assembling chose *Baldwin Earl of Flanders* and *Hanault*, Emperor, and amongst the other Princes was the Empire divided into Provinces, each holding his Principality in fee of the Emperor as their Supream Lord.

Things being at this pass news came that *Theodorus Lascaris* had fortified *Adrianople*, and raising forces for the recovery of the *Greek Empire* which caused the *Latins* under the leading of their Emperor to March against him, who upon news of their Approach retired into the City, which he strongly fortified expecting no less then a Siege, which accordingly was lay'd at what time *John King of Bulgaria*, otherwise called *Mysia* a large Kingdom lying between the great Mountain *Emaus* and *Danubius*, aided by the *Scythians* a Barbarous People, came with a great power to raise the Seige, against whom the Emperor drew out his strengths, but following too eagerly, the *Scythian Horsemen* sent

out

out to Skirmish on purpose to train him into an Ambush, he fell in with the Kings power amongst the Woods and Mountains, where being over wearyed with the tedious pursuit, he was overthrown, himself taken Prisoner, and his Army for the most part Slain, nor sufficed it the Barbarous King to have him in his Power, but after an Inhumane manner cutting off his hands and feet, cast him yet living into a deep Valley, where he miserably perished, and thus died the first most Valiant Emperor of the *Latins* in *Constantinople* e're he had Reigned a full year.

The Emperor *Baldwin* being dead, *Henry* his Brother was chosen in his stead, who to revenge his Brothers Death aided by the *Latin* Princes, Marched against the *Barbarians* (who hightened with their Success were far advanced, wasting with Fire and Sword all they found in their way) and after many notable overthrows given, drove them out of all the places they had taken. During these proceedings *Alexus Ducas* Surnamed *Murzus* falling into the hands of the *Latins* had his Eyes put out, and in that manner being sent to *Constantinople*, was Condemned to be thrown from a high Tower for strangling the young Emperor, which Sentence as a reward of his Treason was put in Execution. And the other *Alexus* commonly called the Usurper, who deprived the Emperor *Isaac* of his Sight and deposed him, hearing that his Son In-Law Reigned in *Adrianople* desirous of his Kingdom, went to the Court of the *Turkish* Sultan, *Jathatines* Reigning in *Iconium* (to whom he during his holding the Imperial Dignity in *Constantinople*, had shewed great kindness during his being exil'd by his Brother *Azatines*) and there so prevailed that the Sultan raised an Army of 20000 Horse and Foot, and with it lay'd seige to *Antioch*, part of the *Adrianopolitan* Kings Dominions, of which he had no sooner notice, but
with

with what Forces he could raise on the sudden, he posted thither, and setting furiously upon the Sultans Army slew him in the Head thereof, which so discouraged the *Turks*, that notwithstanding Victory inclined to their side, they fled and left the City free; In this battle was taken *Alexus* the Author of the War, whom his Son-in-law notwithstanding used with great respect, though contrary to his desert.

In the mean time the ten years Truce between the Christians in *Syria*, and the *Turks* drew to a Conclusion: And *Almericus* King of *Cyprus* and Titular King of *Jerusalem*, refusing to assist them with Provisions and the like, the great Masters of the Knights Templers, and Hospitalers sent to complain thereof to the *Pope*, and to inform him, that there was yet living one *Mary* the Daughter of the Marquess of *Mont-Ferrat*, a Lady of incomparable Beauty, who they as her Tutor had brought up in hope of the Kingdom, and were now ready to bestow her upon such a Person, as he should think worthy of her, together with her Right and Title to the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*; upon which the *Pope* discharged *Almericus* of the Title of King of *Jerusalem*, and gave it to *John Count D' Brenne*, of the *Daulphinat* in *France*. A man of great Fame and Courage, and then in Arms amongst the *Latin* Princes, who upon notice thereof committing his Earldome to the care of his Brother, sailed with a competent number of his followers to *Tyre*, where he espoused the Lady, and not long after the *Pope*, viz. *Pope Innocent* the third, calling in a general Council, so dealt with the Princes and Prelates, that great Forces were again raised for the relief of the *Christians* in the *Holy Land*, who setting sail took many strong Towns and Castles on the Sea-Coast, and at last came with a great Fleet, and an Army by Land before *Damiata*, formerly called *Pelusiun*, situate upon the Bank of *Nile*;

resolving to begin first with *Egypt*, that *Palestine* might follow, where building Towers of Wood upon *Galilee*, they fought with those that kept the Walls at even hand, and after great slaughter on both sides took the Suburbs, wherein they found not only store of Provision, but infinite Riches; being the Merchandise of *Persia*, *Arabia*, *India*, and *Egypt*, that being the chief Scale of Trade in those parts. During this Transaction the *Sultan* lay hovering aloof with his Army, not daring to ingage the *Christians*, and so long he continued that Want began to rage in his Camp; insomuch that he was obliged to send away one part of his Army.

The Infidels thus foiled, though the City still held out, *Corradine*, Sultan of *Damasco* and *Jerusalem* sent his Ambassador to the *Christian* Princes, to sue for Peace, for himself and his Brother the Sultan of *Egypt*: In lieu whereof he promised to restore the Holy-Cross, and all the Towns his Father *Saladine* had taken from the *Christians*, which large offer was thought reasonable by most of the Princes, none opposing it but *Pelagius* the Popes Legate, *John* the late made King of *Jerusalem*, the Masters of the Knights Templers and Hospitallers, and the Duke of *Austria*, they alledging that the War was undertaken generally against the *Infidels*, and that they ought not to desist, till they had brought them under. Whereupon the *Sultan* supposing they would speedily come to *Jerusalem*, caused it to be rased all, except the Tower of *David*, and the holy Sepulcher; which at the instance of the *Christians* there dwelling, he spared, and then with all his people departed to *Damasco*, but soon after the *Christians*, though too late, repented their refusing so advantageous an offer; for by reason of the raw Damps and Vapors that ascended from *Nilus*, a mortal Contagion raged in the Camp, and much weakened it; so that the Sultan taking

king the advantage, indeavoured to put succors into the Town, with such speed that many entered, ere the *Christians* could take the Alarm; but they falling in the Rear cut off a great number that were shut out, lest the *Christians* should have entered Pell-mel with them into the City, and heightened with this success, they marched to the Sultans Camp and dared him to battel, but he not willing to hazard his Kingdom upon a cast, refusing, they assaulted him in his Lodging. In which daring Attempt, the *French* General was lost with many more of note; so that without success they again returned to the Siege: Famine beginning to rage extremely in the City, and soon after its attendant the Plague, of which such a number died, that there were none left to defend it. So that the *Christians* entering, found all the Streets paved with the dead, 70000 of the *Infidels* having perished therein through obstinacy, who upon surrender might have had their Lives and Liberties.

Thus this great City after a years Siege was taken, the Third of *November*, 1221. After which the *Popes* Legate laying Claim to it in the behalf of his Master; though at the beginning of the War the Princes had concluded that all the Cities and Towns taken, should be put into the Possession of the King of *Jerusalem*, a Contest arose between them, insomuch that the King retired to *Prodomais*, and was hardly intreated to return; upon whose return, and the Arrival of the Duke of *Bavaria*, with fresh Forces at the Legates intreaty, a great part of the Army was drawn forth in order, to the besieging the City of *Cair*, which they effected not without hopes of winning it, but being unacquainted with the Country, they incamping in low Ground, the *Egyptians* drew up the Sluces of *Nilus*, and overflowed their Camp, environing it round with Waters, of a prodigious depth: So that many perished therein,

in, and at last were obliged to re-deliver *Damiata* for their Ransom, and so the Sultan relieving them with such necessaries as they wanted, caused them to be Conducted out of *Egypt*: Whereupon most of them returned into their own Country, having first concluded a Peace for eight years with *Coradine*, the Sultan of *Damasco*, which Peace was by the *Infidel* inviolably observed. King *John* upon his return, at the instance of *Honoreus*, gave his Daughter *Yoland* in Marriage, to *Fredrick* King of *Sicilia*, and with her the Title of *Jerusalem*, from whence the succeeding derived their Titles, instiling themselves Kings of *Jerusalem*.

And now *Henry* the second Emperor of *Constantinople* being dead, having Reigned eleven years and some odd days, *Peter* Count of *Ausseres* was made Emperor in his stead; who in revenge to Injuries done to the *Venetians* by *Theodorus*, *Angelius* Prince of *Epirus* besieged him in *Dirrachium*; but upon his feigned Submission a Peace was concluded, when the Emperor too much crediting the perjured Wretch, going into the City slenderly attended to an Entertainment, to which the *Epirot* had invited him, was by his Commandment slain.

Upon the News of this sad disaster, the *Constantinopolitans* elected his Son *Robert* to succeed him, but he lived not long, for having married a beautiful Lady before Contracted to a noble man of *Burgundia*, he in revenge, in the Emperors absence, with a resolute Company broke into the Pallace, and there seizing upon the Empress cut off her Nose, and Ears; and afterward finding her Mother, who had been the cause of the breach, of the aforesaid Contract, threw her into the Sea, and fled into the Woods and Mountains, living as an out-law with the rest of his Companions, which Cruelty and disgrace so grieved the Emperor, that going to *Rome* in his return he died. After him succeed-
ed

ed his Son by the name of *Baldwin* the Second, being the fifth and last Emperor of the *Lattins* in *Constantinople*. For *Lascares* of whom I have before spoken after the overthrow he gave the Sultan mightily increasing his Power, rigged a great many Ships and Siezed upon all the Islands in the *Iconium*, and *Egean Seas*, *Lesbos*, *Chios*, *Samos*, *Rhodes*, &c. And by that means rendered himself so formidable that most Cities before in the possession of the *Lattins* revolted to him, inso-much that without any great resistance he brought his Army to the Gates of *Constantinople*, and then dying left his Son *John Ducas Batazes* to succeed him, who prosecuting the War against the *Lattins* became more terrible then his Father, strengthening himself by a Marriage between *Helena* daughter to *Assan* King of *Bulgaria* and his Son *Theodore*: And after that renewed the League with the Sultain of *Iconium*, who was then buied in Warring against the *Tartars*.

During these passages, *Fredrick* the German Emperor, with great forces passed into *Syria*, but by Reason he did not humble himself to *Gregory* the ninth; the proud Prelate incited thereto by his Strumpet, Fulminated against him with Excommunications, sending his Letters to the *Christians*, not to aid nor receive him upon his Arrival: but they did not regard the imperious Pope, for upon his Landing with his forces at *Prodomas*, he both joyfully and honourably received the Pope. Likewise sent Letters to *Sultan Meladine*, not to come to any agreement with him, but utterly to destroy, but all fell out contrary to his Impious desire, for the Emperor behaved himself so bravely both in Valour and Conduct, that after having given the Enemy divers overthrows, that the *Sultan* fearing the ruin of his Kingdom was at hand; gladly accorded to deliver up the City of *Jerusalem*,

Jerusalem, with all the Land of *Palestine*, together with the Respective Cities taken by the Sultan *Saladine*, and all the *Christian* Prisoners, in lieu of a ten years Peace which was accorded, and the Emperor with his Army coming to the desolate City of *Jerusalem*, and there with great Solemnity on *Easter Day* Anno 1229 was Crowned King, and so having fortified the City by repairing the Wall, and Garrisoned *Nazereth*, *Joppa*, and other strong Cities, and appointed *Reynold* Duke of *Bavaria* his Lieutenant in *Syria*, he returned home, where the Pope had put his Subjects in an uproar, and Seized upon his Kingdom of *Naples*, working him greater troubles then are convenient to be here related, as not pertinent to this History : only note that this was that *Frederick*, that married the King of *Jerusalem's* Daughter, and with her had the Title of King of *Jerusalem* ; which occasioned his setting forward to take possession of that Kingdom.

The Emperor was no sooner returned, but to spight him, and break the ten Years League, he sent *Lewis* King of *Navar* with a great Power into *Syria* to invade the *Sultans* Dominions ; but his Expedition was no ways prosperous, joyning Battle with the *Sultans* Power, he and the rest of the *Christians* were overthrown, which occasioned the loss of *Jerusalem*, soon after taken and rased by the *Turks*, all the Souls that were found therein being put to the Sword, and with Impious and Sacrilegious hands demolished the Sepulchre of our Blessed Saviour which all other Nations had with a Sacred reverence forbore to deface.

The News of the great overthrow and the loss of *Jerusalem*, coming to the Ears of the *Christian* Princes of the West, greatly troubled them, but most of all the Emperor and *Lewis* the Ninth King of *France*:

Infomach

Infomuch that the latter gathering a great Power Anno 1248. set Sail and came to the Ile of *Cyprus* and there wintered, by reason of the far advancement of the Season, during which time he received an Embassador from the Master of the Templars, to inform him that there was no need of his coming by reason the Sultan offered honourable terms, but the King understanding that it was a contrivance between them that the Templars might have the greater power, sent back to command him under pain of forfeiting his head that he should receive no more Embassadors from the Sultan, and Early in the Spring weighing Anchor within five or six days sail he fell in with the Coast of *Egypt*, and with all his fleet sailing up the River *Nile* came before *Damiata*, to oppose whose landing the Governour with what forces he could draw out stood upon the banks, but in vain they resisted, for the *French-men* manning out their boats thrust on shore and put them to flight, leaving the Governour and 500 of their Companions dead upon the Strand, and perceiving the *Christians* were preparing to besiege the City the former Miseries it had indured coming afresh into their mind, they in the dead of night set every man his house on fire and fled, which the *Christians* perceiving they entered the City, and extinguished the flames, saving so much as was possible, and there found abundance of Riches.

The Sultan upon notice of the loss of this strong City was greatly dismayed: Infomuch that he sent to the *French King* to offer him several places in *Palestine*, never yet in the possession of the *Christians*, but his offer was rejected and *Alexandria* demanded by the Earl of *Arthois* the Kings Brother.

During these stirs *Meladine* the Sultan died, and his Brother *Melesh-Salla* or *Melexala* Succeeded him, with whom joyned the Sultan of *Damasco*, to oppose the
Christians

Christians, and with his whole Power drew near to *Damiata*, where the *Christian* Army lay incamped; who Sallying out of their Trenches beat him back, but Sallying the next day, and following the Enemy too far many of them were slain, and the rest were forced to retire.

Long they were not incamped, before a private Messenger came to the King from the Governour of *Cairo*, to inform him that if he would draw near to the Walls of that great City, he would put it into his hands; the said Governour appearing to be much inclinable to the *Christian* Religion: Or, as some will have it, out of Revenge for the Death of his Brother slain by the Sultans Command. Upon which the King assembled all his Power, and marched till he came to an Arm of *Nilus*, with part of his Army, under the Command of his Brother *Robert* Earl of *Arthois* passing at a Foard, discomfited the *Turks*, that defended the further Bank; but contrary to the advice of the renowned Earl, and the Master of the Templers following the Chase e'r the other part of the Army arrived, he was incompassed by the Sultans power, that lay in Ambush; that not above two Templers, one Hospitaller, and a common Souldier escaped to tell the heavy News.

This News was seconded, with that of the Imprisonment of the Governour of *Cairo*; which altogether disappointed the King of his purpose. Whereupon he passed the River at the same Foard his Brother had done, and beheld the sad Spectacle of the mingled Carcasses of the slain, each having his Head and Hands cut off, the Sultan the better to encourage his Men, having promised rewards to such as could bring them either, but long he had not viewed them, before the Sultan came upon him with all his Power, being near ten to one; and after a sharp Incounter overthrew him,
cutting

cutting the greatest part of his Army in pieces, and amongst the rest the Flower of the *French Nobility*: The King and some few of the Nobility were taken Prisoners, and for their Ransom delivered up the City of *Damiata*, and payed 8000 pound in Gold, with a promise of a ten years Peace, but whilst the Sultan was accompanying him to *Damiata*, two desperate Ruffians assassinated him in the presence of his Nobility, instigated thereto by one *Turquiminius* a *Mamaluque* or Slave, got himself proclaimed Sultan, renouncing the League that *Melech-Sala* had made, and made another in his own Name, not much different from the former; but performed not above the half part, but in fine, after the surrender of *Damiata*, which the new Sultan caused to be rased, the King with all his Retinue were Conducted to *Ptolomais*, and at the end of six years, from his setting out sailing from thence arrived in his own Kingdom, having lost 60000 of his Subjects in that expedition.

The Sultan being as aforesaid Traiterously murdered, the *Mamaluques* or Slaves, bought by the Sultans of divers Merchants, to serve them in their Wars: Put an end to the *Turkish Kingdom in Egypt*, by deposing all such as bare Offices, or had places of trust, advancing those of their own order, continually choosing their Sultans from amongst themselves, flourishing in great Renown for the space of 267 years, at the end of which they were totally subdued by *Selymus* the victorious Emperor of the *Turks*, viz. Anno 1517. and the Kingdom of *Egypt* with all *Syria*, and the Land *Palestine*, as they are at this day annexed to the *Turkish Empire*, as shall be in process of this History related. Whilst these Actions passed *John Duccas*, Alias, *Baitazes* dyed, having Reigned successfully for the space of thirty three years, after whom succeeded *Theodorus* his Son, who renewed the League his Father had made with the
Jathanies;

Jathanites, the *Turkish* Sultan in the lesser *Asia*, after which with a puissant Army, he passed the *Straights* of *Hellispont* to appease the troubles raised in *Macedonia*, and *Theffalia* by the King of *Bulgaria* his Father in Law, and the Despot of *Theffalia*, during which one *Michael Paleologus* a great Courtier fled to the *Turkish* Sultan, under pretence that he doubted his Life, by reason of those Enemies he had at Court, that inveighed against him; and at his coming to *Iconium*, found the Sultan leavying an Army to oppose them that spoiled his Country, of whom he was kindly received, and the *Greeks* in his Service reduced under his Command; and so marching against the Enemy a dreadful Fight began, the *Turks* charging with great Courage, putting the Right-wing to flight, and disordering their main Battalion: So that Victory began to declare herself in favour of them, when one of the Sultans chief Commanders out of some former grudge, fell with the Squadron of *Persian* Horse under his Command to the Enemy, and by that means turned the Scale of War, so that the *Turks*, who even now were Conquerors fled for their Lives; nor durst the Sultan stay in his own Country, but fled to *Constantinople*, where of the Emperor he was kindly received, and aided with what Force he could spare, under the leading of an experienced Captain, for which kindness he gave the Emperor the City of *Laodicea*.

Not long after this, was *Paleologus* received into Favour, and restored to his Dignity, upon his solemnly swearing to be true and Loyal to him and his Sons, which had not long been done, e'r the Emperor fell sick and dyed, Reigning only three years, and in his stead was Crowned his Son *John*, a Child of six years old, who was by the Emperors last Will bequeathed to the Tutorage of *Arsenius* the Patriarch, and *George Muzala*, the latter of which being of mean Birth, hav-

ing

having raised for his Vertues, and good parts by the departed Emperor, which caused him to be greatly envied by the Courtiers; whereupon he assembling together, desired to be rid of his Charge, but every one seeming unwilling to undertake it, he still continued with much Integrity; but several having conspired against him, of which *Paleologus* was Chief, they during the Obsequies of the defunct Emperor slew him, and several that they supposed Favoured him, even at the Altar; and in a short time *Paleologus* usurped the Empire, not in the least regarding his former Oath.

About this time *Mango*, the great Cham of *Tartary* stirred thereto by *Antonius* the *Armenian* King, of whom he had received the *Christian* Religion: Sent his Brother *Haalon* with a powerful Army against the *Turks*, and *Sarazens* in *Syria*, and the Land of *Palestine*, who in the space of six Months over-run all *Persia*, with the Countries adjoyning, and came at length into *Syria*, and took the great City *Babylon* at that time, commanded by the *Caliph*, putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword, enriching his Soldiers with the spoil, and passing from thence through *Mesopotamia*, took the City of *Rhoais*, and there being supplied with fifty two Horse and Foot entering *Syria*, he rased *Aleppo* and other strong Towns, and soon after won *Damasco*; when as the Sultan with his Wife and Children came and fell before him, desiring him to spare his Country, but in vain, for he wasted all before him; but being about to pass on to *Jerusalem*, News was brought him of his Brothers death, upon which he returned home; yet at his departure for the good Will he bore the *Christians*, he left his Son *Abiga* with 20000 Horse to aid them in Wars, but *Abiga* hearing of his Fathers Troubles about his Establishment in the Empire, departed with 10000 of the 20000 leaving the rest under the Command of *Guirboca* a valiant Cap-

tain, who by some affronts put upon him by the *Christians* became their mortal Enemy, yet letted not give battle to the Sultans Army of ten times to the number, and not being aided by the *Christians*, was overthrown, wherein himself fighting courageously with greater part of his small Army were slain; and thereupon *Antioch*, and most of the Towns holden by the *Christians*, were taken by the Sultan *Bandocador*.

By this time the *Tartars* warring in the lesser *Asia*, had driven *Jathanites* out of all his Dominions, whereupon he fled to the *Greek* Emperor for aid, or Refuge; but ingrateful as he was, not regarding the Kindness he had received at his Hands, when he fled from *Theodorus* the Emperor, he committed him Prisoner at large to the City of *Enus* in *Thrace*, appointing several to watch him so narrowly that he should not escape.

When *Paleologus* had Reigned at *Nice* two years, he sent *Alexus Stregopulus* against the Despot of *Epirus*; who raised Tumults in the *West*, this man in his passage with a small Army, by the Treachery of the *Greeks* dwelling in *Constantinople*, found means to surprize that City, and again annex it to the *Greek* Empire: After it had been in the hands of the *Latines* fifty eight years, for which service *Alexus* triumphed in Purple Robes, wearing a Crown of Gold, commanded that for one year following, his Name next to his should be mentioned in all publick Prayer, Psalms and Hymns.

But now the Son of *Theodorus*, whose Right this Emperor had usurped, coming to years of Discretion, it bred much jealousy in him, that lest any discontented Person espousing his Quarrel, should pluck the Crown from off his Head, and place it where it ought to rest: Whereupon to render him unfit for Government, he like a barbarous Wretch deprived him of his sight, which his Aunt Queen of *Bulgaria*, no sooner understood,

derstood, but with many Arguments stirred up her Husband, to make War upon the Usurper; and at the same time being solicited by the Sultan *Jathanites* to deliver him from his Confinement; he with a great Power of *Scythians*, his own Subjects, entered the Empire, wasting all before him with Fire and Sword, hoping to surprize the Emperor in his return from his Expedition against the Despot of *Servia*; but failing of him, he turned to *Anus*, and took thence the Sultan the Citizens gladly delivering him to save their Lives, and contenting himself with the spoil of *Thracia*, he passed over *Ister*, and returned into his own Country.

Jathanites, the Sultan, being set at Liberty by the King of *Bulgaria*, for Grief of his great loss dyed, not leaving any Dominions to his Children: Yet not long after *Gazan* the great Cham of *Tartary*, as his Vassals, two of his Kinsmen of the *Zelzuccian* Family, viz. *Mesot* and *Rei-Cubades*, they in acknowledgment thereof, paying him a yearly Tribute, placed them in part of his Dominions; and thus fell the *Turkish* Empire in the lesser *Asia*, being Rent in pieces by the *Tartars*, who afterward seized upon a great part of the *Greek* Empire; they and the Fugitive *Turks* together, possessing themselves of the Countries from *Pontus* and *Galatia*, unto the *Lycian* and *Carian* Seas, and the River *Eurymedon*.

Anno 1270. King *Lewis* of *France*, aided by *Henry* the Third of *England* and divers others resolved, upon a second Expedition into the *Holy-Land*; the years Truce being expired, he set out from the Haven of *Marseilles*, with a great Fleet of Ships, and coming before *Carthage*, he found in the Port a great number of the Enemies Ships which he seized, and after some light Skirmishes, with those that kept the shoar, Land- ed his Men, and laid close Siege to the City, which after many desperate, though unsuccessful Sallies of the

besieged surrendered upon Condition to depart.

Carthage being won, the King laid Siege to *Tunis*, to relieve which the King of *Fez* with a great Army of the *Moors* came down, but was quickly forced to retire with 10000 less then he brought; but this Siege continuing long, a mortal Pestilence happen'd in the Army, the Kings youngest Son dyed, and in the end himself with many of his prime Nobility, which greatly encouraged the *Moors*; but their joy lasted not long, for soon after came thither Prince *Edward*, *Henry* the Third King of *Englands* eldest Son, with sixteen Ships fraught with Valiant *English* Soldiers, as also the King of *Cicilia*, *Navar*, and *Aragon* with great Forces, upon which the *Morish* King making many large offers for Peace, it was granted in the Name of all the Princes, on Condition that he should pay a yearly Tribute of 40000 Crowns to the King of *Scicily*, and to suffer the *Christian* Religion, freely to be Exercised throughout his Dominions, in all its particulars; which Articles being concluded on and ratified, though contrary to the mind of Prince *Edward*, they weighed Anchor, and stood for the Isle of *Scicily*, intending there to Winter, and the next Spring to pass into *Syria*: But coming into the Bay, the Princes were no sooner got on shoar, but a terrible Storm arose, that most of the Fleet were broken to pieces, only of Prince *Edward*'s Fleet not one Ship perished in this wrack, a great part of the Mariners and Soldiers were drowned, and the Plague still raging amongst them in such sort, that the *French* Queen, the King of *Navar*, and divers others of great Rank dyed; which so discourag'd *Philip* the *French* King, that he returned into *France*, without Attempting any thing further, and with him all the rest (Prince *Edward* his *English* excepted) returned into their Respective Countries; but the Prince kept on his way till he arrived at *Protopolis*,

is, and was received by the *Christians* with great joy, where having rested himself for a while, and inquired into the nature of the Country, he with 6 or 7000 of his *English*, took *Nazareth*, and upon his return overthrew a great Army of *Sarazens*, that supposed to have intrapped him, and at another time overthrew them with great Slaughter, near *Cakhom*, a Village about 40 Miles from *Protopmais*: And so succesfull was he in all his undertakings, that the *Infidels* extreemly dreaded him; Insomuch that the Admiral of *Joppa*, feigned himself to be converted to the *Christian* Religion, sent one of his Servants to commune with the Prince, about diverse Matters, who being admitted in Private, and seeming as if he would draw a letter out of his Bosom, with an Imposioned knife, supposed to have Stabbed the Prince into the Belly, but he being aware received the Wound on his Arm, and with his foot Struck the Villain down, and then wresting from him the knife Stabbed him, during which bustle the Guards entered, and cut him in Pieces as he lay on the Ground. This Villain the Sultan sent to excuse, Swearing by *Mahomet* it was not done with his privity, nor consent, but however such was the nature of the poison, that it was not cured without great difficulty.

The Prince having a long time in vain, expected the coming of the other *Christian* Princes, thought good to return, which accordingly he did, having first concluded a Peace with the Sultan, and shortly after his return, his Father *Henry* dying, he was Crowned King of *England*, &c.

Anno 1273, *Rodulph* having been advanc'd by the Pope to the *German* Empire, upon promise to pass into the *Holy-land*, and not caring himself for so tedious a Voyage, sent his Son *Henry* Prince of *Mecceleburg*, who arriving at *Protopmais*, with a great Power, wasted the

Territories of *Damasco* with fire and Sword, taking many Towns, but at length being intercepted by the *Mamaluks*, he was taken Prisoner, and a great part of his Army slain, in which state he with one Servant remained 26 years, no Ransom being accepted for his deliverance, at which time a Runagado *German*, coming to the Sultan, set him at Liberty, and sent him, who upon his return, was not known to his nearest Relations, who supposed him long before silent in his Grave, and indeed he lived not long after his return.

The Princes of the West growing weary of these tedious expeditions, the *Infidels* thereby encouraged, under the leading of *Alphix* or *Elpis* their Sultan, rased *Tripolis*, *Sidon* and *Berythus*, putting most of the Inhabitants to the Sword, the *Christians* having now nothing left but the strong City *Ptolomais*; and yet they were at variance amongst themselves, some for the Government of the City, and some for the title of King of *Jerusalem*: During the contest Sultan *Arapius* sent his Son to besiege *Ptolomais*, who in vain assaulting it, many times made large offers, if he might have it delivered; but they as little prevailed, whereupon his Father being dead and himself chosen Sultan, he drew down before it 15000 Horse and Foot, assaulting it on every side, filling up the ditches with his Multitude, but the *Christians* from the Wall, and by sallying, killed so many of the *Infidels*, that they were forced to retire to their trenches, yet in the Skirmish, *Peter* Grand Master of the *Templars*, being Shot with a Poison Arrow, died within three days, and with him all the courage of the besieged, for from that time, such as could make their escape by Sea departed, so that the City being in the end left destitute of Defendants, was by the Sultan taken and rased, all such as were found therein, being put to the Sword, so that the *Christians* were
utterly

utterly rooted out of *Syria*, this being the last City which had remained in the hands of the *Christians* for upwards of 100 years, and was lost *Anno* 1291, just 192 years after the winning of *Jerusalem* by Duke *Godfrey*.

And now the *Christian* Princes despairing to recover what they had lost, *Cassanes* the *Tartarian* Prince moved thereto by his Wife and her Father the King of *Armenia*, undertook the Enterprize, and with a powerfull Army entered *Syria*, wasting all before him, when not far from the Mountain *Amanus*, he met with *Mel-senoser*, the Sultan of *Egypt*'s Lievtenant, and put him to flight with the loss of 40000 of his Souldiers, and drave him quite out of *Syria*, sending *Molais* one of his Captains to pursue him over the desert Sands, to the Confines of *Egypt*; then taking in all the Cities as he passed, and in the City of *Hama* lighting upon the Sultans treasure, he divided it amongst his Souldiers, and having fortified *Jerusalem* and *Damasco*, he purposed in the Spring to have passed into *Egypt*, and to have destroyed the Country; but in the mean time, receiving news that great tumults were risen in *Persia*, his new acquired Empire, he with part of his Army departed to allay them, leaving *Capcapus* Governour of *Damasco*, and his great Captain *Molais* of *Jerusalem*, with order to send Embassadors to the Princes of the West; but they being Imbroyled amongst themselves, nothing could be obtained, so that no aids coming from the *Tartar*, nor King of *Armenia*, the Towns were as easily recovered by the *Egyptian* Sultan, as they had been taken from him by the *Tartarian* Cham. And thus taking my leave of *Syria* for the present, I shall return into the lesser *Asia*, where I find *Mesoot* and *Rei-Cubades*, the two Tributary *Turkish* Princes dead, without doing a any thing worthy of note, of which the latter left a Son named *Aladan*, who likewise

paying Tribute, held joyntly the Kingdom, that were before possessed by his Father and Uncle. This *Aladine* the last of the *Selzuccian* Family dying without issue, one *Sahib* his chief Councillour and then a man of great Authority, aspired unto the Kingdom, but being risen from a mean estate, he was highly envied by the Nobility, they casting off all respect from him, by force divided the Kingdom amongst themselves, every one seizing the Province he could best light on; so that *Sahib* who was first in possession, lost all, no part remaining as his Lot, so that they turned it into a perfect Anarchy, of which the greatest share fell to *Caraman Alusirius*, who strongest took *Iconium*, with part of *Cilicia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pamphilia*, *Caria*, and *Phrygia*; and of him descended the *Caramanian* Kings, who in the rise of the *Othoman* Empire, put the Turks so often to the Foil: The next to him was *Saruchan*, who possessed himself of the greatest part of *Lydia*, and some other Countries adjoining; *Troas*, *Phrygia*, and part of *Mysia*, fell to *Calumus* and his Son *Carasius*; the remaining part of *Mysia*, and part of *Lydia*, was seized by *Aidin*; part of *Pontus*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Pontica Castomonia*, *Synope*, and others near to the *Euxine* Sea, and Country of *Paphlagonia*, fell into the hands of the Sons of *Omer*, or as the *Greeks* call them *Amar*, of whom the Country took not their names, as did the former of these that possessed them, but is commonly called *Bolli*, so named of the *Metropolis*, as also was *Mendesia*, or as some will have it *Menetia*, a Country in the Lesser *Asia*.

These and divers others, were the divisions of the *Turkish* Empire in *Persia*, and the Lesser *Asia*, which Anarchy caused their Subjection, and utter subversion, as in the Succeeding part of this History, will at large appear.

During this confusion amongst the rest of the great
Captains,

Captains, there happened one *Othoman*, of the *Oguzian* Family, who had been raised from a low estate, by Sultan *Aladine*, yet by reason he was not of the *Selzuccian* Family, they made little account of him, not permitting him to share with them in their division, though by what justice is uncertain; all of them feared his rising fortune, and strove what in them lay, to hinder, but in vain, for the Destinies so ordering it, he in a short time became the Founder of the *Othoman* Empire, as in the Perusal of his Life and Actions will appear.

C H A P. VI.

*The Rise of the Powerfull Empire of the Turks,
under Othoman its first Founder, with his
Life and Actions.*

THAT Empires and Kingdoms have their Limitation from the Sovereign Creator and Disposer of all things, it is undeniably evident, by the Sundry Mutations that have been in all Ages of the World, for nothing can be assured of long continuance, though never so great and powerful. How are the great Monarchies of the *Persians*, *Medians*, *Babylonians*, *Chaldeans*, *Romans*, and the like, dwindled away into nothing, no more then a bare Relation, of their Names and Greatness remaining to testify the mighty actions they performed, when at their becks were half three parts of Mankind. And indeed no less famous was the *Turkish* Empire in *Persia*, and the Lesser *Asia*, till broken and dismembred, by the violent intrusion of the *Tartars*, a
Savage

Savage People bursting from the Frozen-North, to the Terror and Subversion of the greatest part of *Asia*, and *Africa*; but now under the *Turkish* Scepter, as shall by the subsequent Discourse appear.

During the time that the *Tartars* overwhelmed the *Turkish* Dominions in *Asia*, *Solyman*, of the *Oguzian* Family, Reigning in the lesser *Asia*; and seeing his Country-man the Sultan of *Persia*, driven from all his Possessions, thought it not safe for him, of far Inferior force, to abide the Sorm; but flying with such People as would follow him, after long wandring, the Tempest being near over, and he desiring to return home, as he was about to pass the *Danube*, was carried away by the Stream, and drowned, leaving behind him four Sons, viz. *Sencur*, *Teken*, *Jundogdis*, and *Ertogrul*, of some called *Orthobules*, who was the Father of *Orthoman*. This *Ertogrul* after the Death of his Father, having notice that *Aladine* the Sultan had again settled himself in the lesser *Asia*: Sent Messengers to him, to desire him, that he and the rest of his poor followers, who were Herdsmen driving Flocks still before them as they travelled, might inhabit in some Corner of his Country. The Sultan not unmindful of the state of poor Exiles, it having so lately been his own Case, appointed them a Village called *Suguta*, lying between the Castle *Belezuga*, and Mount *Tmolus* in the greater *Phrygia*; during whose residence there with his small Train, the Sultan had many Conflicts with the *Tartars*, whose Power by this time was in its Wain; and being hard put to it in one Battle near the said Village, *Ertogrul* with four hundred of his Herdsmen unexpectedly came to his Assistance, and behaved himself so valiantly, that the *Tartars* were put to flight, for which the Sultan honoured him with a rich Cloak, and began highly to prize his Valour; insomuch that he enlarged his Territories, making him a petty Lord, which

Lordship

Lordship with great Repute, he held during the Reign of the Sultan, doing many notable Services, as taking the Castle of *Cara-Chisar* from the *Christians*, who by their many Injuries had exasperated the Sultan; but after the Sultans Death, those that succeeded, being Tributaries to the *Tartars*, till such time as the Kingdom was Anachised, he lived quietly at home; during which time many conceived great hopes of his younger Son *Othoman*, called by some *Osman Gazi*, or *Osman* the Warlike, by reason of the great delight he had in Arms when he was a Child, and when grown up, to discourse and Argue with the Commanders and Governours, of whom he had the general Esteem of an active Youth, designed for great Atchievements, as it afterward fell out.

One day *Othoman* going to visit the Governour of *Eski-Chisar*, lately taken from the *Christians* by his Father: He fell in Love by the way with a beautiful Damofel, named *Malhatun*, and sent to request her in Marriage, but she seeming something averse, excusing her self that she was of too mean a Parentage, and not a fitting Match for him, that was so nobly descended; he as she conceived, designing rather to Debauch her, then make her his Wife; but this modest repulse making him more and more desire her, he in other Discourses declared his Affections to the aforesaid Governour, who seeming little to take notice thereof, begun to be inflamed with the Love of the Damofel unseen, by the lively Description *Othoman* had given of her rare Perfection, which *Othoman* well perceiving, and fearful that he should inforce her to his Lust, having great Power in that Country; he sent her Parents notice thereof, who tender of their Daughters Honour, sent her away secretly, the which upon Knowledge it was done by *Othomans* means, so enraged the Governour, that he vowed Revenge, and sent after him a strong Party

to

to seize him at the Castle of *In-Ungi*, whither he knew he was gone, where being demanded of the Captain of that Castle, after some Debate those that kept it resolved to defend him; but he not greatly trusting them (as knowing the Governours Power in those parts) with several of his trusty Friends, he broke through the *Leagures*, killing some, and dispersing the rest; yet other Forces coming to their Assistance, they followed him into his Fathers Territories, where his Danger was no sooner known, but all the Youths Armed, and setting upon the Governours Soldiers, they slew many, took some Prisoners, and put the rest to flight: So that *Othoman* began to be feared of such as hated him.

Ertogrul being spent with Age and Infirmary, created by lying in the Field, and watching in Camps, dyed in the ninety third year of his Age, *Anno* 1289. Having since the Death of *Solyman* his Father, governed the *Oguzian* Family fifty two years, who now being dead, the Heads of the Family assembled to chuse another Lord, and thereupon they pitched upon *Dunder*, *Ertogrul's* Brother, but he by reason of his great Age refusing the Honour; they with one Consent elected *Othoman*, saluting him by the Name of *Beg* or Lord, he being by this means become Lord of the same Family. The Herdsmen that fed their Flocks upon the Mountains complained to him, of outrages done them in passing and repassing by the Garrison or Soldiers of the Castle of *Einégiol*, they being thereto incited by their Captain, with which he being not a little grieved, sent to the Captain of *Bilezuga* his Friend, another Castle not far distant from the former, to permit his People to shelter and refresh themselves therein, during their passing and repassing to the Mountains, to which in Relation to the *Turkish* Women he Consented, but not to permit the Men for Fear of a surprize: So that they went another way, avoiding the former Castle, but

Othoman

Othoman still studying Revenge for the Injuries done to his People; whereupon gathering what Force he could, he passed to the Mountains, in hopes to surprize it; but the Captain having notice thereof came out to meet him, laying an Ambush in hopes to intrap him, of which he being aware came not into it, but gave the Captain battle upon plain Ground; and after some slaughter on both side put him to flight, and passing on took the Castle of *Chalce* not far from *Einegiol* by surprize, putting all he found therein to the Sword, of which outrage great Complaint was made to the Governour of *Cara-Chisar*, and great Forces raised to apprehend him, and destroy the *Oguzian* Family, who as they said coming not long before, poor Herdsmen and sheltered out of Pity, began to Usurp over the rightful Inhabitants.

Against these Preparations *Othoman* provided the best he could, and near to Mount *Tmolus*, gave Battle to *Calanus*, Brother to the Governour of *Cara-Chisar*, who overthrown in the Battle lost his Brother *Saragatine*, and many other Friends; when shortly after Sultan *Aladine* the last Sultan of *Iconium* understanding what had happened, and that *Othoman* might stand him in stead against the *Christians*, gave him the City of *Paleopolis*, with all the Territories thereunto belonging: So by this means he became of a poor Herdsman, a formidable Governour, when not unmindful upon what Account such a Favour was bestowed upon him, he entred into Consultation with his Brother *Fundus*, how he might best get away, but he finding himself too weak, and by that means Considering he should lay himself open to the Fury of the *Tartar*, he resolved to make Peace with such as would accord thereto, and wait his better Fortune; for there wanted not some of the *Selzuccian* Family, that greatly envied his Aspiring, yet incouraged by the Sultan,

Sultan, he took the strong Castle of *Cara-Chisar* the residence of his Enemy, and so settled his Affairs, winning upon his People with kind Speeches and bounty, that great numbers of the *Turks* daily resorted to him.

Now during the prosperous Proceedings of *Othoman*, there happened a Quarrel between the two *Christian* Captains of *Belezuga*, and *Cupri-Chisar*, upon which the former doubting his strength, and yet desirous of Revenge solicited *Othoman* for aid, who in lieu of some kindnesses received, came to his Assistance with 100 *Turks*; by whose Valour he overthrew his Adversary, took his Castle, and put him to the Sword, which so swelled the Captain with Pride that he gave *Othoman* many rich Gifts, as likewise to his Soldiers; but what vexed them more then the Gifts pleased them, he gave them his Hand to kiss; and above all, *Othoman* who adviced with his Cozen *Dunder* his Uncles Son, what Revenge was best to be taken, to humble the Captains insolence; but seeming to dissuade him from any such Attempt, and to be the Captains Friend, lest he should relate his Intentions, and that redound to his prejudice, resolving to make all; he at an advantage shot his Cozen through with an Arrow, and hid him in the Sand.

Long it was not after this Transaction, e'r he was invited by one *Michael Cossi* Captain of *Hirmen Caia*, to the Marriage of his Daughter, where according to the Custom of the Country, making large Presents; the rest of Captains began to mistrust his greatness, so that the Captain of *Belezuga* resolved to prevent it with his Death, and therefore the better to have him within his Power, he invited him to his Wedding at a certain day, making *Cossi* privy to his Design: And a little before the appointed time, sent *Cossi* to fetch him, who was as ready to accompany him, which *Cossi* perceiving,

ceiving, to prevent his Ruin discovered the Conspiracy against his Life: Whereupon he Contracted a strict Amity with him, obliging him to secrecy, and then began to cast about how he might be revenged of the said Captain; and so ordered it, that sending about forty men in a Carriage instead of packs of Presents, they, whilst the Captain and all his People, unless a few left to secure the Castle, by the help of some Soldiers, who in the habit of *Turkish* Women were sent thither by the Captains order, as *Othomans* Friends, surprized it, putting the Warders to the Sword: Now *Othoman* came according the Captains wish, and stayed drinking with him in his pleasant Bowers, till he supposed his men had effected his Commands; and together with *Cossi* and some other of his Companions retired, which the Captain perceiving, and loath to let him escape his Hands, as supposing he had him sure; he and all his Soldiers followed him, but being over-charged with Wine, they were by him and his Company lightly slain.

Things thus prospering he followed his Advantage, and the next Morning surprized the Castle of *Farchisfar*, took the Captain Prisoner; as likewise *Lubuser* the fair Damofel with all her Attendants, that should have the next day been Married to the Captain of *Bilezuga*, and gave her in Marriage to his Son *Orchanes*, who had Issue by her *Amurath*, the third King of the *Turks*, and *Solyman Bassa*; and immediately thereupon besieged the Castle of *Einegiol*, which he took, and put the Garrison to the Sword; and now no longer resolving to play small Games, he besieged the City of *Nice* in *Bythinia*, not many years before the Seat of the *Greek* Emperor, to relieve which the Emperor sent such Forces as could upon so short a warning be drawn together; which *Othoman* encountring with overthrew, and afterward by Famine constrained the Citizens upon promise of Life, to surrender the City with spoils, of which

which he greatly enriched himself, sending part thereof to the Sultan, who in requital ordered prayers to be put up for his prosperous Success, promising that he should succeed him in his Kingdom, of which being disappointed, at the death of the said Sultan by those that divided it into an Anarchy, he nevertheless took upon him the Dignity of a Sultan, Coining Money, and Causing publick prayers to be put up in his own name, and seizing upon *Neapolis*, made it his Regal seat calling it *Despotopolis* or the City of the Prince; and thus Anno 1300 begun the great Empire of the *Turks*. This upstart *Turk* having so soon advanced his fortune, settled his Government with wholesom Laws, the lasting Cords of Empire, and then drawing all his forces together lay'd Siege to *Prusia*, during which the *Christian* Princes that bordered upon him, drew all their forces together, resolving to give him battle, but therein his good fortune prevailing they were overthrown, whereupon several Towns and Castles fell into his hands, some surrendring voluntarily, and others by force compelled so to do; but the strong City of *Prusia*, in which was the broken Army of the *Christians* stood impregnable, whereupon he built two Castles to block it up, and returned to *Neapolis*, sending his Captains out daily with strong parties, to fetch booties out of the *Christian* Territories, and to take in such Castles as by surprize, or otherwise might fall into their hands: His Power being now greatly increased, that he was able to draw into the Field 20 or 30000 Horse and Foot, at what time *Cossi* the *Christian* Captain revolting, turned *Turk*, and stood *Orthoman* in great stead during his Wars; nor did the other *Turks* in the Lesser *Asia* less indamage the *Christians*, so that the *Greek* Empire began to Dwindle into a small Circumference, occasioned by the divisions amongst themselves about Religion; for young *Baldwin* the

Latin

Latin Emperor, being expelled *Constantinople*, as is
afore said in flying into *Germany*, lay daily at *Charles*.
the Emperor to restore him, which *Paleologus* the
Greek Emperor understanding, offered unto Pope
Gregory the tenth, that if he would divert the Empe-
rors forces by intangling him in Domestick troubles,
he would so order the matter that the *Greek* Empire,
in matters of Religion should acknowledge the See of
Rome as Supream, and from thence take all directions as
to Ecclesiastical affairs, which Innovation caused divers
tumults, and many to leave the Empire, rather chosing
to dwell with the *Turks*, which troubles lasted to the
Death of *Paleologus*, nor could he fulfil his promise to
the Pope.

After the *Greek* Emperors Death, *Andronicus* succeed-
ed in the Empire, who was no less troubled with
the Incurfions of the *Turks*, yet he fought with them se-
veral Battles with various with Success, but then a diffe-
rence arising between him and his Brother *Constantine*,
all his hopes of prevailing vanish'd though without
cause, as most believe suspected his Brothers aspiring to
Empire, who was one of the chiefest Bulwarks a-
gainst the *Turks*, beyond the River *Meander*, giving
to them many a fatal overthrow, yet was he cast in
Prison, with many of his followers, and one *Alexus*
Philanthropenus made General of the Army, in his stead,
to whom was joyned *Libadarius*, an experienced Cap-
tain, and grave Councillor, the former of which
after having obtained many Victories over the *Turks*
and *Tartars*, perswaded by the *Cretensians*, Rebelled
against the Emperor, taking upon himself the title of
Emperor, which lasted not long, for being over-
thrown by the latter in a mortal Battle, was delivered
bound by his Souldiers to the Conqueror, who de-
priving him of his Sight, sent him to the Emperor, then
residing at *Constantinople*.

The Rebellion created such Jealousie in the Emperor, that he chose rather to trust strangers, then his own Subjects; so that he having notice of the *Massagetes*, a People dwelling beyond *Ister*, being oppressed by the *Tartars*, he upon their Supplication, appointed them part of his Dominions, whereupon they came over to him with about 10000 families, which caused him to fall into the displeasure of his Subjects; these new-come guests, being compleatly Armed, he sent them with many others, against the *Turks*, under the leading of his Son, and Partner in the Empire *Michael Paleologus*, who at the first sight of the *Turks*, without so much as striking a stroke fled, which gave the Enemy the advantage of conquering the Country as far as *Lefbos*.

After this as if destiny had so willed it, the Emperor called to his aid *Ronzerius* a Pirate, who came with 2000 *Catalonians*, and afterwards increased his number by sending for more, who at first did considerable service, but within a while fell to spoiling and plundering the Emperors Dominions in *Asia*, worse then the *Turks*, as likewise by setting out certain Gallies, robbed all the Merchants that passed those Seas, till at last their Gallies being destroyed by a Fleet of the *Genoways*, and their Captain slain, by the command of the young Emperor, they called in the *Turks*, having first seized upon the City of *Calipolis*; against these who with joyned forces harased the Country, the young Emperor went in person, but was overthrown and most of his *Greeks* slain, upon the revolt of the *Massagets* and other treacherous *Mercenaries*, who were shortly recompenced according to their deserts; for being about to return home with the spoil they had gotten, the *Catalonians* set upon them, and put 'um all to the Sword, taking from them a rich booty, and then passing through many
Countries,

Countries, they left the Emperor free, till at last coming to the Territories of the Duke of *Thebes*, and he refusing to give them passage, they in a set battle overthrew his power and seized on his Country, in which they settled themselves, where their Posterity to this day remains.

But this freed not the Emperor of the danger, for the *Turks* coming down in great number, and having overthrown the young Emperor spoiled all *Thracia*, to stay whose fury *Philes Paleologus* a devout man and Kinsman to the Emperor, undertook the defence of his bleeding Country, and meeting them as they were ranging to and fro burning and destroying all before 'um, he in a set battle overthrew 'um, and forced 'um into the City of *Chersonesus*, where he so straightly besieged them by Sea and Land, that indeavouring to break through the Leaguer, they were most of them slain, and the rest taken Prisoners.

Things being at this pass, and by this means peace Recovered to the Empire, intestine broyles began anew to be fomented by the factious *Greeks*; for the young Emperor being dead, they stirred up young *Adronicus* his Son, to depose his Grand-father the old Emperor, which after several Stratagems and devices he effected, taking the City of *Constantinople* by treason, and casting him in Prison where of grief he soon after died.

These Civil dissensions of the *Greeks* amongst themselves, gave *Othoman* the opportunity to found his Empire in *Phrygia* and *Bythina*, where being successful in all his Attempts he mightily increased his Dominions, having by this time subdued 20 Cities with all their Territories, and amongst the rest *Prusia*, which after a long Siege worn out with Famine *Anno* 1327 yielded upon several Articles, few of which were afterward

observed, by the *Turk*, which being the greatest City in those parts of *Asia*, became for many years after the seat of the *Turkish* Kings. But as all men must yield to death, so in the 28 year of his Reign, and the 69 year of his Age *Othoman* the Founder of the *Turkish* Empire, still called from him the *Othoman* Empire, died, and was buried in *Prusia*, where to this day his Tomb is to be seen, and in his new acquired Kingdom, *Orchanes* his Second Son succeeded him, his eldest dying during his Regency.

C H A P. VII.

*The Life and Actions of Orchanes, otherwise
Urchan, Second King of the Turks in
Asia.*

THE Funeral rights of this great Conqueror being performed by his Sons, viz. *Orchanes*, alias *Urchan*, his Second Son, and *Aladin* his third and youngest Son, and he having left great store of wealth, *Orchanes* his Successor took upon him the rule of the Kingdom, allotting to his Brother *Aladin*, at his request the Lordship of *Fodore* in the *Teckences* Country, where he lived a private Life, without doing any thing worthy of memory, but *Orchanes* now settled in his Kingdom, following his fathers footsteps, whose Armies of late he had altogether commanded as his General, he forgot not to proceed where he had left off, and therefore prepare to War upon the *Christians*, but at first with no great Success, for the *Christians* upon the death of
Othoman,

Orthoman, drawing their forces together out of all parts, recovered the City of *Nice*, with divers Castles and Towns, and amongst the rest the Castle *Tzuprichiser*, which greatly hindered the *Turks* excursions, who dwelt in *Bithynia*; whereupon *Orchanes* upon notice that it was slenderly Guarded, went with several of his followers, in the attire of Merchants, and by that means deceiving the warders got admittance, but were no sooner entered e're they proved fatal ones; for drawing their Swords they put all such as they found therein to death, and seized the Castle, and having Garrisoned it, passed on to the City of *Nice*, to which they lay'd liege, when to rescue it the young Emperor *Andronicus* came with such power as he could raise, but being for the most part unexperienced Soldiers, the *Turks* from the Mountains, as they were passing through the hot Country, setting upon them a cruel battel begun, but night coming on they parted by consent, yet in this fight the Emperor lost near half his People, and was himself wounded with an Arrow, so that despairing of effecting what he came for, leaving his Tents and great store of Furniture therein, every man shifted for himself in the dead of Night, so that next Morning what they left became a prey to the *Infidels*, who hightened by this Success, took in several Sea Towns, and within a while recovered the City of *Nice*, by Stratagem; As thus the Emperor in his flight thither from his Camp, had promised to send them 1000 Horse-men of which *Orchanes* having notice disguised 800 of his men in *Grecian* habit, and sent them with full instructions, who being come within sight of the City, he sent out 300 other in *Turkish* habit as foragers, whom the other espying, as if they had been ignorant of the Matter, turned upon them, and after a feigned skirmish put them to flight, then taking their way to the City, the Citizens who from their walls had

beheld what had passed joyfully opened their Gates, supposing them to be the Emperors promised Aid; but they no sooner entered but the other 300 Horse, and several Companies of Foot who lay in Ambush, were at their Heels; by which means that great City was a second time taken by the *Turks*, whose Riches became a prey to the Soldiers, and whose Inhabitants became of free Persons miserable Captives.

The Fate of this great City followed many others in the same Tract, the *Turks* wasting all before them as they went, miserably burning up what they could not carry away; so that the Countries before them were dispeopled, all the Inhabitants flying from them, as a ten-fold Contagion: So that no considerable Forces being sent from the Emperor, the Cities fell into his Hands in great abundance, and above all being desirous to possess the two fair Castles of *Abydos* and *Sestus*, he sent *Accecozza*, one of his great Captains to win them if possible, who by the way having Intelligence that the Captains Son of the Castle of *Scamandra* being dead, his Funeral was such a day to be Solemnized without the Walls; whereupon laying an Ambushment, they upon the Mourners approach, suddenly issued from their Coverts, and slew several of them, taking the remainder Prisoners, and amongst them the Captain, whom they carried to the Castle; telling those that kept the Walls, that if they did not deliver it, he should be put to a Cruel Death before their Eyes; at which nothing dismayed they returned Answer, that they might Kill him, Boyl him, and Eat him if they pleased, but as for the Castle they would not deliver it; whereupon he finding it a work of great Difficulty to take by force, departed to *Sestus* which he with little Difficulty took, and had his Prisoners Ransomed for a great Mass of Mony, and amongst the rest, the Captain of *Scamandra*; and

now *Abydos* standing in *Europe* on the other side the *Hellepont*, was the only place Aimed at, when, as Fate would have it, the Night before the *Turks* came before it the Captain of the Castles Daughter dreamt that she falling into a miry Pit, a young Gallant coming by plucked her out, and made her Clean; the which as soon as ever she viewed *Abdurachman* one of the *Turkish* Captains, she fancied him to be the same Person she had beheld in her Vision, and so strongly her fancy wrought, that when he lead up his Forces against the Wall, she out of a Tower from whence she beheld what was done, tossed a Letter tyed to a stone at his Feet, wherein she expressed her Passion, Protesting that if he would accept of her Love, she would on such a Condition betray the Castle into his Hands. This Letter being shewed to old *Accecozza*, he much doubted the real Intention, fearing it was a design to draw them into Danger; but upon *Abdurachman's* Request, that he might undertake the Enterprize, he Consented; it being agreed, that to give the besieged the less Suspicion, the Army should give a general assault, and then draw off, the which being done, the Garrison buried in Sleep and Wine for joy of the *Turks* departure, neglecting their Watches; the Captain being Conducted by his Mistress a private way, entered with about fifty Followers, and putting the Warders to the Sword, opened the Gates and let in the Army, who the next Morning took the Garrison. The *Turks* departed with their Prisoners and such Booty as they found: The Tratyrefs being given to *Abdurachman* as a reward of his Advent'rous undertaking, not long after *Accecozza* dying, *Orchanes* made his Sons, *Amurath* and *Solyman* Lords of the Provinces he had taken from the *Christians*, who lay'd Siege to the City of *Nicomedia*, which despairing of succour, surrender'd upon Condition, that so many as would depart might, and those

that would stay there might, without any hurt : Either Body, or Goods, of which City *Solyman* was made Governour, and thereupon he removed his Court from *Prusa* to *Nice*, that he might be near his new Conquests at all times, to give such necessary Orders as were Convenient ; and so prospered that he soon after got Possession of *Taraxa*, *Govinucia*, and *Mdurne* ; and raising a puissant Army, he invaded the Country of *Carasiana* (the Brothers of the deceased King being at odds about the Succession) and soon over-run it, forcing one of the Brothers to fly into *Pergamum*, and the other as his *Vassal* to hold the Kingdom in Fee of him, at the same time made his younger Son *Amurath* Lord of *Prusa*.

The *Turkish* Kingdom being thus settled in *Asia*, *Archanes* consulted with his Son *Solyman* about getting footing in *Europe*, which he promised to effect ; and upon his return to his Government, sent over *Ezes-Bey* his chief Captain, and some others to discover the Country ; who taking a *Greek* Prisoner returned and presented him to *Solyman*, who having given him Money and Rayment, inquired of the Nature of the Country, who informed them at large : Whereupon repassing with a small Force, they seized upon the Castle of *Zembenick*, without doing any harm to the Garrison, which was indeed but small ; most of them being gone out to fetch in their Harvest.

The News of the *Turks* landing in *Europe*, soon flew to *Constantinople*, but such was their Cowardise and Sloath together with intestine Divisions, that no Care was taken to expulse them : So that they daily increasing their Power, by such as were sent over in Boats, seized also upon the Castle of *Maditas*, and afterward spoiled the Country of *Chersonesus*, as far as *Callipolis* ; which City they took after having overthrown the Governour in a pitched Battle ; yet so insatuated

tuated were the greater part of the *Greeks*, that they made a jest of the proceedings of the *Turks*, who were by this time advanced 200 from the Castle of *Zembenick*, where they first Landed. Whereupon *Solyman* sent to his Father, to acquaint him with what had passed, as likewise to desire him, to send him fresh supplies of Men, not only to secure what he had won, but to prosecute his successful beginning; upon the receipt of which news *Orchanes* greatly rejoiced, and immediately Commanded 1000 *Sarazens* and *Turks*, to pass the *Hellepont* in Boats prepared for that purpose, upon whose Arrival *Solyman* intercepted the Governour of *Conger* Castle, who had greatly annoyed the *Turks*, and striking off his Head before the Castle-Gate so terrified those that were within, that they soon surrendred the Place, from whence the *Turks* frequently sallying fetched in great Booties, venturing even to the Walls of *Didymotichum*.

And thus in the space of one year, the *Turks* got strong footing in *Europe*, possessing themselves of divers Castles and Towns, with the Countries about them; which *Solyman* as a reward of their Service, gave to his Captains and Soldiers, as appeareth by the Monuments of *Ezes-Beg*, and *Fazel-Beg* the first, Two *Turkish* Captains that set Footing in *Europe*, but for a while a stop was put to the *Turks* Progress, occasioned by the Death of *Solyman*; who hawking in the Fields of *Bolyre*, and following too furious in taking a Ditch, his Horse threw him where he received such a mortal bruise, that he within a few days after died, which News coming to his Father *Orchanes*, he for grief fell sick, and within two Months gave up the Ghost, *Anno* 1359. and of his Age 80 years, having Reigned 31 years.

This *Orchanes* was both warlike and Politick; Courteous he was to his Friends, and stern to his Enemies, much devoted to the *Mahometan* superstition; and a great Enemy to the *Christians*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

The Life and Actions of Amurath the first of that Name, and third King of the Turks.

O*Chanes* and *Solyman* his eldest Son being dead, *Amurath* succeeded in the Kingdom, as the younger Son to the deceased King; who at his first Entrance upon his Government, had great Contests with the *Turkish* Princes of the lesser *Asia*, who Envyng his aspiring, as supposing in the Currant of his Victories, he might as well overthrow them, as the *Christians*; but having Vanquished their Forces, and brought them Terms of Agreement, he turned his Arms upon *Europe* with a great host; passing the *Hellespont* he seized upon the Castle of *Benutum*, when passing on the *Greeks* now roused out of their security, opposed him with such Forces as they could draw together, but were soon overthrown: After which he won the Town of *Trurulus*, taking likewise all the Castles and small Towns adjoyning, as *Mesine*, *Burgos*, *Hebrus*, and soon after *Didimotichum*; and staying there sent one of his Captains named *Lala-Schakin*, to besiege *Hadrianople*, now called *Adrianople* with whom the *Christians* fought a great and mortal Battle, but such was their ill steered Fate that Victory declared for the *Infidels*. So that that great City being out of all hopes of Relief, opened her Gates to the Enemy, *Anno* 1362. The City of *Hadrianople* being taken, or, as their own Histories relate, taken by Treachery in time of Peace; *Amurath* made it the chief Seat of the *Turkish* Kings

in Europe, as a place from whence he might best annoy Christendom, and then sending for his Captains, he Commanded to invade the Countries of Philipopolis, Zogora, and Ipsala; the which in a short time they brought under Subjection.

The Turkish Kingdom in a small time being spread wide, *Cura Rustemes* the Doctor of the *Mahometan* Law, and *Zinderlu Chelil* the Chief Justice devised the Order or Constitution of the *Janizaries* (which have ever since been available to *Turks* in all their Wars) after this manner, that seeing there were great multitudes of *Christian* Captives frequently taken, the Youths above fifteen years of Age should every fifth be the Kings, and if there wanted of five, then he who had them should pay twenty five Aspers a Head, and that those which appertained to the King should for three or four years be put to hard Labour, the better to inure 'um to Hardship; and then being brought to Court to serve in the Wars, as the Kings Life-Guard being alway near his Person. Which advice was so well approved of, that it has continued acceptable to the *Othoman* Kings and Emperors ever since.

Amurath having settled his Conquests in Europe, leaving a sufficient Power with his great Captains: The Winter coming on, he passed over into Asia; but early in the Spring, upon view that the *Christians* were in Arms he returned, and by the way took the Town of *Boge*, putting the chief Inhabitants to the Sword, and carrying away the rest Captives, but held it not long e'r it was recovered and rased by the *Christians*, who served the *Turks* in like manner.

In the mean time the *Christian* Army in *Servia* and *Bulgaria* consisting of 50000 Horse and Foot, advanced in Order to their besieging *Adrianople*, which obliged him for his better security, to haste over the *Hellefont*, giving Order for a great number of *Asians* to

to follow him, but by reason of the *Christians* discord amongst themselves, and refusing to joyn their Forces, they were set upon at advantage, and overthrown with the loss of half the Army, e'r the Forces arrived from *Asia*. The News of which fatal overthrow spreading wide, *Amurath's* Fame spread wider; Infomuch that *German-Ogly* Reigning in the lesser *Asia*, and being chief of the *Zelzuccian* Family, sent his Ambassadors to intreat a Marriage between his Daughter *Hatun*, and young *Bajazet*, in lieu of which he promised a great part of his Territory, and that his Son-in-Law at his Death should succeed him in his Kingdom, by that means joyning both Families into one, the which in short time was accorded; at the Celebration of which Nuptials, the Ambassadors of almost all the Princes of the East were present, who in the Names of their Lords presented the Bridegroom and Bride with exceeding rich Gifts; but *Amurath* to outdo them all, caused *Euronoses* to bring out of *Europe* 100 beautiful Boys, with as many Virgins; all *Christian* Captives clad in rich Garments, imbroidered with Gold and Pearl, each of them holding a Cup of Gold in the one hand, and a Cup of Silver in the other, filled with Jewels, Pearls, Amber, and the like; which he caused in requital of their Kindness given to the Ambassador to be.

At this Marriage *Chusun-Beg* Prince of *Amisum* in *Galatia*, sold by his Ambassador his Territories of *Amisum* to *Amurath*, as doubting to keep them; the *Turks* Power being now so near him.

The Nuptials Celebrated, *Amurath* making his Son *Bajazet* Governour of his Countries in *Anatolia*, gathered what Forces he could for the Invasion of *Servia*, taking by the way the strong City of *Phera*; and entering *Servia* the Despot no ways able to oppose him, he took *Nissa* the *Metropolis* of that Province; and soon
after

after *Apolonia* with many other places of strength, so in fourteen days over-run nigh all the Provinces, but receiving News out of *Asia*, that *Aladine* King of *Caramania*, who a little before had Married his Daughter, wasted his Countries in *Asia* with Fire and Sword, which so enraged *Amurath*, that making Peace with the Despot of *Servia*, he passed over with an Army of 70000 Horse and Foot, to whom in number *Aladine* was not inferior, as having Confederated himself with all the Petty Princes of *Asia*, when after several overtures of Peace proposed and none accepted; both Armies joyned on the great Plains of *Caramania*, where after a dreadful Battle *Aladin's* Army was overthrown, he was forced to fly into *Icomum* his chief City, and was there straightly besieged, but at the humble Supplication of his Queen, who would have no denial at her Fathers hands; he upon his Submission was restored again to his Dignity and Kingdom, as likewise were all the Princes, his Confederates upon Condition of acknowledging him their supreme Lord.

Whilst these things passed, the Despot of *Servia* grieving that he had made such a dishonourable League with the *Turks*, and being told by his General, sent with Forces to assist *Amurath* against the *Caramanian* King, how despightfully he had used him and his Soldiers, therewithal stirring him up to break the League, and cast off the servile Yoak, he sent secretly to the King of *Bozan*, to request him to joyn with him against the *Turkish* Tyrant, who willingly accorded; and at an interview between the said King, and the Despot all things were agreed, upon Notice of which *Amurath* was not a little perplexed, but yet resolving to take revenge, he gathered great Forces to invade both Princes; the which whilst he was doing, the Captain of *Alexandria* took a Castle in the Con-

fines

finer of *Bosan*, came privately to his Tent and offered to deliver to him most part of the Country, if he would follow his directions, strengthening his Promise with many specious Arguments; insomuch that the Greedy *Turk* giving Credit to what he had said, sent twenty thousand Men under the leading of his great Captain and Tutor *Lala-Schalin*, who plundering part of the Country, and at last by the said Captains device, who had by *Amurath* been highly honoured, especially with a rich Cloak, which signifies the Person so invested to be highly in the Favour of the *Turkish* King; but having drawn them within the Danger of the Ambush, he sent to the King of *Bosan*, who coming upon them with 30000 *Greeks*, as they were stragling cut off 50000 of them, the other 5000 with *Schakin* hardly escaping to tell the News.

With this overthrow of his Men, *Amurath* was greatly enraged, and gathering all his Power marched into *Servia* (which before he had Relinquished upon the Despots becoming his Tributary) where he found the *Christians* with a formidable Army ready to receive him; when after some Towns and Castles taken, on either side, both Armies met upon the great Plains of *Cassovia*, where when the Captains on either side had put their Men in Order; exhorting them to do their best for obtaining the Victory, they joyned with such Fury that the Earth trembled under their Feet, and such was the horrid noise of Clashing Arms, shouts of the Conquerors Cries, of the Vanquished and Weeing of Horses, that wild Beasts in the Mountains trembled; and those that beheld the Fight supposed that showers of Arrows descended from the Clouds. At first the *Turks* gave back, being assailed by the *Christians* in great number, and the Right Wing routed, but *Bajazet* coming in with a fresh Power renewed the Battle, which having continued eight hours with
great

Great slaughter : Infomuch that all the Plains were covered with the Bodies of the slain, most of the *Christian* Captains killed Valiantly fighting, and amongst the rest, *Lazerns* the Despot, the Victory fell to the *Turks* ; those that fell in the Battle, not being accounted less then 50000.

After the Battle was over, *Amurath* greatly Rejoycing in his huge Conquest, in a Vain-glorious Humour would needs take a view of the heaps of the dead Carcasses, which made the Plain Mountainous, when as a half dead Soldier, named *Cobelits* faint with loss of Blood and Wounds, rising as it were from the Grave, came towards him staggering and falling three or four times in twenty paces, when those that were about him, would have hindered his approach ; but *Amurath* (Destiny so ordering) Commanded he should have access, supposing he would have Petitioned for his Life ; when on the contrary without a Word speaking, *Cobelits* drawing forth a Dagger, stabbed him into the Belly, for which he was presently hewn in pieces ; nor did *Amurath* long survive him, but within three days after dyed of his Wound, and was buried in *Prusia*, Anno 1390. of his Age 68 years, and of his Reign 31 years. To whom succeeded *Bajazer* his eldest Son, who was no sooner Crowned, but he caused his Brother *Jacup* to be strangled in his Presence with a Bow-string, which wicked Precedent has ever since been put in Practice by the *Othoman* Kings and Emperors.

CHAP. X.

The Life of Bajazet, the first of that Name and Fourth King of the Turks his Wars and Captivity.

B*Ajazet* a man of a Proud and haughty temper, having taken upon him the Regency of his Father's Kingdoms, fell heavily upon *Servia*, not so much as vouchsafing to hear the Embassadors sent on their behalf, which made the Princes of the West begin to consider their own estate, and especially *Vincelans* the German Emperor, and *Sigismond* King of *Hungary*, and not contented with the spoils of *Servia*, he made several inroads into *Bosan*, spoiling the Country and carrying away great booties, when in the mean while the King of *Caramania* hearing of his Fathers death, began anew to waste his Countries in *Asia*, which caused *Bajazet* to send a great power, who overthrew him and recovered all that was lost taking from him likewise his own Country which obliged him in humble wise to beg their restauration, which *Bajazet* upon condition that he should from that time forward become his vassal restored.

About this time *Philadelphia*, the only City the *Christians* had in *Asia*, was besieged by *Bajazets* Power, and after a straight Siege and no hopes of any succours, delivered by the Citizens as a ransom for their Lives and Persons.

Having subdued *Servia*, and the greatest part of *Bosan*, he invaded *Theffalia* wasting it as he passed with fire and Sword, even to the Walls of *Theffalonica*,
taking

taking *Neopolis* in *Greece*; and *Joannia* in *Atolia*, and afterward returning into *Asia* he there spent the Winter, but Spring being come, with all his Power he repassed the *Hellepont*, and lay'd close Siege to *Constantinople*, the seat of the *Greek* Emperor, *Emanuel Paleologus* then Reigning, who after he had been brought to great extremity, went to the *German* Emperors Court to crave aid, who together with many other *Christian* Princes, sent an Army of 250000 under the leading of young *Sigismond* King of *Hungary*, to oppose whom *Bajazet* rais'd his Siege and found them besieging *Neopolis*; from whence they drew into the great Plain and joyned Battle, but by reason of the confusion that was in the *Christian* Army, their Van being overcharged, the Rear fled without striking a stroke, so that the *Turks* getting the Victory with a far less number pursued so hard upon the *Christians* that the greater part of the Army was slain, taken prisoners and drowned in passing the River *Danubius*.

After this great and unexpected Victory over the *Christians* occasioned by the emulation that arose amongst their great Commanders, *Bajazet* returned to the Siege of *Constantinople*, now out of all hope to be relieved, where whilst he lay casting his eyes upon *Despina*, the slain *Despot* of *Servia's* fair Daughter, offered by her Mother; his former Wife being dead he Married her, and for her sake restored to her Brother *Stephen* all his fathers Principalities.

Aladin the *Carramanian* King being dead, and his Son of the same name Reigning in his stead, desirous to revenge the wrong *Bajazet* had done his Fathers Subjects, coming to *Ancyra* surpris'd *Temurtasses* *Bajazet's* great Lievtenant, but upon the approach of *Bajazet* with his Army he richly arraying begged his pardon, and set him at liberty, sending Embassadors to

excuse them; but *Bajazet* would not suffer them to come into his sight, whereupon the young King gathering all the Power of his Country, fought with him a great Battle, but being far too weak for such an Enemy was overthrown & he taken Prisoner, & by the Command of *Bajazet* delivered to *Temurtases* his Capital Enemy, who for the disgrace he had put upon him caused him to be strangled, which rash deed much grieved *Bajazet*, the young Prince being his Sisters Son, yet he seized upon the greatest part of his Kingdom, though he had several Sons living, and so enraged was he that he expelled all the *Mahometan* Princes in Lesser *Asia*, and seized upon their Territories, whereupon they fled to *Tamerlane* the Great, who having Married the daughter of the Cham or Emperor of *Tartary*, and now returned from the Conquest of *China*, he took them into his protection, and being at the same time Solicited for aid by *Emanuel* the Greek Emperor, he sent to *Bajazet* his Embassadors, with many rich presents, requesting him to cease from molesting his Allies, but he in a proud manner not only rejected his presents, but with many opprobrious words, cast foul reproaches on him, telling his Embassadors that he desired nothing more then to meet him in the field, and with many taunting expressions dismissed them. The report of which so thoroughly netled the *Tartar*, that he resolved with a puissant Army to go against him, being hightened thereto by *Axalla* his great favourite, a *Genoway* by birth, and friend to the Greek Emperor, whose cause he daily solicited. And *Tamerlane* who was a well-wisher to the *Christians*, in his opinion differing little from them so well approved of all he said, and having taken his leave of his Father-in-Law, and his Wife, with a powerful Army he passed the Mountains, Marching through many Countries, none daring oppose his passage, till at length coming to *Bachichich*, he mustered his

his Army, and found it to consist of 800000 Horse and Foot of divers Nations, to whom he gave general pay, not having suffered the least wrong to be done in any Country, through which he had passed.

Bajazet lying at the Siege of *Constantinople*, and hearing the *Tartar* approached with a Power that covered the Countries as he passed, he raised his Siege, and contrary to *Tamerlains* Expectation, but even as he wished, came over with such forces as he could raise, into *Asia*; where he joyned with his Lieutenant, whilst the *Tartars* still came on, having by this time passed *Euphrates*, and taken all the Cities in their way, that appertained to *Bajazet*, and amongst the rest the great City of *Sabastia*, once the chief Seat of the *Turkish* Sultan, utterly rasing it, putting all the Citizens to the Sword, or as some, Buryed them alive in deep Pits he caused to be digged for that purpose, unless the Governour whom he set at Liberty to carry the News to *Bajazet*, who was advancing 500000 Strong, who upon the Governours coming into his presence, demanded which was the greater Army he having seen both, to which after having craved pardon, he replied that the *Tartars* Army must needs be the greatest: by Reason he was Lord of far greater Countries; whereupon *Bajazet* Laughing, said out of doubt the sight of the *Tartars* hath made this Coward so affraid, that he thinketh every Enemy two.

The Armies being come near to each other upon the great Plains of *Sennas*, he thought not good to joyn Battle presently by Reason the Evening approached; yet many light Skirmishes happened between the *Parthian* Horsemen, and the Forerunners of the *Turkish* Army; but the next Morning either Hoast being set in Array, after some Pause the charge

was Sounded, whereupon the Prince of *Ciarcan Tamarlin's* Kins-man, with 40000 Horſe charged the *Turks* in the Front, and Piercing their Battle, put the *Jannizaries* into diſorder; but venturing too far was there Slain, whereupon *Axalla* Leading the Vaunt-Guard compoſed of *Sciths* and *Parthians*, bore upon the left Wing of the *Turks* Army, cutting in pieces and Bearing down all that oppoſ'd him, at what time his Footmen coming to joyn with him he Faced the *Batalion* of the *Jannizaries*; who behaved themſelves Valiantly for the ſafety of their Prince, who in the middle of them Fought on Foot, which Fight continued Bloody, and doubtful for the ſpace of an Hour, all the place being heaped with the Bodies of the Slain; till at laſt the *Tartars* being overcharged gave Ground, which *Tamerlain* from his Stand perceiving ſent 10000 Horſe to Reinforce them, and other 10000 to Fight in the Rearward, and at the ſame time ſent his Foot-men, who fell in with the *Turks* main Battle that remained yet unſhaken with ſuch fury, that making them give way, he opened them to the Rear of the *Jannizaries*; wherein was yet the Perſon of *Bajazet*, who ſuſtained the greateſt Brunt of the Fight, but at laſt overpowered with number, they were forced to give Ground, at what time *Tamerlain* coming on with 50000 freſh Horſe, Bore down all before him till he came to the *Jannizaries* (who always Fight in the Heart of the Army) and they weary, and not able to make ſufficient reſiſtance, were trodden down on all ſides, ſo that the Battle Swerving, the *Turks* betook themſelves to Flight, and amongſt the reſt *Bajazet* wounded as he was, who afterwards fell into the Hands of *Axalla*, together with his Son *Muſa*. The Deſpot of *Servia* and many others of note.

This great Victory fell to the *Tartars* chiefly, by the

the revolt of a great number of *Bajazet's* men; who were raised in the Countries of the *Mahometan* Princes expelled, who in the Heat of the Battle, seeing their natural Lords under *Tamerline's* Standard went over to 'um.

This Fight lasted Bloody and doubtful from Seven in the Morning till four in the Evening, wherein as many report 200000 on either side were Slain, and amongst the rest *Mustapha Bajazet's* Son with most of his great Commanders.

After this *Bajazet* being brought before *Tamerlain*, and demanded why he oppressed the Christians, and made War upou so Noble a Prince as was the Emperor of *Greece*; to which he replied, Even the same thing that hath moved thee to invade me, even the desire of Glory and Sovereignty; and why, said *Tamerlain*, do you use such Tyranny over those you Conquer without Respect of Sex or Age? That I did, said he, to give the greater Terror to my Enemies: Ah what wouldst thou have done with me, said *Tamerlain*, if it had been thy Fortune to have had me in thy Power? I would, said the haughty *Turk* (not Conquered tho overcome) have put thee in a Cage of Iron, and have carryed thee in Triumph about my Kingdom. Even so said *Tamerlain*, shalt thou be served, and thereupon commanded him out of his presence, and as he had determined, shortly after Cooped him up in a Cage of Iron, and carryed him into the Countries he Conquered, whose Calamity may well serve as a memento to all aspiring Mortals, by putting them in mind that the Worldly Glory is not permanent.

After this the *Greek* Emperor sent his Ambassador to *Tamerlain* in his Name, to deliver up his City and Empire; but he refused, saying he had Dominions sufficient of his own, and after having seen

the City and wondered at its fair Structures and Riches, he taking leave of the Emperor ; he passed with his Army into Egypt, to be revenged on the Sultan for assisting *Bajazet* against him with 30000 *Mamelukes*, having first subdued all, or the greatest part of all the *Turks* Dominions in *Asia* ; and intirely restored *Europe* to its rightful possessors : and meeting with the Sultan he overthrew his Army, consisting of 174,000 Horse and Foot, and so winning *Damasco*, *Jerusalem*, *Damiata*, *Cairo*, and most of the Cities in *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Lybia*, and other Eastern Countries, making all the Kings as he passed become his Tributaries, he left *Calibes* a great Captain with the greatest part of his Army, to pursue the *Egyptian* Sultan, and secure what he had won ; having news that his Father in Law was sick, and that his Wife was desirous of his Company, he returned into his Country, but 'ere his departure *Bajazet* as desperate and impatient of his Misfortune, had beaten his Brains out against the Bars of his Cage, as the most Authentick Authors affirm ; tho the *Turks* say he was set at Liberty by *Tamerlain*, who beforehand had caused to take Poyson, of which within three Days he dyed, tho their saying is very unlikely to be true ; but however he was Buryed in *Prusa*, by his beloved Wife *Despina*, Anno 1399. having Reigned seven years, and kept under restraint two years.

C H A P. X.

The Life of Mahomet the first King of the Turks, and the restorer of their Kingdom ruined by the Tartars.

THOUGH Historians somewhat vary about the Successor of *Bajazer*, yet the most Credible do affirm that his Son *Mahomet*, several of his other Brothers being slain and carried away Captive, succeeded him, and that the rest might be mistaken in the Name.

This *Mahomet*, when his Father was taken Prisoner, was but fifteen years of Age, having been by him appointed his Successor for the great Hope he saw in him, for the recovery of the broken and much shattered Kingdom.

When *Mahomet* entered upon Kingly Authority, the *Tartars* possessed a great part of the before *Turkish* Dominion, but the Remains of the scattered Army and other Aids resorting to his Standard after the departure of *Tamerlain*, he recovered many Cities, some by Force, and others by Revolt from the *Tartars*, and not long after in a great and bloody Battle overthrowing *Inal Ogly Tamerlain's* Lieutenant, he advanced more boldly and charged *Cofstor Ogly*, and *Kinpeck Ogly*, two more of *Tamerlain's* great Captains, whom he likewise overthrew; and following his good Fortune passed into the lesser *Asia*, of which *Tamerlain* having Notice sent for him with a Promise, to give him one of his Daughters in Marriage, to whom he intended to go; but by the way being often forced to fight through the Am-

bushment of the *Tartars*, he fearing it was a Design to take him Prisoner returned to his Government, excusing himself to *Tamerlain's* Ambassador, and sending one of his own Ambassadors to give the reason of his not coming; upon Notice of which, and that the *Turks* still prevailed; *Tamerlaine* prepared for a second Expedition, having recruited his huge Army for that purpose: But what Man willett God disposeth, whilst he was intent upon the matter falling sick of a Feaver, or Ague, after three fits he dyed; Death Conquering him, who in a short space Conquered fifty intire Kingdoms.

This mighty *Tartar* being Dead, his great Kingdom divided amongst his Sons, by their jarring and discontent of the Nobility was soon after rent into pieces, most of it falling into the hands of the *Turks* who at this day possess it: And now *Mahomet* winning all the Dominions his Father held in the greater *Asia*, from the *Tartars* resolved to recover the rest, which his three Brothers, *Isa*, *Solyman* and *Musa* had seized on in *Europe*, and the lesser *Asia*; whereupon assembling all his Forces, he marched to *Lapadium*, near to which *Isa* being incamped, he sent to offer him *Caramania* and several other Kingdoms in the lesser *Asia*; though indeed they were not his to give, being possessed by their rightful Princes, whom *Tamerlain* had re-possessed them off, which offer refused from a younger Brother, whereupon a bloody Battle ensued; in which *Isa* was overthrown, and for the preservation of his Life forced to fly to *Emanuel* the Greek Emperor: In this Battle were slain the two famous *Basas*, *Eine* and *Temurtas*, of which overthrow *Mahomet* sent to certifie his Brother *Solyman* then in *Constantinople*; after which he marched with his Army to *Prusa*, and received under his Protection all the Countries adjoyning; and now growing strong he resolved to brook no Rival in his Fathers Kingdoms, when on the other hand *Solyman* his

Elder

Elder Brother hearing what he had done, and knowing him to be of an aspiring Temper, thought it not Convenient to suffer him longer so Triumphantly to proceed; whereupon by the advice of his Grave Counsellors, he sent for his Brother *Isa* then at *Constantinople*, and making him general of his Army, gave him Orders to pass over into *Asia*, and curb the Pride of his aspiring Brother. *Isa* glad of this opportunity to revenge his own Injuries sustained; in loosing his Dominions, obeying his Brother *Solyman's* Commands, entered *Mahomet's* Dominions, and there with Fire and Sword began his Progress, which *Mahomet* understanding came against him, and having overthrown his Forces put him to a second flight into *Carramania*; where, in obscurity, of the Wounds he received in Battle, and grief for his foul defeat he dyed.

Solyman hearing of the defeat prepared a great Army to invade *Asia*, which made *Mahomet* retire into the Country of *Amassa*, as doubting the affections of his People, by reason the Kingdoms of *Bajazet* of Right appertained to *Solyman* as Elder: This retiring gave *Solyman* opportunity to advance to the Walls of *Prusa*, which City he besieged, and had it presently yielded, except the Castle, which upon the Interceptions of *Mahomet's* Letters, was likewise surrendered, but upon the approach of *Mahomet* with a great Power, doubtful to keep what he had got, he with all his People retired to the Straights of *Neapolis*, where he defended himself right valiantly against the assaults of his Brother, who by reason of the Intemperance of the Weather, and a Letter framed by *Alis-Bassa*, that there was a Conspiracy amongst his Captains to deliver him up to *Solyman*, he retired.

Whilst these things were acting, *Musa* being set at Liberty by the *Tartars*, came to *Mahomet's* Camp & was of him joyfully received, when after some Discourse it was agreed

greed, that *Musa* with an Army should pass over the *Euxin* Sea, into *Europe*; and whilst *Solyman* was busy in *Asia*, seize upon his Country, which Expedition he undertaking, and making *Isfender* Prince of *Castromonia* his Friend, and afterward the Prince of *Valachia*, by marrying his Daughter, he soon prevailed with the Governours of the chief Cities, to Revolt from *Solyman*; when entering *Hadrianople* he caused himself to be invested with Royal Robes, and as King of the Country sent forth his Decrees, which *Solyman* hearing of as he lay at *Ancira* in *Asia*, passed the Straights of *Bosphorus* with all the Forces he could raise, upon whose Departure *Mahomet* recovered what ever he had won in *Asia*.

Solyman being come into *Europe*, *Musa* prepared to oppose him, and both Armies coming in sight of each other, *Musa* so dealt with *Solyman's* Captains, that they revolted, which he perceiving fled, accompanied only with *Caratze-Beg*, *Cara Muchil* and one Country Turk, whom they took with them as their Guide: whose perfidiousness brought them to Destruction, for pretending to lead them through the by-ways all Night, he misnaming places brought them in the Morning near to *Musa's* Camp; when giving Notice to the *Rusticks* they set upon them, and having killed the two Captains, took *Solyman* and delivered him to *Musa*, who immediately caused him to be strangled, whose Body by his Command was carried to *Prusa*, and there buried by his Ancestors.

Solyman being Dead, *Musa* took upon him the Government of the *Turkish* Kingdom in *Europe*; as had been agreed between him and his Brother *Mahomet*, but e'r he was settled he began to Tyrannize beyond measure over his Subjects, which caused many of his great Captains to leave him, and amongst the rest *Enverosie* feigning himself Blind found means to depart to

Constantinople

Constantinople, from whence he wrote to *Mahomet* then in *Asia*; giving him an Account of his Brothers proceedings, and soliciting him to pass over with his Army, whose Council *Mahomet* taking, making first a League with *Emanuel* the Greek Emperor, he entered *Europe* with his Army: But by the over eager pursuit of his Army, after the *Vant* Couriers of *Musa's* Army, his Orders being broken, he was put to flight, and forced to repass the Seas into *Asia*, leaving behind him a great part of his Army, who were spoiled by the Enemy.

Mahomet thus foiled, and desirous of Revenge resolved once more to try his Fortune, and thereupon drawing to his Assistance *Dulgader Ogly*, who sent his Son with great Forces to serve him in his War, he repassed the *Euxin*, and by the Council of *Eurenosis*, having procured the revolt of *Jegides-Bassa*, *Barack-Beg*, and *Sinon-Beg*, 3 of *Musa's* great Captains who came over to him with 3000 valiant *Turks* he resolved to give his Brother battle, the which being joyned, *Musa* by the revolt of other Commanders during the heat of fight was overthrown, taken, and by the Command of *Mahomet* strangled, receiving therein the same measure he had dealt to his Brother *Solyman*.

After this overthrow of *Musa*, *Mahomet* proceeded to take possession of his Kingdom, the which whilst he was doing, news came that the *Carramanian* King spoiled his Countries in *Asia*, and had burnt his great City of *Prusa*, which being a frontier City was still exposed to the miseries of War; whereupon *Mahomet* settling his Affairs in *Europe* as necessity would permit, passed into *Asia*, and falling like a tempest upon the Country of *Carramania* took *Aspropolis*, *Desporopolis*, and *Hierapolis*, laying hard Siege to *Iconium*, which caused the *Carramanian* to send his Embassadors to treat a Peace, the which by reason of the great floods of Rain that fell, and the Sickness in the Army, occasioned by the intemperance

perance of the Weather, was by *Mahomet* accorded, but it continued not long e're the *Carramanian* King in the absence of *Mahomet* a second time invaded his Countries, with whom *Mahomet* fighting, routed his Army, taking him and his Son Prisoners, for whose Ransoms he had delivered into his possession the principal Cities of *Carramania*, and then returning into *Enrope* seized upon *Valachia* obliging the Prince thereof to become his Vassal.

About this time two Persons viz. *Buriluzes* and *Brededin*, pretending themselves to be great Prophets drew great multitudes after them who spoiled the Country, upon notice of which *Mahomet* sent forces to apprehend them, who dispersing their followers, hewed the former in pieces, and hanged the latter upon a Sign-post, and now *Mahomet* falling sick without any hopes of recovery, assembled all his great Captains and charged them to obey his eldest son *Amurath*, whom after his decease he appointed to succeed him in his Kingdom, and lest in his absence he being then at his Government of *Amasa*, any disturbance should happen, that they that were about him, if he should chance to die should conceal his Death: All which, he at that time dying, being accordingly observed, for when the *Janizaries* and Pensioners mistrusting him to be dead, and demanded to see him, the *Bassas* attiring him in his Royal Robes, like as when he was alive brought him forth into a large Gallery, placing a Boy under his Gown, who as he was Commanded, lifted the Kings Arm and moved his head, with which those that were below were well contented, and by this Stratagem kept his Death Secret 41 days, even till *Amurath* came and took the Scepter, the which had they not done the *Janisaries* and Pensioners would have spoiled the rich Cities wherein they were quartered, as ever since has been observed during an Interregnum.

CHAP. XI.

The Life of Amurath the Second of that name and Sixth King of the Turks, his Wars, Victories and Defeats.

A *Murath* had no sooner taken possession of his Kingdom, and the Death of *Mahomet* published, but divers Princes revolted from him, and invaded his Territories, as the Prince of *Smyrna*, *Mentesia*, and others, and amongst the rest an obscure fellow of *Thessalonica*, feigning himself to be *Mustapha* the Eldest Son of *Bajazet* who was slain in the battle against *Tamerlane*, all the *Turkish* Cities in *Europe* fell to him, whereupon *Amurath* sent *Bajazet Bassa* against him with a great Army, which was no sooner landed but it revolted to *Mustapha*, leaving the *Bassa* alone to shift for himself; whereupon the *Bassa* together with his Brother *Hamze* submitted themselves to this counterfeit Son of *Bajazet*, but being envied by the rest of the Captains, they raised such Jealousies of his being treacherous in *Mustapha*, that he soon after put him to death, and afterward prepared for the Invasion of *Amurath's* Territories in *Asia*, of which he having notice, gathered all his forces to oppose him, and after asking Council of a *Mahometan* Priest, who assured him, he had after two repulses at the hands of the Great Prophet, obtained the favor of making him prosperous in his Wars, and so coming to the North-side of the River *Ulibad*, he found the Bridge broken down, and *Mustapha's* great Army incamped on the other side, where he so dealt with the great
Captains

Captains of *Mustapha's* Army, that many of them revolted, and at length *Mustapha* being frightened by forged Letters, importing that his Army intended to deliver him up, fled by night, after which his men submitted to *Amurath*, and he in his flight being taken in *Europe* was hanged.

The Rebellion being pacified, and *Amurath* informed that all this had happened, by the contrivance of the Greek Emperor, besieged *Constantinople*, which in vain he often attempted to take by storm, but whilst he lay at this siege, news was brought that the King of *Caramania* had set up another *Mustapha*, viz. his younger Brother Son to *Mahomet*, to whom many Countries in the lesser *Asia* revolted, which made *Amurath* raise his Siege, and with all hast March to oppose him, and with large gifts to have the sooner done he so corrupted *Ilias Beg* the young Princes Tutor, that he delivered him up together with the City of *Nice*, where he was by *Amurath's* command Strangled.

Amurath having appeased these Rebellious Tumults, Lessened his Council from 5 to 2 *Bassas*, viz. *Ibrahim*, and *Eivazes*, the latter of which being much envied by those that were outed, they supposing it was done by his perswasion, possessed *Amurath* that he had a design upon his Life, and after that to seize his Kingdom, and for that purpose went privately armed; to prove the truth of which *Amurath* one day clasping him in his Arms, as in token of Friendship, found it so indeed, and therefore growing more suspicious, notwithstanding his many excuses for his so doing, caused his Eyes to be put out, and soon after had news of the death of the King of *Carramania* his Mortal Enemy, who having lay'd Siege to the City of *Attalia* in *Pamphilia*, as he was viewing it to see where he might most conveniently make an Assault, was shot
into

into the Brest, with an Arrow from a Lope-hole, at which *Amurath* greatly rejoiced, but his joy was soon allayed, by other news of a fierce Invasion of his Territories made by *Tzunites* Prince of *Smyrna*, but it soon blew over, for the Prince being Vanquished by the Vice-Roy of *Anatolia*, was together with his Son taken Prisoner; and contrary to Faith plighted Slain; after this *Amurath* Married the Daughter of Prince *Ifflendar*, and then on a suddain in revenge of the pretended wrongs done him by the *Greeks*, besieged and took *Theffalonica* and dispoiled it of all its Riches, leading away the Inhabitants into miserable Captivity.

At this time amongst other distressed Princes, *John Castriot* Prince of *Epirus*, perceiving the *Turks* ready to invade him, and being no ways Capable to withstand so powerful an Army, resolved to avoid the Miseries of War by a timely accord with the Turkish Tyrant, promising to become his Tributary, and for confirmation thereof, as *Hostages* delivered his 4 Sons, viz. *George*, *Stanisius*, *Reposius*, and *Constantine*; *Amurath* promising well and honourably to intreat them, but as soon as they were within his power, he caused them to be Circumcised, and brought up in the Superstition of the *Mahumetan* Religion, and after the Death of their Father, seized upon his Kingdom, and Poysoned all but *George*, whom he Named *Scanderbeg*; who afterwards became the Mawl and terror of the *Turks*, as will in the Sequel appear.

Amurath being busie in *Europe*, the *Carramanian* King and the other *Mahumetan* Princes invaded his Dominions in *Asia*, which caused him to pass over to repress that dangerous Enemy, which done he returned into *Europe*, and with Fire and Sword fell upon *Hungary*, and turning thence upon the Prince of *Servia*'s refusing to come to his Court seized *Servia*, tho he had Sworn to the contrary.

The

The *Hungarians* being at Variance amongst themselves, and likewise at Wars with the King of *Poland*; upon the breaking off of the Match, between their Queen and the King of *Poland*, *Amurath* resolved upon the Conquest of that Kingdom, invaded *Hungary*, laying close Siege to *Belgrade*, often in vain assaulting it; and now the Queen of *Hungary* being Dead, leaving *Ladislaus* a Child in the Cradle to succeed her, who not able to take any Measures about opposing the *Turk*, and the Kingdom in likelyhood to be overrun; the Nobility concluded to Elect *Uldislaus* King of *Poland*, a man of great Fame and no less courage their King, which done Ambassadors were sent to *Amurath*, still lying at the Siege of *Belgrade*, but they were nothing more able to prevail as to his raising the Siege nor procuring a peace, till such time as in divers assaults half his Army were lost, overwhelmed with Wild-Fire, and strangled in the mines, nor then tho he raised the Siege, would his haughty mind condescend to a Peace; in his return, he greatly troubled the Countries of *Servia* and *Bosnia*, causing the Princes in lieu of saving them from the Spoil, to pay a yearly tribute of 25000 Ducats. *Uldislaus* being settled in his new Kingdom, and having frequently intelligence of the incursions of the *Turks* into *Transylvania*; the better to resist them on that side Created *John Hunides* Vayvod or his Vicegerent in that Country, who putting all things in order, gathered such an Army as he might, and upon news that *Isa* the great *Bassa*, and one of *Amuraths* most Renowned Captains, was returned with a great power and spoiled the Country; he went against him encouraging his Soldiers to Fight Courageously for their Lives, Country, Wives and Children; and then setting upon the proud *Bassa* after a hard foughten Battle, put him to Flight with the loss of 20000 of his men.

This

This Victory nothing daunted *Amurath*, but pushed him forward more eagerly to revenge the disgrace ; whereupon early in the Spring he sent *Melites Bassa* his Viceroy in *Asia*, with a great Army, who spoiling the Country, took a great Booty and many Prisoners, but in his return being pursued by *Huniades*, he overthrew him, & slew the *Bassa* & his Son. By that means recovering all the Prisoners and Riches, together with the *Turkish* Camp, and many *Turkish* Prisoners of note, which caused the *Hungarians* and *Transilvanians* greatly to rejoyce ; part of the Spoiles with the Head of the *Bassa* and his Son, he sent to King *Uldislaus*, the other part he converted to religious uses, and what remained freely bestowed it amongst his Soldiers, not reserving any part to himself.

Upon Bruit of this Victory, and the Fame of the Valiant *Huniades*, *Moldavia* and *Valachia*, before Tributary to the *Turks*, revolted, which so enraged *Amurath* that he sent yet another great Army to reduce them to their former obedience, which with great pride (under the leading of *Schech Abedin, Bassa*, consisting of 80000 Fighting men, amongst which were a great number of *Janizaries*) came on wasting the Country with Fire and Sword as they passed, to oppose which the great *Huniades* marched with 15000 *Hungarians* and *Transilvanians*, and finding them still Plundering near *Vascape* bid them Battle, where after both Armies were put in order, and both Generals by moving-Oration had incited their Souldiers to Fight to the utmost Extremity, a dreadful Fight began, where after six Hours dealing Death on every side, the *Turkish* Army broken and disordered by the *Christians* were put to Flight, with the loss of 30000 Horse and Foot : And their rich Camp which became an acceptable Prey to the Souldiers.

The many Victories gained by *Humiades* over the *Turks*, made *Amurath* more inclinable to peace then before ; yet in his pride he demanded in consideration thereof, the delivery of *Bellgrade* and many other places in *Servia* ; upon which King *Vldislans* called an Assembly of the Estates of his Kingdom, where after many had given their opinions, it was resolved that the *Pious* War should be carryed on with all Vigor Imaginable, and that the *Christians* following their good Fortune should invade the Turkish Countries, whereupon a great Army was raised, and passing the *Danubius* lead by the King and *Humiades*, they wasted all the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*, and having intelligence that the *Turks* were with a great Army coming down against them ; *Humiades* drawing out 10000 of the most expert Horsemen, having notice where they lay incamped in the Night : Broke in amongst them, and put 'um almost all to the Sword ; returning the next Day with great Spoil, where the King lay incamped, where he was received with great Joy.

This easie Victory wherein there fell 30000 *Turks*, and not past 300 of the *Christians*, so lightned the Souldiers, that they desired nothing more then to be lead forward, but coming to the great Mountain *Hemus*, and finding all the passages stopped, and being greatly afflicted with Hungar and Cold ; their Courages began to abate, and they to conceive a desire of returning home : the which whilst they were about to do, the *Turks* under the leading of *Caramby Bassa*, *Amuraths* Brother in Law came down from the Mountains, and fell furiously upon the Rear of the Army commanded by *Humiades*, and the Despot of *Servia*, the King with the Van being a Days march before ; but after a sharp Incounter were overthrown, and the Great *Bassaw* taken by a common Souldier, who being

being demanded of *Humiades* what he would have for his Prisoner, he asked only 10 Ducats; yet *Humiades* ordered him 400, and the same Night sold him again to the Despot for 40000 Ducats.

In this Battle, but, as some say, in that Fought near *Moravia*, the famous *Scanderbeg* found means to fly the Turkish Servitude, and leading *Amurath's* Secretary with him, commanded him in the Name of *Amurath* to Write to the Governour of *Croia*, to deliver him the City, that being the *Metropolis* of *Epirus*, the which when he had done, he slew him and as many *Turks* as were with him to prevent its coming to the knowledge of *Amurath*, before he had accomplished his design. And thereupon with several of his trusty Friends Posting away, had the City as he wished for put into his possession, whither he sent for Prince *Amaza* his Kinsman, and many other of his acquaintance informing them what he intended, viz. that he resolved to recover his Rightful inheritance, and deliver his Subjects from the Tyranny of the *Turks*, which made them not a little rejoyce, and greatly encourage him to proceed in so honourable an undertaking.

Things being at this pass, and the design known; great was the resort of the *Epirots* to their Lawful Prince, who for the delivery of his Country from Servitude had set up his Standard: Such Cities as conveniently could daily revolting to him, as *Petrella*, *Penna*, *Alba* and *Stelusa*; other he reduced by force, and having possession of the greatest part of *Epirus*, he raised what forces he could, and the more to provoke the *Turk*, passed into *Macedonia*, spoiling the Country before him, and putting the *Turks* to the Sword.

Amurath hearing this unexpected news, sent 40000 select Souldiers under the leading of *Alis Bassa*, of

whose coming *Scanderbeg* having notice retired into *Epirus*, and putting all things in order, raised what forces he could to oppose the *Turks*, comforting his People in the best wise; who upon the *Bassa's* approach were filled with fear, and then marching against him, set upon him as he was wasting his Country of *Upper Dibra*, and overthrew him with the Slaughter of 22000 of his men, with the loss of Scarce 300 of his own, the news of which raised such despair in *Amurath*, that he was glad to accord a peace with the *Hungarian King*, by renouncing his claim to *Moldavia*, *Transilvania* and *Bulgaria*; and then turning his Arms against the *Carramanian King*, his Brother-in-Law seized upon the greatest part of his Country, but upon his Submission and giving in Hostage his Eldest Son, for the performance of paying double tribute he restored him again to his former dignity, and then as a man weary of the World, sent for his Youngest Son *Mahomet*, his Eldest Son *Aladine* being killed at the Siege of *Iconium*, by a fall from his Horse, and appointing *Caly Bassa* his Tutor, and *Chosore* a learned Doctor of the Law his Counsellors, he resigned to him the Kingdom being as yet but 15 Years of Age, and retiring into *Asia* entered into a Cloister of Turkish Monks, there intending to spend the remainder of his Days. But he had no sooner resigned his Government, ere *Uldislaus King of Hungary* perswaded thereto by *Julian the Popes Legate* who absolved him of his Oath broke the 10 Years League made with the *Turks*. But God let not so heinous an Offence against his divine Majesty pass long unrevenged. For *Amurath* roused with this unexpected news, leaving his Cloister, passed over into *Europe* with an Army of 100000 *Turks*, and advancing with all speed against the *Christians*, who had invaded most of his Countries in *Europe* near the City

City of *Varna*, both Armies meeting a cruel Fight began with an infinite Slaughter of the *Turks*, whom *Huniades* and the King charged with such fury, that all the Fields lay covered with the Slain, which *Amurath* perceiving and finding his Battle to Swerve, and his men at the point to Fly; pull'd the Writing containing the League he had made with *Uldislans* out of his Bosom, and holding it up, with his Eyes lifted towards Heaven with a loud Voice said, Behold thou Crucified Christ, this is the League thy Christians in thy name made with me, which they have without any cause Violated, now if thou be a God as they say thou art, and we deem, revenge the wrong now done unto thy name, and shew thy power upon thy perjured People, who in their deeds deny thee their God.

Upon this Speech of *Amurath's*, the *Christians* who before were well nigh Conquerers began to give Ground, which the *Hungarian* King perceiving charging into the Thickest of the Turkish Army, in hopes to restore the Battle was there Slain, which so discouraged the *Hungarians*, that *Huniades* not being able to stay their Flight giving place to necessity, and reserving himself for better fortune fled with them, and left the *Turks* the Victory, but so dearly bought, that only thinking the *Christians* had retired to their Camp, they durst not venture upon it for two Days space, till by the profound silence they perceived it was abandoned. In this Fight, most of the *Hungarian* Nobility were slain, and amongst the rest *Julian* the Popes Legate, the Author of the perjurous Expedition, who being wounded and flying out of the Battle fainted for loss of Blood, & dyed in a Ditch. And thus we may see how just the Almighty is in punishing those that dishonour him, and little Avails the Popes dispensation.

This great and mortal Battle in which perished on both sides 60000 men, was Fought *Anno 1444*, after which *Amurath* glad of the Victory, tho much dismayed with his great loss returned to *Adrianople*, and again resigned his Kingdom to his Son; but soon after being weary of the Melancholy Life, he again assumed his kingly Dignity.

At this great Battle of *Varna*, *Scanderbeg* should have been present; being on his way with 30000 Horse and Foot in order to have joyned King *Vladislaus*. But God prevented his ingaging in so bad a Quarrel, by permitting both Armies to ingage ere he could arrive, of which intention of *Scanderbeg's* *Amurath* having notice sent sharply to reprove him of Ingratitude, to which the Valiant Prince as sharply reply'd, upbraiding the *Turk* with the Poysoning his 3 Brothers, seizing upon his Kingdom, and often determining to take his Life whilst he remain'd in his Court, which so thoroughly nettled the old *Turk*, that he raised great forces to invade *Epirus*, sending of *Ferises* and *Mustapha* his chief *Bassas*, with promise of great reward if they could take *Scanderbeg*, and subdue the Country: but on the contrary they were both overthrown by the Invincible Prince, and forced to return with great dishonour, yet the Prince of *Peloponnesus* had not the like good Fortune, but for the preservation of his Country was obliged to become tributary to the *Turk*.

Vladislaus being Slain, as aforesaid, *Humiades* was made Governour by the general consent of the *Hungarian* Nobility; during the Minority of the Young King, Son to the deceased Queen, who having settled the necessary Affairs of the Kingdom with great discretion, and finding the *Turks* since the late dreadful overthrow at *Varna*, greatly to have incroached upon the *Hungarian* Territories, he raised a great power
and

and marched against them, when in the Territories of his Country near the River *Schichniza*, meeting *Amurath* with a vast Army, he courageously charged upon his formost Battle, so that within a while, new Succors being sent the whole Armies were engaged, which Battle without any other pausing then what Night obliged them to, Fought for the space of 3 Days, at the end of which the *Christians* being rather overpowered by number then true valour, having done all that men were capable of doing, Fled disorderly, and were Slain in great abundance: *Humiades* himself Flying after, having Incountered and overcome two sturdy Thieves who set upon him to Rob him, was taken Prisoner by the ungrateful Despot of *Servia*, whose Country he had a little before rescued out of the Hands of the *Turks*: And forced to deliver up several strong Towns, which the *Despot* pretended belonged to his Territories for his Ransom. In this Battle were Slain of the *Turks* 40000, and of the *Christians* 17000.

The Year following *Amurath* invaded the *Despot's*, for not delivering into his power *Humiades* his Capital Enemy; whereupon he was constrained to send his humble Supplication to *Humiades*, whom he not long before had so evil intreated, for aid; who notwithstanding leavyed a great Army, and passing through *Servia*, where the false *Despot* to curry Favour with *Amurath*, taking an account of his Army, secretly sent the *Turk* notice what number the *Christians* were, and what they intended; yet this great Captain marched on to the Plains of *Cassova*, famous for the many Battles there Fought between the *Turks* and the *Christians*, where finding *Amurath* incamped with a huge Army he bid him Battel, which as the former with great Slaughter continued for the space of 3 Days, but with better Success, for in the end Vi-

story declared for the *Christians*, all the Plains being covered with the Body of the Slain, most of the Turkish Commanders, either Perished in the Fight, or fell into the Hands of *Huniades*, who having recovered many Towns, delivered the Prisoners to the *Despot*, and returned with Triumph to *Buda*.

And now a quarrel arising between *Scanderbeg*, and the Duke of *Venice*, about one *Lech Zachery*, a Nobleman of *Epirus*; who being shamefully Murthered by *Lech Duchagne* his Kinsman, and having great Territories on the Frontiers of the Kingdom; the Duke claimed it as belonging to his Signory, seizing upon the City of *Dayna* part thereof, of which trouble *Mustapha* the Great *Bassa*, who lay in *Macedonia* with a great Army, being advertised by the command of *Amurath* entered *Epirus*, of which *Scanderbeg* having notice gathered all his forces, and finding him Burning the Country in the upper *Dibria*, where both Armies confronting each other, a *Turk* named *Caragusa* stepping forth, Challenged any in the *Christian* Camp to Fight him Hand to Hand; which bold Challenge being accepted by *Manessi* one of *Scanderbeg's* Captains, he at the first Incounter slew the Challenger, which did not a little dismay the *Turks*, who highly relied upon the Strength of their Champion; for the Battle immediately joyning, the *Turks* were overthrown with great Slaughter, and the *Bassa* taken Prisoner, who was afterwards Ransomed by *Amurath* for 25000 Ducats.

This overthrow so enraged the Tyrant, that raising a mighty Power, he came in Person to invade *Epirus*; promising great rewards to those that could bring *Scanderbeg's* Head; of which more then ordinary preparations *Scanderbeg* having timely notice, furnished his Cities with all things necessary, providing them with strong Garrisons, himself resolving to keep the
Field

Field with his Army, and by Ambushes and frequent Assaults, to weaken and cut off the Enemy, which upon the arrival of the Turkish Army he so effectually performed, that seldom a Day or Night past that he intrapped not some or other of the Vauntcuriers, or broke into their Camp; insomuch that they were obliged to be continually in Arms; whereupon *Amurath* designing to win some strong City, there to leave a Garrison, and so to depart, besieged *Sferigrade* with all his power, continually thundering against it with his great Ordnance. But one *Prelat* a Valiant Captain being Governour, right Manfully defended it, insomuch that in the frequent Assaults made he lost 20000 of his best men, yet being ashamed to raise his Siege 'ere he had won the City, sent to offer terms of Peace with great Priviledges and immunities, if they surrender'd the place, as likewise by secret means indeavoured to corrupt the Captains with great promises; but they detesting his offer regarded more their Loyalty to their Prince then his Gold, yet at the same time there wanted not one base minded Vallain, who for a Sum in Hand and other large offers, when he had performed his promise, undertook to deliver the City into the Hands of *Amurath*; which by this means he effected.

This great City standing upon a Rock, had in it but one Well, which served both the Soldiers and Citizens plentifully with Water, into this Well did the Villain by occupation a Smith cast the Carcas of a stinking Dog, which the next Morning found by some of the Soldiers, and drawn thence the rumour thereof was quickly spread throughout, whereupon the Soldiers notwithstanding all the intreaties of the Governour and chief Citizens, the Soldiers would not be perswaded to Drink thereof, resolving rather to indure the worst Extremity; and by this means the City

City not being tenable, the Governor to prevent a mutiny amongst his Soldiers, and the danger the City was in to be sacked, sent to *Amurath* to acquaint him, that upon condition the Garrison might pass with Bag and Baggage to *Scanderbeg*, and the Citizens live peaceably, he would deliver him the City; who being glad of this offer freely granted their demand, only with this condition, that the Citizens should build their Houses without the City.

These Articles agreed on, the City was delivered to *Amurath*, and the Traytor by whose means it was surrendered, was rewarded with three rich Suits of Apparel, 50000 Aspers, and the promise of a yearly Pension of 2000 Ducats; but long he had not enjoyed his riches 'ere he received a juster reward of his Treason; being, as 'tis said, secretly made away by the command of *Amurath*, who tho he loved the Treason, abhorred the Traytor.

The City being thus gained, *Amurath* having furnished it with a Garrison of his best men, departed with the rest of his Army to *Hadrianople*, upon the Rear of which *Scanderbeg* setting with 8000 Horse and 3000 Foot, cut off a great part of his Army. And having followed quite out of his Territories, returned to *Croia*, and fortified it, upon notice that *Amurath* intended to return with his Army in the Spring, in which he was not deceived; for the old Turk desirous to subdue the Country of *Epirus*, to obliterate the disgrace he had received by the many overthrows he had there received, he sent *Sebahyas* one of his *Bassas* before with part of his Army; himself following slowly with the rest, and upon his arrival sat down before the great City of *Croia*, where having cast 10 Pieces of Cannon, he began to batter it, the which with great fury he continued to do for the space of 4 Days in two places, beating down part

of the Wall, upon which he commanded the Assault to be given, thrusting his men desperately into the Breach, giving order that such as Shrunk should be killed by their Fellows, and on the other side promising them great reward, if they entered the City, and *Mahomet* his Son being then in the Camp, and commanding as General promised 100000 Aspers to him that should first advance his Ensign upon the Wall; but neither prevailed, for *Uranacotes* the Governour, a Valiant man encouraging his Soldiers, gave the *Turks* such a Welcome, that they left 8000 of their dead Bodies in the Breach, Ditches and Plains adjacent; which *Amurath* perceiving and understanding the invincible courage of the *Epirots*, caused the retreat to be founded, and after many repulses and no hopes of prevailing, he fell to his old practice, endeavouring to corrupt the Governour, and chief Captains with large Gifts, and to that end sent a Crafty *Bassa*, with two Servants Loaded with Treasure; which the Governour with disdain rejected, Vowing that if the like were attempted again, that he would cause the Hands, Noses and Ears of the Messengers to be cut off, and they so returned to their Master.

During this Siege, *Scanderbeg* was not Idle but still hovered about the *Turks* Camp, frequently Alarming 'um, and breaking into one Quarter, or other, killing those that Guarded it, and taking great Booties, insomuch that after several Months Siege, and the loss of 30000 men, *Amurath* through Grief and despair Dyed in his Tent Anno 1450, in the 85 Year of his Age, and of his Reign the 28, or as some say, the thirtieth, leaving *Mahomet* his Son to succeed him in his troublesome Kingdom, charging him to revenge his Death upon *Scanderbeg*, and so having his Corps conveyed to *Prusa*, he was there interred by his Ancestors.

CHAP. XII.

The Life of Mahomet the second of that Name, seventh King, and the first that took upon him the Style of Emperor of the Turks, who for his many Victories, was surnamed Great.

A *Murath* being dead *Mahomet* the second began his Reign over the *Turkish* Kingdom, Anno 1450. Being of a fiery Cruel Nature, given to many Debauches, not acknowledging any Deity, but ascribing all things to Fortune and Chance; who, e'r he was well settled, caused his two Brethren, the one an Infant, and the other not above twelve years of Age, to be put to Death; after which he fell to altering the Constitution of the Government, by abrogating the Old Laws, and Establishing new ones more suitable to his Humour: So that he began to be exceedingly hated by his Subjects, when to prevent any disorder that might happen by the Soldiers lying Idle, he hearing that *Ibrahim* King of *Carramania* was entered his Territories in the lesser *Asia*, passed thither, upon whose Arrival the King unable to oppose him, fled into the Mountains, and from thence sent his Ambassadors to treat with him, who offered such Submission in the behalf of their Masters, as *Mahomet* was well Content to accept, and so returned to his City of *Prusa*, sending *Isaac Bassa*, against *Elias* Prince of *Mentesia*, or *Caria*, who altogether deprived the said Prince of his Country, annexing it to the *Turkish* Empire, for so henceforth I must call it.

Mahomet being proud of his Petty Conquests, without any Colour or Reason, only being driven Head-long

long by Ambition; he resolved to make War upon the *Greek* Emperor, and to have the sooner done, marched to the Walls of *Constantinople* with a great Power, laying Siege to that Imperial City, which had once been Mistress of the World, which he reduced to such Extremity, that the Citizens for meer Hunger left no filthy thing uneaten, and at last Eat one another; and perceiving none intended to relieve them, they enforced by invincible necessity yielded the fairest City of the World, to the Will of the Tyrant, having made all the defence that from true Valour could be expected.

The proud Conqueror entering the City, amidst his Cups caused all the *Grecian* Nobility, the chief Citizens and Nobles of other Nations to be slain in his Presence. *Constantinus Paleologus* the Emperor being before slain and Trampled underfoot in the Press, as he was endeavouring to escape the Imperial City; this taken after a years Siege, *Pera* a City of the *Greeks* opposite to it surrendred, yet were the Citizens used with all manner of Despite: And now removing the Imperial Seat from *Hadrianople* to *Constantinople*, where it has ever since remain'd, he repaired the Walls, and such Buildings, as had been demolished by the Fury of the Cannon.

Amongst the Captives taken in the City, one of his Commanders presented unto him one of the most beautiful Ladies that Nature ever formed, named *Irene*, being nobly descended; and for Education not to be parallell'd, upon this incomparable Beauty, *Mahomet* so doted, that he spent whole Days and Nights with her, never thinking his time well spent but in her Company: So that his warlike Affairs were altogether neglected, which caused his Captains to murmur against him, though they durst not freely speak their Minds, which *Mustapha Bassa*, one that had been bred up with

with him, observing, presuming upon the Interest he had in him, took upon him boldly to declare his Mind, laying before him the glorious Atchievements of his Ancestors, and the disgrace and obloquie he incurred by devoting himself to amorous Delights, whilst the Affairs of his Empire were neglected.

At this free Speech of the *Bassas*, *Mahomet* was wonderfully offended, telling him he was worthy of Death for his unseasonable Presumption ; but notwithstanding he would pardon him for the good Opinion he had of his Fidelity, Commanding him the next Morning to assemble all his Captains, and chief Councillors the next Morning to attend his Pleasure in his Pallace ; which being accordingly done, he came out of his Chamber, leading the fair *Greek* in most splendid Attire, which adding Luster to her rare Perfections, made her appear more like an Angel then a Mortal ; and sternly demanding of them, Whether if any of them had such an inestimable Treasure, they would not be thrice advised e'r they parted with it : To which they all answered, that he had with greater reason passed his time with her, then any man had to find fault therewith. To which the barbarous Tyrant replied, well, but now I Will make you to understand how far you have been deceived in me, and that there is no earthly thing that can so much blind my Senses, or bereave me of my Reason, as not to see or understand what becometh my high Calling ; yea, I would you should all know that the Honour and Conquest of the *Othoman* Kings, my noble Progenitors, is so fixed in my breast, with such a Desire in my self to exceed the same, as nothing but Death is able to put out of my Remembrance ; and having so said, he presently with one of his Hands catching the fair *Greek* by the Hair, and with the other drawing his Scimiter smote off her Head, she vainly Crying out for Mercy, and then

then taking the bloody Head in his Hand turning to his Captains ; said, now by this Judge ye, whether your Emperor is able to Bridle his Affections, or not ; and immediately to put this cruel Act out of his Mind, gave order for his Army to march to the Invasion of *Peloponnesus*, which he soon brought into Subjection, taking most of the principal Cities, and putting the Inhabitants to the Sword ; but upon the Submission of *Demetrius* the Prince thereof, he restored him upon Condition of his becoming Tributary to the *Turkish* Empire ; and afterwards being inamoured of his fair Daughter took her to Wife, and soon after hearing of the Death of *George Despot* of *Servia*, he seized upon his Country ; and so passing on with his Army besieged *Belgrade*, both by Land and Water, as having a great Fleet upon the River *Danubius*, on whose Bank that City is seated ; which Fleet being incountered by several Ships of War, sent by *Humiades* for that purpose were soon destroyed ; which so enraged the *Turk*, that immediately giving order for the assaulting the City, his men were beaten off with the loss of 4000 men, and amongst the rest *Curaizis Bassa* his Lieutenant in *Europe*, who making his approach was slain with a great Shot ; and so well did the Valiant *Humiades* defend that City, that after many unsuccessful assaults, *Mahomet* was forced to raise his Siege, and departed with 40000 less then he brought.

The great *Humiades* having thus long stood a Bulwark to *Christendom*, now worn out with the toyls of War fell sick ; and although his Disease was grievous, yet desirous to receive the blessed Sacrament, he would be carried to the Church, saying it was not fit, that the Lord should come to the House of his Servant : But that rather the Servant should go to the House of his Lord, and after his being brought home, his Sickness Increasing, he gave up the Ghost to the Grief of all

all the *Christian* Princes, and was buried in the Church of St. Stephen in *Alba Julia*.

Mahomet hearing of the Death of this great Captain, who opposed the Torrent of his Victories greatly rejoiced, and now resolving to extend his Dominions, as well by Sea as Land, Equipped a great many in the Port of *Constantinople*, with which he invaded the Islands in the *Egean* Sea, reducing several of them to his obedience, and Landing his Army, straightly besieged the famous City of *Rhodes*; but *Calixtus* the third then Bishop of *Rome*, being greatly displeased for the loss of *Pera*, a City belonging to his See, aided by the *Genoways*, sent out a great Fleet under the Conduct of *Lodonicus*, Patriarch of *Aquilla*, fought with the *Turks* Gally, sunk and burnt most of them. And by that means recovered the Islands they had taken, which so enraged *Mahomet*, that he prepared an other Fleet against the Spring; the which whilst he was doing, Ambassadors came from *Usun Cassanus* King of *Persia* with many rich Presents, desiring that he would enter into League with the mighty Prince his Master, and remit the Tribute payed him by the King of *Trepezond*; that Kingdom as he said, after the Death of the then Reigning King, revolving to his Master, in right of his Wife, Daughter to the said King; which Peremptory demand so enraged *Mahomet*, that he not only refused his Presents, but dismissed his Ambassador with this Answer: That he would himself ere long be in *Asia*, to teach *Usun Cassanes* what to request of one greater then himself, and thereupon Commanded the Fleet he had prepared for the Invasion of the Isles in the *Egeum*, incontinently to sail to *Sinope*, the chief City of *Paphlagonia*, and to expect his coming thither with his Army by Land; which City and Country being under the *Persian* King, he resolved to besiege it on no other Account, then to raise a
ground

ground of Quarrel ; which City being but slenderly fortified, and not able to indure the Force of the Ordnance, it was delivered by *Ismale* the Prince of *Paphlagonia* into his Hands, who putting a Garrison therein proceeded to the Siege of *Trepezond*, which he had in like manner yielded to him, who sent the Emperor, together with his Empress Sons and Daughters Prisoners to *Constantinople*, dispeopling the City, and thrusting thereinto a Garrison of his *Janizaries*, by that means bringing the whole Country into Subjection, and for ever ruining that *Christian* Empire : And now hearing that *Waldus Dracula* Prince of *Valachia*, his Tributary, went about to joyn with the *Hungarians* his mortal Enemies, he sought by all means to get him into his Power, to effect which he sent *Chamuzes Bassa*, and his Secretary accompanied with several others, to invite him to Court, but the Prince understanding the Design upon his Life, hanged the *Bassa* and Secretary, and impaled the rest alive, and then invaded his Country with Fire and Sword, which so enraged *Mahomet*, that he in Person with a great Army invaded *Valachia*, ruining all with Fire and Sword, till at length driving the Prince out of his Country, he gave it to his younger Brother, who in lieu thereof became his Tributary, and upon his return invaded the Islands in the *Egeum*, as he had before purposed, and Landing on the Isle of *Mitrylene* took the strong City, from whence the Island take its name, after twenty seven years Battery with the great Ordnance, and then for non-payment of Tribute, invaded the Kingdom of *Bassan* ; which subdued he by that means incompassed *Epirus*, he having all this while according to his Directions of the Father, by one or other of his *Bassas*, maintained War against *Scanderbeg*, but with such bad success, that he thought more then Convenient to make Peace with him ; but such were his Proposals, that *Scanderbeg* with scorn rejected 'um, whereupon *Mahomet* sent *A-*

Amasa Bassa with 12000 Horsemen, to wast *Epirus*; but *Scanderbeg* incountering with 6000 put his Army to flight, and took him Prisoner, and worse faired *Debreus Bassa*, who soon after was sent with 14000 Horsemen, for ingageing with *Scanderbeg's* Forces, his Army was overthrown, and himself slain.

Mahomet grieved his Affairs prospered no better, and finding that by force he could not prevail against *Scanderbeg*, he dealt underhand by giving great Rewards to his Captains, thinking if he could cause them to revolt, *Scanderbeg* would easily be subdued, and so effectually he wrought with *Moses* his chief Captain, and a great Soldier, that in hopes of the Kingdom of *Epirus* promised by *Mahomet*; when *Scanderbeg* should be subdued, and a great mass of Money, he found means to escape to *Constantinople*, and after him *Amasa* another of *Scanderbeg's* Captains, who were sent by *Mahomet* with great Power to invade *Epirus*; but being overthrown by the invinsible Prince, they received such cold Comfort at their return, that fearing their Lives, which indeed the *Turk* had a design to bereive them off, *Moses* fled and humbling himself at the Feet of his Compassionate Prince, he notwithstanding his Treachery received him again into his Service, who afterward served him faithfully in his Wars, but *Amasa* being overthrown in his expedition with *Isaac Bassa*, with the loss of 20000 *Turks* upon his return, was by the Command of *Mahomet* as most Conjectured poisoned, after which *Scanderbeg* concluded a Peace with the *Turks* for a year, and was afterwad continued for a longer time, during which great War happened between the *Turks*, about the seizing the Islands in the *Egeum*, and thereby hindering the Traffick in the *Mediterranian*, to the great impoverishing their Signiory. Wherefore entering into a Confederacy with the Princes, they Arme both by Sea and Land; into which

Leauge

League they with many perswasions drew *Scanderbeg*, notwithstanding his League made with *Mahomet* was not expired.

The Princes thus Confederated raising great Forces, when in the mean time *Mahomet* sent *Seremet Bassa* against *Scanderbeg*, to keep him from joyning with the *Venetians*, whose Duke *Christopher Maurus* was coming to him, with ten Gallies appointed; with which *Bassa* *Scanderbeg* fought, and put him to flight with the loss of ten Thousand of his Men, taking the Treasurer of the Army, and six others of Account Prisoners, who were speedily Ransomed at 40000 Duccats; and greater things had been done, had not the Duke of *Venice* dyed of a Fever, upon whose Death his Army returned home *Victor Capella*; the next year with the *Venetian Fleet*, seized *Athens*, *Aulis*, *Chalchis*, *Larsum*, and the Isle of *Himber*: But attempting to recover *Patras* was overthrown.

Hungary being destitute of such a King as might defend them against the Power of the *Turks*, elected *Matthias Corroinus*, the youngest Son of *John Huniades* their great Captain deceased, who not much inferiour to his Father in valour and success in Arms, gave the *Infidels* many a fatal overthrow, with the Loss of many of their Armies, and gave great hopes to the *Christians* that he would as indeed he did prove a Bulwark to *Christendom*.

Whilst things thus passed, *Mahomet* desirous to revenge himself of *Scanderbeg*, sent *Ballabanus* with a great Army to invade his Territories, whom *Scanderbeg* charging furiously overthrew him, but *Moses* and others of his Captains contrary to the command of their General, in the heat of fight following their Enemies into the straits of the Mountains, where fallen into an Ambush for that purpose layed, they were taken Prisoners, and carried

to *Constantinople*, by those they had before Vanquished, wherewith *Sanderbeg* sent to desire that he might Ransom them, but the crafty Tyrant knowing how much he was weakned by such a loss, caused them Cruelly to be slain alive, and soon after sent *Jacup Bassa* with a great Army, with whom the renowned Prince ingaging, slew him hand to hand, and put to the Sword a great part of his Army, upon news of which *Mahomet* mad with Anger, raised an Army of 200000 men, thinking to overrun the Country, but in vain, for having a long time layn Siege to *Croia*, and there by the furious Sallies of the Garrison, and onsets of *Scanderbeg*, lost near half his men, together with *Ballabanus* his General, he with great shame and confusion returned to *Constantinople*.

But as all things must yield to Fate, so our invincible Champion, whom no mortal hand could subdae, wearyed with the Toils of a tedious War, coming to *Lyssa* a City of the *Venetians*, fell Sick, and calling the *Venetian* Embassador to him, he discovered to him what a troublesome Life he had lived, and by what means the War was to be maintained, recommending to him the care of his Wife and Children, appointing the *Venetians* the Guardians of his Son, till such time he came of Age, and in the mean while to secure for him the Kingdom of *Epirus*, admonishing him to be faithful and as much as in him lay to maintain peace and unity. Then calling his Wife and Son, told them that he must leave the World and exchange this Life for one more durable, and willed her that after his death she should pass over into *Apulia*, and there to live upon the inheritance given him by King *Ferdinand*, and then after some devout Prayers, gave up the Ghost, Anno. 1466. in the 63 year of his Age and 24 of his Reign, to the great grief of the *Christian* Princes, and joy of the *Turks*, whose Armys his very name had frequently

frequently put to flight. After his death he was with great Solemnity buried in the Cathedral Church at *Lyssa*, where he rested till about 9 years after, at what time the *Turks* taking the City dug up his Bones, and happy was he that could get the smallest piece, which they wore about them ever after as inestimable Jewels, superstitiously imagining that whilst they had them about u'm *Scanderbeg's* fortune would attend u'm, and that they should be invincible.

Not long after the Death of this renowned Soldier, the *Hungarians* under the leading of their young King, seized upon the Kingdom of *Bosna*, and soon rent it from the *Turkish* Empire, demolishing the Castles and driving away the Garrisons placed there by *Mahomet*, at what time the *Venetians* being abroad with a great fleet of Gallies, took divers Cities from the *Turks*, burnt many Villages, and carryed away 2000 Captives into the Country of *Eubæa*, now called *Nigroponte*, which so enraged *Mahomet*, that he prepared a great Army to invade that Country, and recover the spoil; in order to effect which, he sent *Mahomet Bassa* with a fleet of 300 Gallies, whilst himself with a great Army Marched overland, with which the *Venetian* Admiral not daring to engage it, arrived safe, where the *Turks* landing took *Stora Basafilicon*, and Marching to *Chalcis* joined with the Emperors Army, who with small Vessels and other Materials, made a Bridge over the straight or narrow Sea, which divides *Eubæa* from *Achaia*, straightly besieging it both by Sea and Land, and with his Cannon for 4 days battered the City incessantly, being given to understand by the chief Cannoneer of the City, whom he had bribed, which was the weakest part, inso-much that in the end several large breaches were made, yet was the City so manfully defended, that the *Turks* could not enter, and every day were the *Turks* forced

to make a new Battery, for such part of the Wall as was in the Day time beaten down, which the Citizens in the Night repaired, and at length coming to understand the Tretchery of their Gunner, hanged him up as a reward of his Tretchery; *Mahomet* perceiving the valor of the defendants, resolved after his having rent the Wall with his Cannon in divers places, and thirty Days besieged the City, to give a general assault with all his power, at what time the *Venetian* Admiral came in sight of the City with his Fleet, but would not tho his Captains urged, either Fight with *Turkish* Gallies, or endeavour to break the Bridge, the which had he done, he had shut up *Mahomet*, and all his forces in the Island, where through Famine and other necessities he might have greatly distressed him. This Cowardice of the Admiral, for which he and all his Family was afterwards Bannished by the Signory of *Venice*, being perceived by the *Turks*, they gave a furious assault on all parts, and were so stoutly repulsed, that they with their dead filled up the Trenches and Breaches, but their number still increasing, and continuing the assault a whole day and a night without intermission, the Citizens at last being 3 parts of them Slain, and wounded, the remaining part retired to the Market, and there upon the *Turks* entering Fought it out to the last man; selling their Lives at a dear rate, amongst whom many Women disguised in men's apparel Fighting courageously were Slain.

The City being thus gained at the price of 40000 *Turks* Lives the Barbarous Tyrant commanded all that were found therein to be put to the Sword; which *Paulus Ericus* the Governour understanding, with his Wife, Daughter, and trusty Friends, betook himself to the Castle, who capitulated that upon the surrender of the *Castle*, himself, and his Friends should

should have their Lives and Liberties Granted them, which the Tyrant solemnly Swore to, but having gotten them in his power, made at the great loss, he had sustained in winning the City, he caused the Governour and all but his Daughter to be presently Slain, reserving the young Lady, as the only Mirror of Beauty, to satiate his lust; but she disdain- ing the Tyrants promises, and reviling him for his wicked purposes, rather desiring Death than to lose her Chastity by becoming his prostitute, he caused her even in his presence to be cruelly put to Death, and then proceeded to subdue the other Cities of the Island; who terrified with the fate of *Chalcis*, sur- rendered without being Assaulted: So that all the Fruit- ful Island of *Eubœa* fell into the Hands of the *Turks*, who infinitely enriched themselves in taking the Spoil.

The *Turks* thus Triumphant over the Ocean Islands, the *Christians* thought it no ways convenient to be lookers on, but in time to oppose them, whereupon the *Venerians* aided by *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, *Sex- tus* the fourth Bishop of *Rome*, and the Great Ma- ster of *Rhodes*, set out a powerful Navy; under the command of *Petrus Mocenicus*, a Valiant *Venetian* Gentleman, and the better to Amate him both by Sea and Land, drew *Alymbicus Usan Cassanes*, the great King of *Persia* into a League with them, and so at once by Sea and Land; invading the *Ottoman* Empire, took many strong places, and Loaded the Fleet with the Spoil, which Fleet consisting of 85 so terrified *Mahomet*, that he durst not ingage them, nor once oppose their proceedings, but in revenge thereof turn- ed his whole force upon *Epirus* and *Dalmatia*; which Countries having lost their Champion, the renown- ed *Scanderbeg*, growing Weak, he mightily wasted with Fire and Sword, till he had made an absolute

conquest over them, and the easier by Reason of the discords, that arose amongst the great Commanders, during the Minority of the King; but ere *Mahomet* had well settled himself in those so much desired Countries, he had news that the *Persians* with a great Army invaded his Countries in *Asia*, which made him begin to consider how to defend his own, rather then further to proceed in Conquering what appertained to others, so that increasing his Army with no less then 320000 men, he passed over the *Hellespont*, and after several Days marching, came within a League of the *Persian* Army, lead by *Usan Cassanes* their King, who after some debate, gave the *Turks* Battle near the Mountains of *Armenia*, in which one of the great *Bassas* together with 40000 *Turks* were Slain, and the rest put to Flight, which so discouraged *Mahomet*, that had not his great Captains used many Arguments to perswade him to the contrary, would have returned without attempting any thing further, but being roused by their reproofs, lest he should be suspected of Cowardise, he resolved to try the Fortune of another Field; in order to which he drew up his forces in *Battalia* near to the Straights of the Mountains, and so fortified his Camp with Waggon, and other cumbersome Carriages, that it seemed a Walled City, when in the midst of his Army, he placed his great Artillery; the which upon the first joyning of Battle, his men opening to the Right and the Left, played so furiously upon the *Persian* Horse-men, that they soon began to Disfrank, by Reason their Horses upon hearing the unwonted Thundering of the Cannon, would know no Ruler but with Head-strong fury Floundered first one way then another, and by that means put all things into confusion, of which *Mahomet* taking the advantage, commanded

commanded his men furiously to charge upon the Enemy as flyers. To resist whose fury and to stay the Flight of his men *Zeinal Usan Cassanes* Eldest Son Labouring, was Slain with a small Shot, which more and more discouraged the *Persians*, so that from retreating, they betook themselves to plain Flight, yet so great was the loss of *Mahomet* that he contented himself only with the Spoil of the Enemies Camp, not thinking it convenient to pursue them, for it was generally Rumoured, that in that Battle he lost 40000 men, and the *Persians* 1000 only, after which *Mahomet* returning home, and *Usan Cassanes* leaving his second Son with his Army, for the defence of *Armenia*. Ambassadors were sent by the former to Treat of a Peace, the which to the great dislike of the *Christians* his Confederates, the *Persian* concluded with the *Turks*.

After the Expedition into the *Persian* Territories, Dyed the Courageous Prince *Mustapha*, as some say of a Surfeit, but others say that he was strangled by the Commandment of his Father, for Ravishing *Bassas Achmets* Wife, a Lady of Incomparable Beauty, and Daughter to *Isaac Bassa* one of *Mahomet's* chief Favorites.

Mahomet desirous to revenge the wrong done by the *Venetians*, sent *Solyman Bassa* with 80000 Soldiers to besiege *Scodra* a strong City; then in the possession of the *Venetians*, and an Inlet into *Epirus*, *Dalmatia* and *Albania*, who Anno 1475 set down before it, and having raised his Batteries, gave it a furious assault, but was repulsed by *Antonius Lauretamus* the Valiant Governour with great loss, when a while after the *Venetian* Gallies coming up the River *Boliana*, on whose Banks the City standeth, and as the *Turks* were busie in laying a Chain across, slew many of them, and forced the rest to retire to their Camp

Camp, out of which soon after *Matthias* King of *Hungary* drove them with the Terror of his approach, the *Bassa* being glad after the loss of 14000 of his men to raise his Siege.

Anno 1476. Mahomet growing impatient to be thus hindred in his progreess of Victory, by the *Christians* confederates, set out a great Fleet under the conduct of *Geduces Achmetes*; who did great harm to the Islands in the *Mediterranean*, and hoped by Treason to have surprized the Island of *Crete*, but was prevented by the *Venetians*, who discovering the Plot Executed the Traitors before his arrival, yet sailing into the *Euxine*, he Landed his men in *Taurica Chersonesus*, a Friutful Country belonging to the *Genoways*; in hopes to have surprized the rich City of *Cassa*, Situate near to the Shoar, but was repulsd with a great Slaughter of his men, bnt being reinforced by fresh Troops, he lay'd Siege to it, which by Reason of the *Turkish* Garrisons all along the shoars of *Bosphorus*, and the *Hellepont* could have no relief by Sea, after a stout resistance surrendered, and soon after all the Country to it appertaining, most of the Merchants contrary to the promise of the Faithless *Bassa*, being plundered of their Riches.

Mahomet thus conquering on, grew dreadful to the Tartar princes; Namely the *Precopenses* and *Destenses*, who for fear of being invaded Voluntarily submitted themselves, and became Tributaries, having ever since been greatly serviceable to the *Turks* in their Wars, who now impatient that the *Venetians* held several strong Towns in the Heart of the *Ottoman*: *Solyman Bassa* with a great Fleet entering the Gulph of *Corinth* lay'd Siege to *Naupactum* now called *Lepanto* a strong City near *Locris* over against *Peloponnesus*, but upon the arrival of *Antonius Lauretanus* with the *Venetian* Gallies, after he had layn 4 Months before

fore it, and gave many unsuccessful assaults, in a great fury raised his Siege in order to his returning to *Constantinople*, and by the way Landing his men on the Isle of *Lemnos*, in hopes to have surprized the City of *Coccinum*, but were Valiantly repulsed by such Citizens, and Merchants Strangers as were then near the Gate, and amongst the rest one *Merulla* a Maiden of the City seeing her Father Slain, took up his Weapon, and with it made great Slaughter of the *Turks* that were entering the Gate, upon which bad Success the *Bassa* departed for *Constantinople*, and soon after was sent to besiege *Croia* in *Epirus*, to the relief of which the *Venetians* hast'ned with an Army, under the leading of *Contarenius* a man of great courage; who at the first onset overthrew the *Turks* with great Slaughter, obliging them to leave their Camp, but not pursuing them by Reason of the near approach of Night, whilst they were taking the Spoil, the Enemy rallying fell into their disordered Ranks, and soon turned the Scale of Victory, by subduing those who a little before were Conquerers, in which last Fight the General, and several of his great Captains were Slain. Heightned with this Success, the Year following *Afa-Beg* with a considerable Army passed the River *Sontium*, where being incountered by the Garrison Soldiers of three several Forts, under the leading of *Hieronimus Nowel*, the Count of *Verona*; he trained the *Venetians* into an Ambush, by which they being few in number, and beset on every side were mostly Slain, after which the proud Conquerers proceeded to spoil the Country, wasting it with Fire and Sword taking great Spoils, and driving before them a number of the miserable People into Captivity.

The Year following *Anno 1478*. about Harvest-time they come again, and with a great power passing

sing the aforesaid River, marched further into the Country, wasting all before them, and unopposed passed over a part of the *Alps* towards *Germany*: a way both difficult and dangerous, and so plundering the *Mountainiers* who little dreamt of such troublesome Visitants, they returned home laden with great Spoil. And now *Mahomet* remembring the disgrace he received at the Siege of *Scodra*, of which he allowed one a yearly Pension, to put him daily in mind, he sent for his Soldiers from all parts of his Dominions, and under the Leading of several of his *Bassas*, himself being there in person, likewise he set down before the City with an Army of 350000 men, and there casting several pieces of Ordnance of Mettal he had for that purpose brought thither in Mass, one of them carrying a Bullet of 1300 pound Weight; he after he had in vain Essayed to have the City delivered by fair means from the Mounts incessantly battered the Walls, and withal threw into the City huge Balls of Wild-Fire, and Stones of a prodigious Weight, which beat down and fired many Houses, yet so far were the besieged from being discouraged, that they daily animated each other courageously to defend the City to the last man, every Night Countermuring the Breaches the Cannon made, with Earth Timber and Planks, which *Mahomet* perceiving commanded his men to give a furious assault, and either by Firing the Planks, or scaling the Walls to enter the City; the which in hopes of great rewards, promised them if they happened to be Successful in the attempt, thrust themselves into the mouth of Slaughter, being cut off in such numbers by the storm of Shot sent from the Walls, that all the plains were covered with their Bodies, which *Mahomet* perceiving and understanding, they could not accomplish his desire caused the retreat to be sounded, and gave order for the

the renewing the Battery, so that in one day the Engineers sent 194 great Shot into the Breach, and immediately caused a second Assault to be made, tho with as bad Success, as had been the former.

About this time the *Turks* under the leading of *Solyman Bassa*, had taken *Croia* more through Famine then their Valour, which City the Inhabitants nigh perished with Hunger, and not being able to expect any Relief, all the Country about the City being in the hands of the *Turks*, had delivered upon promise of Life and Liberty; but the Faithless *Bassa* not having Regard to his Promise, having got Possession put the remaining *Skeletons* to the Sword, which the *Scadrians* understanding by some *Christians* in the *Turks* Camp, were the more incouraged, resolving manfully to dye rather then trust the perfidious *Infidels*.

Mahomet enraged at the besieged obstinacy, and the loss of his men in the two assaults, after he had with his Artillery beaten down a great part of the Wall, Commanded the most Couragious of his Soldiers to give a third Assault, which they did with great Fury, shouting in the mean while Showers of Arrows and Bullets into the City, and at length as men desperate entering into the Breach came to Hand-strokes with the *Christians*, and began a cruel and dreadful Fight, in which many were slain on either side: The *Turks* still renewing their assault with fresh Forces, till at length they so far prevailed, that those who defended the Breach were at the point to retire; at what times a fresh Troop brought by the Governour came happily to their Relief, and beat off the Assailants with great slaughter: Whereupon *Mahomet* again renewed his Battery, and lodged 173 more of his great Shot in the Breach, and then sending for his chief Commanders into his Tent-Royal, pitched upon a Mount advantageously to behold what passed, and there by Threats and

and Promises encouraged them to undertake a fourth Assault. In which he lost 12000 of his best Men, and was forced at last to found a retreat, yet by the several Fights the *Christians* were sorely weakened in all the Streets, lying covered with *Turkish* Arrows, and the Breaches with the mingled Bodies of the *Christians* rent most miserably by the great Shot, they were forced to Labour both Day and Night to repair the Breaches, every one encouraging his Fellow in such sort, that *Mahomet* began to despair of Victory, and blaspheming God, for (as he impiously pretended) hindering his Proceedings, he retired in his Melancholly Mood into his Tent; where Tormenting himself for the space of two days, he would not be spoken with by any, but the third Day calling a Council, it was concluded another Assault should be given, which was according done with great Fury, and much Effusion of Blood on either side, but the besieged and resolving to sell their Lives dear, so manfully withstood them, that with Shame and greater Slaughter then ever they were forced to retire; and now all Provision being cut off from the besieged, the Tyrant resolved to gain that by Famine, he could not do by Force; and therefore ceasing any further Assault, caused the City to be so closely Blocked up, that the *Christians* were forced to Eat all manner of unclean and loathsome Things, as Horses, Dogs, Cats, Rats, Mice, and the like: Which miserable state of theirs made known to the Senate of *Venice*, under whose Protection that City was, and they being grown weary of their twenty years tedious War with the *Turkish* Tyrant, sent *Benedictus Trivisanus* their Ambassador to *Constantinople*, whither weary of the Siege, *Mahomet* was returned leaving one of his *Bassas* with the Army, to Block up the City as aforesaid; who upon his Arrival being admitted to the Presence of the Tyrant, he so ordered the Matter,

Matter, that a Peace was concluded upon these Articles : First, that the *Venetians* should deliver him the City of *Scodra*, the Isle of *Lemnos*, the strong Castle of *Tenarus* in *Peloponnesus*, and pay him yearly 8000 Duccats ; that they might have leave to Traffick in the *Euxine-Sea*, by the Straights of *Bosphorus Hellepontus*, and *Thracius*, and that the Citizens of *Scodra*, and the Garrison contained therein, should upon the Delivery of the said City, be at their Choice free to Live in the City under the *Turkish* Government ; or depart whither they pleased with their Goods, &c. These Articles concluded on Notice thereof was sent to the Governour, who assembling the Citizens related it to u'm, as he had received it from the Ambassador, who then together with the *Venetian* Admiral, Rode at Anchor in the Mouth of *Boliana*, when after some Debate it was agreed, that they would leave the City, and not expose themselves to the Mercy of the Tyrant at all times ; whereupon at a certain time prefixed the City was put into the Hands of the *Bassa*, and the Citizens marching out Bag and Baggage, went on Board the *Venetian* Gallies, who carefully Transported them into their other Territories of *Italy*, and thus was this City surrendered, Anno 1478. after a years Siege, before which 100000 *Turks* had lost their Lives.

Mahomet having gotten what he forely longed for, sent *Achmetes Bassa* with his Gally, to take in the Islands of *Neritus*, *Zacynthus*, and *Cephalenia* ; upon which he seized without any Resistance, *Lenord* Prince of the same, upon the Arrival of the *Turks*, hasting with his Wife and Children into *Italy*, where he was kindly received of King *Ferdinand* his near Kinsman, after that he sent three of his *Bassas* with a great Army to invade *Transilvania* : Whereupon *Stephanas*, *Batore* the *Vayvod*, fled to *Matthias* King of *Hungary* to crave

crave Aid, who at the same time lay sick of the Gout, yet he ordered his two Captains, viz. *Stephanus Cherepetinus*, and *Palus Rivifus*, to march with his Army; who incountering the *Turks* near *Alba Julia*, in a great and bloody Fight overthrew the Army, with the Slaughter of 30000 of their best Men, together with *Isa Bassa* their chief Commander, and of the *Christians* there fell 8000 only.

Mahomet possessing most of the Islands in the *Mediterranean* Sea, began to be very desirous of the Famous *Rhodes*, and to further his Design at the same time, a Fugitive Knight of the Order, named *Antonius Meligalus* residing in his Court, gave him a Plat-form of the City; informing him in what place the City was easiest to be Assaulted, and how the Island might be best subdued: Whereupon a great Fleet was fitted out, and this Traytor to his Country put on Board, with a Command that his Directions should be followed, but he by the way falling sick of a loathsome Disease, so infected the Ship with his noisome Smell, that the Marriners in a great rage threw him Over-Board, whilst he vainly Cryed to them for Mercy, and thus he received the reward due to his Traiterous Intention.

The great Master of *Rhodes*, having notice that *Mahomet* intended to invade his Territories, was like an experienced Captain wanting nothing that might conduce to a resolute Defence, and having certain Notice that *Misistes Bassa* had Landed his Power, and was marching towards the City, he assembled his Captains, and with many Christian and Soldier-like persuasions admonished them to fight the Battle of the *Lord Jesus* against his Enemies, which so wrought upon them that they all resolved to Live and Dye in his defence.

By this time the *Bassa* had set down his Camp, and began

began to raise his Batteries, according to the Directions of one *Demetrius* another Fugitive Knight, who in the first Skirmish according to the Merits of his Treason, having his Horse slain under him, was miserably trampled to Death; most of the Ordnance now bent against the Wall, the *Bassa* sent out a part of his Army to seize upon an Orchard, possessed and intrenched by the *Christians*, which those that possessed it, not being able to defend, against so powerful an Enemy slighted it; and retired to the City, leaving the Ordnance behind them: Out of this Orchard by the advice of one *George Trapain* a *Christian* Runagado, the *Turks* battered the Tower, standing about 300 paces from the City with great Fury, and having made a Breach indeavoured to have entered, but were beaten off with great loss; after which they framed a Bridge upon Boats, over a frith of the Sea, fastening by Ropes, so indeavouring to besiege the Tower both by Sea and Land; the which was no sooner fastened, but the Ropes were all cut in sunder, by one *Garvais Rogers* a most expert *English* Sea-Captain, and after that attempting to make another Bridge, and plant pieces of Cannon in Lighters and foists, the Bridge was broken, and the Lighters sunk by *Anthony Damboise* the great Masters Brother, who with his Artillery planted for that purpose on the *Bastions*, beat them to pieces; but it had not been long e'r *Caly Bassa* the younger Arriving in the Camp, it was noised that *Mahomet* was coming with an additional Army of 100000 *Turks*, which so terrified the *Spaniards* (for the Garrison was Composed of all *Christian* Nations) that they desired to be Shipped out of the Island, and to return home; but for such their Cowardize, being sharply reproved by *Peter Damboise* the great Master, a most expert and Valiant *French* man, they, as ashamed of what they before proposed begged Pardon, and

afterwards notably defended the City during the Siege.

Mesires perplexed that he could not carry the City by Force, though with his Artillery he had levelled the Walls in many places, which were as soon repaired, he resolved by Treachery to perform what otherwise he could not Effect, and therefore made large Offers to several discontented *Rhodians* to poison the great Master, which some of them undertook to bring to pass, but e'r any thing was done in Relation thereto the wickedness was discovered, and the undertakers worthily Executed; upon notice of which the *Bassa* more perplexed then before, and yet not knowing without loss of Honour how to raise the Siege, sent several Messengers to the great Master in his Name, to promise him extraordinary Matters if he would surrender to him the City, and to denounce all the Miseries of War upon his Refusal: To which the Heroick Old man returned Answer, that he would not willingly in his surest Estate use the Council of his Enemy, neither in his greatest distress refuse Cheerfully to yeild his Life unto Almighty God, to whom he did owe it, and that with far better Will, then to surrender the City upon any Conditions, bear they never so fair a shew of Honour or Profit. The Messengers perceiving this constant Resolution of the great Master, by other Arguments indeavoured him at least to become Tributary to the Emperor, paying a small matter yearly for his Peace; but he knowing that to be the ready way to be brought under the *Turkish* Slavery, utterly refused; upon which the Messengers returned greatly discontented to him that sent 'um, who thereat greatly perplexed gave another general Assault, battering the City for four days without Intermission, but not prevailing after three Months siege, having lost 9000 of his Men, and 15000 dangerously

generously sick of their Wounds, and mortal Distempers, he with great shame raised his Siege; and after having destroyed all the Trees in that part of the Island, embarked his Men for *Constantinople*, where at his return he received but a Cold Welcom from his imperious Master.

Whilst *Mesites* besieged *Rhodes*, *Achmetes Bassa* passed over into *Italy*, and besieged *Otranto* a Famous City in *Puglia*; the which after the loss of many of his *Turks* took it, spoiling all the Country round about it, which brought such a Fear upon *Italy*, that *Sextus Quartus* Bishop of *Rome*, being only dreadful to the *Christian* Princes, was about to fly and leave this once Mistress of the World, as a prey to the *Infidels*; and doubtless at that time the greatest part of *Italy* had been subdued, had not the *Ottoman* Forces been Converted another way; for the *Carramanian* King, aided by the *Persians* and Sultan of *Egypt*; having entered the *Turkish* Dominions on that side, had in a mortal Battle overthrown *Bajazet*, *Mahomet's* eldest Son (then Living) with the Slaughter of well nigh all his Army, to revenge which *Mahomet* called home his great *Bassa Achmetes*, with all the *European* Soldiers, and in Person passed over into *Asia*; but upon the way within two days journey from *Nicomeda* a City of *Bythinia* he fell sick, and there for the space of three days grievously Tormented with a pain in his Belly (which some supposed to be the Collick, though others to proceed from the effects of Poison) he Dyed, Anno 1481. of his Age 52 years, and his Reign 31 years. His Body being afterwards Magnificently buried in a Chappel, near unto the great *Mahometan* Temple, which himself had built at *Constantinople*; Leaving his Empire to *Bajazet* against whom Bandied (till such time he was Poisoned by the Bishop of *Rome*, who at the Commandment of *Bajazet* durst do no other) *Ze-*

mes, or *Zizimus* his younger Brother, as in the Life of *Bajazet* will appear.

C H A P. XIII.

The Life of Bajazet the second of that Name, and second Emperor of the Turks, his memorial Exploits, Victories, and Death.

M*Abomet* being dead, and *Bajazet* and *Zemes* his two Sons absent (for the *Turkish* Tyrants will not permit their Sons to remain at Court when they are Men grown, lest they should aspire to Empire before their time) the great *Bassas*, and *Aga* of the *Fanizaries* Conspired together, e'r either of them could arrive, to make *Corcutus* younger Son to *Bajazet* Emperor, which accordingly they did; of which *Bajazet* upon his approaching the City of *Constantinople*, hearing, horribly Exclaimed against the perfidious dealings of the *Bassas*, and so laboured that at the Instance of *Cherseogles* Vice-Roy of *Greece*, and the *Aga*, or Captain of the *Fanizaries*; the young Emperor being of a mild and Courteous Nature, overcome by their Intreaty, and the Reverence of his Father, resigned unto him his Imperial Government, which he took upon him, with the general liking of the men of War, the surest token of any *Turkish* Emperors Establishment; for if they oppose it 'tis in vain for them to hope for Empire, and in lieu of this Resignation, *Bajazet* made him Governour of *Lycia*, *Caria*, *Ionis*, and all the pleasant Countries adjoining; where being altogether

together given to study, he Lived quietly all the Reign of *Bajazet*, but after his Death was strangled by the Command of *Selymas* his Brothers Son, as will in his Reign more at large appear.

During these Troubles, *Ferdinand* King of *Naples*, sent his eldest Son *Alphonfus* Duke of *Calabria*, with a great Power to besiege *Orranto*, which after several sharp Conflicts he had delivered up to him, with all the Country lying about it, which had been by *Achmetes Bassa* taken from the *Christians*, during the Reign of *Mahomet*; to recover which an Army was a second time prepared, under the leading of the same *Bassa*; but e'r he arrived in *Italy*, he was Countermanded upon notice that *Zemes* was coming out of *Amasia* with an powerful Army, to Wrestle with *Bajazet* for the Empire: In which Expedition *Achmetes* was made General, who meeting *Zemes* by plain Force, drove him out of the Field with great slaughter of his Army; insomuch, that not thinking himself safe in his Brothers Dominions, he fled into *Syria*, and from thence into *Egypt*, to *Caytheims* Sultan of *Egypt* and *Syria*, who received him with many great Expressions of joy, and at his Request sent an Ambassador to *Bajazet*, to intreat in his behalf, that some part of that so great an Empire might be allotted him; but the Proud *Turk* having gotten Possession, would not yeild to have so dangerous a Partner: Whereupon the Ambassador effecting nothing, he joyned with the *Caramanian* King, who by such a Conjunction hoped to recover his Territory taken from him, by *Mahomet*, Prince *Zemes* Father, against whose joynt Forces, but few in number, *Bajazet* advanced with 200000 Horse and Foot, of which the Princes having notice, and finding themselves too weak by far to oppose so great a Power, not finding as they had been put in hopes, any to revolt from *Bajazet* to them; they thought it

good to retire before the ways were beset, through the Straights of the Mountain *Amanus*, which done, they dispersed their little Army, and soon after *Zemes* went to *Rhodes*, where of the great Master he was kindly received, with Promise of Protection from the Fury of his Brother, hoping by this means, if *Bajazet* should die a natural Death, or otherwise miscarry, this Prince might be set up Emperor, and by means ever remain a firm Friend to the *Christians*.

During these Transactions, there wanted not some in the Court of *Bajazet*, who Envyng the Prosperity, *Achmetes* Counsell'd the Emperor to put him to Death, falsely insinuating that he held private Correspondence with *Zemes*: Whereupon at his return from the Wars, *Bajazet* as in kindness to his *Bassas* made a Royal Supper, where after they had Drunk plentifully of Wine which by their Laws is forbid, yet frequently amongst the Great ones used at their Feasts; he in token of Honouring them, caus'd a Rich Garment to be cast over each of them, but when they came to *Achmetes*, they cast over him a black Velvet Garment, by the *Turks* call'd the Mantle of Death; for whosoever that Garment is cast upon, none of the *Bassas* dare be so hardy as to intreat for his Life, which the other *Bassas* perceiving, most of them being before privy to the Matter by leave of the Emperor, after having kiss'd the Ground whereon he stood departed; amongst whom *Achmetes* would likewise have gone out, but was Commanded to stay for the Emperor, and no sooner were the *Bassas* gone out, but the Ministers of Death (which are certain strong Men bereaved of Speech, whom the *Turkish* Tyrants keep as Instruments of their Cruelty) Entered, and were about to strangle the *Bassa*; when one of the Eunuches in great Favour with the great Emperor, stood up and advis'd him not to be too hasty in Executing so great a Man,

so beloved by his Soldiers, and best men of War, but rather to defer the Execution, till he saw how the matter would be digested, and in the mean time by Torture to make him confess what might render his Execution more reasonable, of which Counsel *Bajazet* approving, commanded him immediately to be stripped, and delivered into the Hands of the Tormentors. The which whilst they were doing, his Son having gotten notice in what Extream danger his Father was in, raised the *Janizaries*, who upon notice that their beloved Captain stood on the Brink of the Grave flowed from all parts, like a Torrent to the Pallace, Thundering at the Gates as if they would have beaten the Pallace about his Ears, whereupon causing the outward Gate to be set open, he shewed himself to 'um through an Iron Window; demanding the cause of that Tumult and Uproar, to which they answered, that they would by and by, teach him as a Drunkard or Beast, and a Rascal to use his great place, and calling with more Sobriety and Descretion, Loading him with many more such like opprobrious Expressions, Commanded in forthwith to deliver *Achmetes*, or else they would beat the Pallace about his Ears, which demand of the insolent *Janizaries* he durst not deny, but Commanded that he should be forthwith delivered to them, who for hast was brought out half Naked, with the marks of his severe usage on his Body; who had no sooner got him, but they stripped the Emperors Minions, and with their Spoils Cloathing him, carried him out of the Court on their Shoulders in great Triumph, tho the *Bassa* did what he could to appease the Tumultuary Joy they conceived for his deliverance.

Bajazet knowing by experience how deeply the *Bassa* was rooted in the affections of the men of War,

durst not presently shew his Anger, tho Burning with the desire of revenge, therefore the better to bring to pass what he had purposed, he took *Achmetes* into favour again, promoting him more then ever; which the Loyal old man trusting too far, was as he was sitting at Supper, by the command of *Bajazet* thrust through with a Sword, and Slain after he had Conquered 7 Kingdoms, and Annexed them to the *Ottoman* Empire, being the most expert Commander, that ever the *Turks* could Boast off. But *Bajazet's* Spleen not so satisfied, he purposed to destroy the whole order of the *Janizaries*, in revenge of the insolency they had offered him, but his design upon their lives coming to their knowledge, and they standing upon their Guard, he found it a matter not to be compassed without great difficulty, tho to execute his pleasure, he had sent for the *Acanzii*, accounted the best Soldiers next the *Janizaries*, throughout all his Dominions; therefore he was forced to forego his Bloody and Tyrannical purpose, and the better to Colour the matter pretended he had sent for those Soldiers to War against *Moldavia*: But the *Janizaries* not greatly trusting him, Inbattled by themselves, refusing to receive him into the middle of their Ranks, as was their usual manner, but shaking their Weapons, bid him send his Executioners, for they were ready to receive them; but by the mediation of the *Bassas*, at length matters were accorded, and they received *Bajazet* amongst them, for the *Turkish* Emperors never marched but in the middle of the *Janizaries*.

The Tumult pacified, *Bajazet* with his Army passed over *Danubius*, and entering *Moldavia* besieged *Kele* or *Achilleia*, which after many furious assaults was delivered to him, as afterward was *Ac-Gimen* or *Asprocastron*, the *Turks* usually changing the Names of such Cities & Towns, as fall into their hands.

Zemes being at *Rhodes*, *Bajazet* was not a little troubled, lest he should prove a Thorn in his side, & therefore used many Endeavours, to get him into his possession, but the great Master abhorring Breach of trust, notwithstanding the many Threats and Promises of the Tyrant, would not deliver him, nor was he sought only by his Brother, but by *Charles* the French King, *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, and Pope *Innocentius* the Eighth of that Name Bishop of *Rome*, all of them thinking to advantage their Affairs, by having a Prince of the *Ottoman* Blood in their Custody; the King and the Emperor in their Wars, and the Pope of a mind more Ignoble, by getting a yearly Pension from his Brother *Bajazet*, for the safe keeping him to the last; of which after Reiterated intreaties, the great Master delivered him, in lieu of which he was Created Cardinal, nor was the Popes Expectation vain, for he yearly received of *Bajazet* 40000 Ducats, yearly for the safe keeping him, but of this more hereafter.

Bajazet being frequently troubled by the suddain Invasions of the *Caramanian* King, resolved to subdue the remaining part of his Country, the which with a great Army out of *Europe* he invaded, spoiling all before him, but the wary Prince knowing himself far too Weak, to meet so powerful an Enemy in the Field, kept himself with his few forces in the Fastnesses of the Mountain, whereupon *Bajazet* besieged *Tarsus* in *Cilicia*, and had it delivered to him, upon condition that the Citizens might depart thence with their Goods, and not be further prejudiced, either in their Lives or Liberties; but by this time *Abraham*, Alias, *Pyramet* King of *Caramania* having obtained considerable forces of *Cayrbeius* Sultan of *Egypt*, he was resolved to try his fortune in the Field, and put all to the Hazard of a Battle, which being begun

begun the 10th. of *May Anno 1486*, was Fought with great obstinancy on either side, for the space of a whole day, when the *Turks* by Reason of their Multitude prevailed, in which Battle the King and the greatest part of his Army were Slain, and afterward his Country totally subdued by *Bajazet*, who likewise at that time took into his possession all *Asia* the less, becoming Lord of the Sea Coast from the Straights of *Bosphorus* to the Confines of *Syria*.

By this means the Ambitious Emperor Stretching the borders of his Empire, to the bounders of the *Egyptian* Sultans Territories, resolved to have no peace with him, by Reason he had not only assisted his Brother *Zames* against him, but likewise the *Carmanian* King in the last Battle, so that raising a great Power, he sent them under the Leading of *Ishender-Bassa*, *Michael-Beg*, and *Jaxis-Beg* his two Sons to wast the Sultans Dominions in *Syria*; but passing the Great Mountain *Taurus*, they were intraped by *Aladules* the Mountain King, who had lay'd an Ambush of his Savage people for that purpose, where most of the *Turks* were together with *Michael-Beg* were Slain, the *Bassa* his other Son, and the remaining part taken Prisoners; the news of which defeat being known to *Carragoses Bassa*, who was following with more forces, it so discouraged him that he would advance no further, yet the next Year passing into the confines of *Egypt*, he was Fought with, and overthrown by the Sultans power: But these ill haps so little discouraged *Bajazet*, that he more intraged then ever, resolved to invade *Egypt* by Sea and Land, which the Sultan understanding resolved to Transport the Seat of War into the *Turks* Dominions, and so with a great Army, he Commanded *Usbeg* to pass into *Cilicia*, where not far from *Tarsus*, he found the *Turks* incamped under the command of *Chersogles* Vice-Roy
of

of *Greece*, a most Valiant Captain, whereupon a mortal Battle begun, and many thousands Slain, for the Sultans Army consisting mostly of *Mamaluks*, such an obstinate Fight was fiercely maintained between them, and the *Turkish Janizaries*, that Victory stood doubtful for the space of 2 days, at the end of which the *Turkish* General having lost 60000 of his men, in the Night left his Camp and fled, nor was the loss in the Sultans Army much inferiour, but the *Turks* loss still proved greater; for Flying through *Aladules* Country, that King had so beset the way, that most of the remaining part were Slain, and the General taken prisoner, nor fared *Bajazet's* Fleet at Sea better, for Anchoring in the mouth of *Orentes* within sight of *Antioch*, it was by a Tempest beaten to pieces, all which losses coming one upon the Neck of another, caused *Bajazet* to send his Ambassadors to the Sultan to require peace, which was accorded to, and all the Prisoners set at liberty, when shortly after the Sultan, who of a *Circassian* Slave, by the favour of the *Mamaluke's* his Fellows become a mighty Monarch dyed.

Peace being concluded in *Asia*, the *Christian* Princes stirred up thereto by Pope *Alexander* the Sixth, that Firebrand of discord, all Christendom was in a Flame, at what time *Charles* the French King seized upon the Kingdom of *Naples*, taken from his Father by *Ferdinand* the first, whereupon the Pope and *Alphon-sus* the exiled King of *Naples*, solicited *Bajazet* to send them 6000 Horse, and as many Foot for the recovery of the same, laying before him (like special *Christians*) what danger the *Mahometan* Religion would be in, if the French prevailed; the Pope promising him also to Poyson *Zemes* his Brother, if he would pay him well for so doing; these Admonitions and large overtures so prevailed with the Infidel, that he had great

great store of treasure, but as it was designed for evil purposes, it prospered accordingly; for the Vessel in the *Adriatick* Sea, being boarded by *John Roverius*, a *Venerian*, he seized the cash before it came to the Popes fingering, yet his Holyness loath to break his Word, nevertheless, contrary to his Oath made to the Ambassadors, from the great Master of *Rhodes*, Poisoned Zemes, by putting Poison amongst the Sugar which he was wont to mix with his Water, to the great Scandal of the *Christian* Religion, and reproach of *St. Peter's* pretended Successors: nor was God slow in revenging the dishonor done to his name, for *Alexander* having a Bastard Son, named *Cesar Borgia*, a Profligate Wretch, who after many Outrages and Murthers committed, being about to Poison several of the Cardinals, at a Supper in the *Vatican*, by a lucky mistake of the waiter, in taking up the wrong flaggon poisoned his Father, who notwithstanding his infallibility, was not Poison proof, nor did this ungracious Son long escape, for fighting under the standard of the King of *Navar*, he was slain with a hargubus shot.

Notwithstanding the death of Pope *Alexander*, yet he left *Christendom* in such a blaze, that the flame of discord, was not in a long while after quenched, for whilst the Emperor of *Germany*, and Princes of *Italy*, were Bandising against the *French* King and shedding *Christian* Blood, the *Turks* invaded *Podolia* and *Rassia*, spoiling the Country and sacking several walled Towns, but by reason of the Excessiveness of the Winter, through Hunger and Cold, most of the Army Perished, yet not dismayed by the Loss sustained, he the next year sent *Cadumes Bassa* into *Illyria*, who spoiling the Country was incountred by 9000 *Croats* and *Hungarians* near the River *Morava*, under the leading of Count *Bernard Francopain*, where after a
cruel

cruel and Bloody fight, the *Christians* were put to the worst, and 7000 of them slain, and drowned in passing the River, the noses of which being cut off, and hung upon strings, were sent to *Bajazet* as a Barbarous present.

Charles the French King being dead, *Lewis* the 12 Succeeded him in the Kingdom of *France*, who laying claim to the Dukedom of *Millain* made a league with the *Venetians*, whereupon *Sfortia* the Duke in possession sent to crave aid of *Bajazet*, laying before him the danger his Empire was in daily to be invaded, if the French grew strong in *Italy*, preferring Ambition and revenge, before the advancement of the *Christian* Religion; *Bajazet* by this means stirred up, resolved to render the *Venetians* unserviceable to the French, by keeping them busie nearer home, whereupon he commanded *Scander Bassa* his Lievetenant in *Illyria*, to break in upon the Fruitful Country of *Friuli*, part of the *Venetians* Territories on the borders of *Italy*, the which he did with 12000 Horse, destroying all before him as far as *Liquentia*, driving before him a great number of Captives, the which when he came to the Banks of *Tiliaventum*, and understanding that the French and *Venetians* had driven the Duke of *Millan* out of his Territories, he barbarously caused to be put to the Sword.

After the Seisfure of *Millan*, the *Venetians* set out a great Fleet under the charge of *Anthony Grimani*, who set upon the *Turks* Fleet (far Superior in number) as it was coming out of the Bay or Haven of *Sapienia*, in the Island of *Sphragia*, but through the Cowardice of the Admiral, in not permitting half his Fleet to come up, those that were ingaged retired after a sharp dispute, and the *Turks* kept their course to *Naupactum*, now called *Lepanto*, where they found *Bajazet* already arrived with his Land Army, so that after

a few days Siege, the Citizens despairing of Succour Surrendred the City, wherefore the *Venetian* Admiral upon his return was Banished by a decree of the Senate, to one of the *Abfytidies* Islands, upon the Coast of *Liburnia*.

Bajazet by this means having got firm footing in the *Venetian* Territories, the year following viz. 1500 entered the straights of *Corinth* with an Army of 150000, and passing through *Peloponnesus*, lay'd Siege to the strong City of *Menthon*, now called *Modon*, and took it by surprize, putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword, upon which several other Cities belonging to the *Venetians*, yielded by composition, but after the taking of many Cities on either side, with great Blood-shed both by Sea and Land. A peace between *Bajazet* and the Senate of *Venice* was treated, and finally accorded upon consideration, first that the *Venetians* should deliver up the Islands of *Neritos* and *Lucadia* (the which during these Wars they had taken from the *Turks*) reserving to themselves only the Island of *Cephalenia*: And that in consideration thereof, *Bajazet* should restore all such goods as had been taken from the *Venetian* Merchants in the late Wars, and that it should be lawful for them (as they were wonted, safely to trade and traffique into the *Euxine* Sea, and to *Constantinople*, and there to have their Consul or Governour, as they had in former time, and lastly that the *Venetian* Territories should be certainly known and seperated from the *Turks*, by certain Bounds or Limits. These conditions were Solemnly concluded on, and confirmed, both by *Bajazet* and the Senate of *Venice*, and so affirmed: Peace concluded in Anno 1503, after the Wars had continued between them for the space of 5 years.

Peace concluded with the *Venetians*, *Bajazet* raised a great Army intending to invade *Hungary*, but having been
been

been often foiled by that warlike Nation, he changed his mind, and Marched to suppress the insurrection in *Albania* a part of his Territory, which done as he was returning, a Derviller which is a Phantastical kind of a beggarly *Turkish* Monk, using no other apparel but two Sheep Skins, the one hanging before, and the other behind, who coming up to him as if he would have asked an Almes, with a short Cimiter, strock at him, and beat him from his Horse, and being about to redouble his blow, had certainly dispatched him, had not *Ishender Bassa* come in, and with his Horsemans Mace, struck the Varlet dead, who afterwards by the Soldiers was hewn in pieces; this treacherous and desperate act so moved *Bajazet*, that he proscribed all them of that Superstitious order, and banished them out of his Empire.

Bajazet after the incessant toiles of War, resolving to repose himself, committed the Management of his great Affairs to his 3 *Bassa's*, viz. *Alis*, *Achmetes*, Kinsman to him that was slain, and *Jachia*, who having got the Reins of Empire in their hands for the space of 5 years, suffered things to run into such disorder, by regarding their private profit, more then the publick good, that a great part of the Lesser *Asia* was in an uproar by the means of *Chasan Chelise*, and *Schach Culi*, or *Techellis*, two *Persian* Imposters, who set the Multitude a madding, by spreading a new fangled Doctrine, more wicked then that of *Mahomet* their pretended Prophet. To quench this Flame that began dreadfully to blaze into a Rebellion, *Bajazet* was forced to rouse from his Lair, yet the Doctrine could not, nor is it, to this day extirpated, for being persecuted by *Bajazet*, they fled into *Persia*, and there pretending themselves to be the true Successor of *Mahomet* the Imposter, and that none but they knew his Will, and that those that believed not in their Doctrine, should
never

never Injoy any happiness after this Life, with a deal of such ridiculous Cant they so besotted *Asymbeius Usun Cassanes* the Persian King, that he had to the first Author of this Doctrine, viz. one *Haider*, who was Master of these Disciples, given his Daughter *Martha* in Marriage; but he dying, and his Son *Jacup* succeeding him in the Kingdom, began to have his Brother-in-Law in suspicion, by reason of the multitude that followed him, upon the account of his pretended Sanctity: Insomuch that he caused him secretly to be murdered, and raised a great Persecution against those that imbraced his Doctrine; yet this *Haider* left a Son which he had by *Martha* his Wife named *Hyfmael*, who afterward became a Sophy of *Persia*, as will appear in his Wars with *Selymus Bajazet's* Son, and Successor, but upon the Persecution raised by *Jacup* Son to *Usun Cassanes*, the two aforesaid Disciples of *Haider* fled to *Armenia*, and there dwelling in Rocks began to tell Fortunes, and other strange things which made the *Rusticks* suppose them men more then ordinarily inspired; Insomuch that they gathered about them in great numbers, insomuch that they came out of their lurking Holes into walled Towns, and taught boldly.

During the spreading of this Doctrine, *Hyfmael* the Son of *Haider* being grown to mans Estate, and his Uncle *Jacup* dead, he by the Aid of such as favoured his Fathers Doctrine, won the Kingdom of *Armenia*, and after that overthrowing *Eluan* the Persian King, Son to his Uncle *Jacup* in a pitched Battle, wherein the said King was slain, he took Possession of all his Grand-fathers Dominions, and from that time was called the great Sophy of *Persia*, being afterward exceedingly beloved of his Subjects.

This *Hyfmael* was no sooner Established in his Kingdom, but he Established to his Power his Fathers Doctrine, which *Chusan*, *Chelise*, and *Techellis*, perceiving, and

and understanding the unlooked for success of their Masters Son, they resolved not to be Idle, but to try their Fortune likewise : Whereupon gathering a great number of their Profelytes in Arms, they wasted again the Countries in the lesser *Asia*, and being encouraged thereto by *Hysmale* with Promise of great Succours, they set down before the City of *Iconium*; sending out their Proclamations strictly to injoyn all the People thereabout to imbrace their Doctrine, threatening them otherwise with Death, and Confiscation of Goods; which wrought such Terror in the Peasants, that they had many of them joyned with them; so that within a while their number was increased, from 10 to 50000. Whereupon *Orchanes* and *Mahomites*, two of *Bajazets* Nephews gathering what Forces they could Sallyed out of the City against them, but were put to flight with the loss of most of their Men: *Corcutus* also one of *Bajazets* Sons, and then Governour of *Thyatria*, *Sypilus*, *Magnesia*, and *Phocia*, having leavyed a great Army, durst not nevertheless to give them Battle, but waited the coming of *Caragoses Bassa*, who was raising great Forces in *Cappadocia* and *Pontus*; having sent his Command to *Achmetes* one of *Bajazets* Sons to do the like, but e'r he had gathered a sufficient Power, the pretended Prophets came upon him, put such Forces as he had to the Rout, and forced *Caragoses* then Vice-Roy of *Asia*, for his safety to fly into the City of *Cutaie*, near unto the Mountain *Horminius*, situate in the middle of the lesser *Asia*; which City they besieged, took by force, and in it the Vice-Roy his Wife and Children, putting most of the Citizens to the Sword, and from thence marched to besiege the great City of *Prusa*; but in their way hearing that *Alis Bassa* was come out of *Europe* with great Power, and followed hard upon them, they retreated and passed an-

other way to avoid joyning with the *Turks* in the plain Ground, of which the *Bassa* having Notice, and despairing to overtake them with his Footmen, chose out 8000 of his swiftest Horse, leaving *Achmetes* with the rest of the Army, after a tedious March he fell in with their Rear: Whereupon *Techellis*, who was chosen General of the *Rebels*, put his men in Battle Array; when taking the most advantageous Ground, he stayed the coming of the *Turkish* Horse, who charged him in the Front with great Fury, but wanting Foot to second them in so Hilly a Country were driven back, which the *Bassa* perceiving drew forth 1000 Harquebusiers, who served as Foot to oppose the Front, whilst the Horse Charged on the right and left Wings of the Enemies Army, which was performed with such Bravery, that *Techellis's* Men gave Ground, and in the Rear broke and disordered their own Ranks; when *Chelise* one of the Impostors fighting desperately was slain. But *Techellis* coming with fresh supplies, restored the Battle, to break which *Alis Bassa* Charging furiously with fresh Troops of Horse, & entering too far amongst the Squadrons of his Enemies was slain, which so discouraged his men (then at the point to have prevailed) that they first fainted, and afterwards betook themselves to plain flight; so that in passing the Mountains many of them were slain, and more taken Prisoners.

Bajazet hearing of the Success of the *Rebels*, sent *Jonuses Bassa* against them with 40000 Horse and Foot, upon whose approach they retired into the Mountains, but being driven thence they fled into *Armenia*: Whereupon the *Bassa* fretting that he had not beset the ways, caused all that he found to imbrace the new Religion, or to have born Arms against *Bajazet* on the behalf of *Techellis*, either to be put to Death, Burnt in the Forehead with a hot Iron, or Transported into *Europe*, to prevent any future Insurrection; and

and upon his return to *Constantinople* had Notice, that *Techellis* and his scattered Forces in their flight, lighting upon a *Caravan* of Silks and other Rich Merchandize took the spoil thereof, for which outrage coming to *Tauris*, the Captains were all by the Command of *Hysmael* hanged upon Gibbets, and *Techellis* for a Terror to others burnt alive.

The *Asian* Rebellion suppressed by the means aforesaid, the year following, viz. *Anno 1509.* a dreadful Earthquake happened in *Constantinople*, and the Countries adjacent, which lasted with very little Intermission for the space of eighteen days, or as the *Turks* affirm a Month; in which time it threw to the ground many stately Buildings in *Constantinople*, *H Adrianople* and other Cities of *Greece*, and in their Ruins overwhelmed 13000 People; after which a great Mortality happened, which dispeopled many Cities in the *Turks* Dominions; but both being past, *Bajazet* set 80000 to repair the mischief *Constantinople* had sustained by the Earthquake, which they performed in four Months, Beautifying the City more then ever.

Bajazet had by his many Wives eight Sons, and six Daughters, who lived to be Men and Women grown, and the Sons all Governours in divers Provinces of his large Empire, whom the *Turkish* History after this manner reckons up, viz. *Abdullah Zelebi*, *Alem Scach*, *Tzihan Scach*, *Achmet*, *Machmut*, *Corcut Selim*, and *Mahomet*; yet as *Antonius Utrius*, a *Genois*, who long time lived in *Bajazet's* Court, accounts, they were only six, whose Names he recites thus; *Scieniscia*, *Alemscia*, *Achometes*, *Mahometes*, *Selymus*, and *Corcutus*, and that the two former dyed long before their Father, and were by him greatly lamented; now as for *Tizhan*, and *Abdula Zelebi*, the *Turks* report they were put to Death by their Fathers Command, upon Suspicion that they aspired too high in Conceit of Empire.

Of all these Sons *Mahometes* was of greatest hope, who was by his Father made Governour of *Magnesia*, but being by reason of his Youth, somewhat Frolicksome, he often went disguised, to take a view of his Brothers Courts, how therein they behaved themselves &c. And at last came with two others in the habit of Sea-faring men to the Court of *Bajazet*, where not at first finding Admittance to the Emperors Presence they went and bought a fair *Christian* Captive, and then pretending they had a Present to deliver, were by the Warders permitted to enter, and having delivered the Present found means to depart; being first rewarded with three rich Garments, but e'r they were gotten on Ship-board, they were met by a Courtier that knew *Mahometes*, who allighting would have done him Reverence, but he forbad it, as not being willing to be discovered, yet it was not kept so close but it came to *Bajazet's* Ear, who jealous (as always Tyrants are) that under such like Intreagues might be hid some secret Conspiracy against his Life, or Empire, he wrote to one *Asmehemides* a Courtier highly in Favour with *Mahometes* to poison him, sending withal a poisonous Powder to effect it; which this perfidious Courtier, in hopes to succeed him in his Government performed, but long it was not e'r the Tyrant repenting him of his inhumane and unnatural Command, cast the said Courtier in Prison where he miserably perished.

Bajazet having caused *Mahometes* to be poisoned, whom he need not to have feared: *Selymus* the Governour of *Trepezond*, one whom he intirely Loved, immediately Conspired against him, and having Corrupted most of the great *Bassas* of the Court, the better to strengthen himself, married the Daughter of *Mahometes* the *Tartarian* King, who Aiding him with 15000 *Tartarian* Horse, he left his Government and passed over the *Euxine* into *Europe*, under pretence of invading

Hungary,

Hungary, where having notice that his Father intended to declare *Achometes* his Successor; leaving the Coast of *Hungary*, he marched directly towards *Hadrianople*, where *Bajazet* lay with his Army, and incamping within sight of the City, sent a feigned Message to excuse his coming in a Hostile manner; the which was as he said, only that he might gain Access to his Presence, to shew him such Reasons as he doubted not but he would approve of, why *Achometes* should not succeed him; but *Bajazet* not trusting to his fawning, sent him word that if he did not immediately return to his Government in *Asia* and disband his Army, he would not fail to chastise him with the Scourge of War. But this Speech did not at all dismay the Head-strong Youth, nor could all the Presents, and fair Words *Bajazet* could devise avert him; but raising his Camp marched directly towards *Constantinople*, which *Bajazet* perceiving drew his Army out of *Hadrianople*, and marched to prevent his surprizing the Imperial City, at whose Departure out of *Hadrianople* *Selymus* entered it, and having there refreshed his Army, followed hard upon his Father, cutting off the stragglers of his Army, and part of his Rear, which caused the Old man to Face about and bid him Battle, though all the *Bassas* except *Cherseogles* dissuaded him from it, as secretly favouring *Selymus*, which *Selymus* as willing to accept, after both Armies were put into Order, and *Bajazet* with a moving Oration had encouraged his Men, a cruel Fight began, which continued from Noon, till the setting of the Sun; at what time the *Tartarian* Horse sore Gauled with the shot of the Harquebusses, and terrified with the Thundering noise, disfranked and fled in spite of their Rider, after which the Foot being Charged by the *Janizaries* were most of them slain, *Selymus* himself upon a swift Horse hardly escaping.

In this Battle fought, Anno 1511. near *Chinlun*, 30000 of *Selymus* his Men were slain and taken Prisoners, with the loss only of 7000 of *Bajazet's* Soldiers, after which *Bajazet* kept on his way to *Constantinople*, where he no sooner arrived, but he bountifully rewarded his Men: *Achometes* *Bajazet's* eldest Son being at *Amasia*, and hearing what had passed, raised an Army of 20000 Horse and Foot, and by speedy marches came to *Scutari*, Antiently called *Christophorum*, situate upon the Straights of *Bosphorus*, over against *Constantinople*, where incamping he sent Messengers to his Father, requesting him as he had frequently determined to declare him his Successor, as by Seniority he ought, and to resign him the Empire, all which *Bajazet* intended to do, and proposed such his Intentions to his Captains; but they bribed by *Selymus*, opposed him therein, saying they would acknowledge no other Emperor but himself, and as the Captains said, so said the Soldiers: Whereupon he sent to *Achometes*, to inform him of the Obstinacy of the Soldiers, and desired him to return to his Government of *Amasia*, till he could mold them into a better Temper by his Bounty; but he impatient of delay, not only abused the Messenger, but greatly reproached his Father, rose with his Army and marching through the Country spoiled *Bythinia*, and growing daily more and more inflamed, from being barred of his Expectation, purposed to have seized upon *Asia* the less; upon which calling to him his two Sons, *Amurath* and *Aladime* young Princes of great hope, he admonished them to take up Arms against their Grand-father, who prone enough thereto of themselves, and now incited by their Father, in a short time raised a great Army, and joining with the standing Forces; *Achometes* had before in pay over-run a great part of *Asia*, *Achometes* causing himself every where to be proclaimed King.

These

These proceedings greatly troubled *Bajazet*, inso-
much that to prevent Blood-shed, he sent to him his
Ambassadors to reprove him for his Disloyalty, and
to command him forthwith to set at Liberty his Ne-
phews *Mahometes*, and his Brother whom he had tak-
en Prisoners, for refusing to aid him against their
Grand-Father *Bajazet*; but instead of performing
what his Father Commanded, he caused the chief
Ambassador to be Slain in his presence, and strictly
enjoynd the other on Pain of their Lives, to depart
his Camp 'ere Sun set, of which strange and Hein-
ous Fact, when *Bajazet* had knowledge, he was great-
ly intraged, and caused him to be proclaimed a Tray-
tor against his Person, and Empire, commanding
that the *European* Horse-men should immediately march
against him. But the *Bassas* that favoured *Selymus*,
thinking it now a fit time to procure his being called
home, and entring again into Favour, insinuated in-
to the old Emperor, that if he designed to destroy
both his Rebellious Sons, he could do it by no better
means, then by calling home *Selymus*, and making him
General of the Army designed, to march against *A-*
chometes, and that by such means one of them was sure
to Perish, and then getting the other into his power,
he might destroy him at his pleasure; to this motion
of the *Bassas* *Bajazet* hearkened, and commanded that
Selymus should be fetched to Court, whither now *Cor-*
cutus was come to claim his Fathers promise, as hav-
ing heard that contrary thereto, he meant to give the
Empire from him; to whom *Bajazet* again made ma-
ny promises only willing him to be content, whilst
this new Rebellion was suppressed, when in the mean
while *Selymus* arrived, and prostrating himself at his
Fathers Feet, was received into favour, and preferred
to the leading of the Army; who no sooner he did
it, but as it was before contrived by the *Bassas*, he

by the General Voice was saluted Emperor, and *Mustapha Bassa* sent to *Bajazet* peremptorily to demand him to surrender the Empire, to his Son *Selymus*, whom as he said the Soldiers had saluted Emperor, and that if he refused so to do, they were resolved to spoil the Pallace, if not commit an out-rage upon his Person, upon which *Bajazet* finding himself betrayed by those he most relyed on, after having expressed Indignation and Grief, finding that would, or would he not all was one, with many curses and Execrations upon his unnatural Son, and the rest of the Traytors he delivered the Insigns of Majesty, of which unexpected news *Corcutus* having notice fled for his Life to *Magnesia*.

Selymus having by the means aforesaid Grasped the Empire, could not suppose himself safe whilst his Father lived, and therefore with great rewards tempted *Hamon* a Jew, and *Bajazet*'s chief Physitian to make him away by Poyson, who in order to his Hellish purpose went to *Hadrianople*, whither *Bajazet* was retired, and there through Melancholy and infirmities incident to Age, he found him indisposed; he offered him Physick, the which the old man not doubting to be of fatal Consequence, when delivered by the Hand of his old approved Physitian, at the time appointed took, which he had not long done ere he felt a grievous pain in his Stomack, and plain Symptoms of his being Poysoned appeared, so that amidst Groans and Torturing Pangs, within 24 Hours he gave up the Ghost, Anno 1512, and his Reign the thirtieth.

Bajazet thus Poysoned, the Jew hasted to *Constantinople* to receive his reward, which he had accordingly, for not long after his Arrival his Head was stricken off by the Commandment of *Selymus*, who afterward Buryed his Father in a most stately Tomb, near to the Great *Mahometan* Temple, that
himself

himself had built, and by Reason two of his Pages mourned for him, he caused them to be put to Death, but Heavens Vengeance was not long delayed, as will appear in the next Chapter, in his woful and unusual Death.

CHAP. XIV.

The Life of Selymus the first of that Name, the third Emperor of the Turks, his Bloody Reign and woful Death.

Selymus Aspiring to the Empire by Blood and Treason, could not think himself safe whilst any of the *Othoman* Royal Blood remained in the Veins of his Relations; therefore gathering all his forces, he marched into *Asia* to oppress *Achometes*, but missing of him at that time, he thirsty of Blood caused 5 of his Nephews, all Princes of great hope to be strangled in his presence, causing their dead Bodies to be Buryed in *Prusa*, and afterward sought to surprise *Amurath* and *Aladin Mahometes* 2 Sons, but they having notice of his wicked intent, one of them fled into *Persia*, and the other into *Egypt*, and *Usegi Bassa* who was sent to apprehend them at *Amasa* upon notice beforehand, sent by *Mustapha Bassa* who now was alienated from *Selymus*, was intrapped by an Ambush lay'd by *Mahometes* himself, taken Prisoner, and most of his men Slain, but it coming to *Selymus* his Ear, that *Mustapha* held Correspondence with *Achometes*, notwithstanding he had helped him to the Empire

Empire he caused him to be Slain, so little Assurance has any man in the favour of a Tyrant, who has the power of Life and Death in his Hand ; in revenge of which *Achometes* put *Ufegi Bassa* (whom he held Prisoner) to Death.

Selymus still thirsty of Blood, with all speed marched to *Magnesia*, in hopes to have surprized his Brother *Corcutus* in his Castle, but he having timely notice was fled before his coming, yet he took the Spoil of all his Treasure, and so leaving a Captain with a 1000 Horse to secure the City, and commanding *Bostanges* his Son In-Law, with a Fleet to watch the Sea-Coast that he should not escape, he went to *Prussia* supposing to have found him there, but on the contrary he poor Prince was fain to hide himself in a Cave by the Sea-side, and there for many Days feeding upon Crabs in hopes the Ships would have departed, that he might have waisted over, at length weary of his unwonted diet he sent his Servant to a Shepherds Cottage to purchase natural Food, who suspecting by some words that passed, that it was the Prince, like a perfidious Swain, he gave notice thereof to *Coshmos* one of *Selymus's* his Captains who was come in search of him, upon which he was apprehended, and carryed towards *Prussia*; of which the Tyrant having notice greatly rejoiced, and immediately sent one *Kirengi Og'ly* a Squint-Ey'd Captain to strangle him by the way, who accordingly performed his wicked Masters pleasure; and now none remaining alive to obstruct the progress of his greatness, but *Achometes* and his two Sons, he resolved to go against them, but in the beginning of his Expedition, he intercepted some Letters signed by several Commanders of his Camp, and directed to *Achometes*, desiring him to advance towards *Selymus* with all speed, and that he might be assured upon his approach, a great part of the Army would

would revolt, or at least in the Battle they would kill *Selymus*. Upon this discovery those that were found to be concerned therein were Executed, and the Letters notwithstanding sent, upon which *Achometes* presuming made such hast, that he left his Footmen behind, at what time 10000 *Janizaries* were come to *Selymus* out of *Europe*, so that Battle joyning after a most Bloody conflict *Achometes* was overthrown, and seeking to save himself by flight, his Horse fell with him into a deep Ditch, where he was taken by the pursuers, at whose hands he could not procure himself to be Slain, tho he earnestly desired it, but was lead Captive to his cruel Brother, who commanded the Squint-Ey'd Captain that had dispatched *Corcutus* to strangle him with a Bow-String, and now desiring nothing more then to get in his possession the two Sons of *Achometes*, who to his great Grief heard they were honourably received, the one in the *Persian*, and the other in the *Egyptian* Courts, and that *Amurath* the Elder aided by *Hysmael* the Great *Sophy* with ten thousand *Persian*-Horse, was entered into *Cappadocia*, wasting the Country before him, for fear of whom most of the adjacent Provinces had submitted to do him homage, he resolved after he had driven him back, in revenge of the aid the *Sophy* had lent him to War upon his Countries in *Persia*, wherefore preparing a great Army, tho many of his great Commanders lay'd before him the difficulty and danger of the undertaking, and amongst the rest *Chendemus* Vice-Roy of *Natolia* a man of great Experience, and of all others in greatest Credit and Authority with *Selymus*, who used many Arguments to dissuade him therefrom, which he afterward found to be undeniable truths, but some of his Flatterers perswading him that *Chendemus* was bribed by *Amurath*, to divert his Arms another way, and bring certain Ruffains hired

ed for that purpose to attest what they had said, the Tyrant caused the faithful *Bassa* to be slain, without hearing his Excuse, and then Marching from *Arsenga*, he came to the Confines of *Armenia* the Less, before whose Powerful Army the young Prince fled, but *Selymus* fearing lest the Mountain Kings not being made his friends, and yet left behind him, should fall upon his Rear, sent Ambassadors to them, to desire free passage through their Territories, and to send him provision for his Money, at such time as he should be entered into *Armenia* the greater, to all which they accorded, whereupon with all his Army, he passed the Mountain *Scodrisci*, and after 8 days Marching over an other great Mountain, called *Moschij*, which the famous River *Euphrates* with his mighty streams, and huge broden Banks, separateth from the great Mountain *Anti-Taurus*, and with perpetual steep ridges, runneth into *Iberia*, and *Cholchis*. Here *Selymus* with his Ensigns displayed, Marching along the Banks of the River, departed not from the same, for fear in that hot Country he should be distressed for want of Water, and so held on his way directly Eastward, leaving the Country of *Armenia* the less, upon the Left, and the Kingdom of *Aladenles* on the right, and so along to the Banks of *Araxes*, finding all the Country before him destroyed, and by reason the Mountain Kings kept not their words, in sending him provision, his Army began to fall into great want, which though too late made him call to mind the faithful Council of *Chendemus*, yet having Marched thus far, he could not without great dishonour turn back, and therefore passing *Araxes* about the City of *Coy*, to defend which City *Usta Ogli* the *Persian* General approached with his whole power, contrary to the expectation of *Selymus*, whose Souldiers being oppressed by want, and for the most part were forced to live upon wild

wild fruit began to Mutinie, so that whilst either Army lay Hovering at some distance, *Hismael* came in Person into his Camp, and from thence sent a Harauld to *Selymus*, to know why he had in hostile manner entered his Country, having no title thereto, as likewise to take a view of the *Turkish* Army, to which demand *Selymus* replied that his Grandfather, his Uncle, and himself had greatly Indamaged the *Othoman* Empire, by making several Invasions, and Aiding the Rebels in the Reigns of *Mahomet*, *Bajazet*, and of late in his Reign, yet he esteemed them not as sufficient causes of War, but sought after his enemy, young *Amurath* his Brothers Son, who had of late spoiled *Cappadocia*, whom if he would quietly and friendly deliver unto him, he would withdraw his forces, and peaceably return into his own Kingdom, otherwise with fire and Sword, he would destroy, not only the frontiers of *Armenia*, but the heart of *Persia* also, and so dismissing the Herauld, both the Armies for that day lay still in their trenches, expecting the dreadful event of Battle, and after both Armies were Marshalled and put in order, the Bloody Blast was sounded, whereupon the *Persian* Horsemen came on with great fury, making great Havock of the Vaunt-guard of *Selymus* his Army, overthrowing the *Alapi* or common Soldiers by heaps, which are such as the *Turks* for the most part carry to stand the first Shock of the Enemies fury, and to blunt their Swords, nor did the *Turkish* Horse stand firm, but charged in either Wing gave ground, which *Selymus* seeing caused his orders to open, and began with his great Ordnance to play furiously, to avoid whose Murthering shot, the *Persian* Horsemen, opened likewise to the right and the left, yet the thundering of the Cannon so amazed the Horses that many of them cast their Riders, yet *Hysmale* with great fury broke and disordered the *Turks*
right

right Wing, composed of *Asian* Horsemen, but whilst *Usta Ogli* was endeavouring to do the same to the left, he was slain with a harquibus shot, which much dismayed the Soldiers under his command, yet could they not be forced to retire, till *Selymus* came on with all his Power of *Janizaries*, yet gaining little ground, whereupon he commanded all his great Ordnance which he had reserved as his last refuge, to be furiously discharged against the right Wing of the *Persian* Horse, where *Hysmael* fought; by the violence of which such a slaughter was made, as well of his own men as of the Enemies, mingled together, that what for the dust, smoak, and thundering of the Artillery, having on both sides lost their sight and hearing, the *Persian* horse were so terrified that they were not to be ruled, wherefore the battle soon became broken and disordered, so that both Armies retired upon the Approach of night, leaving the Victory doubtful: The *Turks* to express the terror of this day, number it amongst their dismal ones, calling it the only day of Doom.

Hysmael in this furious battle having received a wound under the left Shoulder, with a small shot, by the perswasion of his friends withdrew himself, to have his wound search'd, which past doubt was the safeguard of *Selymus* and his Army; for the *Persians* following their King, left the Victory almost gotten, but the *Persian* finding his wound not mortal, was about to return, but hearing of the Death of *Usta Ogli* his General, a man of Great experience, and that by reason of the Thundering of the great Ordnance, his Horsemen could not rule their Horses, he caused the retreat to be sounded, and so retired in good order, the *Turks* so much despairing of Victory, that they durst not follow him; and so he passing by the City of *Tauris*, admonished the Inhabitants to open their gates to *Selymus*, thereby to avoid being sacked,

sacked, and so Marched into the Confines of *Medis*.

The *Persians* out of sight, the *Turks* then and not till then durst seize upon their Camp, where they found divers rich Pavillions, wrought with Needle-Work, and Gold, as also many beauteous Ladies, who had accompanied their Husbands to the Wars, all which he presently caused to be set at liberty, unless one of *Hysmaels* Wives, whom he gave in Marriage to one of his *Bassas*.

In this Battle fought in the Galderan Fields near the City of *Coy*, Anno 1514. *Selymus* lost 30000 of his men, and amongst them many *Bassas* and great Commanders, even all the flower of his Army, which consisted of 300000 Horse and Foot, of the *Persians* there fell not above 8000 *Hysmaels* Army not consisting of above 30000, so that the *Turks* were 8 to 1; And amongst the slain, were found the Bodies of several *Persian* Women, who Armed had accompanied their Husbands, to participate of their good or evil fortune, at which *Selymus* admiring, caused them to be Honourably interred, and then received the Embassadors of the several adjacent Cities, who upon condition their Goods, Lives and Liberties, might be preserved, delivered up the Keys of their respective Cities, so that having taken possession thereof, he called a Council of his *Bassas* and great Captains, to consult what was best to be done, himself being desirous to Winter in *Tauris*, for opposing which *Mustapha* his chief *Bassa*, was by him disgraced and thrust from all his honours, of which the *Fanizaries* having notice, began to Mutiny telling him to his face, they would not stay in that desolate Country, where they had suffered such hardship, daily to be exposed to the fury of the Enemy, who was raising great forces to come down against them, and that if he would not in time depart, they

they were resolved to forsake him, whereupon he as needs must, changed his former determination, resolving to return into *Cappadocia*, whereupon contrary to his Promise, exacting a great Mass of Money from them of *Taurus*, and carrying with him 3000 families, the best Artificers in that City, especially those that were Skilfull in making Armour, he raised his Camp; and Marched towards *Euphrates*, a longer way then that by which he came, fearing to return again by the head of *Araxis*, and the Mountains of *Periades*, lest he should meet the *Iberian* and *Albanian* Horsemen, who as he was informed were following hard after him, who indeed came within sight of him, as he was passing the *Euphrates*, which raised such consternation in his Camp, that in hastily passing the River, 2000 *Turks* were drowned, and a great many of his Ordnance, together with much Baggage left as a Prey to the *Persians*, nor had he better Success in passing the Huge Mountain *Anti-Taurus*, for the Mountain Kings despising him, by reason of his bad proceedings with their savage People, lay'd all the ways, and by frequently falling upon the Rear of his Army, killed many of his People and took great spoil, though the Kings upon his sending to complain thereof, excused the matter, promising to punish the offenders so soon as they should be known; At length passing the many dangers he came to *Amasa*, where he wintered with his broken and crazed Army, resolving to return the next spring with a far greater Power; the cause why *Hismael* being Lord of such great Countries, came with so small a Power, was for that he to win the Hearts of his People the better to be established in his new acquired Kingdom, had remitted most of the Taxes and Customs, formerly pay'd to his Prodecessors, all his forces consisting in the Souldiers of the Court, those that were by right bound to serve him, and such

as were sent to him by the petty Princes his Neighbours, when as on the other side *Selymus* had always by him an Inestimable Mass of Money, kept in seven Towers in *Constantinople*, his yearly tributes and revenues exceeding his expences by a fourth part.

Selymus not thinking himself sufficiently revenged of the *Persians*, having raised his Camp at *Amasa*, Early in the Spring, passing the *Euphrates* with his whole Army, consisting of 300000 Horse and Foot, came before *Clamassum* a City of the *Persians*, situate on the further Banks, which he so suddenly invested, and so furiously assaulted, that the Gates being broken up, and the Walls in many places won, the defendants retired into the Market-place, and there fought against the whole Power of *Selymus* to the last man; after the taking of this City, he took two Castles not far distant from it, and being pricked forward with the desire of Glory, purposed to have subdued the Kingdom of *Persia*, which he might the easier have done, by reason *Hysmael* was Waring against the *Bactrians* and *Hyrceanians*, a savage People dwelling near the *Caspian* Sea, who had Rebelled against him, but considering what damage he had received from *Aladenles* the Mountain King, and others inhabiting the Desolate Countries, at the entrance into *Armenia*, he purposed e're he further proceeded, to subdue him, wherefore he Marched thitherward with all his People, of which the poor Prince having notice, gathered all his strength, and drawing his Horsemen, who were but 15000 into a pleasant Valley, commanded his Footmen to keep the Mountains, and from thence with shot of Arrows annoy the *Turks* in passing the straights, upon which *Selymus* considering the disadvantage of the place, commanded *Sinan Bassa* General of the *European* Horsemen, to charge him with a square Battle afront, whilst himself with the *Farizaries* and

Asian Horsemen, followed him in the Rear, the Ground by reason of its Scantiness, not admitting the use of Wings, upon which a fierce fight was begun, and *Aladenles* fighting Courragiously at the head of his men, forced the *Turkish* Horsemen to give ground, which *Selymus* perceiving and that his Army was sorely Annoy'd by the Archers from the Mountains, drawing out 2000 Harquibusers out of his own Squadorn, he sent them to reinforce his Horfe, and at the same time commanded the *Janizaries* to Mount the Hills, which they doing charged the Foot with such Fury, that they being sore distressed with the Harquibus shot, not being used to such engins scattered and fled, so that a great number of them were killed, e're they could clamber up the steep Mountains, and the Horfe at that time being discomfited, fled by well known ways, into the fastnesses of the steep Rocks, after whom *Selymus* followed burning all before him, but finding he could not overtake the King, who retiring before him, had fortified himself amongst the Impregnable Rocks, and there stored up much provision, in hopes to weary the *Turks* with tedious delay.

Selymus having perfect notice of all that had passed, by severall Prisoners that he had taken, thought it more fit to prevent his falling into necessity in so barren a Country, to use Stratagems, where force could not prevail, whereupon understanding that there was no good meaning between *Aladenles*, and *Alis Beg* his General, (by reason that the King had formerly commanded his Father to be slain, upon suspicion he designed to seize his Kingdom) he releasing the Prisoners, sent them to *Alis Beg* with great rewards, to incite him to deliver *Aladenles* into his hands, and that in Lieu thereof he of his bounty would give him the Kingdom, which so wrought with the treacherous General, that not finding means to kill the King, as he had purposed, he
caused

caused all his Army to revolt to *Sinan Bassa*, whom *Selymus* had sent to pursue him ; so that being left alone, flying through many desolate places, at length hid himself in a Cave, where being discovered by a Country Peasant, he betrayed him into the Hands of those that sought after him, who presenting him to *Selymus*, he caused his Head to be stricken off, and carried all over *Asia* the less in manner of Triumph, and afterward sent it to the Senate of *Venice*, in token of his Victory.

Selymus having subdued the Kingdom of *Aladenles* as aforesaid, and reduced it into the form of a Province, making the Traitor chief Governour thereof, returned to *Constantinople*, having, at the same time he was Waring against *Aladenles* by his *Bassas* invaded *Hungaria* ; and now having notice from his Correspondents in *Christendom*, that *Maximillian* the Emperor, *Uladislaus* King of *Hungaria*, *Sigismond* King of *Poland* together with the Princes of *Germany*, were entering into a League against him, it caused him to make great Preparations for the defence of his Territories, but in the end those Princes seperated without doing any thing worthy of their meeting. So that being freed from that Fear, he left a strong Guard upon the Fronteers of his Empire, bordering upon *Hungaria*, and departed to *Iconium* in Order, to prosecute his War against the *Persian* ; but during his stay at that City, he had certain notice that *Campson Gaurus* Sultan of *Egypt*, with a great Army levied in *Egypt* and *Judea*, was coming to Aid the *Persian* King, his Confederate as hating *Selymus* for his Cruelty towards his Father, Brethren and Nephews, as likewise being jealous of his aspiring Greatness, this News was Confirmed on all Hands: *Selymus* greatly feared that if he should pass over the River *Euphrates*, the Sultan might enter *Asia* and spoil his Dominions, wherefore he thought it safe

if possible, to make him his Friend, in order to which he sent the *Cadelescher*, or great Doctor of the *Mahometan* Law; A man much revered amongst the *Turks*, and *Jachis* one of his great Captains, as his Ambassadors to desire the renewing the League, sometime made between the Sultan and his Father *Bajazet*; but the Sultan moved by the pittyous Complaints of the Princes, *Aladine* Son to *Mahomet*, and the Son of *Aladeules*, who as exiled Princes remained in his Court, and encouraged by his great Captains to restore them to their rightful Possessions, would have no Peace unless *Selymus* would leave off to invade the *Persian*, and restore the Mountainous Kingdom to the young *Aladeules*; which upon the Report thereof so enraged *Selymus*, that he resolved to lay aside his intended War against *Hysmale*, and turn all his Forces upon the Sultan, and therefore with words of encouragement, having animated his Soldiers, he passed with his Army over the Mountains in three places, and so appointing a great Company of the Common Soldiers and Country people, for the opening of the straight Passages; he Commanded the rough and uneven ways to be made smooth and plain, so that in five Days all his Ordnance and Carriages were come into the Plains of *Comagena*, where he received News of *Campson's* Army, from *Alis Beg* Governour of the Mountain Kingdom, which caused him to march towards him with all speed.

By this time *Campson* having notice of the approach (whom he could not at first believe to have passed the huge Mountain of *Amanus*) stood long in doubt what was best to be done, whether to give the Tyrant Battle, or to retire to *Damasco* and protract the War; whilst fresh Forces could come to his Assistance: In the latter Opinion *Gazelles* his great Counsellor, and Governour of *Apamia* Concurred with him, labouring earnestly to confirm him in that Opinion,
but

but Destiny so ordering it, he refused the good and wholesome Perswasions of *Gazelles*, and imbraced that of *Cayerbeius*, which was presently to give the *Turks* Battle; which Council he gave though he knew it to be Destructive, that by such means he might be revenged on the Sultan; who some years before had caused his Brother to be poisoned, for designing to deprive him of his Empire.

Battle being resolved on, and the *Turks* Army coming on *Campson* divided his Army into four Battles; the first whereof he committed to *Cayerbeius* the Traitor, the second to *Sybeius* the Governour of *Damasco*, a man of singular Faith and Valour; these two were appointed at once to Charge both Wings of the *Turkish* Army, the third was lead by *Gazelles*, and the last by *Campson* himself, who stayd with it for the defence of the Camp: Nor was *Selymus* Idle, for he had placed the *Asian* Horsemen in the right Wing, and the *European* in the left, and in the middle the *Janizaries*, and Artillery before, whom between the two Wings, he had placed his Pensioners all most expert, and valiant Soldiers, and in this Order the *Turks* always fight, if the Ground will admit so to Marshal the Army.

Both Armies being thus set in Order, the Charge was founded; whereupon *Cayerbeius* with his Squadron Charged the *European* Horsemen with great Fury, but resolving to betray his trust by and by, Wheeling off fell upon the *Sullians* and such other Slaves as kept the Baggage, making some small slaughter, that as a Valiant and cunning Traitor, he might at the self same time satisfy the Expectation of his Valour, and of his Treason; but *Sybeius* the Governour of *Damasco* dealt otherwise, for entering overthwart the Ranks in the right Wing of the *Turks* Army; he with his *Mamalukes* Charged with such fu-

ry, that having made great slaughter of the *Asian* Horsemen, they broak in amongst them like a devouring Tempest, bearing down all before them, till they came to the Insigns in the midst of the Wing: Neither could *Mustapha* the *Beglerbeg*, nor *Imbrabor Bassa* with all their Forces withstand him; or restrain the Flight of their Soldiers, so that cutting in pieces the right Wing, he resolutely thrust in between the Battle of the *Janizaries* and the Pentioners, and there made such lamentable Slaughter that the whole Army was in great fear for *Selymus*, by the breaking in of *Sybeius*, was divided from his Footmen, in whom he reposed his greatest trust, and now the *Janizaries* hardly charged by *Gazelles*; who following the Fortune of *Sybeius*, had set upon the Front of the Enemies Battle, the *Asian* Horsemen also put to the worst, found no means how again to restore the disordered Battle.

In this Confusion *Sinan Bassa* came in with the Squadron of Horse, under his Command, who had been but lightly Skirmished with by *Cayerbeius*, he stayed the Fury of the *Mamalukes*; whereby the *Turks* taking fresh Courage, soon after wrung the Victory out of their Hands; for the great Artillery being by the Commandment of *Selymus* discharged amongst them, by the terrible Thundering thereof, their Horses were so troubled that they could not well guide them, neither could their Riders themselves though they were men of undaunted Courage prevaile, being on every side oppressed with the multitude of their Enemies; yet in that disaster nothing dismayed, setting themselves close together, they brake through the midst of their Enemies, with great slaughter of the *European* Horsemen and Pentioners, and so with speed fled towards the Camp and City of *Aleppo*; after whom followed *Sinan Bassa* with the swiftest Horse, so that the News of the overthrow being known to *Campson* the Sultan,

Sultan, he indeavoured what he could to stay the flight of his Men, but the press being great, and the *Turks* pursuing hard after them making great slaughter, every one shifting for himself in that general Calamity without Respect to the Sultan, he was overborn in the Press, and there by reason of the weight of his Armour and great Age, not able to relieve himself was troden to Death; who afterwards being found amongst the slain, was laid to the view of all People, that they might not flatter themselves with his being alive, and so on his behalf fight more obstinately for the future.

This great Battle cost *Selymus* 30000 men, and the *Egyptians* few less, amongst which there fell 1000 *Mamalukes*, and was fought on the seventeenth of *August*, Anno 1516. After which *Selymus* received the City of *Aleppo* into his obedience, the *Mamalukes* being departed thence to *Damasco*; after whom he likewise sent *Jonuses Bassa* and followed himself with all the Army, but before his Arrival they were departed to *Cair*, and in a full Assembly chose *Tomombeius* (a *Circassian* born) Sultan in the stead of *Campson Gaurus*; who took speedy Care for providing all things necessary to defend his Countries from the Power of the *Turks*, mustering great Companies of such, of his Slaves, as he thought fit for the War, as likewise several *Moors* and *Arabians*. His Neighbours hiring certain Persons for great Rewards, to Travel through the *Arrabian* Deserts into *Mesopotamia*, and so to *Hysmale* the *Persian* King with the Letters, earnestly requesting him to invade the *Turks* Dominions in *Asia* the less, or with all speed to break into *Comagena*, and so to inclose *Selymus* with both Armies as he lay in the Borders of *Judea*, and by that means greatly distress him, by reason he had no Fleet at Sea to relieve him with Provision; and by that means might revenge himself, and prevent his Territories from Invasion for the future.

Whilst these things was doing, *Sinan Bassa* with considerable Forces passing through part of *Arabia*, seized upon the City of *Gaza*; of which *Gazelles* having notice posted thither with 6000 *Mamalukes*, and a considerable number of *Arabian* Adventurers, thinking to surprize the *Bassa*; but he having notice of his approach, went to meet him with all his Forces: So that both Armies incountering, the *Egyptians* after a Bloody fight, being over-powred by numbers, and fore Gauled with Harquebols Shot, left the fight and fled towards *Cair*; but whilst the *Turks* were departed on this Expedition, the Citizens of *Gaza* had plundered their Camp, supposing them to be retired for Fear, and discomfited 2000 *Turkish* Horses, sent by *Selymus* to the Aid of *Sinan Bassa*, who retreating were almost slain by the wild *Arabs*, and had certainly all perished, had they not fortunately met with *Juleb* Governour of *Achaia*, sent with another Power; yet the *Arabians* flocking about them, greatly annoyed them with their Shot from the Hills, not giving them any time to rest; and such through weakness, or for to seek Provision stragled from the Army, and were cut off; so that had not *Imbrahor Bassa* met them out of *Syria*, they had never passed alive through those Desarts, for the *Arabians* as men living upon spoil still pursued them, and in a dispersed manner were continually hovering over their Army, yet long they had not marched e'r they met with *Selymus*, who with the remainder of his Army was marching towards *Gaza*, when having notice from those that had been put to flight by the Citizens thereof, what had befell them; he verily believed that *Sinan Bassa* and all his men were either slain or taken Prisoners, till such time as he was by the *Syrian* Scouts informed to the contrary, at which he not a little rejoiced, yet the *Arabians* daily molested his Army: Infomuch that

that he was inforced to place his Harquebusiers, and most of his Artillery in the Rear, with order to Charge them as they saw occasion; and so in that Order he marched till he came to *Jerusalem*, which was then altogether ruined and defaced, from whence after having viewed the holy Sepulcher, kept by a Company of poor, yet devout *Christians*, who payed Tribute for that priviledge to the Sultan of *Egypt*, and having made his offering, and some miles distant met with *Sinan Bassa*, who having put to Death the Authors of the revolt of that City, and Exacted a great sum of Money of the rest, came forth to meet him, whom he bountifully rewarded, giving to the Captains Garments of Silk, and to the rest rewards, according to their Demerits.

After he had refreshed his Army at *Gaza*, for the space of four days, he leaving a Garrison therein passed over the Dangerous, Desolate, and unpeopled Sands; which at many times moved by the Wind, worked like a rough Sea, and rising in the Air, hindered the sight of the weary Passengers; but such was the good fortune of *Selymus*, that a little before he entered them, such store of Rain fell that it not only allayed the Sand, but furnished his Army with Water during his passage, which took up eight days, yet was he frequently assaulted by the *Arabians*.

The Deserts passed as aforesaid, the *Turkish* Army drew near unto *Cair* to receive, or rather intrap which *Tomombeius* the new Sultan, near to a Village called *Rhodania* had intrenched his Camp with deep Ditches filled with Water, over which he had laid rotten Hurdles, and upon them Earth, and lined all the Banks with Artillery, not doubting but *Selymus* would march that way; but this their Device, which would certainly have gained them a Victory had it took, was upon the approach of the *Turkish* Army discovered to
Selymus,

Selymus, by four Epirot *Mamalukes*, who secretly Envyng the sudden Advancement of *Tomombeius*, had in the Night time withdrawn themselves from his Camp: Upon which *Selymus* altered his determined Courses, and marching by by-ways suddenly appeared with his Army, drawn up in *Battalia* in the Rear of the *Egyptian* Camp, which put them into a great Consternation, but seeing no Remedy but presently to ingage, the Sultan put his Army in readines, and after the Charge sounded furiously with his great Ordnance, spoke his indignation, and was answered in the same Language from *Selymus* his Camp; but after the second discharge of each particular tire, the Armies joyned Charging each other with such Force, that all the Ground lay covered with the slain, the *Mamalukes* enraged with mortal Hatred, bearing down all before them, when in the mean time the *Arrabians* incompassed the *Turks* Battle, putting the *Thracian*, *Macedonian*, and *Epirot* Horsemen to the flight; the which *Sinan Bassa* perceiving came in with his Squadron of Horse, to stay the wavering Battle, but being overcharged by *Gazelles* and *Bidon* he was slain, and his men disordered: So that had not *Selymus* himself advanced with his surest strength of the *Janizary*, the Victory had fallen to the Sultan; but with them restoring the Battle, and the *Mamalukes* being tired with continual Fighting, at the approach of Night *Tomombeius* finding his men to be worsted, caused the retreat to be sounded, and retired towards *Cair*, leaving his Camp to the *Turks*.

In this Battle, fought on the 24. of *January* 1517. Were slain many Thousands on both sides, and the *Turks* had certainly been worsted, had it not been for the invincible Courage of the *Janizaries*. The *Turks* in pursuit, having taken the *Diadare*, a man of great Command amongst the *Egyptians*, and *Bidon* the valiant Captain, whom *Selymus* unworthily caused to be slain in revenge of the *Sinan Bassa*.

Tomombeius

Tomombeius a man of a warlike Spirit, nothing discouraged at what had happened; but rather more resolute to revenge his disgrace, gathered his Power from all parts, and incamped Commodiously between the City of *Cair*, and the River *Nilus*, and there consulted, how he might by stratagem most conveniently set upon the *Turks* Camp; e'r they understood what Power he had, not thinking it safe so suddenly to try another Field: But whilst he was thus plotting all his devices were discovered to *Selymus*, as they had been before by several *Mamaluks*, who now beginning to have his fortune in Contempt revolted from him: In-somuch that to prevent the firing of his Camp as was intended. *Selymus* caused strict Watches to be kept, and great Fires to be made, that so he might discover the Enemies approaches by night; which the Sultan perceiving by the advice of his great Commanders, retired into the City of *Caire*, there to expect the approach of the Conqueror, furnishing it with all manner of Warlike provilion, and inciteing the *Egyptians*, who stood all this while Newters to take up Arms, in the defence of their Country, which the more wealthy whillingly did, but the poorer sort, who in all Nations ever gape after change of Government, thinking to advantage themselves thereby; yet such were the perswasions of the *Mamaluks*, that in the end most of the Citizens resolved upon the defence of that great City, towards which *Selymus* was advancing a pace, wherefore *Tomombeius* caused Trenches to be drawn Cross the Streets, at the bottom of which were fixed sharp Stakes, and before them, Tin being overlaid with rotten Hurdles, so to intrap the too eager *Turks*, for why, the City had no Walls but situate upon the River *Nilus*, was adorned with many stately Towers, Piramides, Pallaces, Temples, and Monuments of the
Egyptian

Egyptian Kings, served rather for Pleasure than strength: He likewise caused the Houses to be furnished with Harquebusiers, and his Pieces of Culvering, and other small Pieces, to be every where planted Advantageously for the annoying the Enemy, and in the great Street drew up his greatest strength, consisting of *Mamalukes*; yet *Selymus* being now come before it, after his having encouraged his Soldiers to undertake the subduing of that great City, as the last Refuge of the Sultan, he furiously entered the Gate called *Basme-la*, and at one instant thrust in his Horsemen at divers Gaves, but kept his *Janizaries* in the high Street, where the greatest Power of the *Mamalukes* were: Whereupon a dreadful Fight was begun on all parts, insomuch that the Channels run Blood like so many Torrents; the Artillery and small Shot still thundering from either side, made all seem Fire, and covered the tops of the Houses with Clouds of smoke; when from their Windows, and Roof of their Houses, the *Egyptians* cast down Stones, Tiles, scalding Water, Sulphur, Pitch, Tar, and the like, to the great annoyance of the *Turks*, who still pressing forward many of them fell into the Covert Trenches, and were there impaled on the Stakes; and such was the Clamour and Outcries of the Enemy, where together with the Clashing of Weapons, and dreadful Fires, that it seemed as if the desolation of all things was come, and in this dismal manner continued the Fight for the space of two Days, and two Nights, without intermission: Insomuch that *Selymus* finding what obstinate Enemies he had to deal with, began to despair of winning the City, and therefore was about to found the Retreat, as his fainting Soldiers most earnestly desired, at what time he had News that *Mustapha Bassa* had by the Conduct of some Fugitive *Mamalukes*, entered the City on the other side, and had taken the *Mamalukes* Horses,

Horses, which they had left there ready Saddle, thereon to make their escapes, if matters came to the Extremity, which not only Animated the *Turks*, but dismayed the *Mamaluks*, who expected no such Matter : So that the Fight were renewed on the third day, continuing Bloody and doubtful till the Evening, at what time most of the *Egyptians* were very desirous to be rid of their insolent Lords; the *Mamaluks* revolted to the *Turks*, which the *Mamaluks* perceiving, and that by Reason of the great number of *Turks*, that were sent to stop the Gaps that Death had made, they were no longer able to resist their Fury, they betook themselves to flight, most part of them hasting to the River *Nilus* with *Tomombeius* (who in that Battle had all in vain proved the utmost of his Prowess and Policy) being Transported over it in Boats fled to *Segesta*, others of them fled into the Houses of the *Egyptians*, and into Caves, and Vaults in the City to hide themselves. A thousand five hundred of the better sort, betook them to the Temple of their pretended Prophet, where after an obstinate and tedious defence, being disabled by Weariness, Thirst, and loss of Blood ; they surrendered themselves upon Discretion, part of whom the furious Soldiers slew in the Porch of the said Temple, and the rest within a few days after, being sent down the River to *Alexandria*, were there contrary to the Promise of *Selymus* put to Death.

This great City subdued after the manner afore-said, *Selymus* Commanded a part of his Army to extinguish the Fire, which raged vehemently in many places, which done he exhibited a Proclamation, that all the *Mamaluks*, who within twelve hours would surrender themselves should have pardon of Life ; upon which many came forth of their secret places, and that whosoever of the *Egyptians* should conceal any one

one of them longer then the time specified, he threatened to impail them alive on Stakes, and having sold their Wives and Children, to burn their Houses; which dreadful menace on the one side, and hopes of Reward, which was also Promised on the other, caused many of the *Egyptians* contrary to their Promises to their old Lords, the *Mamalukes* to deliver some of them up to the Tyranny of *Selymus*, who caused them to be put to Death; but some of the *Egyptians* impeached by their malicious Neighbours, chose rather to suffer Death, then to prove perfidious in breaking the solemn Protestations they had made to their Lords: Nor did the Victorious *Turks* spare, though contrary to *Selymus* his Promise to rife the Houses of the *Egyptians*, Murther many of them, and desfloure their Daughters, and ravish their Wives even in their Presence, and to use all other Cruelties incident to so great and populous a City, upon the entry of an Hunger-starved Army greedy of prey.

At the taking of *Cair Gazales*, the great and Valiant Captain of the *Mamalukes* was not present, but sent by *Tomombeius* to raise an Army in *Arabia*, who upon his return finding all lost, and that the Sultan was fled he knew not where, not thinking it Convenient to hazard a Battle against him, whom Fortune so highly favoured; he came to *Selymus* upon his Faith before given, for the safety of himself and his Followers, which were three *Arrabian* Captains, and a number of good Horsemen, and being admitted to his Presence boldly declared, that since Fortune had made him her Darling, and that he by her aid, rather Conquered the *Mamalukes*, then by any Force; and that since *Tomombeius* was fled, whose part as long as his Kingly Authority and Majesty remained, he had faithfully served, he and the rest were at his Devotion; if he so pleased to serve him with their Lives and Fortunes,

tunes, of which offer *Selymus* joyfully accepted, highly Commending *Gazeles* both for his Virtue and Valour, which for the most part gains Credit amongst the roughest Enemies, and not long after sending him to suppress the *Moors* and *Arabs*, that made IncurSIONS into the Country about *Cair*; he suddenly overthrew them, and e'r he was expected returned with Victory.

Tomombeius being in the Country of *Segesta*, whilst *Selymus* was settling his matters at *Cair*, raised a considerable Army, and the rather for that he had frequent advice from the *Carians*, that if he would come suddenly upon the *Turks*, they would raise such a Tumult that he should not only recover the City, but destroy the Army who were but few in number, and most of those weak through their Wounds and Sicknefs, but e'r he could put this Design in Practice, one *Albuchomar* a man of great Wealth and Authority in the Country of *Segesta*, discovered the design to *Selymus*; who caused all such Citizens as he suspected to be shut up in the Castle, and continually guarded the Streets, placing along the River Boats, and Men and Artillery to keep the Enemy from repassing it, and not well assured to hold what he had got, from such desperate and resolute Enemies as were the *Mamalukes*; of whom a great Power were again resorted to *Tomombeius*, he resolved to send Ambassadors to him, to advise him to submit, and in yielding to his Clemency he would provide for him in some other part of his Dominions, but e'r the Ambassadors came to his Camp, they were way-laid by certain *Mamalukes*, who had vowed no Peace with the *Turks*, and without respect to their Character shamefully murdered them, upon notice of which *Selymus* who was of a hot fiery Nature, was so enraged that he could scarcely contain himself: And thereupon Commanded a strong Bridge made of Boats and

and Planks, to be laid over *Nilus*, resolving to revenge the affront done to his Majesty, the which once finished he drew the greatest part of his Army out of *Cair*, (leaving only so many as might keep the City from revolting) with an intent to pass into the Country of *Segasta*, to waste it with Fire and Sword; of which *Tomombeins* having knowledge, by speedy marches came to the Bridge at what time the *Asian* Horsemen were passed over, and setting furiously upon them e'r they had well put themselves in Order, making great slaughter of such as resisted: Insomuch that many to avoid the Swords of their Enemies by leaping into the River were there drowned, others in passing the Bridge were thrust beside and miserably perished in the Water. Nor could *Mustapha Bassa* with all his Courage resist the Fury of the *Mamalukes*, all the *Turks* being filled with Fear and Consternation, as well on the hither as the further Bank; the Artillery was for a while rendered useless, by reason that if it had been discharged, it must have been against the *Turks* only, who in fearful Troops covered the further Bank, calling for Help to those on the other side; *Selymus* seeing in what state Affairs stood, caused all his Boats to be brought, and filling them with *Janizaries* passed them over, who Ranging in good order stayed the Fury of the *Mamalukes*; when as *Carroglis* Son to the *Tartar* King, and Brother-in-Law to *Selymus*, with his Horsemen took the Water and Swam over with little loss: So that now the Battle went hard on all sides, and strongly did the *Mamalukes* press on to gain the Head of the Bridge; the which they had done by Cutting the Cables that fastened it, they had set it afloat down the River, and destroyed that part of the Army, with whom they were engaged, e'r they could have been relieved by their Fellows; which *Mustapha* perceiving, had drawn to that place both his

his Insigns, and his most experienced Soldiers, so that the Fight was for a long time maintained Bloody and doubtful, but the *Turks* still coming over in great abundance, true Valour was obliged to give place to Multitudes; for the *Mamalukes* who had done all that men could do, betook themselves to Flight; after whom the *Tartarian* Horsemen followed with great Slaughter, as likewise did *Mustapha Gazies*, and *Cayrebeius*, *Selymus* being desirous of nothing more than that *Tonombeius* might fall into his Hands, which at length fell out according to his wish; for, the next Day he was overtaken, when making head with his slender Train, he Fought right valiantly, but at length overcome he again fled, yet so strict was *Selymus* his command, that the great Captains still pursued him, denouncing all manner of Torture to the poor Villagers, if they did not so watch the passages of the great Marsh, whereinto he was entered, that he should by no means escape; whereupon on the third day finding himself hard beset on every side, he willingly gave his followers leave to forsake him, and laying aside his Insigns of Royalty hid himself amongst the Flags and Bushes, standing up to the Neck in Water, where being found by the Country Peasants, he was drawn thence and delivered to the *Bassa Mustapha*, who brought him together with several of his Captains to *Cair*, where *Selymus* resolving before hand to put him to Death, thereby to appease the Ghosts of his slain Ambassadors would not admit him to his presence, but commanded him to be delivered to the Tormentors, that with exquisite torments they might make him reveal the Treasure of *Campson Gourus*, supposed by him to have been hid, all which he endured with a manly courage and stern Countenance, uttering nothing unbeseeming his Character, after which he in tattered Garments with his Hands bound behind him, being set upon a lean

Ill-favoured Camel, was in division carryed through all the Publick places of the City to be Gazed at as a Spectacle of Misery, by those who not a Month before had honoured with profound Reverence, as their great & mighty King, now by the hand of Fortune thrown from the top of all worldly honour, into the Abyfs of extreamest Misery, and in this manner the insulting *Turks* having brought him to the chief Gate of the City, extended their cruelty yet farther by strangling him with a Rope, and that he might be the better seen of all that passed by, Hanged him upon a hook under the Gate; nor did any of the Princes of the *Mamalukes* who fell into the *Turks* Hands fare otherwise.

The Terror of *Selymus* his many Victories now spreading wide, all the Cities of *Egypt* submitted to the Conquerour, no place between the River *Nilus*, and the Borders of *India* and *Arabia*, that were either Tributaries or Confederates to or with the Sultan, but sent their Ambassadors with Presents to *Selymus*, promising to continue the same with him, as they have done with the *Sultans*, only the wild *Arabians* stood at defiance till such time as with large Gifts he had won many of their great Captains to bring their People over to his obedience; at what time *Amyrases* submitted himself, and delivered into his possession the *Egyptian* Fleet, built to oppose the *Portugise* Trade in the *Indies*, and so Swimming in the currant of Fortunes favour, he extended his Dominions as far as the confines of the Great King of *Ethiopia* called *Prestor-John*, and thus having reduced all to his obedience, he came down the River *Nilus* in his Gally to *Alexandria*, and having well reviewed it, returned again to *Cair*, from whence he commanded 500 Families of the Wealthier sort of the *Egyptians* to be removed to *Constantinople*, for the Transportation of which Vessels were purposely prepared; as also a great number of Women and Children

dren of the Race of the *Mamalukes*, thereby to prevent future troubles, and then staying a while to observe the overflowing of *Nilus*, from which the *Egyptians* Prognosticate a happy or unhappy Season, as it rises little or much, he resolved to depart for *Syria*, having made *Cayrebins* the Traytor Governour of *Cair*, and his great Lieutenant of *Egypt*, which he had reduced into a Province, whereat *Jonuses* the Great *Bassa* greatly envying, as supposing himself greatly wronged by *Selymus*, whom he had faithfully served in all his Wars, in heaping upon a Traytor the honour which he greedily expected by opening his mind therein, and refusing to deliver the Largeses appointed for the Soldiers thereby to render his Competior odious, he fell so far into the Emperors displeasure, that notwithstanding all the excuse he made in defence of himself, he caused him to be Strangled even in his presence, thereby to deter others from daring to prescribe him what he should Act, or on whom he should bestow his favours, yet was the fall of this great *Bassa* worthily Lamented of the Souldiers, who spared not to tell the Tyrant to his Face of his many Barbarous Cruelties, repeating all the Inhumane Murthers he had caused to be committed, but others again remembring how this *Bassa* had during his being in favour with *Selymus*, causelessly Stabed his Fair and Virtuous Wife *Manto*, upon a jealous, tho false and Groundless Suspicion of her Inconstancy, said it was a Judgement of God upon him for that Barbarous and unnatural Crime.

Selymus having left *Egypt*, and arrived in *Syria*, received Letters from *Himbracor* the Great Master of his Horse, whom he had left upon the Frontiers to attend the motions of the *Persians*, certifying him that *Hismael's* great preparations were dwindled into nothing by reason that most of his forces consisting of Voluntary Gentlemen, who served at their own charges, and they

not bound to pass the Limits of their Country, had refused to invade the *Turkish* Frontiers, during the Wars with the Sultans of *Egypt*. All the following Winter *Selymus* stay'd to settle his Affairs in *Syria*, but early in the Spring having notice from his Lieutenant in *Europe*; that Pope *Leo* the tenth had stirred up the *Christian* Princes, to invade his Territories on that side, leaving *Gazeles* his Lieutenant in *Syria*, he hastened with his Army to *Constantinople*, where he no sooner arrived but making great preparations, he resolved to bend all his forces against the *Christians*; but 'ere he could perform his design God (who as he pleases restrains the power of Tyrants, even in their greatest pride, to make him sensible that he was but a mortal Man) struck him with a grievous Canker in the Reins of his Back, which deriding Art admitted of no cure, but daily increasing with horrible pains, he still Rotting above-Ground, and well-nigh Poysoning such as were about him with the noisome Contagion, in his way to *Hadrianople*, in order to the Solemnizing the profane Feast called *Bairam* (or as they Term it the Feast of their Prophet) he Breathed out his dismal-Ghost *Anno* 1520, near to the City *Chiurlia*, on the very spot where he had formerly lifted up his Impious Sword against his Father *Bajazet*, with purpose to have bereaved him of his Life and Empire, dying after he had Reigned eight Years and lived 46, filling the World with Murthers and prodigious Slaughters, and was Buryed in a new Temple at *Constantinople*, Erected for that purpose by his Son *Solyman*, who succeeded him in the *Ottoman* Empire, and in token of his restless Nature, upon his Tomb is Ingraven in *Greek*, *Turkish* and the *Slavonian* Tongues, this following Epitaph.

Hic Maximus adsum Selymus, qui orbem Domui; non Bella relinquo, &c.

In English thus.

*Lo here I lye great Selymus, who held the world in fear,
The World I leave, yet not the Wars which I seek, tho not
here.*

*Not Fortunes chance, nor Victors Hand could take from me
the Spoils.*

*And tho my Bones lye Buryed here, my Ghost seeks Bloody
Broils.*

C H A P. XV.

*The Life of Solyman, the first of that Name,
and fourth Emperor of the Turks, who for his
many great exploits, or rather Lofty Carriage,
was Sirnamed the Magnificent.*

S*elymus* being dead, his Death was Concealed by *Ferbates*, the only *Bassa* present at his Departure, till such time as *Solyman* came from *Magnesia*, lest the Souldiers but especially the *Fanizaries* should have Spoil'd and Plundered the Merchants-Strangers residing in the great City of *Constantinople*, as is usual with them in *Interregnums*, as they call them, which are accounted from the Death of the proceeding Emperor, to the time the Succeeding Emperor is presented to be proclaimed by the men of War; but such was the Incredulity of *Solyman*, that knowing his Fathers cruel Nature, & Jealous apprehension of his intent to Aspire to Empire, for which he had often been in danger of

his Life, could not believe what he most desired, till he had it certified from all Hands, upon which with more then ordinary speed, he hasted to *Constantinople*, and there being met by the Great *Bassas*, and the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* he was lead into the mid'st of the men of War, drawn up for that purpose, when as the *Aga* or chief Captain with a loud Voice said, Behold your Emperor, upon which immediately followed an Universal Shout, succeeded with the Joyful Acclamation of, Longlive the great Emperor *Solyman* (which consent of the men of War is to the *Turkish* Emperors, the greatest Assurance of their safe Establishment in their Empire) and so in great Triumph they brought him into the Royal Pallace, and placed him in his Fathers Seat Anno 1520, at what time *Charles* the fifth was chosen Emperor of *Germany*.

The *Janizaries* by this means disappointed of the Spoil of the Goods, belonging to the Jewish and Christian Merchants, in Lieu thereof received of the new Emperor great Sums of money, and had during his Reign, their wages Augmented ; upon the Death of *Selymus*, *Gazeles* whom he had made Governour of *Syria*, revolted from *Solyman*, and drew after him the remaining power of the *Mamalukes*, seizing upon several Cities, but being Fought with by *Ferates Bassa* sent against him with a great power, he after a long and Bloody Fight was Slain, and his forces put to Flight ; upon which all the Cities of *Syria* were again reduced to the *Turkish* obedience: And now *Solyman* desirous to get himself a Name, by the Counsel of *Pyrrhus-Bassa* his Tutor resolved to bend his forces against the *Christians*, who by Reason of the Dissensions amongst themselves, lay open to his Invasion (a fatal over-sight which ever gave the *Ottoman* Emperors, the opportunity to enlarge their Dominions on the Borders of Christendom) whereupon raising a great power, and entering

entering *Hungaria*, he took *Belgrade* almost without resistance, against which in vain *Mahomet* the Great, *Amurath* and *Bajazet* had lost 500000 Men; *Belgrade* strongly Garrisoned he dispersed part of his Army, and returned to *Constantinople*, making great preparations for Sea against the Spring, as having an Eye upon the famous Island of *Rhodes*, of which the *Rhodians* not being Ignorant chose for their great Master *Philippus Villerius*, a man of great Wisdom and Courage, then following the French Court; but upon notice thereof took Shipping at *Marcelles*, and arrived safe in the Port of the City *Rhodes* (tho *Solyman* had sent out *Cortug Ogly*, a famous Pirate of the *Turks*, with several Gallies to intercept them) whereupon at his arrival he was installed by the Knights of the Order and Citizens, with great Triumph, and more then ordinary expressions of Joy.

Solyman not altering his Determination, yet desirous to know how the *Rhodians* stood affected, and to learn all that was possible of their number, and the Strength of the City, sent divers insinuating Letters with Supercriptions of his Thundering Titles to the great Master, of which this is one, viz. *Solyman* by the Grace of God, King of Kings, Lord of Lords, greatest Emperor of *Constantinople*, and *Trepezond*; most Mighty King of *Persia*, *Arabia*, *Syria*, *Egypt*, Lord of *Asia* and *Europe*, Prince of *Mecha* and *Aleppo*, Ruler of *Jerusalem* and Master of the Universal Sea, to *Philippus Villerius Lilladamus* great Master of *Rhodes*, &c. But neither thesethumping Titles, nor his Threats and Promises, could move the great Master to hearken to his Request, which was that he would become his Tributary, and to deliver into his possession the City and Island; so that finding his Expectations Frustrated, and that his Name was not so terrible as he supposed, after many Letters had passed and repassed, he

caused a Fleet of 200 Gallies to be furnished with all things necessary, for the siege of that strong city, of which the great Master being Advertised, was not wanting on his part to put all things in order for making a most resolute defence, causing Watch and Ward to be kept in every Street, and the great Artillery to be planted upon the Walls, and Bulwarks, opening all the Armories of the City, and furnishing every man with Weapons, appointing to each his Station, there to be ready when occasion required his Service, and then taking a General Muster of such as were fit for Service, he found about 5000 resolute men, amongst whom were six hundred Knights of the order, each of them capable of Commanding a vast Army, as likewise 500 Souldiers of *Creet*; there were come thither for fear of the *Turks*, a number of Villagers, who served to Sink Sounds to Countermine the Enemy, and to cast up Rampires, &c.

Things thus ordered, the great Master calling together his Commanders and Soldiers, encouraged them in a most Christian-like manner, to fight boldly against the Enemies of Christ, and rather to dye in the defence of their Religion, then to submit themselves to the Tyranny of the Barbarous Infidels, putting them in mind of the Valour of their Ancestors, and of the aid they were to expect from the *Christian* Princes, &c. Which Speech so Animated the Commanders and Souldiers, that they desired nothing more then to shew their prowess to the World.

By this time the *Turks* Gallies were put to Sea, and about twenty being the forerunners of the Fleet for many Days braved the *Rhodians* before their own Port, whereupon the Great Master called a Council to know whether they should be Fought with or not, to procure which the Chancellor a man of Admirable Courage earnestly Laboured, but the defendants being but
few,

few, and therefore the smallest loss at Sea, tho they should gain the Victory, might be a means to Weaken the City, yet at length it was resolved upon, that they should be permitted to Land in any part of the Island, except the Port without resistance, which they accordingly did, burning up the Corn, and making great Spoil as they passed, yet durst they attempt nothing against the City, but again entering their Galley stood off to Sea, to joyn with the rest of the Fleet, which on the 26 of *June*, Anno 1322, was from the Watch-Tower standing upon *St. Stephens* Hill discerned, and notice given thereof to the Great Master, who caused Publick Prayers to be put up to God; that as it was his pleasure, that they at that time should become the Champions of the Christian Religion, that so of his infinite Goodness, it would please him to strengthen them, and give them Victory over the Enemies of his name, &c.

Prayers ended every man betook him to his charge, when as the fleet sailing by in Triumph, the Vice-Admiral of the *Turks* in the middle, having a fair Wind, strook Sail directly before the Mouth of the Haven, and caused his Galley to row towards the entrance of the Port, Guarded with two strong Towers, from which he received such a thundering welcom, that he was inforced to retire, and so with the rest of the fleet sailing along the coast they came to a Promontory called by the Inhabitants *Bow*, where thrusting their Gallies into a small Haven, they landed their Artillery, and other necessities fit for the Siege, the whole Army consisting of 200000 men; and whilst they were preparing to intrench themselves, the Great Master sent Embassadors to *Charles* the Emperor, and the *French* King, as likewise to the Pope, and Princes of *Italy* for aid, but they by reason of the broils amongst themselves, returned the Embassadors only with fair promises in stead of performance.

The

The City of *Rhodes* is Situate upon plain ground, every where to be besieged, except towards the North, which is defended with a good Haven, and is encompassed about with a strong double Wall, and deep Trenches, threatening the Enemy with 13 stately Towers, 5 Bulwarks, and many strong Gates, and what was more available, within the City was kept a strict and orderly manner of warlike discipline. The defence of the whole City was thus proportioned; From the *French* Tower the which for its exceeding height seems to kiss the Clouds, stood the *Frenchmen* with the Lillies in their Ensign, under *Johannes Abinus* a Knight of the order, from thence to *St Georges* Gate lay the *Germans* with their *Eagle* Ensign, in the third station were placed the *French* of *Avernois* with the *Spaniards*, for that the ditches in that place were neither so deep nor broad as in others, next to them lay the *English*, commanded by the great Master himself, and lastly were placed they of *Narbona* and the *Italians*, under the Command of *Petrus Balinus*, and *Gregorius Morgutus*, Valiant Knights of the Order.

Whilst Affaires stood thus, several *Turkish* Women slaves to the *Rhodians*, had conspired that when the Assault was given, they would set their Masters houses on fire, thereby to discourage the Souldiers, and draw them from their defences to extinguishing the flame, but this treachery being timely discovered the Conspirators were executed; by this time the *Turks* had planted several batteries, and began to play upon the *English* Bulwark, but without doing any considerable damage, when on the other side, the Cannon from the Walls furiously playing upon the *Turkish* Pioneers, as they were breaking Ground, scattered their dead Bodies all over the Plain, when at the same time a strong party Sallying out, cut off a great number of such as were sent to guard them, during

ring their running the trenches, which so discouraged the rest, that they began to Murmur and Mutiny against their Commanders, seeming daily more and more unwilling to hazard their lives against so strong a City, and such resolute Enemies, which caused *Pyrrhus Bassa* General of the Army, to send Letters to *Solyman* then residing at *Constantinople*, to inform him: That if he would have the Siege go forward, he must without delay come in person, for that the Souldiers without regard of shame were ready to rise in Mutiny, and to abandon the Siege, refusing to be commanded by their Captains, upon notice of which *Solyman* caused his Gallies to be made ready. And on the 28 of *August* came himself to the Camp, where reading in the Countenances of his Souldiers, the little mind they had to continue the Siege, he was exceeding wroth, when causing them all to be disarmed, he commanded 15000 harquibusers to encompass them (which Harquibusers he had brought with him) and Mounting his Pavilion for that purpose erected, he rated with many bitter words, calling them Slaves and Cowards, after which he encouraged them to assume their Pristine courage and fight manfully against the City, till they had subdued it, and thereupon pronounced pardon to all that had offended, and swore them again to his obedience, after which the City was furiously battered, with shot of incredible weight, and huge stones for many days, and was as manfully defended by the *Rhodians*, so that in 200 shot there were but 10 men slain, though several houses were shattered, with their force, of which the *Turks* having notice from one *Appella* a Citizen of *Rhodes*, who was for the same executed as a Traytor.

The *Turks* perceiving the former Battery ineffectual, raised a huge Mount, on which they placed 40 great Ordnance with which they played furiously upon the Tower

Tower of *St. Nicholas*, which was valiantly defended by one *Guido* a *Frenchman*, to whom the charge of it was committed, but e'r they had made many shot, most of their Pieces were dismounted by the Cannon from the City, nor durst they, when they had made a Breach, enter it; but used great Diligence to undermine the Wall, thirty two of which Mines were frustrated by Countermines; yet they so plyed it, that on the fourth of *September* having undermined the *English* Bulwarks, they blew part of it up, and in it divers of the Defendants; at which Breach the *Turks* attempting to enter, were killed in the Breach to the number of 2000. Which the rest observing, betook themselves to their Heels, but being forced thereby to please the Tyrant, they three days after renewed the Assault, but with worse success then before; yet though they did as much as in them were possible, *Soly* sent them a third time to enter at the said Breach, in attempting which 7000 were slain, amongst whom were many great Commanders, though not without some loss to the besieged; for in expulsiug them fifty Knights of the Order, and 100 of lesser Note were slain. These great Losses made the *Bassas* more wary, resolving not longer to assail the besieged with plain Force, but to work under ground, and by that means to overthrow the Walls, but therein, for the most part they were unsuccessful, as being frustrated by the Countermines; yet by so weakening the Walls, they rendred it more liable to the Force of their Artillery, beating down great Pieces thereof, yet stood hovering about, being afraid to enter, and yet not daring to retire, though they were mowed down in abundance by the great Shot, for fear of the Tyrants displeasure; yet at length creeping under the Walls to the *Spanish* Bulwarks, they surprized it, whilst their Soldiers were drawn off to relieve their Fellows,
hardly

hardly Charged by *Achmetes Bassa*, but e'r they had kept it two hours it was again recovered, and all the *Turks* either put to the Sword, or thrown over into the Ditch, where they miserably perished: And the *Bassa* sore Gauled by the Flankers was forced to retire, though not without great slaughter of his Men, who lay on heaps in the Ditch and Breaches, which *Solyman* perceiving caused the retreat to be founded; in this Assault, by the Valour of the *Christians*, 20000 *Turks* fell, which so grieved *Solyman*, that in a great rage he Commanded *Mustapha Bassa*, the first mover of the War to be slain, as likewise *Pyrrhus Bassa*, for daring to intreat for him; but upon the humble Supplication of his Men of War on their behalf, he remitted the Execution of the Sentence, but would not for a long time receive them into Favour. He also Commanded the Admiral of his Gallies to be put to Death, for suffering Provision to be carried by Sea into the City; but at the intreaty of *Achmetes* his Life was spared, but he not absolutely pardoned; for being set upon the Stern of his Ship, he there as a Slave by the Commandment of *Solyman* received 100 Stripes, and so much was the Tyrant grieved for the reiterated losses sustained in that Siege, that he was about to have raised his Camp and returned to *Constantinople*, the which he had done, had not *Achmetes Bassa* perswaded him to the contrary, by Promising to make him speedily a way into the City; at which he taking Courage again heartned his Men to continue the Siege, whose Resolutions had long before fainted; upon which *Achmetes* to make good his Promise, assailed with all the Forces under his Command, the *Vanures* of the *Avergnon* Station, the which although they were not high, were valiantly defended by the *Rhodians*; yet the *Turks* Power increasing, they were at last taken, and a great Pent-House claped to the Wall,

to

to secure the besiegers from the Shot of the besieged, notwithstanding *Persanes* a notable Engineer caused such abundance of Wild-Fire, Pitch, Tar, Lead, hot Ashes, and Water to be thrown on them, that they were forced to retire; but such was the miserable Condition of the *Turkish* Soldiers, that they were forced back again by their Commanders, even into the mouth of Slaughter, or else by them slain as Cowards, or Flyers; yet for all they could do, the *Rhodians* forced them to retire in great disorder, which enraged *Solyman* even to Madness, but perceiving that his Honour lay at Stake, he again by many perswasive Arguments prevailed with them, to give another Assault, promising them great Rewards if they prevailed, and threatening those with Death, that should be remiss in the performance of their Duty, which either, through Hopes or Fear Animated them to another Assault, but with no better success then before; for being miserably rent by the murdering Shot from the Flankers and Countermurders, they were forced to retire leaving Piles of their Dead in the Breach and Ditch; and now being altogether heartless, yet extreemly vexed that they should be foiled with a handful of Men, they resolved for the future to be the more wary, and rather to tire the *Rhodians* with continual Alarums then venture upon them, when in the mean time they set their Pioneers at work, to make way through the Breach deep in the Ground, and for their defence turned their great Artillery upon it, to prevent the *Rhodians* Sallying, and with their multitude proved therein so successful, that in a short time they had gained within the City 200 paces in breadth, and 150 in length; yet durst not Sally out to Scale the Countermurders, which the *Rhodians* had made of the Houses beaten down by the *Turks* Shot, which *Solyman* perceiving at the instance of *Achmetes*, caused a parley to be offered; offering many reasonable

reasonable Conditions, if the *Rhodians* would at length surrender the almost ruined City; but, and in Order thereto sent *Hieronymus Monelia* a *Genoway*, who having procured safe Conduct, would not deliver his Message but to some particular men, which so incensed the Knights of the Order, who now had set down a Resolution to dye in defence of the City; that one *Franciscus Farnovius* a *French* Knight of singular Valour, bent his Piece against him, and would not suffer him to do his Message; but the Citizens hearing there were Terms of Life and Liberty offered by the insulting Tyrant, came to the House of the great Master, and beseeched him to take pitty on them, their Wives and Children, and that since he well saw that the City was not long tenable, he would in time provide for their safety, and not expose them to the Fury of their Merciless Enemies; whereat the great Master, a man of singular Piety, as well as Warlike Ardour, being moved to Compassion sent *Antonius Groleus*, and *Robartus Barusinus* his Ambassadors to *Solyman*, having first received Pledges for their safe return, who coming into the Emperors Presence, told him that they were sent to know for what cause he had sent to require Parly, who in a fuming heat as if he had been Ignorant of the matter said, there was no such thing offered, and thereupon Commanding them presently to avoid his Camp, sent them away with Letters to the great Master and Citizens to this Effect.

If I had not Compassion of human Infirmities, which often times tumbleth Head-long mens Ambitions, and haughty minds into most dangerous and unnecessary Mischiefs; truly I would not have directed to you these Letters at this time, but as you have well deserved, persecute you with Death, and most Miserable Servitude, which how easie a thing it were for me to do, you your selves know, but having now
sufficiently

sufficiently tryed my force, if you be wise make proof of my Clemency, you have already satisfyed your own fury, your own mad humour: Therefore now advise your selves, lay your Hands upon your Hearts, and without delay yield your selves, as I command your Lives, I give you your Wealth, and more then that your choice to tarry there still or depart, refuse not the Grace freely Offered, which was of you to have been most heartily desired; it shall not be always Lawful (as at this present) to make choice of both, &c.

Upon the return of the Ambassadors, the Citizens of all sorts flocked together, to the Great Masters House, standing near the Breach to implore him to accept of any Reasonable terms, who after he had dismissed the Multitude, calling to him the Knights of the Order, and chief Citizens, after the Letters read, he expressed himself after this manner.

You heard (sacred Fellows in Arms, and Valiant Citizens of *Rhodes*) these imperious and sorrowful Letters, whereunto how we are to answer, requireth no great deliberation; we must as resolute men either yield or dye, all hopes of Victory is gone, except forrain aid come speedily to our Succour; wherefore if you will follow my Counsel, let us with Weapons in our Hands until the last Gasp and spending the last drop of our Blood like Valiant men, defend our Faith and Nobility, received from our Ancestors, and the honour which we have of long time gotten, both at home and abroad, and let it never be said that our honour dyed but with our selves.

This Speech was approved of by all the Knights of the Order, and most of the Soldiers, but the Citizens looking back upon their Wives, Children, and Wealth, stood mute for a good while, but at length Pity working in their Brest, they humbly besought the

the Great Master; that he would yet have Compassion on them, and accept of the Tyrants reasonable Conditions, since Fame sufficient had been won by their doing all that men were capable of performing, and that they would yet hazard their Lives to the utmost, if they perceived any hopes of defending the City, or that any forain aid in time would come to their assistance, but since neither of them were to be expected it was but reasonable to yield to inevitable necessity. After these and many the like Arguments, and others of the resolute Soldiers, and Commanders on the contrary, it was concluded that the City was not capable of being defended by so small a Power, against such a numerous Army, whereupon Messengers were sent to require a Truce for 4 Days, which was accordingly granted, during which time the *Turks* presuming on the Truce, came in great number to View the Works, at which *Fornovius* a French man being greatly offended, in a great heat without any command from the Great Master, caused a Fire of Artillery to be discharged amongst the thickest of them; whereupon they pretending a Breach of Truce on the part of the *Rhodians*, thrust in at the Breach in great Troops, but after a sharp Skirmish were forced to retire, in revenge whereof one of the *Turks* Fencers having taken 3 *Christians*, cut off their Hands, Noses and Ears, and in that posture sent them into the City, threatening within 4 Days to serve the Great Master after the same manner; yet *Solyman* dissembling the matter, signed and swore to the Articles of Peace brought to him for that purpose by *Nicholas Vergotus*, and *Georgius Sandriticus*, which were to this Effect; That the Churches should remain unto the *Christians* inviolate, that no Children should be taken from their Parents, or any *Christians* be enforced to imbrace the *Mahometan* Superstition: That such *Christians* as were Contented to

O

remain

remain in the City, might so do at their Pleasure, and that such as would depart, might have Liberty so to do with all their Substance, to be furnished with Convenient Shipping, Provision, and Ordnance as far as *Creer*, that the *Christians* should appoint a reasonable Day for their Departure, and that in Consideration thereof, the City to be delivered up to such as *Solyman* should appoint to take Possession thereof.

Upon the afore-mentioned Articles, though they were not all observed by the *Turks*; the City was delivered up *Anno* 1522. after it had indured six Months Siege, and cost *Solyman* the Lives of 80000 of his Soldiers, having been in the Possession of the Knights of the Order 214 years: Upon which the great Master being for his Gravity, Virtue, and Valour highly Honoured, and applauded by the Conqueror embarked (together with the Knights of his Order, and such others as would accompany him) and the Gallies for that purpose ready in the Port, and sailed to *Mesina*, where he was joyfully received, and after invited to the Courts of most of the *Christian* Princes, having with Indignation refused *Solyman's* great Offer made to him, provided he would have accompanied him to *Constantinople*, and have spent the remainder of his Days in his Service.

And thus for want of Relief (the *Christian* Princes at that time being at Variance amongst themselves) the famous *Rhodes* was lost, where *Solyman* having stayed awhile to settle his Affairs appointed a Governour, and so breaking up his Army returned to *Constantinople*, where for the space of three years he lived Peaceably, giving himself up to all manner of Pleasures; but at the end thereof perceiving the Discord amongst the *Christian* Princes, managed by Pope *Adrian* the sixth to grow hot (a fatal over-sight that ever gave the *Osoman* Kings and Emperors opportunity

tunity of extending their Dominions) he conceived it best to fish in troubled waters, and thereupon raising an Army of 200000 Horse and Foot ; he fell like a Tempest upon *Hungary*, subduing all before him till he came within sight of the Walls of their chief City, at what time *Lewis* the young King perswaded thereto by *Tomoreus* a Fryer, who assured him of the Victory, and several other rash Counsellors, not regarding those of more Gravity, that diswaded him from so rash an Attempt ; with an Army of scarce 30000 raw Soldiers gave him Battle, but was overthrown with miserable Slaughter of his men, and himself seeking to escape, passing over a Fenny Ditch his Horse fell backwards, upon which, he was loaden with his Armor, and none coming to his Relief, he was smothered in the Water and Mud : In this Battle fought on the 29. of *October Anno 1526.* perished most of the *Hungarian* Nobility, and well near all the Common Soldiers.

After this great great Victory obtained, *Solyman* having most of the strong Cities delivered into his Possession ; gave the Kingdom to *Joannes Sepusius Vayvod* of *Transylvania*, and taking with him such things of Price as he thought convenient, leaving two of his *Bassas* with flying Armies on the Frontiers, he returned to *Constantinople*, but he was no sooner departed and *John* Crowned by the Consent of the remainder of the *Hungarian* Nobility (who durst do no other for fear of the *Turks*) but *Ferdinand* King of *Bohemia* laid Claim to the Kingdom, and to make his Title more apparent, sent his Ambassadors to the Courts of divers *Christian* Princes, to declare from whom he derived his Claim ; when aided by *Charles* the Emperor his Brother, he entered *Hungary* with a great Army, and without any considerable Resistance took the strong City of *Buda* ; at what time many of the *Hungarians* joyned with him, as not in the

least favouring *John*; so that fearing delays might be dangerous, he caused his Army under the leading of his expert Captains to pass over the River *Tibiscus* upon a Bridge of Boats, and marched directly to the Castle of *Tocai*, where King *John* lay with his Army; where the Battle being joyned after a sharp Dispute, the Victory fell to *Ferdinand*; when as King *John* seeing all lost and past recovery, fled with several of his trusty Followers into *Polonia*; upon whose departure *Ferdinand* by the advice of such *Hungarians* as favoured his Cause, was Crowned King at *Alba-Regalis* the usual place for the Coronation of the *Hungarian* Kings: Whereupon having disposed all things to the best advantage, and appointing *Stephanus Bator* his Vice-Roy, he returned into *Bohemia*.

King *John* by the means aforesaid thrust of his Kingdom, grew extreme impatient, and often consulted with *Sigismund* King of *Polonia* to re-in-throne him in his Kingdom, offering to bear the Charge of the War; but the Pole being already in League with *Ferdinand*, would not seem unless underhand to favour *John*, but wished him to take counsel with *Hieronymus Lascus* a great Politician, what was best to be done in his Affairs, the which *Lascus* advised him to crave Aid of *Solyman* now at Leisure to assist him; and urged so many Reasons for it, that he was content to send him his Ambassador to *Constantinople*, who there with Treasure and fair Speeches, so allured the *Bassas* of the Court to second him in his Request, that *Solyman* promised again to enter *Hungaria* with a puissant Army, and by the Insinuation of this sly Councillor, that when King *Ferdinand* sent Ambassadors to him, to make out his Title, by which he laid Claim to the Kingdom, he would scarcely give them Audience; and when he did, instead of an Answer to their Ambassy, he Herauld-like denounced against their King, all the Calamities

Calamities that attend on War, and so commanded speedily to depart the City; all which upon their Arrival at *Vienna*, they made known to the Kings Lieutenant, who was so far from believing them, that he looked upon them as vain and idle Tale-bearers, which they perceiving hastened to the King at *Spire*, who then was Labouring to get himself chosen King of the *Romans*, and declared to him all they had in Charge: Whereupon he well knowing, that the *Turk* desirous of Glory, and the enlarging of his Dominions, seldom broke his Word on such occasions; he put all his Forces in a readiness, earnestly, both in Person and by his Ambassadors, craved Aid of the *German* Princes for the Defence of his Kingdom of *Hungary*, against the common Enemy; but his Brother *Charles* having his hands full of his Wars in *Italy*, and he wanting Money to raise a sufficient Army to fight so powerful an Enemy, was forced to suffer him without Controul to enter *Hungaria*, for fear of whom the Citizens of *Buda* mostly fled to *Strigonium*, *Alba-Regalis*, and *Possonium*: So that marching from *Belgrade* (where King *John* came to wait upon him, and received a Confirmation of the Promise he had made to *Lascus*, of restoring him to the Kingdom of *Hungary*) he came before it, and had it yielded with little or no Resistance, as likewise the strong Castle, though contrary to the Will of the Captain, yet contrary to his Promise, he caused all that were found in the latter to be put to the Sword, except the Captain, whom the Soldiers had cast in Bonds, for refusing to joyn with them in their treacherous delivery of that strong Piece.

Buda taken most of the other Cities of *Hungary* surrendered; whereupon he resolved to invade *Austria*, a part of King *Ferdinands* other Dominions, in Order to which he sent *Achometes Bassa* with the voluntary Horsemen, who running through the Heart of *Hungary*,

ry, entring into *Austria* with Fire and Sword passed by *Vienna*, miserably burning and destroying the Country before them, even as far as *Lyntz*, driving the Country People like Sheep, deflowring *Vigins*, ripping up Women alive, dashing Infants against the Rocks, with all other imaginable Cruelties ; after whom *Solyman* followed with the gross of his Army, consisting of 500000 Horse and Foot, as many Writers affirm, who by the way having taken the Castle of *Altenbury*, and in vain assaulted *Neapolis* ; he came before the great City of *Vienna*, and incamped about it in five places, covering the Ground with his Tents, and the multitude of his People 8 miles in Circumference. So that *Fredrick* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria* General of King *Ferdinand's* Forces, not being able to get into the City with his Army sent for that purpose, was forced to stay at *Chremse* ; yet was his Nephew *Philip* the *Palsgrave*, a little before the coming of *Solyman* to the great joy of the Citizens, entered with several Troops of valiant Horsemen, as likewise *Nicholas* Count of *Salma*, the Lord *William Regendorf* Steward of the Kings household, *Johannes Cazzianer*, *Nicholaus Turianus*, *Johannes Hardecus*, *Leonardus Velsius*, *Hector Ramsack* with divers others, all men of great Experience and Valour, and daring Resolution ; yet was the City but badly defended with a Brick Wall, without Grafts or Flankers, the Ditch altogether dry, and although at that time there were found 400 Pieces of Ordnance, yet they could find means to mount no more then a 100, notwithstanding the Citizens and Soldiers used all diligence, in raising Rampires, and Barocading the Gates, unless those they reserved to Sally at, and by the Command of the Governour every man was assigned his Quarter, keeping strict Watch upon the Walls, to prevent the Enemies approach, for that the Bulwarks were not

of Considerable strength : The *Count* of *Salma*, and the Lord *Regendorf*, walking hourly from one place to another, to see all things put in a posture of defence, the Citizens laboured continually in strengthening the Fortifications, and raising Batteries, whereon to plant such Pieces as lay uselefs, for want of where to mount them: they made likewise divers Fire-works, and continually kept Coppers of Tar, Pitch, Rosin, Oyl, and scalding Water, in a readiness to pour upon the Enemy, by that means to prevent their Scaling the Walls, every one from the greatest to the least, expressing a Cheerfulness for the defence of this place, the *Metropolis* of *Austria*, and chief Hope of the *German* Empire, which the *Turks* conceived so Considerable, that they doubted not, but it won, all *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Corinthia*, would be soon at their Devotion.

The City by this time strengthened and provided, of many necessary for a strenuous Defence; Messengers were sent to *Count Fredrick* to draw near with his Army, the more to terrifie and amaze the Enemy, whose numerous Camp could not long subsist, if supplies of Provision were cut off; upon the Arrival of the Messenger, the *Count* highly approved of the Resolution of the besieged, and declared he would be always at hand, and omit no Indeavours to succour them, admonishing the Messenger to remember him to his fellow Soldiers, and in his Name intreat them to play the Men, for the defence of the *Christian* Religion, and Glory of the *German* Nation, whose Ruin the *Infidels* sought; and so with several presents, he dismissed the Messenger, who returning related what he had in Charge: Whereupon the Lord *Regendorf* assembled all the chief Commanders, and principal Citizens, and with an undaunted Courage, made this short Oration.

Christians and fellow Soldiers, the time is now
O 4 come

come, wherein we are to fight under the Banner of our Lord Jesus Christ, whom these barbarous Nations have defied; let us then shew forth our Courage to the utmost, even in the Mouth of Slaughter; let not Death nor Danger terrifie us, since we fight in a good Cause, even for our Religion, our Lives, our Wives, Children, and all that we hold dear, for what it can be but Ambition, and thirst of *Christian* Blood, that drew this Bloody Monster with his numerous Host, from such remote Countries: Therefore I say, rather let us dye like Men, fighting it out to the last Drop of Blood, then yield our selves to these Barbarous *Infidels*, who know not how to shew Mercy, whose Leagues, Vows, and Solemn Protections are all but Wind, kept no longer then they prove Advantageous to themselves; I for my part, have fixed my unalterable Resolution to defend this Place to the last Gasps, resolving not to survive its loss.

This Oration spoken with great Earnestness, plainly Demonstrating the Zeal of a brave General, was seconded with loud shouts, every one promising to Live and Dye with him in the defence of the City: Whereupon it was resolved, that the next Morning a Sally should be made upon the Enemies, to give them a Taste of *Christian* Valour, and how little they valued their Lives fighting in so good a Cause; whereupon every one being dismissed went to his Quarters, to give necessary Orders, and take a View how the *Turks* lay incamped, whose multitude covered all the Hills and Plains before the City. The Watch being set, the General went round the City, attended by several Officers; Carefully to survey each Quarter, and to see that none neglected his Duty; so that all things being in good Order, about Midnight six Regiments drew up with a Resolution to fall upon the Enemies Camp, but whilst Orders were in giving, in what manner they should make their approach, a *Christian* Captive having made his escape from the *Turks*, came running almost breathless, and begged to be received into the City: Whereupon the Soldiers drew him up with a Pike, who being questioned about the state of the *Turkish* Camp declared, that every night since they came forty thousand men were driven up in *Battalia*, to Guard the Camp; which was not as yet well intrenched, upon notice of which the General changed his Resolution as to the Sally.

During

During the preparation within *Solyman* was not idle, (having sworn to carry the City by force e're he departed, if he could not have it otherwise) but appointed to every man his station, dividing his Army under *Ibrahim* the Great Bassa, *Michael Ogl*i and *Becrambeius*, so that all things being in a readiness, many salleys were made by the Christians with great slaughter of the Enemies though the *Asapi* and *Janizaries* from their Trenches poured showers of Arrows into the City, for as yet the *Turks* great Artillery were not come up the *Danubius*, but were daily expected; of which *Wolfgangus Hoder* a Valiant Captain understanding by several *Turkish* Prisoners sailed out of the Bay of *Possonium*, and meeting with the *Turks* Galleys, sunk those in which the Ordinance were, taking a great Booty, of which *Solyman* having notice, was greatly intraged, and finding that his small pieces did little other damage than beat down the battlements, and over-jets made of wood in stead of Flankers, he caused the Miners to be set to the Wall, but this their chief hope which with wonderful labour attempted in thirteen places at once, was not so secretly done, but that it was by Drums layed upon the Ground, Basons filled with Water, and deep sounds perceived by the defendants, who with Countermine not only defeated many of them, but destroyed in them by Wild-fire, and other Combustible matter Eight Thousand *Turks*, when to prevent such discovery, *Solyman* commanded continual Alarums should be given, that so the Christians being employed in defending the Walls, might not regard the Miners which succeeded so to his wish, that a great part of the Wall near the Gate that leadeth towards *Carinthia* was thrown down by the springing of a Mine; at which the *Turks* in great numbers endeavouring to

enter, were miserably cut off with the Murthering shot bent against the breach for the purpose ; which no sooner ceased, but they were furiously charged by the *Germans* ; and in despite of all resistance beaten back with incredible slaughter : Not long after, the Wall being blown up in two other places, they again attempted to enter ; but were repulsed as before, leaving heaps of slain in the Breaches, and Ditch ; nor was their third Assault any more successful ; so that after three hours withstanding the fury of the resolute Defendants, they retired to the Camp Ten Thousand less than they came. A while after, the Lord *Regendorfe* perceiving the *Turks* by parties scatter from their Camp, came with a Company of *German* Horse, set upon a Party of Five Thousand Three Hundred with such slaughter, that not above One Hundred and Forty of them returned to tell the News : Nor did other Commanders of the besieged less indamage the Enemies by frequent Salleys, which so intraged the Tyrant, that he animated to a fourth Assault, promising them great rewards if they prevailed, which so far prevailed with them, that they resolved amongst themselves either to win the City, or dye in the undertaking ; but when they felt the shot from the besieged like a tempest fall on them, they were of a different opinion, so that leaving many Thousands of the slain and wounded behind them, they retire to the Camp ; which *Solyman* perceiving, and fretting that his Honour had so much suffered by so great a loss of his Men, and so many Repulses, dissembled the matter as well as he could, and that the *Germans* should not suppose he raised his siege, because he despaired of winning it ; he caused several Prisoners to be richly cloathed, and giving them store of Money, sent them into the City to inform the Com-

Commanders that he came not to take the City of *Vienna*, but to fight King *Ferdinand*, and restore the Kingdom of *Hungaria* to King *John*: therefore since he could not draw his Enemy into the Field to give him Battle, he would remove thence to seek him, wherefore they should do well to yield themselves; the which if they would, he promised not to enter into the City, but to receive both the Citizens and Souldiers into his protection, reserving unto 'um their Lives and Goods with perpetual freedom, which offer coming to the knowledge of the Princes and great Captains of the Christians scornfully refused, whereupon the Imperious *Turk* perceiving his desires not answered as he expected, having caused all the Prisoners to be murdered, in a great heat raised his siege and departed, not staying till he came to *Buda*, where having restored the Kingdom to *John* in consideration of his becoming his Tributary, he returned to *Constantinople*, yet plotting in his mind to disturb the Christians, and revenge the disgrace he had received before at *Vienna*, the next year, viz, 1530, he leavyed an Army greater than the former, purposing with himself to over-run *Austria*, *Carinthia*, *Styria*, and most part of the *German Empire*; to effect which, he allowed three years, but was altogether deceived in his expectation: for *Charles* the Emperör having ended his Wars in *Italy*, was now at leisure to attend upon the Insolent *Turk*; who calling together his Valiant Captains, sent them into *Spain*, *Italy*, *Flanders*, and other Countreys to leavy Forces, which they did in such abundance to oppose the common Enemy, that upon the Muster of the Army there were found Ninety Thousand old experienced Foot Souldiers, and Thirty Thousand Horsemen well appointed, all the flower of *Germany*, *Italy*, *Bohemia*, and *Hungaria*, as likewise One

Hundred and Forty Thousand of less experience, the whole Army consisting of One Hundred and Sixty Thousand Men; the approach of which so terrified *Solyman*, that after he had in vain besieged *Gonza*, and harazed the Countrey, though with the loss of Ten Thousand of his Men, he returned to *Constantinople*, carrying with him into miserable Captivity Thirty Thousand poor Christians taken in divers Countries through which he passed, and to appease his fury, put no less a number to the Sword. And now had the Christian Army, composed of divers Nations, pursued the *Turk* by Land and Sea, as the Emperour earnestly desired they might have driven him quite out of *Europe*; but Emulation arising amongst the Commanders and the Soldiers, frequently mutining this great Army, effected nothing more than to oblige *Solyman* to retire.

The Empire mindful of the damage sustained by the *Turks* in *Austria*, *Hungary*, and other Countries to revenge the same early the spring following, set forth a Fleet consisting of Thirty Five great Ships, and Forty Eight Gallies, under the Conduct of *Andreas Aurea*, a most expert Captain, who sailing to the Bay of *Ambracia*, thought there to have met with the *Turks* Admiral, who had under his Command Sixty Gallies, but he having notice of his coming from the *Venetians*, who stood Newters, was sailed to the strong Haven of *Calcide*; whereupon *Auria* directed his course to *Corone*, a strong City upon the Coast of *Peloponesus*, and had it yielded unto him upon condition that the Garrison might depart with bag and baggage; where leaving a Garrison of *Spaniards*, he sailed to *Patras* another City in the same Tract; took it, and ransacked it, permitting the Garrison nevertheless to march out in safety; after which, he took all the Castles that
guarded

guarded the straight of *Naupactum* without any hindrance, which gave *Saluiatus* General of the *Malta* Galleys opportunity to waste the Coast of *Corinth*, and take great booties; which done, he returned loaden with spoils to *Naples*, and from thence to *Genoa* the place of his birth and residence.

The *Turks* grieving at their great loss, early in the Spring, *Anno* 1533, lay'd siege to *Corone* both by Sea and Land; of which *Mendoza* the Governour by Letters advised the Vice-Roy of *Naples*, craving speedy aid, with all, assuring him, he would defend the Town to the utmost extremity; upon which, *Auria* was sent with a well appointed Fleet; the terror of whose coming so frightened the *Turks*, that they left the siege, having lost many Men before it, and for haste left all their heavy Carriages, which became a Prey to the Garrison Soldiers, which exalted their courage to that degree, that they requested *Macicaus* the Governour to lead them forth to the siege of *Andrusa* a Garrison of the *Turks* not far distant from *Corone*, but their coming being discovered, they could not surprize it as they intended, yet ransacked the Suburbs, and made great slaughter of the *Turks* Horsemen, quartering therein, though with the loss of *Macicaus* the Governour, and divers others; yet not long after they took the City, being abandoned by the Garrison as not tenable; but upon their return to *Corone*, the Plague began to rage so fearfully, that fearing if they stay, they should all perish, and fit opportunity offering it self by reason of the Arrival of several Galleys from *Sicily* with Corn, all the *Spaniards*, together with as many *Greeks* as would imbarqued with the Cannon, and what else they thought convenient; leaving the Town to be again possessed by the

Turks, though not without the consent of the Emperor. Anno 1534 *Aloysus Gritus*, Son to the Duke of *Venice*, and *Solymans* great Favourite, being by him made Lieutenant of *Hungary* inwardly envying at *Americus Vayvod* of *Transylvania* at the instance of one *Docia*, caused him to be murthered in his Tent, which so incensed the *Transylvanians*, that they Arming themselves to the number of Forty Thousand, under the Leading *Maylat*, a Valiant Gentleman, and Kinsman to the *Vayvod*, pursued the Murtherer, who fled to *Mega*, which the *Transylvanians* besieged, and not without great difficulty took, and in it *Aloysus* and *Docia*; the former of which they beheaded, and the latter tore in pieces, taking the spoil of their Goods, which was very great; for about *Aloysus* were found as many precious stones as were esteemed worth Forty Millions.

Solyman thirsting after Glory, and resolving not to let his Soldiers lye idle, resolved to invade at once both *Africk* and *Persia*: the charge of the first he committed to *Barbarusa*, (who of a poor Fisher-Boy became a Pirate, and afterward King of *Argire*, and then travelling to *Constantinople*, was upon the recommendation of *Achometes* the Great *Bassa*, made one of the *Bassas* of *Solymans* Council.) Whereupon he caused all his Gallies to be in a readines, appointing the aforesaid *Barbarusa* Admiral of all his Sea Forces; who had no sooner taken upon him the Command, but sailing out of *Hellespontus* with Eighty Gallies, (leaving *Amurath* with twelve to transport *Solymans* Army in to *Asia*,) he shaped his course for *Italy*, when passing the Straights between *Italy* and *Sicily*, he brought such a fear upon the Inhabitants on either shoar, that they fled with all their substance further into the Countrey; after which, he
layed

layed siege to Saint *Lucidius*, formerly called *Tempfa*, which he took, putting most of the Inhabitants to the Sword, from whence with a rich booty, and many Prisoners, he marched to *Citrarium*, which he took and burnt, together with Seven Gallies that lay in the Port; and so sailing by *Naples*, he seized upon *Spelunca*, from which he marched over Land to *Fundi*, ten miles from *Spelunca*, on purpose as was thought to have seized on *Jula Gonzaga*, a Lady of incomparable Beauty, whom he intended to have presented to *Solyman*, but she though half naked getting on Horseback, fled to the Mountains, yet he took the City, and put most of the Inhabitants to the Sword; and so coasting along *Italy*, and taking many Cities, Towns, and Castles, he brought such a fear upon *Rome* (once Mistress of the World) that many conjectured that if he went directly thither with his Fleet, the *Romans* would have forsaken the City; but then contrary to the expectation of most, he shaped his Course for *Africk*, resolving to invade the Kingdom of *Tunes*, over which Reigned one *Muleasses*, having a little before stepped into the Throne, by treacherously causing to be Murdered all his Brethren, except *Roscetes* and *Abdemelech*; the former of which having tryed his utmost fortune for the recovery of the Kingdom, in right appertaining to him as Elder Brother to *Muleasses*, he for his safety was fled to *Constantinople*, which opportunity *Solyman* laying hold on, to advantage his Wars in *Africk*, kept him as a Prisoner at large, so that *Babarussa* landing, and every where proclaiming the Name of *Roscetes*, whom the *Moors* and *Numidians* greatly favoured, hating *Muleasses* for his extraordinary Tyranny; he had *Biserta* immediately put into his possession, the *Moors* thinking, as indeed the *Turks* gave it out, that

Roscetes was in the Fleet, and that the *Turks* had made so great a Preparation to restore him to his Fathers Kingdom.

Barbarussa having secured *Biserta* with a strong Garrison, doubling the Promontorie where old *Carthage* stood, came to *Gulletta*, a strong Castle standing within the Bay of *Tunis*, where in token of Friendship he saluted it, and had the like returned; but upon the requesting the surrender thereof, he was answered, that it should be alwaies at his Command, who ruled the City of *Tunes*, so that returning from thence, he came before the City, upon which by the perswasion of such as affected *Roscetes*, *Muleasses* fled with a small number of his Favourites, and for haste left behind him most of his Treasure, which afterwards became a prey to the Enemy; *Muleasses* fled, the people joyfully received *Barbarussa* into *Tunes*, and with eager Eyes, and longing expectations, flockt into the high streets to have a sight of their new King, but when they perceived him not, and heard the Soldiers in their Acclamations name none but *Solyman* and *Barbarussa*, they began to doubt as the truth was that, instead of their new King, whom they so much desired, thay had received the *Turkish* Government, which above all things they utterly abhorred; which suspicion once confirmed by severall of *Roscet's* Friends, whom *Barbarussa* had brought with him on purpose to delude the people, who grieved to see the ruine of their Countrey at hand, for fear of present danger did not spare to tell their Friends and Acquaintance, that in vain they expected *Roscetes*, who remained in Bonds at *Constantinople*, which wrought so sudden an alteration in the minds of the Citizens, that perceiving themselves deceived at the instance of *Abdabar* the *Mesuar*, or chief Magistrate,

gistrate who had before perswaded *Muleasses* to fly, in hopes of bringing in *Roscetes*, they every where run to their Arms, and from all parts of the City assailed the *Turks*, but for the most part being slightly Armed, and in a tumultuary disorder they were not able to stand the fury of the *Harquebusers*; but after a long and obstinate Fight, wherein a great number were killed on both sides, they submitted themselves; of which *Muleasses* having notice, fled to *Constantina*, the Regal City of *Dorax*, a *Numidian* Prince his Kinsman, where he remained in safety till the coming of *Charles* the Emperor into *Africk*, as will appear in the sequel of this History.

Tunes thus taken, or rather surprized by *Barbarossa*, all the other Cities thereto appertaining, were won with little difficulty, and annexed to the *Turkish* Empire, till they were again fundred by the *Germans*, and *Muleasses* the Exil'd King restored by the Emperor: And in this posture, leaving the Affairs of *Africk*, I shall take a view of *Solyman's* proceeding against the *Persians*.

Hismael being dead, and *Tamas* his Son succeeding him, *Ibrahim* the Great *Bassa*, who could do all with *Solyman*, perswaded him that now a fit opportunity offered to be revenged on the *Persians*, and the rather by the revolt of *Vlemus*, a Noble Man of *Persia*, who had Espoused King *Tama's* Sister, who having Imbeſſed the Revenues of the Crown, for fear of being called to account for so doing, was fled to *Constantinople*: But *Solyman's* Mother, and fair Concubine *Roxolan* greatly desirous of his Company, much opposed the Motion of the *Bassa*, laying before *Solyman* the danger and inconveniency of so tedious and dangerous an Expedition; but not being able to prevail, they ever after became *Ibrahim's* Mortal Enemies, not leaving to urge *Solyman*, till at last

last he gave command that he should be murdered.

Solyman resolved upon an expedition against the *Persian*, to revenge, as he pretended, the manifold injuries done to his Grandfather, Father, and himself, raised a great Army, part of which he sent before him, under the Command of *Ibrahim* the Great *Bassa*, and *Olemas* the Fugitive *Persian*, who by hasty Marches over the Mountains, and along the Banks of *Euphrates*, that setting down before the great City *Taurus*, and the Citizens despairing to be relieved by their King, he had the City delivered into his possession, of which King *Tames* having notice, hastened thither with his Army, but ere he attempted any thing for the recovery thereof, *Solyman* with a great multitude of Soldiers had joyned the *Bassa*, whereupon he thought it not good to give Battle to so powerful an Enemy, but to hover about his Camp, and take all advantages, well knowing such a World of people could not subsist, without exceeding store of Provisions and other necessities; which device of the *Persian*, *Solyman* well perceiving, left a strong Garrison in *Taurus*, and marched against him, who still retired before the *Turks*, even to the Walls of *Sultania*; near to which, *Solyman* pitching his Camp, lay many dayes to expect him; during which time, such a horrible Tempest arose, that the Winds driving the Snow off from the steep Hills, buried many Thousands of the *Turks* alive, overthrowing most of their Tents, and although it was but the middle of *September*, froze so hard, that many were froze to Death, others lost the use of their Limbs, and most of the Camels and Horses perished; which bad Omen, together with their Apprehensions they had of the approach of the Enemy, and the horrible darkness of the Night, so discouraged

couraged the Soldiers that they would all have fled, had they known which way. This Tempest they concluded to be raised by the *Persian* Magicians to destroy them, but whether so, or not, it greatly discouraged *Solyman*, so that raising his Camp, he marched into *Affyria*, and set down before *Babylon* now *Bagdat*, which being altogether unprovided, upon the flight of the Governour, fell into his hands, as likewise did most of the Cities, both of *Affyria* and *Mesopotamia*; and so far extended the terror of his Name; that most of the Countreys round about, sent their Embassadors to tender their subjection; and in *Babylon* he Wintered his Army, placing Governours in the adjacent Cities. And a Beglerbeg, as they proudly term him, that is, a Lord of Lords. In *Babylon*, and under him, divers *Sanzarks*, or petty Lords, during his aboad here, he also caused his chief Treasurer to be executed for Imbellling his Revenues.

Tamas the *Persian* King having by this time raised a considerable Army, marched to *Tauris*, at whose approach the Garrison fled; of which *Solyman* having notice, and being strengthened with new supply out of *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Judea*, and *Comagena*; he left *Babylon*, resolving to provoke the *Persian* to Battle, or to sack his regal City *Tauris* before his face, but *Tames* knowing himself too weak to give him Battle, at his approach drew out his Army, and fled into the Mountains of *Hyrkania*, destroying all before him, to prevent its falling into the hands of his Enemies; upon whose departure, the Citizens opened their Gates to the *Turks*, whom they were no wayes able to resist: yet notwithstanding, at the Commandment of *Solyman*, the City was sacked, the Kings Palace, and other stately Buildings levelled with the Ground, and a great number of
the

the Citizens lead into miserable Captivity, and thinking himself sufficiently revenged, he resolved to return with his Army into *Mesopotamia*; but having notice that the *Persian* was following, even at his heels, he divided his Forces, leaving the *Bassas* of *Cair* and *Syria* with *Ulemus* the Fugitive *Persian*, with Eighteen Thousand to follow in the rear of his Army, to repel the assaults of the Fore-runners of *Tamas's* Army; he marched with the rest by speedy Journeys to *Amida*, now called *Caracemida*: In the mean while *Tamas* coming to *Tauris* with his Army, being the flower of *Parthia*, *Media*, *Iberia*, and *Armenia*; and beholding what desolation the *Turks* had made in that famous City, was so enraged thereat, that he would have pursued them with all his Army to revenge the injury at the hazard of a Battle, but being perswaded they were gone too far to be overtaken, and the Gentlemen of which his Army chiefly consisted, seemed altogether unwilling to undertake so tedious a march, he was content to stay at *Tauris*, and send *Delimeuthes*, a Noble Man of *Persia*, (who freely offered himself to undertake it) with Five Thousand swift Horse to follow them; and as he saw his advantage to cut off the Enemies rear, the which he so speedily performed, that surprizing the Eighteen Thousand under the Command of the two *Bassas*, and *Ulemas*, as they lay securely near the Castle of *Belthis*, that being assisted with the Garrison Soldiers, he put them almost all to the Sword, the *Bassas* and *Ulemas* hardly escaping upon their swift Horse to tell the news, for which service he was highly rewarded by *Tamas*.

These reiterated losses greatly perplexed *Solyman*, so that calling to mind the presages his Mother had made of his evil success in that expedition of that he was wholly lead thereto by the Council *Ibrahim*, *Bassa*,
he

he therefore conceived such a displeasure against him, as ended in his destruction: for upon his Arrival to *Constantinople*, he gave such countenance to those that brought complaints, against which before they durst not do; that at the earnest Request of *Roxolana*, whose Son *Bajazet* the *Bassa* hindred from aspiring to the Empire, and rather favouring *Mustapha*, *Solyman's* Son by another Woman, that he consented to his being made away; and by reason he had sworn never to injure his person whilst he lived; he caused for the saving of his Oath, an Eunuch to cut his Throat whilst he slept; which Jesuitical Evasion he learned of the *Musti*, or Chief *Mahometan* Priest, who being consulted on the matter, gave his opinion that Men only are alive, when they Move, Act, and Enjoy their perfect Sences: and that sleep depriving them of their reasonable Faculties, rendered them as dead Men. Some there are that report the fall of this great Man, who whilst he stood high in his Masters favour, in effect ruled the *Turkish* Empire to be caused by his too much favouring the Christians, who having in his younger years been brought up in that profession, still continued a Christian in his heart; and that to spare the shedding of Christian Blood as much as in him lay: He turned the Emperors Forces against the Infidels; yet, however it happened, his Body with a great weight fixed to it, was cast into the Sea, and all his Wealth, which was inestimable, except a small portion allotted for the maintenance of his Wife and Children, was seized to the behoof of *Solyman*.

Tunes as aforesaid being taken by *Barbarussa*, and all the other Cities obliged to submit to the *Turkish* obedience, *Charles* the Emperor, who was likewise King of *Spain*, not liking so potent a Neighbour,

bour leavyed great Forces, solicited thereto by *Muleasses* the Exil'd King; and in revenge of the Injuries sustained by *Barbarussa*, resolved to drive him out of that part of *Africk*, when appointing *Alphonfus*, *D'valus*, *Vastius*, General of the Footmen; he with Seven Hundred Sail of great and small Ships and Galleys, stood with the *African Coast*, when dubling the Promontory of *Carthage* came to an Anchor before a Castle, which by reason of a great Well beneath, is it called by the name of *Aquaria*, or the Water Castle; whose unexpected arrival so terrified *Barbarussa*, dreaming of nothing less that he was about to have fled with all his *Turks*; but then fearing to fall into *Solymans* displeasure, which to do, he knew was certain death; upon second thoughts, though he resolved to make all the defence he was able against so powerful an Army as the Emperor lead after him, and thereby get him the name of a valiant Soldier, though he despaired with the Forces he had to keep either the Cities or Castles; whereupon he did what he could to encourage his men with many vain-glorious-speeches; and into the strong Castle of *Galetta*, standing upon the bottom of the Bay of *Carthage* upon a point of Land incompass'd almost round with the Sea, and the great Lake; he thrust his most resolute Captains and Janizaries, himself remaining in *Tunis* to expect supplies out of *Numidia*; at what time the Emperor having with his great and small shot obliged those that guarded the shoar to retire: He landed his men, and intrenched them every Nation by themselves, during which, they had frequent skirmishes with the *Numidian* Horsemen, nor were they less molested by the Garrison, who sallied as often as they saw their advantage; when one dayes sallying under the Command of *Salacian* Arch-Pirate, they

they came up to the Mount, near the Castle, commanded by Count *Serney*, a man famous both for the Honour of his House, and great Exploits in War; who not using to be so braved, descended with the *Italians* under his Command to drive them back by force; but the Enemy being far superiour in number, and the *Spaniards* who were intrenched next him, looking on, and not coming out to succour him, he there fighting valiantly, was slain; but the *Spaniards*, though they secretly rejoiced at the overthrow of the Count, who had so often eclipsed their Glory, feared not better; for the next day *Tobacches* another of the *Turks* Captains sallying out, charged them in their Trenches, killing many of them, and taking what they found therein.

These Losses made the General sharply reprove the Captains of their neglect of duty, in watching to prevent the dangerous attempts of so politique an Enemy; which so wrought with the Captains and Soldiers, that to regain their credit, they vowed to shun no danger, nor were they inferiour to their promise; for *Giaffer*, Captain of the *Janizaries* sallying out against the *Spaniards*, was himself slain together with most of his Men whom the Christians pursued, even to the Gate of the Castle, and had entered with those that fled, had not those that were entered, shut out a great number of their Fellows to prevent it, who were all slain or taken Prisoners: after which, the Emperor caused his Batteries to be mounted, whilst *Auria* with the Fleet blocked up the Castle to the Sea-ward, so that what from the Ships and the Mounts, the great Ordnance in manner of an Earthquake so terribly roared, that their continual thundering made it seem as if the Earth would have rent in sunder, and

and caused the Sea, which before was calm, to mount, as if it had been intraged with a Tempest; the Air likewise became thick, and the Sky was darkned with smoak, so that after ten hours incessant battery, the Vamures, and Walls of the Castle were in many places beaten down: the *Turks* Cannon and Canoneers lying buried together in the Rubbish, so that the defendants utterly despairing longer to hold it, fled over a wooden Bridge layed for that purpose, who being fiercely pursued by the Christians, were most of them slain; insomuch, that the Surface of the Lake was well nigh covered with dead bodies.

The strong Castle thus taken, and most of the *Turks* Fleet of Gallies at Anchor in the Lake, yielded to the Conqueror; upon notice of which, *Muleasses* the *Moorish* King came to the Emperors Tent, and humbled himself at his Feet, promising to become his tributary, desiring as his Vassal to be received into his protection, swearing never to forget so great a Benefit, with many the like expressions; which so moved the Emperour, that he promised to restore him without any other Tribute, than yearly paying a brace of Falcons, and a brace of *Barbary* Horses; as likewise to maintain a Thousand Christian Soldiers to keep for him the Castle of *Guletta*, and ever after to be kind to all Christians either Inhabiting, or that should have occasion to pass through his Countrey, telling him further, that if he failed in any point, those Armes that restored him, could again depose him.

Matters thus concluded, the Emperour marched against *Tunis*, where *Barbarussa*, with the remainder of his Forces were in Garrison, who upon the approach

approach of the Christians, drew out his Forces, consisting for the most part of *Numidian* Horsemen, but scarcely endured the first charge, e're he betook himself to flight, and again entered the City of *Tunis*, where in his mad mood, he determined to kill all the Christian Prisoners; and had put his bloody intent into practise, had he not been dissuaded therefrom by *Sinan* a Jew, one of his chief Captains, which turned to his great disadvantage; for the Captives, to the number of Six Thousand, hearing in what danger they were in, burst out of the Dungeons in the Castle where they lay in Irons, and killing such *Turks* as they found therein, barricaded the doors, seizing on such Armour as came first to hand, made signs to the Emperor, from the Battlements, that they kept the Castle to his behoof; which *Barbarussa* perceiving, and that all his intreaties for the rendition of it was in vain: he in a great rage abandoned the City with such of his followers as would attend him, and fled by Sea in Fourteen Gallies to the City of *Bona*.

The *Turks* having deserted *Tunis*, the Magistrates came forth with the Keyes to meet the Emperor, who without any resistance entered the City, which he laboured to save from the spoil, but such was the fury of the Soldiers, that they could not be restrained neither by the Emperor, nor *Vastius* the General, but seizing upon all they found, killed such of the *Moors* as resisted them; so that in a short time all was in a confusion, and great riches carryed to the Ships and Gallies, together with many Captives: most of which the Emperor caused to be restored, and the rest were redeemed by *Muleasses*.

Barbarussa not thinking himself safe at *Hippona*, upon the coming of *Auria* with the Fleet, fled to

Argier, of which the Emperor having notice, he placing *Muleasses* in the Kingdom of *Tunesses*, and furnishing *Gulletta* with all manner of Warlike Provision, with a Thousand *Spaniards* to secure it, returned in Triumph to *Naples*, Anno 1537; when the same year *Solyman* envying at the *Portugals* trade in the *East-Indies*, sent *Solyman* Bassa, accompanied with *Asan Beg*, a famous Pirate, commonly called the Moor of *Alexandria*, with a Fleet to molest them, who sailing through the Red-Sea, came as far as the River *Indus*, where with all their power they assaulted *Dium* a Castle of the *Portugals*, situate upon the mouth of that great River; but after many dayes siege, both by Sea and Land having tryed their utmost force, they were glad to retire, leaving behind them for halt most of their great Ordnance: when coming to *Aden*, a rich City in *Arabia Felix*, they allured the King thereof on board their Galleys, with promise of safe conduct, but having him in their power contrary to their Oaths, they hanged him up at the Yards Arm of the Admirals Galley, and plundered the City; the like they did to another City in the same Tract called *Zibith*, and returned to *Constantinople*, one by Sea, and the other by Land; at what time *Solyman* solicited thereto by *John Forrest* the French Kings Ambassador, was preparing for the Invasion of *Italy*, and having for that purpose raised Two Hundred Thousand Men, sending before him *Lutzi* Bassa, and *Barbarussa*, with a great Fleet, who landing at *Otranto*, and conducted by one *Troilus Pignatellus*, a Fugitive *Italian*, seized on *Castrum*, which contrary to their Faith given, they plundered; carrying most of the people Prisoners, at what time *Solyman* had by night sent over several Troops of Light-Horsemen in great *Palendars*, who running all along the

the Sea Coast from *Tarentum* to *Brundisium*, for the space of Forty miles, rummaged the Countrey, carrying away a great booty, and had been likely enough, had *Solyman*, as he intended, seconded them with his great power to have overrun all *Italy*; but providence so ordered it, that by the wilfulness of *Alexander Contareus* a *Venetian* Captain, who meeting with the Admiral of *Callipolis*, and he not vailing his top-sail, nor in token of Reverence and Friendship discharge his great Ordnance, offended with his proud insolency, fiercely assailed the Squadron of Galleys under his command, of which he sunk two, the Admiral himself perishing in one of them, and not long after, for the like insolency, the *Venetian* Admiral caused *Junusbens*, *Solyman's* chief Interpreter, passing by *Corcyra* to be assailed, when to save himself and his *Turks*, he forcing his Galleys on shoar near unto the Mountains, called *Acroceraunii*, he fell into a worse danger, for being taken by the Mountainiers, most of his people were slain, and himself hardly released for a great sum of money.

These Breaches of Peace, as the *Turks* termed them, so much incensed *Solyman*, that he recalled his Forces then in *Puglia*, resolving to turn his whole power upon the *Venetians*, upon whose return *Auria* falling in with Twelve Galleys laden with Janizaries, and chosen Horsemen of the Court after a sharp conflict to them all, which proved a great weakning to the Tyrants Fleet, yet he desperately bent against the *Venetians*, resolving to take from them the rich Island of *Corcyra*, but by the way himself had like to have been slain in his Tent by a Mountainier, which had been effected, had he not been discovered by the cracking of a bough; to revenge which, he sent his Janizaries, and other

his approved Soldiers, who hunting the people inhabiting the high and rough Mountains of *Chimera*, like wild Beasts killed many of them, and returned with such spoil, as they found, after which, he with a great Fleet landed on the Isle of *Corcyra*, now called *Corfu*, (for fear of whom, the *Venetian* Admiral withdrew with his Galleys into the *Adriatick* Gulf, there to expect the other part of his Fleet) yet having a long while battered the chief City, in vain he contenting himself with the spoil of the Villages, and Sixteen Thousand Christian Prisoners departed; and in his return landing on the Isle of *Naxos*, summoned the City, which not being furnished to oppose so powerful an Army, consented to pay the Tyrant Five thousand Duckates a year Tribute, and to hold the Seigniorie of him, whereupon, without doing further harm, he departed to *Constantinople*; at whose return *Lutzi's* Bassa was accused by his Wife, *Solyman's* Sister of *Sodomy*, and for that she having in private reproved him thereof, he had struck her a box on the Ear, and confined her as a Prisoner to her Chamber; which complaint so incensed *Solyman*, who for his Sisters sake had raised him from a low Degree, to the highest Honour next himself, that he banished him into *Macedonia*, where he spent the remainder of his dayes in a poor and private life.

Though *Solyman* was returned to *Constantinople*, yet his Wars with the *Venetians* ended not, for he sent strict command to his Governours and Lieutenants bordering upon their frontiers, to vex them with all manner Hostilities; who were not wanting to satisfie him therein, nor the *Venetians* on their part to revenge the injuries; but the fierceness of the *Turks* were somewhat restrained by a War undertaken by King *Ferdinand* against them,

to revenge former injuries, who raising a great power of gallant Soldiers of divers Nations, sent them under the leading of *Cazzianer*, by whose Cowardize in leading them through Woods, and by-ways, many of them perished for hunger ; others to avoid that calamity, deserted him, and in fine, the General forsaking his Army (for which he was afterward executed) It was overthrown near *Exek*, and all the Soldiers either slain, or taken Prisoners.

The news of this great overthrow much troubled the Christian Princes to repair ; which disgrace the Emperor, the *Venetians*, and the Pope set out a great Fleet of Galleys, which meeting at *Corcyra*, the Admirals consulted what was best to be done, when upon notice that *Barbarussa* lay with the Turkish Galleys in the Bay of *Ambracia*, they resolved to sail thither, where having a while braved him, the bold *Turk* incited thereto by one of *Solymans* Eunuchs, came forth to give them battle, which *Auria* perceiving contrary to the minds of the Captains, stood away to *Corcyra*, in the rear of whom the *Turks* fall, took several of the stragling Galleys : This retreat, or rather flight, much eclipsed the fame of *Auria*, who before was accounted a second *Neptune* ; but being still followed by *Barbarussa*, he returned into *Italy*, to the great dislike of the *Venetians*, without effecting any thing worthy of memory ; which gave the proud *Turk* opportunity to make great spoil on the Sea Coast, and on the Islands of the Sea, yet held by the *Venetians*, and to recover *Castronovum*, a little before taken by the Christians, though not without infinite slaughter on either side ; it being for a long time manfully defended by *Sarmentus* a Valiant Spanish Captain, who amongst heaps of slain expired in the bed of Honour.

Things being at this pass, the Emperor made a peace with the *French King*, both which *Potentates* solicited the *Venetians* by their Embassadors to continue the War against *Solyman*, but they weary thereof, as lying most obnoxious to his fury, could not be perswaded thereto, but laboured to procure a peace, which with much difficulty they obtained. In consideration whereof they yield unto him *Nauplium* and *Epidaurus*, two Cities of *Peloponesus*, together with *Nadium* and *Labrania*, two Castles of *Dalmatia*, which happened by reason the secrets of their Embassey was beforehand discovered to *Solyman* by several treacherous *Venetians*, bribed by him for that purpose; some of which being afterward taken, were worthily executed at the same time; a secret consideration between *John King of Hungary*, and *Ferdinand King of Bohemia* (including that upon the decease of the former, the latter should enjoy his Kingdom) was discovered to *Solyman*, which grievously incensed him against the *Hungarian King*, whom by his Armes he had restored to his Kingdom to appease, which he was content to marry *Isabella*, Daughter to *Sigismund*, King of *Polonia*, by whom he had Issue a Son, who after his Fathers Death was crowned King of *Hungary*, and taken into *Solymans* protection, by that means bereaving King *Ferdinand* of his hope of a peaceable possession; whereupon after having requested it by his Embassadors of *Solyman*, and despairing that way to obtain it, he with a great Army entered the Kingdom, and seized upon *Vicegrade*, *Pesth*, *Vacia*, and *Alba Regalis*: To oppose which sudden Tempest e're it had swept away all her Cities; the Queen sent her Embassadors to *Solyman* to crave Aid against King *Ferdinand*, whereupon he not only sent the young King her Son several Rich Presents, but his Letters

Letters Mandatory to his Lieutenants on the Frontiers, with all their Forces to assist her, threatening that if by their neglect she received any damage, their heads should make satisfaction; and withal, caused *Lascus*, King *Ferdinands* Embassador at that time residing at *Constantinople* to be imprisoned.

This news was joyful to the Queen, whereupon she drawing together all her Forces, joyned them with those *Mahometes*, and *Ustref*, two of *Solymans* Bassas had brought into the field, and immediately layed siege to *Vacia* which they took, and to prevent its again falling into the hands of the *Bohemians*, set it on fire; *Vacia* thus layed waste, they removed to *Pesh*, to which they layed straight siege, but after many unsuccessful attempts to carry it by storm, raised their Camp, and returned over *Danubius*, upon which King *Ferdinand* sent a great Army under the Leading of the Lord *William Regendorff*, who entring the Kingdom, layed siege to *Buda*, and sent Messengers to summon the Queen to surrender the City to his Master, and that in lieu thereof, and of the other Cities, she should have bestowed on her freely the Seignory of *Sepus*, to which *George*, Bishop of *Veradium*, who altogether governed the Queen, answered that she should accept no such proffer, and with many opprobrious words dismissed the Messengers, whereupon *Regendorff* having mounted his Canon, furiously battered the City, making several wide breaches, but they were so notably defended, that the *Germans* nor *Spaniards* could not enter, which they perceiving, so dealt with one *Bornemissa* a great man in the City, that he promised to deliver them a Gate in the night to enter by, which accordingly he performed, but having agreed that none but *Hungarians* should enter, the better to prevent the effusion of blood; and Re-

gendorff contrary to that agreement, sending in *Ger-
mans* under the Leading of their Captains, to be
more sure of the City, the Traitor repenting of
what he had undertaken, refused to lead them to
the Market place, and they still remaining in the
narrow streets, and not knowing which way to go,
a sufficient number could not enter e're the Alarum
was taken, upon which the Citizens, and Garrison
Souldiers running to their Armes, assaulted them
on every side, who being in a strange place, and
their fear augmented by the terror of the night,
fled back faster than they advanced.

Spring being come, *Solyman* sent a great Army un-
der the Leading of *Mahometes* Bassa, to the Assistance
of the Queen; which passing, the *Danubius* intren-
ched within half a mile of the *Bohemians*, *Germans*,
and *Italians*, under the command of the Lord *Regen-
dorff*, and dayly with skirmishes perplexed him, ha-
ving likewise fortified an Island lying in the River,
called *Ceppelia*, as the General of the Christians had
done another opposite to his Camp, between which
passed likewise many skirmishes, but at length the
Turks pouring a great number of their men on
shoar in the Island held by the Christians, caused
them to leave the Fortifications, and flie over the
Bridge layed to pass, and repass to the Camp, but
by the valour of the *German* Soldiers all was quick-
ly regained, and the City furiously assaulted, though
without success, for that a great number of the be-
sieged continually kept such breaches as the Canon
had made, and the Besiegers, by reason of the
nearness of the *Turks* Army, durst not go to the
assault in such number as otherwise they might have
done, yet they had so battered the Walls, that they
despaired not to win it in a short time; but in the
height of their Expectation, news came, that *Soly-*

man with a great power, was near at hand to joyn the Bassa already incamped, which infused such a fear into the Christians that the Soldiers whether their General would or no, resolved to raise the Siege and pass the *Danubius*. So that he was constrained to accord to the resolves, and in the dead of the night raised the Siege, but not so secretly but the Turks had notice sent them of what had happened, by those in the City: Whereupon bursting out of their Camp, and the Citizens at the same time sallying by the light of a stack of straw, and pursued them with great slaughter; insomuch that most part of the Army was either drowned in the hasty passage, or fell by the Sword, not above a third part of them escaping to *Comora*. So that a great booty by that means fell into the hands of the Turks.

Upon this defeat *Pesih* being deserted of her Garrison, was taken without resistance by *Cason*, the Turks Fleet then in the *Danubius*, and most that were found therein put to the Sword. The Lord *Regendorf* as a man not desirous to outlive so foul a dishonour brought upon him by the wilfulness of his unruly Souldiers, would have died fighting amongst the thickest of his Enemy, had he not against his will by strong hand been forced into a Pinace, and so carryed by his Captains to *Comora*, within five days after *Solyman* came to *Buda*, and according to his wonted cruelty caused all the Prisoners to be put to death, and one amongst the rest a German Souldier being of wonderous height, he appointed to be slain by his Dwarf, whose head reached not past his knees, which he ordered to be done in derision of the German Nation.

Solyman having pitched his Camp near *Buda*, sent his Ambassadors with Presents to the Young King, viz. Three beautiful Horses, with their Bridles of Gold,

Gold, and their Trapings set with precious stones, and three Robes of cloth of Gold, and unto every one of the chief Nobility a chain of Gold, and rich Gowns; upon the delivery of these presents, as they had it in charge, they requested that the Queen would cause the young King to be sent to the Camp to *Solyman*, who was greatly desirous to see him and that he was resolved to take him and his Kingdom into protection, until such time as he should of himself be able to defend it against his potent Adversary. This request of the Ambassadors (though not without some scruple) was granted, and the young King being then in his swadling Cloths, was sent in a rich Chariot, together with his Nurse and several great Ladies, attended on by such of the Nobility, to whom *Solyman* had sent presents; upon whose Arrival the Tyrant took him in his arms, and looked upon him commanding his sons then present, *viz.* *Selymus* and *Bajazet* begotten on the fair *Roxelana* to kiss him, in token of there love to him: from thence forward yet notwithstanding these fair shews, he consulted with his Bassa's whether he should retain the King and seize on the Kingdom of *Hungary*, having before caused his Soldiers to possess themselves of one of the Gates of *Buda*, called *Sabatina*, it was likewise debated whether all the Nobility then in his possession should be put to death, or carried into bondage; of all which opinions were some of his Bassa's, and others of a far more mild opinion. So that *Solyman*, when he well considered what had been argued, resolved upon a method between the one and the other, when entering *Buda* on the 30th. of *August*, anno 1541. after he had sacrificed to his vain Prophet, in the Cathedral, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, he published a Decree (the fatal doom of that flourishing Kingdom, under which it at this day groans.)

groans.) That *Buda* should from that day be kept with a Garrison of Turks, and the Kingdom be converted into a Province of the Turkish Empire, that the Queen with her son, the young King should presently depart the City and live in *Lippa*, a fertile and quiet Countrey beyond the River *Tibiscus* near to the borders of her fathers Kingdom, and to be safely conducted thither with all her Wealth and Jewels by the Janizaries; of which hard conditions the Queen was glad to accept upon which the *Hungarian* Nobility, all but *Valentinus* her General were set at Liberty, having before been retained as Prisoners in the Turkish Camp.

King *Ferdinand* residing at *Vienna*, upon notice of what had passed, and that *Solyman* was purposed to invade his Territories; first sending to collect his dispersed Forces, afterwards he sent Count *Salma* and *Sigismund Lethestaine*, noble and grave Counsellors his Ambassadors to *Solyman* with rich presents which were a standing cup of Gold after the *German* fashion, richly beset with pearls and pretious stones, and a wonderful Silver Globe of most rare and curious device, daily expressing the hourly passing of the time, the motion of the Planets, the Change and Full of the Moon, the motion of the Superiour Orbs, ever moving by certain wheels or weights curiously conveyed within the same, exactly keeping due time and motion, lively expressing the wonderful motion and conversion of the celestial frame, a curious and strange peice of work devised and perfected by the most cunning Astronomers of *Maximilian* the Empe-
rour, whose noble mind never spared for any cost to obtain things rare of strange device.

The Ambassadors arriving at *Solymans* Camp, after they had been feasted by the Bassa's with Mutton and Rice onely, and delivered their Presents, they
made

made it their request that he would deliver *Hungary* to their Master, to whom of right it appertained, and that in lieu thereof he would become his tributary; but were so far from having their desires granted, that the proud Turk demanded tribute for *Austria*, the which being refused with disdain he sent the Governour of *Belgrade* to spoil that Country, as likewise *Moravia*, to whom he joyned *Casou* the Admiral of his Fleet; but by reason of the overflowing of the Rivers and great Rains, it being now Autumn they were forced to return without doing any considerable dammage: after which *Solyman* appointing a *Hungarian* of his own name Governour of *Buda* returned to *Constantinople*, having first set *Lascus* King *Ferdinand's* former Ambassador (whom he held Prisoner) at Liberty, and within a while after having caused *Mayle Vayvod* of *Transilvania* to be apprehended, and imprisoned contrary to his promise, by *Mahometes* his great Bassa; he to recompence the Queen of *Hungary* and her son for what he had taken from them, gave the young King the Province of *Transilvania*.

Whilst these things passed, the Emperour *Charles* at the earnest request of his Subjects of *Spain*, to whose Trade the Pirates of *Argier* had put a stop, prepared a great Fleet to invade the Kingdom, and take the City, at that time commanded by *Afan Aga*, or *Afan* the Eunuch, whom *Barbarossa* in his absence had appointed his Lieutenant, when as the Emperour after considerable dammage by shipwrack coming before the City of *Argier*; sent a Herald on shore to demand the City, and upon the refusal of its delivery landed his men, who with great courage beating the *Turks*, *Moors*, and *Numidians* from their defences, leaped on shore, where after divers skirmishes they encamped in three Battles, being in all

60000 Men but long they had not considered which way to make their approaches, e're by a horrible Tempest (supposed to be raised by Inchantment) which continued for the space of two dayes, the greatest part of the Fleet consisting of 280 Ships and Gallies was beaten, and such as by swimming escaped the danger of the Sea, were kill'd by the *Numidians* and *Moors*, who came down from the Mountains to enrich themselves by the misery of the Christians. In this storm which was accompanied with prodigious Rain, Thunder and Lightning almost all the Provision, and great Ordnance were lost : nor fared they on shoar much better, for there three parts of the Tents were torn up, and all things in them spoiled by the deluges of Water, so that Famine within three dayes sorely vexed the Camp ; yet the Emperour, a man of invincible Courage, comforted his men in the best wise, causing such Horses as were on shoar to be killed, and their Flesh distributed amongst the Souldiers, which at than time proved excellent fare ; but finding he could not subsist, by the perswasion of the Duke of *Alva* his General, he resolved to imbark on those few Ships and Gallies that were left, and return into *Italy*, whereupon to make room for the Souldiers he caused all the Horses to be thrown overboard, but such was his hard fortune, that he was no sooner imbarked but another Tempest terrible as the former, arose and scattering his Fleet, drove two Ships loaden with *Spaniards* into the Port of *Argier*, who by reason of the departure of the other Gallies had been there slain by the *Moors* and *Numidians*, had not *Afan Aga* at their earnest request taken them into mercy, and driven away the barbarous people, who like ravening Wolves fought eagerly to prey upon their Lives : Many ships in their return were likewise

wife swallowed up of the Sea, but Heaven so ordered it that at length the Emperour with the remainder of his shattered ships arrived at the Port of New *Carthage* in *Spain*, not being overcome by the Enemy but by the Tempest, his sad disaster being at the beginning of his Expedition foretold, by a Witch then living in the City of *Argiers*.

Frances the French King being greatly offended with the Emperor, for that *Antonius Rinuo* his Ambassador, upon his negotiation to *Constantinople*, was by some of the Emperours Captains slain, for that it being reported that he there discovered all the Emperours intentions, and incensed *Solyman* to take up Arms against him, being the principal occasion of his last Expedition into *Hungary*; whereupon he having sent *Polinus* in the stead of *Rinuo*, he incited *Solyman* to revenge the indignity as well offered to him as to himself, by sending *Barbarus* with a squadron of Gallies to molest the coast of *Spain*, and the Emperours Territories in *Italy*, whilst his Master warred on his Countries in *Flanders* and other places. To undertake the like he solicited the *Venetians*, but at that time both his negotiation proved ineffectual, for the *Venetians* utterly refused to intermeddle, and the *Turk* at that time being but slenderly provided with shipping, and those was enforced to use on the *Danube* for the defence of *Hungary*, which King *Ferdinando* in confederation with the *German* Princes invaded with a great Army, under the leading of *Joachimus* Marquess of *Brandenburgh*, who passing the *Danubius* encamped before *Pesth*, which they battered for several dayes, making divers large breaches, but upon notice that *Mahometes* Bassa was coming from *Belgrade*, with a great Army to relieve the City, though the story was altogether feigned, the cowardly General raised the siege, and returned to
Vienna,

Vienna where that great Army consisting of 50000 Horse and Foot was broke up, without doing any thing worthy of name.

Solyman being rid of this fear began to hearken to the request of the French Ambassador, and having Commanded *Rustan* Bassa his Son-in-law to Feast him, he gave order for the making ready his Fleet of Gallies, which he sent under the command of *Barbarossa* to the Aid of the French, who to wreck his private revenge called in the common Enemy, too prone of himself to lay *Christendom* wast. In their way when once dispatched they took *Rhegium*, burnt it, and carried away the Garrison, and Citizens, at which time *Solyman* with a great Army entered *Hungary*, to revenge himself upon the Authors of the late Hostilities, and had the strong City and Castle of *Walpo* delivered to him by the Souldiers, contrary to the will of the Governour, but he was no sooner possessed thereof then he gave them the due Reward of their Treachery, by causing them all to be put to the Sword; and then having left there a sufficient Garrison, he marched to *Strigonium*, sending *Amurathes* Bassa with a part of the Army to take in *Soclosia*, which he having won, put most of the Inhabitants to the Sword.

Solyman having layed siege in the mean while to *Strigonium*, in which commanded as Governours *Liscanns* and *Salamanca*, two proud and covetous Spaniards, with a Garrison of 1300 Souldiers, but ere *Solyman* began to batter the City, he sent to promise them Life, Liberty, and whatever Goods they were possessed of if they would surrender; or upon refusal to denounce against them all the miseries that attend on stormed Cities, yet this nothing daunted the Souldiers, who returned for answer, that they reposed their last hope in their Arms, and

and were not to be won by gifts, nor terrified with threats, upon notice of which their stout resolution he commanded his Cannon already mounted to play from several Batteries, the which was put in Execution with such fury, that the Walls were beaten down in several places, at which breaches the *Turks* in great number attempting to enter were beaten back three times successively, with great loss and slaughter, and amongst the slain fell *Bultaces Sanzack* of *Selymbria*, a man of great account amongst the *Turks*, but in the end the weakness of the City being discovered to the enemy, by a fugitive *Calabrian*, the two aforesaid Governours consulting for their own safety, intended secretly to leave the City, and carry with them all their Riches; but their purpose being discovered to the Captains and Soldiers, they proposed a parly, perswading the defendants that the City was not to be held against so powerful an Enemy; upon which the City was yielded, and the Garrison such as would marched to *Pessonium*, where the two cowardly Governours (who notwithstanding the promise of safe conduct had been robbed by the *Turks*) were by Count *Salme* committed to safe custody, to answer for their cowardly yielding up the City.

Strigonium being thus obtained on the 10th. of *August*, Anno 1543. and the Christian Churches converted to the *Mahometan* superstition, he marched towards *Alba regalis*, taking in his way the Castle of *Tatta* antiently called *Theodota*, which he utterly rased; after which coming before *Alba regalis*, a City famous for the Coronation of the *Hungarian* kings, situate in a Marsh, and encompassed with a Lake: He caused the said Lake with infinite labour to be filled up and then after many terrible Assaults, in which he lost 20000 of his men. took the Suburbs, putting

all

all he found therein to the sword, and afterward had the City delivered into his possession, where entering, he contrary to his faith plighted, he caused the most wealthy Citizens to be slain; after which, leaving *Ballabanus* Governour thereof, and placing Governours in other places by him subdued; in this Expedition he returned to *Constantinople*.

By this time *Barbarussa* and *Polinus* were arrived at *Marselles*, where having refreshed themselves, they departed to *Province*, where they laid siege to *Nice*, a City belonging to the Emperour, which after a long siege they took, but the Castle being defended with a strong Garrison, they in vain assaulted it, which so enraged *Barbarussa*, that he threatened to imprison *Polinus* for not performing his promise made at *Constantinople* to furnish his Army with all necessaries, when as he said Powder and shot were wanting even in the Country of *France*, which division between the *French* and the *Turks* was ended, by the raising the siege, upon notice that *Alphonsus Vastus* the Emperors General was coming out of *Italy* with a great Army, when as the *French* Forces retiring, *Barbarussa* sent most part of his Fleet to *Argeir*, with a command to return early the next spring to *Marselles*.

The great preparations of *Barbarussa* to aid the *French* King gave *Muleasses* suspicion that they were intended against him; whereupon leaving the management of the Affaires of his kingdom of *Tunes* in the hand of his trusty Counsellors, as he supposed, and the management of his men of war, his son *Amida*, he went to *Naples* to wait upon *Charles* the Emperour, and of him to crave aid, when in the mean time by the perswasion of such as hated *Muleasses* his son usurped his kingdom, who upon notice thereof returning with such Forces as he could gather in *Italy*, was overthrown, taken prisoner,

and by his unnatural Son deprived of his sight, dealing to him therein the same measure that he had dealt. Yet the unnatural Son escaped not altogether scotfree, for *Tovarres* Governour of *Gullet* for the Emperour, sending for *Abdamelech* brother to *Muleasses*, of whom I have before spoken, he in the absence of *Amida* surprized the City and Castle of *Tunis*, but enjoyed no more then 26 dayes e're he died when leaving his Son *Mahometes* a Child his Successor, he was soon thrust out and *Amida* restored, whereupon *Muleasses* fled first to *Guletta*, and afterward into *Sicily*, where at the Emperours command he was maintained at the common charge of the *Islanders*.

The French King being by this time weary of his new come Guest, the *Turks* having first largely rewarded them sent them away, who in their return spoil'd the Island of *Elba* belonging to the Duke of *Florence*, upon the Governours refusing to deliver the Son of *Sinan* the Jew, held Prisoner there, since his being taken at *Tunis*, and after that committed many outrages upon the Coast of *Italy*; burning many Towns, and carrying away the people into miserable Captivity, but he long enjoyed not his Triumph ere himself was by death lead into Captivity, viz. anno 1547. In which year died *Mahomet*, *Solyman's* Eldest Son, *Frances* the French King, and *Alphonsus-Daualus-Valtius* the Emperours renowned General.

Solyman having now not made any personal Expedition for the space of three years resolved to invade the *Persian* King, being solicited thereto by *Ercafes Imirza* King of *Sirnan*, and that Kings Brother, but after great toil to little or no purpose for the space of 1 year and 9 Months, he returned with his Army to *Constantinople*, *Imirza* in the mean while being delivered

delivered to his brother *Tamas* the *Persian* King by Treachery was put to death, during which Transaction one *Dugat* a notable Pirate, having taken *Africa* a City in *Tunis*, formerly called *Aprodise*, he greatly troubled the *Moors* by Land and the Christians by Sea, when to remove so troublesome a man, the Knights of *Malta* passed over with a considerable power, and after a furious assault possessed themselves of the said City, the which by reason it was not tenable without excessive charge they razed, carrying away a rich booty, and 7000 Captives, whereupon the Pirate fled to *Constantinople*, craving aid of *Solyman*, who sent with him *Sinan* the Jew made Admiral in the stead of *Barbarossa*, with a great Fleet; who in revenge of what had happened to *Africa*, landed on the Island of *Malta*, and attempted (though in vain) the winning that strong City. Yet sailing into *Africk*, they after great slaughter of their men took *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, at that time possessed by certain of the *Malta* Knights, for which *Sinan* Bassa having as it were Triumphed, left *Drugat* Governour thereof, by the Title of *San-sack* returned to *Constantinople*.

Anno 1551. *Solyman*, notwithstanding the five years peace made with King *Ferdinand*, sent *Achmetes* his Lieutenant in *Europe*, to invade several Towns in *Hungary*, who upon his Arrival took *Temeswar* and *Zolnock*, which Queen *Isabel* perceiving, and that the *Turk* contrary to his Faith plighted, daily incroach upon her Territories, whose power she was not in a capacity to repel by force, she agreed with King *Ferdinand* to resign her and her Sons Title to the Kingdom of *Hungary* in consideration of *Cassovia*, and a yearly pension of 100000 Ducats. After which the King recovered most part of the Kingdom from the *Turks*, and for the better

keeping thereof as some say caused *George* Bishop of *Veradinum*, a great favorite of *Solyman* though by Birth a *Hungarian* to be murdered, in his own House. Upon which the *Bassa* of *Buda* drawing together what Forces he could Besieged *Agria*, but after the loss of many of his best Souldiers he gave over the siege.

Henry succeeding his Brother *Francis* in the Kingdom of *France*, and desirous to molest the Emperor, sent the Lord *Avomont* to incite *Solyman*, to waite the Coast of *Italy*; whereupon he sending a great Fleet in the *Tyrrenan* and *Tuscan* Seas, wasted the Coast of *Calabria*, *Sicilia*, *Majorca*, *Sardinia*, *Elba*, *Corsica* and *Cerbe*, the Frontiers of the Emperours Dominions, and the same year, viz. anno 1554. *Solyman* incited thereto by *Roxolana*, once his Slave and Concubine, but now his imperious Wife, and by the Treacherous insinuation of *Rustan* *Bassa*, who had Married *Chameria* her Daughter by *Solyman*, caused his Son *Mustapha* the chief hope of the *Othoman* Family, begot on a *Scyrcassian* Woman to be strangled in his Pavilion, without suffering him to clear himself of what had been falsely laid to his charge during his absence, the which barbarous cruelty when *Tzikanger*, *Roxolana's* Son by *Solyman*, whom she purposed to raise to the Empire after his decease, and for that purpose had procured the death of *Mustapha*, came to know he had detested his Fathers cruelty, with his Dagger killed himself, and fell down dead upon his Brothers dead body; nor was *Solyman* in safety when the matter came to be once known, for the enraged Souldiers with their drawn Swords (after they had killed a great number of those that came thither to fetch the Riches in *Mustaphaes* Tent) came to his Pavilion Threatning him with present Death, and after many

ny reproaches were hardly appeased, swearing at their departure if the Accusers of *Mustapha* were not brought to light they would nevertheless kill him, when to satisfy them in their demands, he deprived *Rustan* Bassa of all his Honours, taking from him the seal whereof he had the keeping, and delivered it to *Achomates* Bassa, and *Rustan* commanded to leave the Camp upon pain of Death, but not long after by the means of his Mother-in-Law, who had by the means of a Jew, bewitched *Solyman* with her charms he was again restored, and to make way for him *Achomates* who had stept up into his places of Honour by *Solyman's* command, in the *Divano* causelessly was strangled. Whilest these things were doing *Haly* Bassa having for a long time besieged *Zingeth*, defended by *Marcus Horworth*, a valiant Captain was beaten off, by *Polviller* and *Serineus* two of King *Ferdinando's* Captains with the loss of half of his Army. Nor fared the *Turks* better at Sea, for *Guisse* Lord Prior of the Knights of St. *John* in France, took six Ships and Gallies richly laden, and now God intending to punish the Tyrant for so many Murthers suffered his Son *Bajazet* gotten upon *Roxolana*, to rise up against him Arms under pretence of supplanting his Brother *Selymus*, all the remainder of the aforesaid wicked stock, who by setting up a counterfeit *Mustapha* (and pretending he that was killed was no other, but one much resembling the true *Mustapha*, sent for great rewards to try his Fathers fury) drew after him a World of people being secretly encouraged thereto by his mother, who preferred him before his Elder Brother whom *Solyman* would have his Successor, and such was her power with *Solyman*, that after the Plot was discovered the counterfeit taken and executed, she made *Bajazets* peace and restored to favour as

much as ever ; yet such was the fiery nature of the head strong youth, that knowing his Life was dated with his Fathers, if his Brother succeeded him he again took up Arms, being generally favoured of the Soldiers, against whom *Selymus* was sent with a great Army, between whom was fought a dreadful Battle, in which 300 Turks were slain, and *Bajazet* put to the worst, who after much adverse fortune flying to the *Persian* King, was by the procurement of *Solyman* contrary to Faith given by the *Persian*, he together with his four Sons was murdered.

Anno 1558 Charles the Fifth, and warlike Emperor of *Germany*, stricken in years, and worn out with the toils of tedious War, resigned the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, having before put his son *Philip* in possession of all Hereditary Kingdoms, and then retiring lead a private Life, and shortly after changed it for Life Eternal ; after he had with great reverence and integrity Reigned 39 years, after whose death at the earnest request of the Knights of *Malta*, the Christian Princes set out a Fleet for the recovery of *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, when coming to the Island of *Zerbi* belonging to the Turks they spoiled it, and after a small battery to the Castle in which the Islanders put their cheif hope, but this Expedition proved unfortunate to the Christians : for *Pial Bassa Solymans* Admiral, coming upon them with a great Fleet, suddainly surprized many of the Ships and Gallies out of order, and unable to make resistance, took them and put most of those he found therein to the Sword, and such as could stand off to Sea fled, leaving *Don Alvarus De Sandee* a valiant Gentleman of great Spirit, and long Experience, General of the Christian Forces on shoar, who together with such as were fled from the Fleet entered the Castle, which was most

most resolutely defended till such time as hunger and thirst compell him to surrender, not less then 18000 Christians by one means or other being lost, from the setting out of the Fleet to the time the Castle was delivered to the Turks, the which by the Bassa being strongly Garrisoned, he with the Christian Captives there taken returned in Triumph to Constantinople, and long was ere the Spanish and Italian Nobility there taken could be ransomed; and to make up this unluckly year, viz. 1560. on the 25th. day of November, *Auria* the great Sea Captain died being 94 years old, to the great Rejoycing of the Turkish Pirates whose terror he had been for more then Thirty years, nor was the following year fortunate, for King *Philip* of Spain sending out his Fleet under *Mendoza* his Admiral, Five and Twenty Ships and Gallies by stress of Weather were broken on the Coast of *Sicily*, on one of which the Admiral perished, little or nothing being saved in that dismal and unexpected Calamity.

Anno 1562. The Emperour *Ferdinand* so laboured with the Electoral Princes, that he procured his son *Maximillian* then King of *Bohemia*, a Prince of great hope to be chosen K. of the *Romans*, who likewise the year following, on the 8th. of September with all solemnity Crowned at *Presburg* King of *Hungaria*, to confirm which choice *Solyman* sent *Ibrahim* Bassa as his Ambassador, to the Emperour, as likewise to conclude in his name an eight years peace, and the better to gain credit, he sent his Letters of credence not usually done by the Turkish Emperors, whose proud stile therein, I think not amiss to insert which take as followeth.

I the Lord of Lords, Ruler of the East and West, who am of power to do and not to do whatsoever pleaseth me, Lord of all Grecia, Persia, and Arabia, Commander

der of all things which can be subject to King and Command, the great worthy of these times, and strong Champion of the wide World, Lord of all the white and black Sea, and of the Holy City of Mecha, shining with the brightness of God, of the City of Medina, and of the Holy and Chast City of Jerusalem, King of the most noble Kingdom of Egypt, Lord of Jovia and of the City of Athens, Senan, of the Sacred Temple of God, Zabillon, and Baffio, Rethfans and Magodini, the Seat and Throne of the great King of Nabhin Rettam, and Lord of the Island of Argiers, Prince of the Kingdom of Tartary, Mesopotamia, Media of the Georgians, Morea, Anatolia, Asia, Armenia, Valachia, Moldavia, and of all Hungary, and many other Kingdoms and Territories whereof I am Emperour. The most mighty Monarch Sultan Solyman, Son of the great Emperour Sultan Selym, who hath power from God to rule all People with a bridle, and strength to break open the Gates and Bars of all Cities, and strong places, into whose mighty hand are delivered all the ends of the World, none excepted, I Ruler of the East, from the Island of Tsein unto the farthest bounds of Africa, whom God hath appointed a mighty Warrior in the edge of Sword, amongst whose most mighty Kingdoms the impregnable Castle of Cæsarie, is reputed the least, and in whose Hereditary Dominions the Kingdom or Empire of Alexander the Great is accounted of us a trifle, with me is the strength of the whole World, and Virtue of the Firmament. For as much as thou King Ferdinand, &c.

Their audacious stile being read in the German Court, moved some to indignation, and others to secret laughter, yet the necessity requiring it, peace was concluded, but kept no longer then the Emperour lived; for upon his Death which happened two years after, viz. 1564. new troubles arose in Hungary, and several Towns and Castles were won and lost on either side, whereupon Solyman resolved in per-

person to come into *Hungary*, but upon second thoughts he changed his mind, and bent his Forces against the Island of *Malta* lying between *Africa* and *Sicilia*, in length twenty and in breadth twelve miles, exceeding fruitful and pleasantly scituate were it not in Summer time too much scorched by the Sun, which deprives the inhabitants of their fresh water, before which the Turks coming with a Fleet of Two Hundred Ships and Gallies, after some loss sustained both by the Sea and Islanders, Landed and layed siege to St. *Michaels* Castle, which they furiously battered, but it being defended by several Knights of the Order, they received great loss before it, whereupon they consulted amongst themselves to leave the siege of St. *Michael* and besiege the Castle of St. *Elmo*, the which with the loss of 18000 of their men they took, when in the mean while *Valletta*, the Great Master fortified St. *Michael* both City and Castle sending to the Viceroy of *Sicilia* for aid, but the Turks encouraged by the comming of the King of *Argier*, with his Ships and a great supply of Victuals besieged St. *Michaels* Castle a second time, as also the City Thundering against it for the space of eight days without intermission, but such was the courage of the besieged, that they either repaired the breaches, or beat back the Assailants who made such slaughter of those that attempted to enter, that their dead bodies filling the breaches served as a Rampire to keep out the rest, and thus they continued furious to assault the City almost every day, till upon notice of the Viceroy of *Sicily's* approach with a great power both by Sea and Land, they raised their siege and departed to meet him near *Melita*, where in a set Battle they were overthrown, and most of them slain with the loss of 5000 Christians onely, yet those that escaped in their return landed

on

on the Island *Chios* and took it, it being before almost deserted of its inhabitants, by reason it lay always obnoxious to the fury of the barbarous Infidels.

Solyman enraged at this defeat resolved to revenge himself upon the Christian Princes, and therefore with a great Army undertook his before determined War against *Hungary*, solicited thereto by the *Vayvod* of *Transylvania*, who hoped to be made King thereof; but *Maximilian* being Crowned Emperour, he raised a great power being aided by the *German* Princes, and sent them under the leading of several valiant Captains, but especially Count *Serenus*, and Count *Helffenstin* whose good Fortunes proved such, that within a short time the Turks were stripped out of most of their Garrisons, and a great number of them slain, for *Maximilian* the Emperour, long before advertised of *Solymans* purpose had raised as is said, a gallant Army, consisting of 40000 Horse and Foot, the flower of all Christian Nations, besides a Fleet upon the River *Danubius*, which hindered the Turks Provisions and other necessaries from being brought by water.

By this time *Solyman* coming to the River *Dromus*, over which with infinite labour he caused a Bridge to be made for the passage of his Army, which done he encamped before *Sigeth*, of which Count *Serenus* was made Governour, a valiant man, and mortal Enemy to the Turks attended on by a Garrison of 2300 resolute *Germans* and *Hungarians*, who like a brave Souldier with a most Christian Oration encouraged his men, not to be dismayed at the multitude of their Enemies, but to trust in God, and be of good courage, for he by his Almighty power was able by a few to confound the Armies of the proud. Concluding that as for himself, as he was a Christian

and

and free born so he would by the Grace of God, in the same Faith and Freedom end his dayes, and that no proud Turk so long as he could hold up his hand should have power to command over him, or the ground whereon he stood, nor failed he in his resolves, for after he had done all that man was capable of doing, killing such numbers of Turks, that the Plains lay scattered with the dead, the Walls being for the most part beaten down, and the Town fired about his Eares, the Turks in great number entering every where, and no relief coming to his assistance, he called the poor remainder of his Souldiers about him, with whom he was retired into the Castle and with an undaunted resolution, spake these his last words.

The hard fortune of this sinful Kingdom, hath together with our own overtaken us, but let us, noble Hearts, indure with Patience whatsoever is by God to us assigned, you know what we have before promised, which hitherto God be thanked, we have accordingly performed, and now let us with like resolutions perform this last, the place you see is not longer to be kept, the devouring fire grows fast upon us and we in number are but few; wherefore let us as becometh valiant men break out into the utter Castle, and there dye fighting in the midst of our Enemies to live afterwards with God for ever, I will be the first that will go out follow me like men.

Thus having said, the Heroick Count worthy of Eternal fame, or a name greater then ever Roman yet could boast, with his Sword in his hand charged the thickest of his foes, laying them round him on heaps, even till the Rampart of the dead hemmed him in, nor durst the Turks with their multitude incounter him long at close fight, but cowardly at a distance shot him through the head upon which he fell dead amongst the heaps of his Enemies, in token
of

of whose matchless prowess the Turks buried his body and sent his head as a token of his being slain to Count *Salma* his kinsman in the Emperours camp with this following Letter.

Muhamet Bassa to *Eccius Salma*, greeting.

In token of my Love, behold here I send thee the head of a most resolute and valiant Captain, thy Friend, the remainder of his body I have honestly buried, as became such a man, &c.

That which lightened the Christians sadness for the loss of so brave a Captain, and the taking of *Sigeth*, was the Death of *Solyman*, who far spent with years and distempers died at *Quinque Ecclesiæ* of the Bloody Flux, on the 4th. of September, anno 1566. when he had lived 76 years, and reigned 46, not living to see the end of the siege; his death was by the Bassa kept secret to prevent disorder in the Army, who according to their wonted policy satisfied the inquisitive *Fanizaries* by shewing them his dead body sitting in his Horse-litter, giving it out that he was extream ill when after *Sigeth* having by Treason taken *Gyula*, for which the Traytor was afterward deservedly put to death by *Selymus* *Solymans* successor, the Bassa's with the Army returned to *Constantinople* where they published the death of *Solyman*, and proclaimed *Selymus* his now onely remaining Son Emperour in his stead.

C H A P. XVI.

Selymus the second of that name, and fifth Emperor of the Turks, His Life and Actions.

Solyman being dead upon the return of the Army out of *Hungaria* towards *Constantinople*, *Mahumet Bassa* by letters advertised *Selymus* thereof then residing at *Cutai* a City of *Galatia* who glad of the news hastened to take possession of the so long expected Empire, when being conducted over the straights of *Bosphorus*, he was by *Bostanges Bassas*, and *Scander Bassa* conveighed into the Imperial Pallace on the 23 of *September*, Anno 1566, from whence he departed to meet his fathers Corps, not yet arrived at *Constantinople*, upon the meeting of which he caused the Insignes to be let fall, in token of the Emperors death, which had been till that time kept secret from the Soldiers, to prevent disorders, and so with it Marching in the head of the Army returned to *Constantinople*, being first by the men of War saluted Emperor; who upon his Arrival, to quiet the unruly Soldiers distributed a large sum of money amongst them, with a Promise to augment their wages as is usual at the installment of the *Ottoman* Emperors, or else by reason of the insolency of the Janizaries and other Soldiers of the Court of their Pallace would prove too hot to hold them.

Selimus thus settled in his Empire, with Royal solemnity buried his father, in a Chappel which he afterward

terward built, together with a Colledge and Hospital, erecting over him a stately Tomb, near unto which is at this day to be seen the Magnificent Tomb of his beloved wife *Roxolana*, mother to *Selimus*, and of certain of his Murthered children. By him hangs his Scimiter, in token that he dyed in war, an honour not otherwise granted to the Mahometan Princes. The Revenues arising of the Countrey about *Sigerb*, won from the Christians a little before his death, were given to maintain the houses by him built for devotion, which for Magnificence exceed all others Erected by the Mahometan Kings and Emperors, except those of Mahomet the Great, and *Bajazet* the Second. It was by many thought that *Soliman* was in good time taken out of the way, for that he resolving to winter in *Hungary* the next Spring purposed with himself to have over-run *Austria*, and a great part of *Germany*.

Anno 1567, *Solyman* being dead great trouble arose notwithstanding in *Hungary*, occasioned by *John* the Vayvod of *Transilvania*, who used his utmost endeavour to dispossess *Maximilian* the Emperor of those Cities and Fortresses he held in that Kingdom, but they were soon after appeased by a peace concluded between the two Emperors, *Maximilian* and *Selimus*. The principal points on which the peace depended being these. That the *German* Emperor should yearly pay 30000 Ducates to *Selimus*, as a Tribute for *Hungary*, the Tribute to begin upon the conclusion of the Articles of Peace. That the Subjects of the *Turks* should pay nothing to the Subjects of the Emperor, nor on the other side the Subjects of the Emperor pay nothing to the Subjects of the *Turks*, but to remain both of them exempted from payment of Tax, Duty or Contribution, and that either Prince should inviolably hold what he was

was in possession of at the conclusion of the Treaty, which peace was confirmed for the space of 8 years ; in which was included the *Vayvod* of *Transilvania*, as the *Turks* Tributary. This peace was concluded Anno 1568, as was likewise the year following a peace concluded between *Selymus* and *Tamais* the *Persian King*; after which the *Turk* desirous to undertake some great exploit, that might get him a name, and out of the Revenues of which he might build him a Temple exceeding any of his Predecessors, which those superstitious people hold to be for the good of their souls; he plotted in his mind many things, but at length being by his mischievous Counsellors, of whom he wanted not, he was urged to the conquest of the rich Island of *Cyprus*, lying in the *Cicilian Sea*, and hath on the West *Pamphilia*, on the East *Siria*, on the South *Egypt*, and on the North *Cilicia*, now called *Caramania*. This Island at such time as *Selymus* was intent on the conquest thereof, was in the possession of the *Venetians*, with whom he had contracted a League since the death of *Solyman*; but in vain are Leagues with Infidels any longer then they serve their own turns, yet *Muhamates* the Great *Bassa* laboured all he could to dissuade him therefrom; and *Marcus Antonius Barbarus* the *Venetian* Ambassador then residing at *Constantinople* so wrought that he procured the lascivious *Turk* to send *Cubates* as his Ambassador to the Senate of *Venice*, with a letter to certify them upon what grounds he undertook to invade their Territory since the League had till that time been kept inviolable, which was done more to gain time, then for any hope he had that *Selymus* would alter his determination; which Ambassador not obtaining what *Selymus* desired, which was to have the fertile Island peaceably put into his possession, but on the contrary finding the *Venetians* resolved to defend it with all their

their power he returned again to his faithless Master, and related what he had in charge ; whereupon the Great Fleet before prepared for the invasion of *Cyprus*, put to Sea, *Mustapha Bassa* being General of all the Forces, and within a while stood with the said Island, where the greedy *Turks* landing, spoiled many goodly Villages , and after some deliberation having by prisoners taken, understood the constitution of the Countrey, and of what strength the Islanders were, resolved to besiege *Nicosia*, a City standing in the midst of the Island, in a plain and Champain ground, being in circuit about five miles, encompassed with a strong wall, defended by eleven strong Bulwarks, and three great Fortresses, raised by the *Venetians*, the Governour of which was *Nicalaus Dandalus*, a man too weak for so great a burthen, as having been alwayes brought up in civil affairs ; in Garison were 8000 horse and foot, but most of them raw foldiers, and not acquainted with Martial discipline, too few to oppose so powerful an Army as the Bassa drew after him, which consisted of near 150000 horse and foot.

On the 22 of *July Anno 1569* the Bassa with his Army Encamped within a mile and half of the City, covering with their Tents the hill called *Mandia*, and with incredible labour bringing their Trenches from far, cast up several Forts which they raised so high, that they overlooked the walls of the City, and from their Mounts terribly battered the walls with seventy pieces of great Artillery, whose dreadful thundring made the earth to tremble, and having by this time run their Trenches to the brim of the ditch, hotly assaulted the City in several places, which was as valiantly defended by the besieged, insomuch that the ditches were well nigh filled on that side with the bodies of the slain, and what was
beaten

beaten down in the day time was with great labour repaired in the night.

During these passages the *Venetians* having leagued with the Pope, King of *Spain*, and several of the *Italian* Princes, prepared their fleet, consisting in all of one hundred and seventeen sail; but whiles they lingered for the Additional Forces of the King of *Spain*, the plague so raged amongst the Marriners and Souldiers, that twenty thousand dyed e'r its fury was abated, and amongst them many men of account, but it ceasing, and the summer half spent, the *Venetian* Admiral no longer expecting the coming of the *Spaniards*, sailed to *Corcyra*, and there calling a Council, it was resolved they should pass over to *Cyprus* and destroy the *Turks* fleet; but in the height of this expedition dyed *Petrus Loricatus* Duke of *Venice*, Leaving the care of the war to *Aloysius Morosini*, who succeeded him in the Dukedom.

Mustapha advertized of the approach of the Christian fleet, used his utmost endeavour to carry the City by assault, but being valiantly repulsed, he caused several letters to be shot over the walls fastened to *Turkish* Arrows, therein perswading the Citizens to open their gates, and receive him their Mild and Merciful Conqueror, and that in so doing they should deliver themselves from the miseries that attended on besieged Cities; but these fair promises nothing prevailing, he encouraged his soldiers to a fresh Assault, in attempting which he lost 4000 of his men, and was forced to sound the retreat; but in the many conflicts the Christians being wasted either by death, sickness, or wounds, expecting succours from the Princes of the West, and none coming to their aid, wearied with continual watching, the *Turks* in the dead of the night secretly entred a Bulwark the day

before fore battered by the Ordnance from the mount, and putting the drousie *Italians* and *Epirots*, they found therein to the sword, e'r the Allarm could be taken; let in such a number of their fellows, that the besieged were not able to repell them, but with the continual Volleys of shot, were on all sides overwhelmed, which *Eugenius* a valiant Captain perceiving, and as a man desperate, endeavouring to retain his flying Soldiers, in thickest danger, was slain by a Harquibus shot; and now the *Turks* like a Torrent flowing in at all the Ports, made such destruction that it was lamentable to behold, sparing in their fury neither man woman nor child; whereupon the Soldiers and many of the Citizens, casting themselves in a Ring in the Market-place, with their weapons in their hands, as men desperate, resolved to dye fighting, against whom the Governour of *Aleppo* caused severall Murthering Pieces to be bent, which they perceiving, and finding they should be killed at a distance, without having power to revenge themselves on their Enemy, cast down their weapons, and yeilded themselves to the mercy of the Enemy, and were thereupon for a while spared; but the Gates being strongly guarded, that none should escape, *Dandalus* the Governour, *Contarenius* Bishop of *Paphos*, and other the chief men of the City, having retired themselves into the Town-hall, there resolving to dye like men, if they could find no other means to escape, sent to the Bassa for life, which request he seemed well to approve; but whilst messengers passed too and fro, the barbarous *Turks* broke in upon them, and put them all to the sword, when raging on they likewise killed all those that had submitted themselves, and were taken to mercy, as is supposed not without the secret command of the Bassa, a deadly enemy to the Christians; and so great

was

was the inhumane slaughter that eighteen thousand were in all reported to perish by the sword, neither was there any end of the spoil, till the avaritious enemy had carryed away all that long peace had accumulated, which according to the moderatest computation amounted to 20000 Millions of Ducates; and notwithstanding the fury of the Barbarous Enemy 200 youths were reserved, and sent as a present to *Selymus* in order to his training them up in the order of *Janizaries*. In the City likewise were taken two hundred and fifty Pieces of Great Ordnance. This City was won on the 9 of September, 1570, and to this day remains in the hands of the *Turks*, as doth the whole Island.

Nicosia won, the Bassa sent one of his *Sanzacks* to summon the City of *Cyrene* of which *Palacius* was Governour, who upon sight of the *Turks* Army cowardly yeilded the same into their hands; which so heightened their courage, that they laid siege to *Famagusta*, sending to Summon it to Surrender, but finding the resolution of the Garrison to defend it, and withall having notice that the Christian Fleet was at hand, he raised his siege, and billeted his soldiers for that winter, in certain villages adjacent, nor was Fames rumour founded upon idle report, for the Fleet set out by the King of *Spain*, the *Venetians*, and the *Pope*, commanded by *Auria Zaninus* and *Columnius* loosing from *Crett*, had given the *Turks* battle, had not *Auria* the *Spanish* Admiral opposed it, and after him many of the Great Commanders; for *Zaninus* the *Venetian* Admiral, and *Columnius* the *Popes* Admiral absolutely declared that they had express Command to fight the *Turks*, but the other alledging the great disadvantage they should receive by fighting upon the Enemies Coast, and the weakness of the Fleet by reason of the Pestilence that had destroyed

the most expert Seamen abruptly departed for *Messina*, leaving the other Admirals to shift for themselves, who not able to contend with so powerful an Enemy returned likewise to *Corcyra*, where by a Decree of the Senate, *Zanius* the *Venetian* Admiral was discharged of his command, and sent prisoner to *Venice*, and *Sebastianus Venerius* Governour of *Corcyra* Commissioned Admiral in his stead.

The rich prey for the most part taken in *Nicolia*, being put on board the Admirals Gally, a Woman Captive taken there, in a desperate Mood giving fire to the Gunpowder blew up the Gally, and by that blow beat in pieces two others that lay near it, destroying thereby a great number of Turks, the Bassa himself narrowly escaping by being a little before gone on shoar.

The new Admiral of the *Venetians* to get him a name resolving to attempt something upon the Turks, and having a fit opportunity offered he sailed into the Bay of *Ambriaca*, and by the aid of the Mountain people inhabiting. *Acroceraunian* took the strong Castle of *Chimara* putting to the Sword and taking Prisoners 300 Turks there ingarrisoned, and not long after *Querinus* the Vice-Admiral sailing along the Coast of *Peloponesus*, Landed his men near the Bay of *Maine*, and in five hours took a strong Castle of the Turks, built to guard the pass, and in it 500 Turks, whom he caused to be put to the Sword, and taking out the Ordinance caused the Castle to be razed. The City of *Famagustan* being again blocked up by the Turks huge Camp, the Governour sent *Hieronimus Ragazonius* Bishop of the City, and *Nicholaus Donatus* to *Venice*, they to make known to the Senate the danger the besieged were in, and to require them not to delay sending them succour, whereupon the Senators wrote to the Admiral, to put a supply both of men and provision who

committing the care thereof to *Quirinus* the Vice-Admiral, he as an undaunted Captain filling four Ships with all manner of Provision, and 1700 select Souldiers, waiting his opportunity with Twelve Gallies, accompanied them to the mouth of the Port which Ships the Turks that lay at Anchor beholding, came forth in hope of a prize, but being set upon by the Gallies were obliged to retire in great disorder, and run themselves for the most part on shoar; where they were beaten in pieces by the great Ordnance from the *Venetian* Gallies, and then entering the Haven relieved the Citizens as he had in charge, to their unexpressible joy; when coming forth again and roaming about the Seas, he took two of the Enemies Ships richly laden, who were coming to the Camp in *Cyprus*, and then wasted the Coasts of *Pamphilia* he returned to *Venice*, the news of which coming to the knowledge of *Selymus*, it so enraged him that he caused the Governour of *Chios* his head to be stricken off, the Governour of *Rhodes* to be discharged of his Government and *Pial* Bassa, to be turned out from being Admiral.

The Turks encroaching thus upon *Christendom* did not a little Alarum the Confederate Princes, inso-much that they again consult how to withstand the barbarous Enemy, and if possible to relieve the remaining Cities of *Cyprus*, but were a long while ere they came to any conclusion. In which space after many terrible assaults, and the loss of 14000 Turks, *Tramogusta* was taken, and all manner of cruelties exercised (contrary to the Faith of the Bassa before given) on the Souldiers and Citizens, and the same risque soon after run all the other Cities of *Cyprus*, but by this time the Ambassadors sent by the *Venetians* to *Tamas* the *Persian* King to joyn in League with the Confederate Princes being returned, with onely this answer, that the *Persian* would not hastily

enter into a War against the Turk, but would for two years expect the success of the Christians Arms, the King of *Spain*, *Venetians* and *Pope*, with several of the *Italian* Princes entred into a perpetual League, and with all diligence prepared their Fleet against the spring, every one being proportioned his charge in the War, and to have proportion of the spoiles, to be taken according to the number of Ships and Gallies set forth.

By this time the Turks having possessed themselves of the famous Island of *Cyprus*, and not content therewith gaped for *Crete*, now called *Candia*, lying in the *Mediterranean*, and once as *Seneca* and others witness possessed of 100 Cities, being exceeding fruitful, and then in the possession of the *Venetians*, on which the Turks landing in great number, did what harm they possibly could, by burning and spoiling all they found in their way, till at length they were incountered by *Franciscus Justinianus* who but a little before their Landing came into the Island with a 1000 Souldiers, and now joyning with the Islanders, charged them as they dispersed to seek for prey with such fury, that killing many of them he obliged the rest to make a swift though a disorderly retreat to their Gallies, but the next day they again landing in greater number burnt divers Towns, ranfacked *Setia* and *Rhetimo*, wherein they found much riches, and carried away most of the inhabitants into miserable bondage. But loaded with their booty dispersed and dreading no danger they were suddainly charged by *Lucas Michael* a valiant Captain 2000 of them slain, and all the prey recovered together with the prisoners, and they again forced to betake themselves to their Gallies, after which they weighed Anchor and sailed along the Coast, passing by *Cythera*, *Zazinthius* and *Cephalenia* Island

Island belonging to the *Venetians*, doing much damage in divers parts of them, and carryed 6000 of the Islanders into Captivity, and departing thence sailed along the Coast of *Epirus*, which the *Venetians* had stirred up to Rebel against the Turks, but not sending them the promised Aid they were enforced to submit to the Mercy of their mercyleſs Enemies, after which they recovered all the Castles and Towns the *Venetians* had taken on the Sea Coast, which brought a great fear upon most of the Islands yet possessed by the Christians, especially when that part of the Fleet which had done ſo much harm was augmented, by the arrival of *Haly Baſſa*, and within a while after all the Fleet met at *Aulona*, and on the 26 Aug. 1571. sailed directly to *Corcyra*, which little Island seemed to be incompaſſed with their huge Fleet. There *Partus Baſſa* Vice-Admiral of the *Turk* upon his arrival landed 800 Horſemen, and 1000 Foot, who ranging up and down the Island did great harm by burning and deſtroying all before them, till they came to the Suburbs of *Corfu* which they attempted to ſet on fire, but were beaten off by the Garrison Souldiers, who ſallyed upon them with great fury killing a great number of them, and amongst the reſt *Paphus Rays* a man of great account cauſing the reſt to betake themſelves to flight, who coming on board the Gally, weighed Anchor and ſailed to the Bay of *Corinth* otherwiſe called *Lepanto*, having on board the Fleet 15000 Captive Christians, taken in the Islands belonging to the *Venetians*.

The outrages of the Turks made the Christian Confederates haſten out their Fleet, which met at *Meffina* where the Admirals and other great Commanders called a Councel, to conſider what was beſt to be done in the management of the War againſt ſo powerful an Enemy, not doubting the victory

for why the *Venetian* Fleet, consisted of 108 Gallies, 6 Galliasles, 2 great Ships, and many small Galliot to whom were joyned 12 Gallies of the Popes, Commanded by *Columnius*. And with *Don John* General of *Spain*, Base Son to *Charles* the 5th. and *Auria* the Spanish Admiral came 81 Gallies, of which three appertained to the Knights of *Malta*. In this Fleet besides Mariners were reckoned to be 20000 Men, an Army not onely most beautiful for shew, as consisting of able Men, but for the most part composed of old experienced Souldiers, amongst whom were a great number of the Christian Nobility, who came to serve against the Infidels of their own accord, drawing after them a number of their Favorites, whom they at their own charge maintained. The chief of which were *Alexander Farnesius* Prince of *Parma*, *Franciscus Maria* Prince of *Urbino*, and *Paulus Jordanus Ursinus* of the Honourable Family of the Roman *Ursini*.

All things being thus in a readines, the *Venetian* Admiral in the Counsel, called to determine what was to be done, vehemently pressed the General and the rest of the great Commanders instantly to give the Enemy Battle, and was seconded by several others of Note, as well *Spaniards* as *Romans*, whereupon Commandement was given for putting the Fleet in order, which by the three Admirals of *Venice*, *Rome*, and *Spain* being brought into the Ocean was martialled in this manner. In the right wing which consisted of 53 Gallies, was *Auria* the Spanish Admiral placed. In the left wing *Augustinus Barbaricus* with the like number of Gallies, and in the middle Battle stood the General himself, with 70 Gallies, on the right hand of the General stood *Columnius*, and on the left *Venerius* his Associates, and thus with equal form the Fleet set forward as if they

in-

instantly had been to joyn the Enemy.

During this preparation of the Christians the Turks were not idle, but calling a Council of the chief Commanders held a long debate, whether they should give the Christians Battle, or decline it, but at length those that held it dangerous to give Battle being over-ballanced by those that were of the contrary opinion, it was resolved that the whole Fleet should be put in order of Battle, which at the command of *Haly Bassa*, General of the Land Forces, and Great Admiral of the *Turkish* Gallies, coming out of the Bay of *Corinth* or *Lepanto*, they were put into order of the Battle after this manner. The middle Battle in number much like the Christians, was conducted by *Haly Bassa* and *Partau*, attended upon by *Agan* Master of the Turks Arsenal, *Mustapha Zelibi* the Treasurer, *Achmat Bay* with *Mahomet* his younger brother, the sons of *Haly Achmat Aga* Governor of *Teuthrania*, *Affis Caiga* Governour of *Calipolis*, *Caracozza Cassanes* Son to *Barbarossa* *Malamur* Governour of *Mytilene*, *Dely Solyman Gider* Captain of *Chios*, *Cassambeius* Governour of the *Rhodes*, *Provi Aga* Captain of *Nauplium*, *Giaper Zelibi* President of *Calabria*, *Dordagnan Dondomeni*, with many others too tedious to recite. The right wing was by the appointment of the Bassa's commanded by *Mahomet Bey*, with 56 Gallies, to whom were joyned many Captains of great Experience in Sea affairs. The left wing was commanded by *Uluzales* Viceroy of *Argiers*, an old experienced Pirate composed of 90 Gallies, accompanied with *Cariolo*, and *Araby*, his two sons, attended on by a multitude of Pirates who entered into the War, in hopes to get great spoil. In the Rearward was placed *Amurath Dragut* with 30 Gallies, and divers other small vessels.

Both Fleets being set in order of Battle, about noon

noon a fierce *ingagement* happened in the beginning of which God so ordering it, the Wind turned about to the great advantage of the Christians, driving the smoake of the great Ordnance, and vollies of small shot in the face of the Infidels, whereupon for a long time the fight continued with equal success, victory inclining to neither side, but after four hours space the *Turkish* Admiral being slain, his Gally taken, and about 40 others sunk and fired, victory began to declare her self for the Christians. Yet the desperate Turks as fearing *Selymus* Anger if they should return vanquished fought desperately, but true valour prevailing and all the chief Commanders, except *Uluzales* slain or taken Prisoners, and he resolving to reserve himself to his better fortune, fled (after 5 hours desperately fighting) with between 30 and 40 Gallies into the Bay of *Lepanto*, leaving the victory to the Christians, who having pursued him as far as they thought convenient, returned to take the spoil, where it was a horrible Spectacle to behold the Sea coloured with blood, and covered with the bodies of the slain, fragments of broken Ships, and such weapons as were subject to float upon its surface. The number of the Turks lost in this great overthrow, could not be known by reason of the Multitude that were buried in the Sea, but *Antonius Gnarnerius* writing the History of this war reported 32000 to have perished and amongst them these of Note, viz. *Haly Bassa* General, *Mahomet Bey* (otherwise called *Chiroche* or *Siroche*) Governour of *Alexandria*, *Cassanes* the Son of *Barbarossa*, together with his son *Mulaune* Governor of *Mitylene*, *Gider* Governour of *Chios*, *Cassambannes* Governour of *Rhodes*, *Provi Aga* Captain of *Naplum*, *Mustapha Zelibi* the great Treasurer, *Caracozza* Viceroy of *Argiers*, with many others. The cheif

chief Prisoners taken in this Battle were *Achmet* and *Mahomet* sons to *Haly Bassa*, and Nephews to *Selymus*, who being afterwards sent as a Present to the Pope, the Eldest died at *Naples*, and *Machmet Bey* Governour of *Eubœa*, and of lesser note 3500, of the Enemies Gallies were taken 161, & 40 sunk in the fight, and taken about 60 Galliot and other small vessels.

This notable Victory thus obtained, *Don John Venerius* and *Columna* coming together, friendly embraced each other, and afterwards in a most Christian manner on their knees returned most hearty thanks to Almighty God for giving them so Great a Victory over the Enemies of his Name; which pious example was seconded by all the Captains, Mariners, and souldiers of the Fleet of the Christians in this bloody fight died about seven thousand five hundred sixty six, the chief of which were *John* and *Bernardinus* of the Honourable family of *Cordona* in Spain, *Horatio Carassa* and *Ferantes Bisballus Virginis* and *Horatius* Noble Romans of the Venetian Nobility were slain; *Augustinus*, *Barbadicus*, *Benedictus*, *Superantius*, *Vincentius*, *Quirinus*, *Johanes Lauritanus*, *Marinus Contarenus*, *Catharinus*, *Malepetra*, *Georgius*, *Andreas Barbadicus*, *Marcus Antonius*, *Laudus Franciscus*, *Bonus Hieronimus*, *Contarenus*, *Antonius Paschalius*, and *Hieron Venerius*, all of the Order of the Senators, besides divers other Honourable Gentlemen, well deserving to be inrolled in the Records of Fame. There were likewise many of note wounded, and amongst the rest *Venerius* the Venetian Admiral by a small shot that passed through his foot.

This great and welcom victory published in the City of *Venice*, caused such a General joy as the like was never till that time; nor only did the *Venetians* alone rejoyce, but likewise all Christian Nations; for in this fight the *Turks* lost so many substantial Gallies,

Gallyes, able Commanders, Seamen, that to this day that loss hath been a weakning to that so mighty Empire, and such was the Griefe conceived by *Selymus* thereat, that he retired himself for certain days, not permitting any to speak with him, and then in his fury passed a Decree for Massacring all the Christians within his Dominions, which bloody and barbarous Edict had been put in Execution had not *Muhamat* the chief Bassa by many perswasions averted his wicked purpose; yet that his loss might seem the less, he dissembled it as well as he could, giving strict orders for the speedy building of new Gallies, to supply the place of those that were lost, which he had the more leasure to do, by reason that after this so signal a victory, the Christian Fleet separated, with a resolution to meet again the next spring at *Corcyra*; yet the *Venetians* not satisfied for the loss of *Cyprus* spoiled the *Turks* Frontiers winning strong holds, and amongst the rest, the strong Town of *Suppoto*, formerly taken from them, which caused *Selimus* to put to Sea all the Gallies he had, appointing *Uluzales* a Renegado Christian, but now turned *Turk* Admiral, in the room of *Haly Bassa*, slain in the battel of *Lepanto*, of which the *Venetian* Admiral having notice, sent to *Don John* to come to his Aid, but he bearing a grudge against the *Venetians* for hanging up one of his Mutinous Captains, stood a long time in doubt whether he should send any of his Gallies to his assistance or not; but at length being by his Captains perswaded, that his honour would suffer, if through his neglect the Christian cause should be prejudiced; he sent *Lilly* of *Andradu*, with twenty two Galleys to joyn with the *Venetian* Fleet, then lying before *Corcyra*; nor was the Pope slow in sending his Galleys, insomuch that the whole Fleet consisted of 155 Gallies, 6 Galli-

asses

asses, and twenty ships of war ; nor was the *Turks* inferiour in number, lying about *Maluasia* in the entrance of the Bay called *Sinus Argolicus*, of which the *Venetian* Admiral having notice, resolved to give them battle what ever happened, but the wary Pirate *Uluzales* could not be drawn thereto, having before to his cost tryed the courage of the Christians lying still in the bay, hoping thereby to gain some advantage, without which he resolved not to fight, but finding the Christians every day ready to charge him as he lay, he for his better security found means to sail to *Corona*, upon which the Christian Fleet retired to *Cerigo*, not finding any opportunity of giving the enemy battle

Whilst matters went thus *Don John* sent a Frigate to advertise the *Venetian* Admiral that he was arrived at *Corcyra*, commanding him to meet him at *Zacynthus*, there to consult about the carrying on the war ; but when they came thither, the General not regarding his word delayed to meet them, which did not a little trouble the *Venetians* ; but not staying there they sailed to *Cocyra*, where joyning the ships newly sent to their Aid by several Christian Princes, they resolved to seek out the Enemy, and if possible to oblige him to fight ; whereupon they loosed Anchor, and for the most part sailed by night, thinking by that means to oppress the Enemy e'r he was provided to defend himself ; but this purpose being discovered by some of the *Turks* Scouts, the Christians were prevented in their undertaking ; yet so resolute was the *Venetian* Admiral that he pressed the other Generals to enter the Bay, and give them Battle even in the mouth of the Harbour ; but this his resolution (though it had past doubt proved successful, had it been put in execution) was opposed by the *Spanish* General, and *Columnius* the Popes Admiral,

ral, as not seasonable, but altogether dangerous, even to the hazarding the Christian Fleet, which as they alledge was the Bullwark of Christendom; yet lying before *Nauarinum*, they resolved to besiege the Castle of *Modon* both by Sea and Land, which Castle lying in mouth of the Bay, defended the *Turks* Fleet, whereupon sailing before it, they landed seven thousand of their most resolute Soldiers, and at the same time appointed several of the Galleasses and Gallies to batter it with their Great Ordnance; the which more advantageously to effect they joyned two Gallies together, with Masts, Ropes, and other tackling, in the nature of a floating battery, on which they planted Baskets of Earth, and several Pieces of Great Ordnance; but being overcharged with too great a weight, they became useless, by reason of the abundance of water that entred them, and at the same time having notice that a considerable number of *Turkish* horsemen had entered by night into the Castle, they thought good to give over the siege, which made the *Turks* so adventurous as to send several of their Gallies out of the Bay to seize upon a great ship of the *Venetians*, that was coming from *Zacynthus* with provision for the Fleet, but they were soon obliged to retire, which all of them did in safety, except *Mahomet*, Nephew to *Barbarossa* the famous Pirate, who to get him a name, stayed on purpose to dare the Christians; but being Grapled by the Marquess of *St. Crux*, after a fierce Engagement he with almost all his men were slain, and the Galley taken in the sight of the *Turks* Fleet, they not daring to come to his assistance; after which the Christians besieged the strong Castle of *Nauarinum*, antiently called *Pylus*, the charge of which was by General consent of the great Commanders committed to *Alexander Farnesius* Prince of *Parma*, whom the

Vene-

Venetians furnished with Munition and Victuals for the better performance of that service, which he no sooner received, but landing 2000 *Italians*, 1000 *Spaniards*, and five hundred *Germans*, with twelve Pieces of Ordnance, did batter the Castles incessantly; but not encompassing it, as he ought, in the night time a Great number of *Turks* having made their way through a pathless Forrest, entered at an unsuspected Port, whilst those of the Garrison were skirmishing with the besiegers; whereupon the Princes despairing to carry it by assault, raised the siege.

The *Turks* Fleet shut up in the Bay of *Modon*, and as it were besieged by the Christians, by this time felt great want, which caused a Pestilence to rage so violently amongst the Soldiers and Marriners, that many of the Gallies were deserted, and the rest so slenderly manned, and so unprovided of necessaries, that had the Christian Fleet rode it out a moneth longer before the Bay, the Enemies fleet had fell into their hands almost without fighting; but such was the perverseness of the *Spanish* General, that he would needs return with his Fleet, notwithstanding all the pregnant reasons, and arguments the *Venetian* Admiral used to perswade him to the contrary, and so resolutely was he therein, that he resolved to depart not only without the consent of the *Venetians* but without their privity, he having in order there-to strictly commanded all his Captains, and Masters of his Gallies, speedily to weigh Anchor, and to stand for the Coast of *Sicily*; of which the *Venetian* Admiral having notice, and not a little troubled thereat, came on board his Galley, and renewed his perswasions for his stay; but finding all arguments vain, he at least requested him to stay so long, till the 2 Gallies fastened together for a floating Battery might be fetched off, and not be left there as a prey, to which
he

he hardly consented, alledging that his victuals fell short, and if he should stay longer abroad his Fleet would be oppressed with famine, yet promised that if he met with the ships he had sent for out of *Sicily* loaden with provilion, he would instantly return, but kept not his word, though he incountred them upon the Coast of *Corcyra*; so that the half starved *Turks*, upon his departure by degrees got out of the Bay, to their no small joy, most of them getting in safety to *Constantinople*. For after the departure of the *Spaniards* to *Messina*, the *Venetian* and Popes Admiral departed likewise, the one to *Rome*, and the other to *Venice*, having done nothing worthy of so great preparations as were set forth by the Christian Princes.

About this time *Amida* King of *Tunes* being driven out of his Kingdom fled to *Don John* for Aide, humbly requesting him that he would restore him to his Kingdom, to which the crafty *Spaniard* seemingly hearkned, but having landed his Forces, taken possession of *Tunis* and other strong places, he sent *Amida* together with his wife and children into *Sicily*, there to remain as prisoners at large, during their lives, and placed *Mahomet* his brother in his stead, who by reason of his Seniority was rightful Heir to the Kingdom. But withall taking of him a solemn Oath, that he should become and from thenceforth remain a vassal to the *Spanish* King, and alwayes be ready to do whatsoever he commanded, and having beaten the *Turks* and wild *Arabs* out of the Countrey, he built a new Castle in the Middle way, between *Culetta* and *Tunes*, and having put a strong Garrison therein, as likewise into *Guletta*, he returned into *Sicilia*.

The *Venetians* finding no trust to be reposed in the *Spaniards*, and of themselves too weak to deal with
the

the *Turks*, resolved if possible to conclude an honourable peace with *Selymus*, thinking it more for their advantage than to be subject to the insolent humours of the *Spanish* General; and thereupon after much debate in the Senate house it was resolved that Ambassadors should be sent to sound the mind of the *Turk*; who as it afterward appeared, was no less desirous of peace then themselves, though he a long time dissembled it; whereupon the Ambassadors arriving at *Constantinople*, after much debate subscribed the Articles of Peace; the substance of which were these. First, that the *Venetians* should pay unto *Selymus* 300000 Ducates, 100000 to be paid down, and the rest in two equal portions the two succeeding years. Secondly, That such places of the *Venetians*, as were in the possession of the *Turks* should still remain in the hands of the Possessors, but that such Towns and Places as the *Venetians*, during the war had taken from the *Turks* should be instantly restored.

This Peace thus concluded, was proclaimed in *Constantinople* on the twentieth of March Anno 1574, and at *Venice* the thirteenth of April following, to the great amazement of the Confederates, when the better to justify themselves in what they had done, the *Venetian* Senators sent for the *Spanish* Ambassador and Popes Nuncio, into the Senate house, to whom the Duke in a Grave Speech, addressed himself to this purpose. That anger and Hope two evil Counsellors being set aside, he had concluded a Peace with the *Turk*, not for that he was desirous of the *Turks* friendship, which what account it was to be made of, he right well knew, but for the love he bare to the State, which was not only with loss but even with death it self to be maintained; how he had been spoiled of the Kingdom of

E e

Cyprus,

Cyprus; he further declared, that the *Venetian* State grew weaker and weaker by continual war, and therefore before it was reduced to extremity, and they not being able to maintain war against so Potent an enemy, were to take a surer course for the preservation of what yet of their Signory remained unto them, for that the safety of the *Venetian* State should at all times be a sure Fortress and Defence of the Christian Commonweale, against all the furious attempts of the enemy, and uncertain events of time.

This Peace though disliked of other Christian Princes, was advantagious to the *Venetians*, for as much as the war had made their Trade to cease, both in the *Adriatick* and *Mediterranean* Seas, which upon the conclusion of Peace with the *Turks*, returned again more then ever, by reason few other Christian Merchants had the like liberty. This peace was the easier obtained of the *Turk* for as much as the *Spaniard* had reduced the Kingdom of *Tunis* to his obedience, and that the *Knights* of *Malta* had an eye upon *Tripolis* and other Sea port Towns holden by the *Turks*, upon the Coast of *Barbary*, that he might be the more at leasure to defend what he possessed, and if possible to recover that which his father had lost, viz. the Kingdom of *Tunis*; yet declining that enterprize for a time, he converted his Forces against *John* the *Vayuod* of *Valachia*, who a little before having driven *Bogeanus* out of *Moldavia*, had possessed himself of that Province, but upon his refusing to pay *Selymus* double the Tribute he agreed for, he held him in such distrust, that he resolved to take from him both his Principalities, and annex them to the *Ottoman* Empire, to prevent which if possible, the said *John* raised a great power, calling to his assistance the *Cossacks* a warlike people of *Polonia*, who
living

upon the Frontiers secure the kingdom from the incursions of the *Tartars*, and maintain themselves for the most part by spoiles taken from the enemy, who now in great number under the leading of *Sufercenius* their Captain, came to the assistance of the *Vayvod*.

Selymus hearing what had passed, sent 30000 *Turks*, and 2000 *Hungarians*, to joyn such Forces as were raised by the *Palatine* of *Valachia Transalpine* with a Command that he should take *John* the *Vayvod*, and send him in bonds to *Constantinople*, and in his stead placed *Peter* his brother, of which the *Palatine* an utter Enemy to *John* was not a little glad nor delayed, but upon the Arrival of the *Turks* and *Hungarians*, with an Army of 202000 fighting men passed over the River *Moldavins*, not doubting but with his multitude to oppress his adversary, but putting too much confidence in his strength, and by reason thereof incamping disorderly, on the Bank of the River, the *Vayvod* and Captain of the *Cossacks* set upon with such fury, that ere his Souldiers could recover their Horses then dispersed in the adjacent Medows, or put themselves in a posture of defence, they overwhelmed with shot, and every where disordered so, that flying in great confusion most of them were slain or drowned, in attempting to repass the River, the *Palatine* and *Peter* his brother hardly escaping to the Castle of *Brailonia* in *Valachia*. In the *Palatines* Camp, were found store of Riches, which the *Vayvod* bestowed upon his Souldiers, and with Fire and Sword entered *Valachia Transalpine*, putting all to the Sword that came in his way, without respect either to Age or Sex till he came to the Castle of *Brailonia*, in which he understood that the *Palatine* and his Brother were in this Castle, together with a fair City bearing the same name, standeth on the Banks of *Danubius*, which at that time was

defended by a strong Garrison of Turks, near unto which incamping his Army he wrote to the Captain thereof, commanding him to deliver into his hands the *Palatine* and his Brother, who had causelessly invaded his Territories, and being overthrown in Battle was fled unto him, the which if he refused to do, he vowed never to depart from thence till he had constrained him to yield them up; which Message being sent to the Captain by two *Valachian* Prisoners, he returned four Messengers, with ten great shot, ten small shot, and two Turkish Arrows; giving them in charge to tell the *Vayvod*, that forasmuch as he knew him to be a servant to his dread Sovereign *Selymus* he did respect him, but would in no wise deliver into his hands those he required, but forasmuch as he understood that he of late had slain a great number of his Lords Servants, who by his commandement were bringing *Peter* the *Palatines* Brother into *Moldavia*, he therefore commanded him to raise the siege or he would make him and his Souldiers feed upon those dishes (meaning the Bullets and Arrows) till gorged to the full they dangerously surfeited and cast. This answer so incensed *John*, that he caused the Messengers to be cruelly intreated by cutting off their Noses, Lips, and Ears, and nailing them by their feet to a piece of Timber hung them up before the City, with their heads downwards as a terror to the rest, and they furiously battering the Walls till large breaches appeared, the Souldiers entred by plain force put all to the Sword that they found therein: Insomuch that the blood running like a Torrent into the *Danubius*, crimsoned ore its stream for many a mile. There the greedy Souldiers found inestimable Wealth, heaped up in many peaceful years; but perceiving the Castle not so easily to be won as the City he upon

on notice of the approach of 15000 Turks to the relief of the former, razed the latter, and suddenly went to meet them with his *Cossacks* and 8000 *Moldavian* Horsemen, and by speedy Marches entered their disordered Camp ere they heard he had raised the siege, where the enraged Souldiers so laid about them that scarcely 1000 of the Turks escaped, which were afterwards put to the Sword in *Teira*, which City the *Vayvod* took and utterly razed, and returning from thence overthrew another Army of the Turks with incredible slaughter, so that his name became terrible to the Turks, and made *Selymus* doubt the keeping of his Dominions in *Europe*, but as Treason is always the wreck of prosperous affairs, so it happened to the *Vayvod*, for he dissolving a part of his Army and appointing *Czarnieniche*, one of his great Captains, and a man singularly by him beloved, for the Guarding his Frontiers and preventing the Turks passing the *Danubius*, corrupted with the Turks Gold he suffered *Peter* with a great Army the next Spring to enter *Valachia* without resistance, of which the *Vayvod* having notice, lying then before the Castle of *Teine*, he sent the Captain of the *Cossacks*, and the *Moldavian* Horsemen to oppose their passage, who meeting with 6000 of the forerunners of the Turks Army, after a light skirmish put them to flight and taking one of them though mortally wounded, inquired of him the state of the Army that had passed *Danubius*, but he dealing unfaithfully with them, would not make them sensible of the great power which was at hand; yet the Captain of the *Cossacks* doubting to be oppressed by multitudes, and having in distrust the fidelity of *Czarnieniche*, sent to the *Vayvod* to advertise him thereof, and to desire him to provide for himself and the safety of his Army, but he as a man re-

solved to give the Turks Battle, returned for answer that in the first place he little doubted of the Faith of him whom he had found most faithful in the time of his greatest distress, and used as a most trusty companion in all his Travels, and that it was no time now to stand in doubt or be afraid, and that as for himself, he would ere long come with the rest of the Army, and take a view of the Enemies Camp, for that he was not come so far to fly but to fight in the defence of his Subjects and Country, and so within four dayes after he joyned with the forerunners of his Army, and incamped near a Lake, which runneth out of *Danubius*, and with several of his trusty followers ascended a high Hill, the better to take a view of the Enemies huge Camp, upon which plainly perceiving that he was betrayed by *Czarnie-liche*, who had then under his command 13000 of his choice Souldiers, he sent for him, but he doubting his Treason was discovered, sent him word that he could not now come, the Enemy being so nigh at hand, but that he should without delay see him in the Field as forward as the most couragious against the Enemy, but herein he failed his Lord; for Battle being joyned he caused his Ensigns to be let fall, and revolted to the Enemy, which so discouraged the rest of the Souldiers that after a desperate and bloody fight, finding themselves oppress'd with multitudes, and their Countrey-men who should have assisted them, fighting against them, they gave back, which the *Vayvod* perceiving caused the retreat to be sounded, and with 20000 Foot men, and such Horsemen as escaped the Battle, retired in as good order as the danger would permit, into the ruins of an old Town which a little before he had razed, and therein strongly Fortified himself round about, which next day the Turks incamped, but per-

perceiving that it was not onely difficult but dangerous to assault him in his strength, they sent Messengers to him, to perswade him to yield to Mercy and not expose his own Life, and the lives of so many of his Subjects to the fury of the enraged Souldiers, or miseries they would be shortly reduced to by Famine, offering the Oaths of all the chief Commanders for his own security and the security of his people, to which propofals he being perswaded to hearken he in consideration that the *Cossacks* might be permitted to return with their Horses and Armes, into their own Countrey; that himself might be alive conveyed into the presence of *Selymus*, there to make his defence, and that his Subjects might return to their respective homes, or take service with the *Turks*; agreed to come out of his strength and submit himself, to which his demands *Capucius* Bassa General of the *Turks* Army consented, and himself with the rest of the great Commanders swore seven times (a usual custom amongst the *Turks* for the solemnly obliging themselves) to fulfil his request. Whereupon he came forth onely accompanied with *Osmolius* a *Polonian* Captive, but after four hours continuance in the *Turks* Camp the perfidious Bassa sending for him unexpectedly with his Scimiter struck him cross the face, and afterwards wounded him in the Belly, upon which signal the *Janizaries* present took him and cut off his head, which they fixing upon the point of a Lance, carrying it in derision through the Camp: nor satisfied with barbarous and base indignities, they at the commandment of the Bassa tore his body in pieces with Camels, and soon after put all the Christians whom they had allured out of their strength to the Sword who yet fell not unrevenged, for the *Cossacks* perceiving the hard plight they were in, sered together, and with
their

their weapons in their hands made a great slaughter of the Enemy, but being few in number except their Captain, and some other men of note they were all slain.

After this shameful Murther the Turks overran all *Moldavia* and *Valachia*, recovering in a short time the strong places that were possessed by the *Vayvods* Garrisons, after which *Selymus* intent for the recovery of the Kingdom of *Tunis* in possession of the *Spaniards* sent 300 sail of Gallies under the command of *Sinan Pial*, and *Uluzales* his chief Bassa's to reduce it to his obedience, who after the loss of 30000 Turks, with great difficulty took the strong Castle of *Guletta*, and the new Castle built at the Commandment of *Don John* in his late expedition against the Moorish Rebels, which strong hold lost, *Tunes* surrendered without making any considerable resistance, and in it was taken *Mahomet* the late invested King, whom the Turks sent Prisoner to *Constantinople*. But *Selymus* long survived not this victory over the *Spaniards*, but being spent with Wine and Women, to whom he had given his greatest strength he died on the 9th. of *December*, anno 1574. having lived 51 years, and thereof Reigned eight, he lies buried at *Hadrinople*, leaving his Empire to *Amurath* his Eldest Son, who succeeded him by the name of *Amurath* the Third, as will appear in the series of his Life and Reign.

C H A P. XVI.

The Life, Reign, and Memorable Transactions of Amurath the Third of that Name, and sixth Emperor of the Turks.

Selymus dead, and his Death kept secret from the *Janizaries* for the space of twelve dayes, at the end of which *Amurath* arriving at *Constantinople*, was received into the *Seraglio*, and took possession of the Empire, when having pacified the unruly Souldiers with great liberality, he caused according to the Turkish policy, *Mustapha*, *Solyman*, *Abdula*, *Osman* and *Tzibanger* his five brethren to be strangled, with bow strings even in his sight, the reason of which strangling is because they would not spill any of the *Othoman* sacred blood as they term it on the ground, upon the death of whom the Mother of *Solyman* overcome with grief and dispair, stabbed her self to the Heart with a Dagger, at which Tragical sight it is reported that *Amurath* wept, as not delighted with such unnatural cruelty, but that the manner and nature of his Government so required, for that by reason of the largeness of the *Ottoman* Empire, if many of the Princes of the blood lived at one and the same time, they would probably with civil dissensions rend it in pieces.

Anno 1575 *Amurath* established many wholsom Laws, altered the Coin, and bountifully relieved the poor, and albeit he was of a mild and peaceable nature, yet that he might seem like to his Predecessors

cessors he prosecuted his Fathers Wars, and aided by the Tartars entered into *Ruscia* part of the Territories of the King of *Polonia*, where he burnt and destroyed 200 Castles, besides a great number of Towns and Villages, putting multitudes of the poor people to the Sword, and carrying as many into miserable Captivity, but the Tartar had little joy of their success, for whilst they were busie in *Ruscia* the *Cossack* brake into their Kingdom, and destroyed all before them for the space of 100 miles.

That which gave the Turks encouragement to enter the Territories of *Polonia*, was the division amongst the nobility for *Henry D' Valoys* their King, upon notice that his brother *Charles* the Ninth French King was dead, secretly departed to take upon him the Kingdom of *France*, to which he was rightful Heire, whereupon one party was for Electing *Maximilian* the *German* Emperour, and the other strongly opposing them would have introduced the great Duke of *Muscovy*. Of which *Amurath* having notice, and supposing that to which soever of them it fell he would prove a troublesome Neighbour, he sent a Letter to dissuade the Nobility and Counsellors of the Kingdom to chuse neither, but to Elect a King amongst themselves, or else *Stephen Buttor* Prince of *Transylvania*, and in so doing they should find him their constant Friend, or in refusing to comply with his desire to expect all the calamities that attend on War. In this Letter the proud Turk stiled himself God of the Earth, Governour of the whole World, the Messenger of God, and faithful servant of the great Prophet. Yet so it effectually wrought with the *Polonian* Nobility, that notwithstanding *Maximilian* the Emperour was by the Arch Bishop of *Gnesna* and some others, Elected King; yet was that their Election by the great part of the Electors

Electors difannulled, as alfo the great Duke of *Moscovy* rejected, and the Noble Princefs *Anne* of the moft Honourable *Jagelionian* houfe chosen Queen of *Polonia*, upon condition that ſhe ſhould Marry *Stephen* Prince of *Transylvania*, which ſhe afterward performed, as in the ſeries of this Hiſtory will appear.

Amurath upon the afore-mentioned conditions having drawn his Army out of *Ruſcia*, and taking advantage of the diſcord ariſing in the Kingdom of *Persia*, upon the death of *Tamas* reſolved to bend his Forces to the Conqueſt of that great Kingdom, which (the diſſenſion amongſt the Sons of the deceased King about the ſucceſſion, made him ſuppoſe) was eaſie to be effected, whereupon raiſing ſuch great Forces as held *Chriſtendom* in ſuſpence, he yet declined attempting any thing till he had knowledge what effects the civil broyls had wrought, which were that after a long contention, and the Murther of many of the Sons and Grandchildren of the deceased King, *Mahomet* Eldeſt ſon to *Tamas*, who had before rejected the Diadem, to prevent the ruin of his Native Country, took upon him the Regency, though not without the envy of many of the great *Sultans*, whoſe guilt upon his being proclaimed King had cauſed them to fly, who like thorow paced Traitors in their exile ſolicited *Amurath* by all means ſpeedily to invade the Kingdom of *Persia*, laying before him the facility of conquering that noble Kingdom, abounding with all manner of riches, and that the *Georgians* and *Saracens* evilly affected towards the new King, would not fail upon the approach of his Army to joyn with him. Theſe and the like perſwaſions fired the Turk with hopes of ſo glorious an atchievement, that notwithstanding he was in League with the *Persian*, yet after long debating the matter

matter in the *Divan*, it was resolved that the War should be undertaken and carryed on with all vigor, and that the first attempt should be made upon the Countrey of *Servan*, the better to effect which by alaruming the Enemy in divers places, he sent to his Bassa's Governours of *Babylon*, *Van*, and other places on the *Persian* Frontiers, to molest the Territories by frequent inroads, to perform which they were no ways wanting. And now *Stephen* the Prince of *Transilvania* having married Queen *Anne*, and being confirmed by the free choice of the Nobility King of *Poland*, he sent his Ambassadors to *Amurath*, to conclude a firm and inviolable League, which was granted by the Turk very advantageous to the Christians, that he might not be hindered in his *Persian* War, which in *Anno* 1578. he undertook, sending a great Army under the leading of *Mustapha* Bassa (who in the Reign of *Selymus* had Conquered *Cyprus*) into the Countrey of *Servan*, composed of these following Nations, viz, 12000 *Mesopotamians*, 14000 *Babylonians* and *Assyrians*, 2000 *Syrians*, 10000 *Natolians*, 1000 Jews of *Palastine*, 4000 *Cilicians*, after which followed the Soldiers of *Grecia*, the Glory and Hope of the whole Camp to the number of 10000, as likewise 10000 *Fanizaries*, Harquibufires, to whom 4000 of the Citizens of *Er Zicshum* were added besides many Voluntiers of divers Nations: insomuch that the whole Army consisted of 110000 Horse and Foot, besides this multitude of men, *Mustapha* brought into *Persia* 500 pieces of Artillery, and 50 Waggon loads of Money to leavy other Soldiers, if occasion required it.

The Bassa with the Army aforesaid, arriving at *Chars*, after three dayes staying there, during which time being marvellously troubled by reason of a sudden Tempest, he raised his Camp and departed to
the

the foot of the Mountains of *Chielder*, otherwise *Periardo*, where he had knowledge of the *Persian Sophies Army Approach*, which caused him to put his Army into order of Battle, dividing it amongst his great Commanders, which were *Dervis Bassa* of *Carraunt*, and *Osman Mahomet*, and *Musta Fada Bassas*; as for the *Persian Army* under the leading of *Tocomac* an experienced Captain, whom for his known valour and Loyalty, the *Sophy* had made General, it consisted not of above twenty thousand, all Horsemen, gathered out of *Georgia*, *Media*, and *Antropatia*, who misinformed by their Scouts of the *Turks* number, boldly held on their way, resolving to give them Battle, who from the Hills perceiving their intent, put themselves in a posture to receive them: whereupon about one in the Afternoon, a dreadful fight began, wherein at the first charge were slain seven of the *Turks Sanzacks*, with a Great number of Soldiers without any apparent loss to the *Persians*, who fighting close together slew the *Turks* at a distance with their shot of Arrows, and the continual thundering of their Harquibuzes, of which *Engins* by this time they had learned the perfect use. But *Mustapha*, who with a great power of his choice souldiers, having waited a fit opportunity, peirced the Squadrons of the horse, having first made a lane by the reiterated Vollies of his Artillery, and charged with such fury, that although the *Persians* encouraging each other did all that men were capable to perform, yet being overpowered with number, were at length broken and disordered; they under the shelter of the night retired, which the *Turks* without much difficulty permitted, they not having any cause to rejoyce at the Victory so gotten, their loss was so great, yet keeping the field all that night, the next morning in token of his good success, *Mustapha* sent the

the heads of five thousand *Persians*, and three thousand live prisoners to *Amurath*, and for the greater terror of the enemy, caused the heads of three thousand others to be stricken off, and piled on heaps; the Turks lost in this battle near twenty thousand, many of their chief souldiers.

The next day after the battle *Manuchlars*, a Prince of the *Georgians* sent a messenger to *Mustapha*, to acquaint him that he was coming to confer with him, which did not a little rejoyce the Turk; inso-much that he caused all his Great Commanders with Trumpets, Ensigns displayed, Drums beating, and the discharge of all the Great Ordnance to receive him, and in like manner to conduct him to his Pavillion (not doubting but that the revolt of this Prince would greatly further his affairs) which being done, and he entering the *Bassa's* Tent, he there was caused to sit down on his right hand, when after having made him presents of such things as for that purpose he had brought, he gave the *Bassa* to understand, That for the honour and estimation he conceived of the Turkish valour, he was ever devoted to the house of the *Ottomans*, and as he had often times desired to venture his life and fortune in their service, so at this present time he moved by his former desire, allured by the strange fame of his wonderful and victorious Army, and stirred up by a particular Fantasie to learn the Turkish Discipline in martial affairs, under such a General as was the *Bassa*, to whom he offered all his devotion and service, things as he said not offered to any before, and in fine besought him to accept of him in the name of *Amurath*, whose obedient vassal he had vowed himself.

This Speech ended the *Bassa* highly commended him for his prudent choice and good will towards the Turks; and the more to confirm him in the opi-
nion

nion he had of the *Ottoman* Greatness, he caused him to be led throughout his Camp, that so he might take a view of the Turkish Magnificence, where amongst other things he with detestation beheld the Pile of *Persian* heads, and then returning to *Mustapha's* Tent, he was presented with Garments of cloth of Gold, a Gilt Battle Ax and Target enameled with divers precious stones, and never permitted him to go from his Pavillion without a train of his slaves attending on him.

Things being at this pass, the Bassa was about to raise his Camp, to march into the very heart of *Persia*, when loe the face of the Heavens became black as *Egyptian* darkness, and upon a sudden such Prodigious Thunders, Lightning, Rain and Hail, broke from the yielding Clouds, that it seemed to most that the dissolution of all things was at hand, the wind every where renting the Turkish Tents in pieces, and carrying them into the Air; which Tempest and the noisom stench arising from the Carkases of the dead, caused such a Pestilence in the Camp, that upon the muster taken four dayes after forty thousand Turks were wanting, yet when the weather cleared up he removed, passing by the sides of the Great Mountain, and in his way taking in several Castles and Fortresses, though not without the loss of many of his men; nor were the *Persians* wanting to cut off his rear and the straglers of his Camp, as they found opportunity, by which means many thousands of their Forragers and such as greedy of booty left the Army, were cut short, yet having received a great supply of Provision from *Aleppo*, he marched into the Country of *Siruan*, when by the way *Alessandro* another Prince of the *Georgians* came to the Bassa's Pavillion & submitted himself, as the former had done, being thereupon welcomed in the same nature,

nature, receiving rich presents from the *Bassa* as a token of his favour, as likewise a promise that upon his return he would pass through his Country to pay him a visit.

The *Turks* traveling twelve dayes by long marches came into the confines of *Sirvan*, but finding all the Country destroyed before them, they fell into many ill conveniencies, for by the means aforesaid pale famine began to stare them in the face, which obliged them to search for provision in all places, yet finding little, as they were about to return to the Camp they happened on several *Persian* spies, out of whom they extorted that after they had passed certain Marshes where *Canac* discharged it self into *Araxis* they should find certain fields of Rice and standing Corn, together with divers herds of Cattle, enough to suffice the whole Army for a months space, which being made known unto the *Bassa*, he not greatly credited the Report, and therefore would not pass thither with the whole Army, but freely permitted such as would, to go, so that about ten thousand of the most hungerstarved, with such necessaries as they thought fit, went to seise upon this booty, but had no sooner passed the River and some few Marshes, but they fell into the *Persian* Ambush, laid for that purpose, who put them almost all to the sword; but whilst they were taking the spoil *Mustapha* having notice by the flyers what had happened, came upon them with the whole Army so suddenly that he hemmed them, as it were in an Island, made by the meandring of *Araxis* and *Canac*, where setting upon them, after a bloody fight put them to the worst, killing a great many of them, and forcing other to take the River, wherein many of them perished, *Tocomac* the General and three other great Captains hardly escaping.

After

After which *Mustapha* resolved to pass the River *Canac*, of which the Souldiers having notice, began not only to murmur but to Mutiny throughout the Camp, alledging that he carryed them to their certain destruction for that being in a strange Countrey, where all necessaries whereby to subsist were wanting, whereby they should subsist, they must inevitably perish, but he urging that it was the command of *Amurath*, and if no man but himself would passe over he himself would obey his Lords command, whereupon notwithstanding the unwillingness of three parts of the Army the next day the better to encourage his Captains and Souldiers himself waded over, and after him followed a great number of his slaves, and the rest of the great Commanders, but so slowly by reason of the swiftness of the River, that night approached ere half the Army had gained the farther bank, when the stream swelling with the force of the Wind and darkness making the Souldiers fearful, 8000 of them were driven headlong down the current into the deep places, where they miserably perished together, with a great number of Camels and Horses, so that the *Persians* living upon the Banks many miles distance, perceiving the number of dead Turks together with their weapons floating with the stream, concluded the Army was overthrown, nor was the fortune of those that passed over for a time much better, for coming into a barren Countrey, a great number of them died for want, yet having passed thus far a greater mischief would have befallen them had they returned, and therefore being every way beset with danger they resolutely marched forward, either to find relief or to end their days in misery. But contrary to their expectation, after two dayes hard marching they came into a plentiful Countrey stored with all man-

ner of Provisions which did not a little revive them, being before even at the point to perish, after which having most of the Cities of *Sirvan* yielded to him, he put Garrisons therein and furnishing them with all necessaries at the importunity of his Souldiers resolved to return home and so passing through the Countrey of Prince *Alessander*, where he revictualled and relieved the Garrison of *Testis*, who through Famine were reduced to such necessity, that no unclean thing was left uneaten, and so passing through the straits of the rough Mountains, where he lost a number of his people, he at length arrived at *Erzurum* where without any muster he discharged his Army; thereby to hide the great loss he had sustained from the knowledge of *Amurath*, and forgot not by Letters to magnifie his own exploits; sending withal the two *Georgian* Princes who had submitted themselves, with Letters of recommendation to *Amurath*.

It was not long after the departure of *Mustapha*, but the *Tartars* in confederacy with the Turks, having left the Fens of *Mæris*, and the unmountable shoars of the Black Sea, passing over the Rocks upon *Colchis*, and the frozen crags of the Mountain *Caucasus*, entered *Sirvan* with an Army of 30000 Horse, under the leading of *Abdilcherai*, who no less terrified the *Persians* then had the *Turks*, but after the taking of many Cities, and ranging about the Country for prey, as one day they lay dispersed in a Valley near to *E'res*, *Emire Hamze Mirize* Eldest Son to *Mahomet* the *Persian* Sophy, came upon them unawares with 12000 Horsemen, and ere they could put themselves in a posture of defence, slew 15000 of them and took almost all the rest Prisoners, and amongst them *Abdilcherai* Son as he pretended himself to the great Cham, who being sent Prisoner to

Cabin the Regal seat of the *Persian Sophy*, so won upon the favour of the King and Queen, but specially of the latter, who was said to be more prodigal of her favours towards him then stood with her honour, and at the same time *Mahomet* intending to match him to his Daughter, thereby to procure the Friendship of the great *Tartarian Cham*: it so far moved the *Sultans* or great men of the Court with envy that they slew him in the Palace, and at the same time as many reported strangled the Queen, whom they found over familiar with him in his Chamber, but whether so or not certain it is she was never afterwards seen.

The *Tartars* Forces thus destroyed, the Terror of the young *Persian* Prince was so great, that what by Stratagem and plain Force, he wrested out of the Turks hands most of the Cities they had before possessed. Infomuch that (the City of *Derbent* of which *Osman* Bassa was Governour with the title of Vizar of *Sirman* excepted) the Turks were driven out of all their strong places, nor was it long ere the *Persian Sophy* practised with *Shahamel*, Lord of the Mountain of *Brius*, whose Daughter *Osman* had married to betray him and the City into his power, for that he was the onely man amongst the *Georgians* whom *Osman* trusted, who won by the great promises of the *Sophy*, without any respect to the Turk as he was his Son-in-Law, undertook to gratifie him in his desire, but he carried not the matter so close but his Daughter understanding what that passed, and more studious for the preservation of her Husband, than furthering her Fathers purpose, she still revealed all she knew; which so inwardly perplexed *Osman* that he resolved to prevent the Treachery of his Father-in-law by taking him out of the way, whereupon as his usual manner was inviting him to a

solemn Feast with a cheariul countenance he commanded 500 of his Soldiers to be in a readines, and that as soon as *Sahamel* was entered the Court off his Pallace to seize him, and after having cut of his Head to put all his followers to the Sword, which was accordingly put in execution, and not so contented, he sent out 2000 Horsemen to spoil his Countrey, to the great astonishment of all the neighbouring Princes, but to the exceeding grief of the *Sophy* who found his hopes frustrated by the death of *Sahamel*.

The year following, viz. 1578. *Amurath* calling to him his Bassa's, consulted what was further to be done in relation to the *Persian* War; when after a long debate, it was upon mature deliberation resolved that it was a matter of dangerous consequence to send an Army into the heart of *Persia*, where they should not only have a fierce Enemy to deal with, but likewise many other difficulties, as hunger, overflowing of Rivers, passing craggy Mountains and the like: But that it was therefore necessary, that by degrees they should pass conquering on from the Borders still securing all at their backs, the care of managing which being referred to *Musapha*, he sent into all the Hereditary Countries of the Empire, commanding the respective Governours to send him store of Pioners, and men skilled in Architect, as likewise a great number of the most expert Souldiers, but especially those that had been disbanded the year before, upon notice of which great multitudes flocked to the service, who early in the Spring met at *Erzurum*, from whence they marched under the command of the Bassa to *Chars*, a City on the Frontiers of *Sirnan*, which in the late War had been demolished; yet now again Rebuilt and Fortified within the space of 23 days, notwithstanding

standing the abundance of Snow that fell during their labouring therein, the which was no sooner finished but news came that the strong Castle of *Teflis* was besieged by the *Persians*, who had reduced the Garrison to so great a straight that through Famine, they would be obliged to yield up the place if they were not speedily relieved. Upon which in great perplexity he sent *Hassan* Bassa, Son to *Mahomet* Principal Vizar of the Court, and *Resuan* Captain of the Adventurers with 20000 Horse and Foot, furnished with Provisions and others Neccessaries for the relief of the Besieged, who passing the straits of *Tomanis*, were set upon by 8000 *Persians* under the leading of *Aliculi Cham* and *Simon* two expert Captains, who in those intricate mazes slew many of them, and took considerable spoil, which so heightened them that within a while after setting upon the Turks, and thinking to have the like advantage fell into their Ambush, so that most of the *Persians* fell by the Sword or were taken Prisoners, and amongst the latter *Aliculi Cham*; wvvhich gave *Hassan* opportunity to march without further controul to *Teflis*, where through Famine he found half the Garrison lost, yet encouraging them in the best wise, and storing them with all manner of Provision and Warlike Munition, he having at their request displaced *Mahomet* the Governour, and constituted *Amet* Bassa in his stead he was about to return the same way he came, but upon notice that *Simon* had strongly possessed himself of the aforesaid straights, and barrocadoed them with his great Artillery, he was wonderfully perplexed as despairing of his safe return, which *Aliculi* perceiving promised upon consideration that he would release him, to shew him a way both plain and easie, through which he might pass without any danger from the

Persians, whereupon the Bassa swore to perform what he requested; but afterwards, as is very usual amongst those Infidels revoked his Oath excusing himself, by saying, it was not in his power to release any Prisoner taken in War without the consent of his General: of which perfidious dealing *Simon* having notice, who before in consideration of the delivery of *Aliculi* had winked at their passage, he with his Light-Horsemen pursued hard after them, when overtaking the Rear he charged them with such fury, that in great confusion they fled. In which flight a great number were slain and taken Prisoners with a great booty, especially the Treasure of the Bassa, and of *Resvan* Captain of the Adventurers, which loss so sensibly afflicted *Mustapha* that upon notice thereof he broke up his Army, not thinking it convenient to attempt any thing further that year, and soon after he being discharged of his Generalship was called home, where upon his arrival at Court, he was accused by *Sinan* Bassa, for neglecting the Emperours affairs, wasting his Treasure in unnecessary buildings, and rather giving the Enemy cause to contemn the Ottoman Forces, then to fear their Prowess.

These and many other such like complaints being exhibited against him so incensed *Amurath*, that he resolved he should be strangled; in order to which he sent his chief Gentleman Porter, attended on by fifteen others to the Bassas Pallace, but the crafty old blade being forewarned of what was intended against him, caused himself for a long time to be denied, but when the messengers impatient of delay, urged that he must and should render obedience to the Emperours warrant (which they then produced) they were admitted to his presence, but frustrated of

of their design, by a Guard that inclosed the Bassa with weapons, forbidding any access further then a circle made for that purpose, which they perceiving, thought it no time to put their design in practice, but rather to intreat him by fair means to come to Court, which he refusing, they presented him one of the Emperors Letters, in which he commanded him that if he would not come in person, yet to send his Chancellor and Treasurer, to give up their accounts, and to answer to the accusation against him and them, to which he consented, upon promise that they should not be prejudiced thereby, yet upon their arrival they were sent prisoners to the Tower called *Jadicula*, but by the Mediation of certain Great Ladies of the Court, bribed with Jewels of Extraordinary price, the Bassas peace being made, and he coming into the Emperors presence, all was blown over, and his two Ministers set at liberty, without any further examination.

During these passages the Great Vizar Bassa *Muhamet* was stabb'd in the *Divano* by a private Souldier, whom he had bereaved of his Pension, got at the price of his long service in the wars, for which the said souldier was put to death with most exquisite Torments, in whose place *Mustapha* Bassa laboured to be chosen as his right by course, but *Amurath* inwardly displeased with his proceedings, rejected his sute, and sent the seal to *Sivan* Bassa, whom he also made General for the *Persian* war, who preparing a great Army marched to the Frontiers, and there expected the success of *Maxut Chan* the *Persian* Ambassador then arrived at *Constantinople* to sue for peace, but not obtaining his desire on such Articles as he insisted on, both Potentates prepared for a resolute and vigorous war, the one to offend, and the other to defend, during which time *Mustapha* Bassa dyed at *Constantinople*.

stantinople, supposed either to have been poysoned by the command of *Amurath*, or else that to prevent the fate of strangling he had poysoned himself.

The *Persian* Ambassador being returned to his Master, and giving him to understand that there was no peace to be had with the Turk unless he would peaceably deliver into his possession the Country of *Siruan*, and that himself being taken for a Spye in the Turkish Court, was glad to give *Amurath* great hopes of obtaining his desire, to prevent death or imprisonment, yet that it remained at the pleasure of the King whether he would stand to any thing that had been by him proposed; for which good service of *Mexut Chau* the *Sophy* made him Great Treasurer of *Tauris*, which at that time was Governed by *Emir Chau* his mortal enemy, who fought by all the means he could to destroy him; wherefore declining to go thither in person, he officiated his Office by his Deputy, of which *Emir* taking hold of as a fit opportunity to work his destruction, secretly induced the *Sophy* to believe that he held secret correspondence with the Turks, and for that reason lay hovering on the Frontiers, placing a base fellow as his Deputy to officiate so great a Trust which was not a little dishonour to the Majesty of the *Persian* King; whereupon the *Sophy* gave him power to seize *Mexut Chau* and most of his principal servants, and by Torture to wring out of them the truth of the matter.

Glad was *Emir* to have so fair an opportunity to destroy *Mexut*, and thereupon without further delay sent fifteen stout fellows to *Cassangich Mexut* place of abode to fetch him and his servants by force, who arriving there, and having admittance to his presence, he promised to go with them, and gave to each of them a present, ordering his Steward to make

make them merry, whilst he prepared himself to accompany them to their Lord *Emir*, but with secret command to make them drunk, which his Steward so suddenly effected, that within an hours space they fell fast asleep, which *Maxut* perceiving, fast bound them with ropes, and throwing them into a deep well, with all his family fled to the *Turkish Bassa*, then with his Army on the Frontiers, who upon notice of what had happened kindly received him.

Sivan Bassa having stayed at *Chars* with the Turkish Army eight dayes, he by easie marches came to *Teflis*, having by the way lost many of his Forragers cut off by the *Georgian* Horsemen, but arriving at the place aforesaid he was recruited out of *Syria* and *Judea*, and having distributed part of his Treasure amongst the Souldiers, and set all things in order, he with his Army departed thence ; when passing the Strait of *Tomanis*, he had notice from *Mustassad* (afterwards Governor of *Aleppo*) that not far distant on the right hand, were several fields of standing Corn and Herds of Cattle grazing slenderly guarded, which the Bassa induced to believe, sent the said *Mustassad* with a strong power to seize upon that booty, of which his Army stood so much in need, but they were no sooner within danger, but the *Persians* and *Georgians* burst out upon them in great numbers, putting them on every side to flight, whom they pursued so fiercely that seven thousand of them were slain, many taken Prisoners, and all their Cammels and other beasts of burthen taken, of which *Sivan*, having notice, in a great rage dispatched the Bassa of *Caramania*, with twenty thousand horse and foot to pursue the *Persians*, after whom himself followed with the whole Army, but too late, for that perceiving from a high mountain what was intended had withdrawn themselves,

yet

yet some straglers fell into the Turks hands, part of whom they slew, and part they saved alive; yet the Turks holding on their way came to *Triala*, where they understood that the *Persian* King being departed from *Tauris*, was coming against them with a great Army, resolving to give them battle, upon which *Sivan* gave strict command throughout his Army, that every man on pain of death should be in a readiness to March, he resolving to meet the King on his way; after which he descended into the large Plains of *Chielder*, where a former battle had been fought between the *Turks* and the *Persians*, where not hearing of the Kings approach, after having mustered his Army, he resolved to March to *Tauris* to enrich himself with the spoiles of that City, but by the way under pretence of trying his men, he caused a counterfeit battle to be fought amongst his own Souldiers, as in case of a General muster, which ever after rendred him a by-word to his Souldiers, and loytering in the aforesaid plains for the space of eight dayes; in the mean space *Aider* the *Aga* as an Ambassador from the *Persian* King came to his Camp, offering in the name of his Master such proposals as *Maxut* had before done at *Constantinople*, which were that *Chars* and *Teflis* should be quietly possessed of the *Turks*, that so a good correspondence might be continued between the Subjects of both Potentates, for accomplishing of this desired peace, *Sinan* promised to deal with *Amurath*, provided the *Persian* would send an Ambassador to *Constantinople*, which being resolved on, the proud Bassa returned to *Chars*, and from thence departed to *Erizirum*, where he dismissed his Army, having done nothing worthy the name of a General.

In the year 1581 *Amurath* caused his son *Mahomet* to be circumcised after the Hebrew manner; in honour

nour of which solemnity he made a feast which continued with shews and sports, for the space of forty days, where all, or most of the Christian and *Mahometan* Princes Ambassadors were present; and amongst them the Ambassador of *Persia*, whom *Amurath* (after suffering many affronts to be put upon him) caused to be imprisoned with all his Retinue, so straightly, that though one hundred of his servants dyed of the Plague, yet much adoe had he to get himself removed to *Erzurum*. This hard handling of the Ambassador made the conceived hopes of Peace to vanish, insomuch that either Potentate prepared for war, when as *Amurath* not well liking the proceedings of *Sivan*, constituted *Mahomet Bassa*, nephew to *Mustapha Bassa* deceased, which choice *Sivan* greatly inveighed against, though all in vain; for early in the spring, he taking charge of the Army designed for the *Persian* war, departed from *Erzurum* accompanied with the Bassa of *Caramite*, carrying with him great store of provision, and a huge mass of mony, but such was his bad fortune that in his way to *Teflis*, passing a River his Army was routed by the *Persians* and *Georgians*, and most of his best Souldiers slain or taken prisoners, a great part of the mony and provision, fell likewise into the hands of the enemy; so that not having sufficient to relieve the Garison, hardly oppressed by famine, he had much adoe to perswade the Souldiers to continue in it, and exceedingly to straighten his discomfited Army to supply that place with mony and provision; all which calamity being supposed to happen by the Sinister Council of one *Mustapha* a Renegade *Georgian*, then in the Turks Camp, who was more then suspected to hold correspondence with his Country; wherefore *Mahomet* with other his trusty Counsellors resolved his death, whereupon he called a Council in his own Pavillion, pre-
tending

tending letters of instruction from the Emperor, and secretly gave order that upon the coming of *Mustapha*, whilst the Letters were in reading, the Janizaries should cut off his head, but the *Georgian* having notice, chose out fifty of his faithful followers, and imparting to them what was intended, commanded them to be near at hand and at the first call to enter the Pavillion, where if they perceived any violence used towards his person, they should not spare the General himself. Matters being brought to this pass, and *Mustapha* entred the Pavillion of the Bassa, the counterfeited Letters were ordered to be read, which done, and the *Georgian* about to depart, promising to perform what ever the King should command, *Capagi Bassa Mahomets* Great usher, came to him and plucking him by the sleeve, would have forced him to have sat down, which he perceiving, and knowing his life was in danger, drew his sword, and struck *Mahomets* Lieutenant so forcibly on the head, that he clove him to the stomach, then reversing his blow, wounded the *Bassa* of *Caramite*, as likewise many others, and had killed the General himself, had not the uproar caused many to enter the Pavillion, and amongst others his fifty followers, who carryed him in safety to his Tent. This action caused grievous complaints to be sent to *Amurath* from either party, whereby he understanding the evil state of his affairs in those Parts, exceedingly blamed his *Bassa's* for pushing on into such a dangerous war, and in a rage thrust *Sivan Bassa* from his Vizarship, placing *Sciam Bassa* (a *Hungarian* born, and to whom he had married his sister) in his stead.

The Turks affairs being at this pass *Anno* 1582, they had small mind to proceed in their war against the *Persians*, nor was the *Persian* King less desirous to be

be rid of so troublesome a guest, that he might be the better at leasure to suppress the Rebellion raised by his Son *Abas Mirize*, who countenanced by the chief of the *Sultans*, had seized upon many strong places, and was now Fortifying himself in *Ateri*, whither his father passed with a great Army by the way, recovering such Towns as had revolted from his obedience, and putting such of the Traitors as he found therein to death; but coming before the City, the young Prince wrote such submissive Letters to his father and elder brother, then in his fathers Camp, that the old man was well content, that he should by his Ambassadors be admitted to purge himself of such crimes as were laid to his charge, which he did so effectually that the whole matter appearing to be framed and contrived by *Mirize Sulmos*, who notwithstanding had perswaded the King to make that Expedition against his Son that he might advantage himself by being made General of the Army; to put an end to further differences the said *Mirize Sulmus* was by the Kings command beheaded, as being indeed the Author of those intestine troubles.

These things thus disposed, the *Sophy* was now at leasure to oppose the invading Turks, wherefore gathering a great Army he striped them out of many of their holds, which so enraged *Amurath* that appointing *Ferat Bassa* his General, whom with full instructions he dismissed with a great Army, with which having roamed about *Sirnan* and *Georgia* all Summer, Anno 1583. with the loss of many of his men, and the revolt of *Mustaffa*, he in September returned to *Erzurum* having done nothing more, then destroyed the Countrey of *Mustaffa*, and relieved *Teflis*.

The following year the *Persian* King resolving to drive

drive the Turks out of his Countrey, raised a great Army, and encamped in the Plains before the City of *Tauris*, of which *Ferat* having notice would not depart from *Erzurum* before he had sent to *Amurath* to have his opinion therein, who sent him an express to relieve if possible the Garrison of *Teflis* with a small power to oppose the rest of the Army against the Enemy, whereupon he resolved to put in practice the pleasure of his Lord. In order to which the better to secure the passage or strait of *Tomanis*, he built a Castle in the enterance thereof 1700 yards in compass, furnishing it with all necessities, and then sent a detachment of 20000 Horse and Foot, under the leading of *Resuan* Bassa for the releif of *Teflis*, but fearing that power not sufficient sent others after him, under the leading of the Bassa of *Caramite*, of which *Simon* the Georgian Prince having notice yet deceived in their number, hastened over the Countrey by short cuts to give them Battle, which he was the readier to do because he at first discovered no more then 6000 Turks, the rest lying behind a Hill, but Battle once joyned they came down upon him like a Tempest, and so oppressed his small number not exceeding 4000, who yet fought desperately, that he and all his men had been slain, had not the other Turks sent by *Ferat* to strengthen *Resuan*, appeared upon the Hills at a distance, whom those Turks that were fighting supposed to be *Persians*, and by that means not daring to pursue the retiring *Georgians* for fear of being drawn into an Ambush, they easily found means to escape, and the Bassa the like, to relieve *Teflis*, and with the same facility to return to the Camp which by this time began to be sorely oppressed with Famine, insomuch that a bushel of Wheat was sold for 100 Ducates, which caused the Camp to rise, and march

march towards the Countrey of *Mustaffa*, formerly called *Manucchiâr* the *Georgian* Prince who now revolting from the *Turks* took part with the other *Georgian* Princes, but the many difficulties being apparent to the *Soldiers* by reason of the advancement of the Season, they flatly denyed to obey his command threatening him with great mischief if he did not speedily return to *Erzurum*, nor did they forbear to assault him in his Tent threatening him with present death, if he continued to expose them to the miseries of Hunger and Cold, which so that finding no means to restrain their insolency, or to quiet their continual clamours, but a speedy return to *Erzurum*, he was forced to yield to their requests where arriving after a tedious march wherein he lost many of his best Souldiers, he broke up the Army. The *Persian* King hovering about *Tauris*, and having notice of all that had passed, sent away a great part of his Army, and forasmuch as *Emir Cham* Governour of that City had neglected to oppose the *Turks* during their building several strong Fortresses to keep the passages of the straits, nor assisted him as he ought, he caused his Eyes to be put out and himself to be cast into prison (where shortly after he died of grief) and made *Aliculî Cham* who a little before had escaped from the *Turks* Camp Governour in his stead.

About this time the League between *Amurath* and *Rodolphus* the *German* Emperour, by reason of some Hostilities committed between their Subjects, had like to have ended; but upon more mature consideration of what had passed, and reparation on the part of the Aggressors for dammages sustained, it was again renewed for the space of 8 years, after which *Ferat Bassa* upon the complaint of the great Captains falling into disgrace with *Amurath* he

was

was deposed from his trust of General, and *Osman* Bassa Governour of *Sirvan* (who for his many victories over the *Tartars* was become famous) appointed General in his stead, and made chief Vizar; (The greatest honour that can be conferred on any person by the *Ottoman* Emperors.) And now *Ammarah* casting in his mind the subduing of *Tauris*, caused a great Army to be raised, and the better to make the *Persian* neglect the Fortifying of that City, caused it to be bruted that he intended to invade *Nassivan*; but whilst these preparations were intended against the *Persians*, the Villany of a *Venetian* Captain had gone near to turn them upon the Christian, the manner thus. The Widow of *Ramadan* Bassa late Governour of *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, with her Children and Servant being imbarqued in three Gallies, in order to their being transported to *Constantinople*, sailing by the mouth of the *Adriatick* were by contrary Winds driven into the Gulf where, *Petrus Emunius* a *Venetian* Captain, of the order of the Senators, lying with certain Gallies set upon those before mentioned and boarded them, where he exercised most barbarous cruelty, as well upon the Women as the Men. For having slain the Mariners in number 250, and the Son of *Ramadan*, a Child in his Mothers lap, he caused the Women first to be Ravished, and then having their Breasts cut off to be cast into the Sea; nor did he exercise this cruelty upon the Turks onely, but upon such Christians likewise as he found on board, using such barbarity as was thought to prevent the discovery of the great Riches he found in those Gallies. Yet was it afterwards made manifest by one of the Turks, who during the slaughter had hid himself in the hold, and was afterwards saved by a *Cretian*, who had in like manner been formerly preserved by the
said

said Turk, who coming to *Constantinople* declared what had happened, which so enraged *Amurath* that he sent to the *Venetians* speedily to make reparation or to expect their Frontiers to be invaded. To which the Senators answered, they were altogether ignorant of what had happened, but if so as the Messengers related, upon enquiry, reparation should be made, which being found according to the relation of the Turks, they caused *Emus* to be beheaded, the Gally to be restored, and to supply the loss of the slaves delivered them a like number of Turks and Moors, which for that time appeased the indignation of *Amurath*.

Amurath anno 1585. having constituted *Hassan* Bassa the Queens Eunuch Governour of *Caire*, afterwards casting his Eyes upon *Ebraim* Bassa, a *Sclavonian* about 23 years of Age, resolved to make him his Son-in-law, and to raise him to a condition worthy so great an honour as to marry the Daughter of an Emperour, he made him sovereign Judge of *Egypt*, of which *Hassan* having notice, and by reason of the suddain advancement of *Ebraim*, doubting his safety fled to *Constantinople*, and fell at the Emperours feet, desiring to know what crime he had committed to have a Master so suddainly set over him, but had no other answer then that he must to Prison, where after he had continued a long time still expecting the fatal hour, he was at the earnest intercession of the Empress, and the great Ladies of the Court set at Liberty, but all his riches seized and converted to the Emperours use.

Ebraim being settled in his Government of *Egypt*, by extorting great summs of money from the *Egyptians* and other people subject to his rule, in a short time heaped up great Riches, when at the end of three years *Amurath* sent for him to *Constantinople*,

to Celebrate the intended Marriage, charging him withal to pass through the Countrey of the *Drusians*, a people inhabiting a large Countrey invironed with *Toppa*, *Casaria*, *Palestina*, and within the Rivers *Orantes* and *Jordan*, stretching it self even to the Plains of *Damasco* near to the Hills that compass it about, upon the Coast of Mount *Libanus*, and are said to be the race of those Christians that seated themselves there in the time that the Princes of the West sent their Armies to subdue the Holy Land, but have since bin perverted to the *Mahometan* Superstition, and at the coming of *Ebraim* into those parts with his Army, they were divided under many Princes of which these were the chief, viz. *Ebne Man*, of the Turks called *man Ogli*, *Serafadin*, *Mahamet Ebne-Mansur*, *Eben Frec*, and *Ali Ebne-Carfus*, by the Turks called *Ali Carfus-Ogli*, under whom were divers Lieutenants called their *Macademi* or *Agents*, all of which except *Eben Man Ogli*, upon the arrival of the *Bassa* sent him rich Presents; whereupon he entering the Countrey of the said *Ogli* wasted it with Fire and Sword, which made the rest of the Princes exceeding angry, and underhand to send aid to their Compere, with which incamping himself advantagiously, he fell upon *Veis Bassa* who lead a part of the Turks Army and discomfited him, putting 500 of his Men to the Sword, and carrying away a rich booty, which so intraged *Ebraim* that he used his utmost diligence to intrap the aforesaid Prince, but finding no means to effect the same, he began with fair Promises and Presents, to corrupt his *Macademes*, one of which together with 300 *Drusians*, he got into his power, whom in revenge of *Veis* his overthrow he caused to be flead alive, and all his followers slain, and again raged with Fire and Sword throughout the Countrey, when after-

afterward by dissimulation and feigned Friendship, he got *Eben Mansur* into his power, whom he caused to be fast chained and sent to the Gallies, after which he took the spoil of his Countrey, and afterward with a great Booty returned to *Constantinople*, where he was in triumph received by his Friends, amongst whom he bestowed Liberally the spoils taken from the *Drusians*, even to the value of one Million of Ducates, and 200000 Sultanies. But upon his departure out of the *Drusians* Countrey, they joyning with the *Arabian* to revenge the injuries themselves sustained, entered the Turks Confines and committed many outrages, burning and destroying all before them, not in their anger sparing Man, Woman or Child, passing on even to the Gates of *Jerusalem*, being assisted covertly by the Sub-Bassa of *Bethlehem*, who displeased with the rule of *Ebraim*, watched his opportunity to revolt to the Enemy, but was prevented by being slain, alive at the Commandment of one of the *Sanzaks* of Jury.

Whilst affairs stood thus in *Egypt* and the *Drusians* Land, *Osman* had compleated his Army at *Erzurum*, which upon Muster was found to consist of 180000 choice Souldiers, with which on the 11th. of *August* 1585. he marched toward *Tauris* keeping on his way till he came into the vast *Chalderan*, memorable for many Battles fought therein between the Turks and *Persians*, where straitned for want the Soldiers mutined against him, upbraiding him with many reproachful words, and threatening him with death, for that as they said contrary to his promise he had drawn them into a place of danger to become a prey to the Enemy; at which the Bassa being much perplexed sent for the Captain, and by telling them it was the Sultans expresse Command, and that he did not in the least doubt but to become victorious,

and therefore prayed them to rest contented, and not Eclipse their honour by their civil dissensions amongst themselves, which would rather give the Enemy advantage against them than any thing else, and that if it was given out upon the raising the Army, that it was intended for *Nassivan*, that specious pretence was as he said to render the *Persian* more secure, and thereby to hinder his great preparations. These and such like speeches, together with a small distribution of money calmed the Tempest the Mutiners had raised, and thereupon the Army rising passed on towards *Cay*, from thence to *Marant* a City Subject to the *Persians*, and so keeping their way came within sight of *Tauris* the mark at which they aimed, upon which proposing to themselves a kind of security, the Van of the Army fell to spoiling the Countrey, and seizing upon what best liked them, keeping little or no order in their March, of which *Emir Hamze* King *Mahomet's* Eldest Son perceiving, with 10000 Horsemen lay in Ambush in a way where they must pass, and having got them within his danger, burst out upon them with such fury that he overrun that part of the Army, put 7000 to the Sword, and carrying away a number of Prisoners, and so with great spoil retired ere the gross of the Turks Army could come up. Yet *Osman* upon notice of what had happened, sent *Mahomet* Bassa and the Bassa of *Caramite* after him, the victorious Prince with 14 Horse and Foot, who by speedy Marches overtaking him had with him a bloody conflict, in which 6000 Turks were slain, nor had any escaped had not the darkness of the night caused the retreat on both sides to be founded.

The next Morning the Turks Camp removed, and came within two Miles of *Tauris*, where *Aliculi Chan* of whom I have before spoken was Governour,

who

who desirous to revenge himself upon the perfidious Turks issued out of the City with about 6000 resolute *Persians*, and charging those that were advanced beat them back into their Trenches with great slaughter, but upon the opening the Tires of Ordnance, and advancing of the *Janizaries*, finding himself not capable of incountring such a multitude he retired into the City, after whom the Turks in a confused manner pressed, but in the enterance so strongly resisted, that the passages were filled with their dead carcases, and all the Ditches swum with their blood, but fresh supplies coming on and the City Walls no way built for defence, badly furnished with Defendants, and worse with Ordnance, at length the Turks entered, spoiling with incredible barbarity that great City the Regal seat of the *Persian Kings*. Yet such compassion wrought in the breast of *Osman* the General, that he caused Proclamation to be made, that upon pain of death none should kill any that made not resistance, and when the tumult was over came himself to take a view thereof, and gave Orders for its Fortification, sending out partys daily to reduce the other places adjacent to the Turkish obedience, and so speedy were they in Fortifying, that within the space of 36 days a strong Castle was erected.

Five dayes after the building of the new Castle was began, even when the *Taurisians* thought themselves secure, news was brought into the Turkish Camp that 8 *Janizaries* and divers *Spaoglians* were seen strangled in a Bath, within the City of *Tauris*, whereupon the *Zani Spahini* and *Janizaries* in a great rage went to the Generals Pavilion, telling him that although he had with too much clemency given Order that none should molest or hurt the *Taurisians*, and that according to his pleasure every

man had used his modesty towards them, and obedience to him, yet the *Taurisians* themselves had most audaciously strangled several *Janizaries* and *Spagolians*, which injury and insolency they said was not to be suffered. This outrage (whether true or only raised by such as desired to satisfy their inordinate lusts, is uncertain) so moved the Bassa, that without any further delay he commanded the City to be sacked, leaving it wholly to the discretion of the Souldiers, who like hell-hounds greedy of blood run with full cry into the City, filling every place with slaughter of the amazed *Taurisians*, Matrons were Ravished, Virgins deflowered, young Children dashed against the pavement, houses fired, and other outrages committed that are commonly attendants upon such General calamities; so that it was a misery almost inexplicable to behold that City so populous, so rich, honoured with the Palace of the *Persian* Kings, now subject to the fury of the Turks plunged in calamity and utter destruction.

The outrages committed in *Tauris* coming to the knowledge of the *Persian* King he was greatly offended, insomuch that he resolved with the hazard of a Battle, to revenge the indignity, of whose approach *Osman* who then lay sick in his Pavilion having notice, Command *Sinan* Bassa and *Mahumet* Bassa should with all the Greek Soldiers, and others, to the number of 74000 should go out and meet the Enemy, who by the craft of the forerunners of his Army drawing the Turks within his strengths, had with them there a mortal Battle, wherein 10000 of their Souldiers were slain, and the two Bassa's in great confusion obliged to fly to the Camp, leaving most of their Insigns, and all their baggage as a prey to the *Persians*: who hightened with this success advanced within sight of the Turks Camp send-

ing

ing a Herauld to the sick General to demand of him Battle, of which accepting though not able to be there present, when as Battle being joyned, after a long and doubtful fight victory inclined to the *Persians*, who in the end slew 20000 of the Turks, and amongst the rest the Bassa's of *Caramite* and *Trepézond*, the *Sanzack* of *Brusia*, with five other *Sanzacks*, and among the Prisoners were taken, *Amurath* Bassa of *Caramania*, and divers other of note.

Upon news of this bad success, the General fearing to have his Army wasted to nothing by continual skirmishes in a strange Countrey, having Fortified *Tauris*, and made *Giaffer* Bassa of *Tripolis* Governour, he was about to decamp, when on a suddain the neighing of Horses, the noise of Drums and Trumpets were heard, which putting the Army into a great consternation, and soon caused them in great confusion to run all to that side, where they supposed the noise was, when in the mean while *Emir* the *Persian* Prince on the other side, without any sound of Trumpet, or beat of Drum, with 28000 Souldiers entered their Camp, took 18000 Camels laden, whom he sent away by 6000 of his Souldiers, and then charging furiously upon such as he found, insomuch that after a hard Battle fought 20000 Turks lay scattered on the Plain, many of which were slain by their own Artillery, which by *Osman's* Command being furiously discharged at the Armies, the murdering shot made lanes before them without discerning between Friend and Foe, but night coming on, and the *Persians* weary with slaughter retired, and were for a while faintly pursued by the Turks.

Osman lying all this while sick in his Pavilion, fore afflicted with the Bloody Flux, and hearing

what havock the *Persians* had made died, the grief of so great a loss hastening his end. Yet was his death for a long space kept secret least thereby the Army should be discouraged, which now was returning under the leading of *Sinan* (or *Cicala* as some called him) Bassa, *Osman* in his Will having delivered to him the charge of the whole Army. Yet the *Persian* Prince with 14000 Horse and Foot followed them at the heels, still cutting off the stragglers, and had utterly destroyed them had not his design been discovered, which obliged him to retreat with the loss of 3000 of his Men; so that by long and tedious marches, the Turks wasted Army arriving, the *Van* after the publication of the Generals death were discharged, all but a certain number retained, who under the leading of *Dan Chan* a Renegado *Persian*, were sent to the relief of *Teflis*, which without any loss they performed. Now the Castle built in *Tauris* much grieved the *Persians*, to take which they used their utmost endeavour, but it being strong of it self, and defended by a strong Garrison their attempts proved unsuccessful. When at the same time great mischief arose in the Kingdom of *Persia*, for 10000 *Turcomans* a people bordering upon the *Georgians*, and resolving to revenge themselves for the death of *Emir Chan* offered their service to the *Persian* Sophy, under the leading of their two Captains, *Mahomet Chan* and *Calife Chan*, to whom the Sophy as a pledge of his love and their safety delivered *Tamas* his young Son, whom they had no sooner got into their power but they proclaimed him King of *Persia*, and in all haste marched towards *Casbin* the Regal City in hopes to surprize it, and seat young *Tamas*, on his Fathers Throne of which the Sophy and his eldest Son having notice pursued hard after them

them when overtaking them at a place called *Calisfeza*, a dayes journey on this side *Casbin*, the Prince gave them Battle, and after a dangerous and doubtful conflict put them to flight. In which they being swiftly pursued the two rebellious Captains were taken, and by the Kings Command had their heads stricken off, young *Tamas* being likewise taken was sent Prisoner to the Castle of *Cabaca*, those that escaped the Battle fled to *Solyman* Bassa of *Babylon*, which put an end to the Rebellion.

Giaffer Bassa Governour of *Tauris* after the departure of the Turkish Army understanding that the *Persian* Prince was Levying a great Army to Besiege the City, sent an Express to *Sinon* or *Siculi* Bassa to send him Aid, for the defence of the City and Castle, the which by reason of the flight of some and death of other some of his men, must otherwise fall into the hands of the Enemy: now notwithstanding great preparation for that purpose were made, they could not be put into the City, by reason of the near approach of the *Persian* Army without manifest hazard, of exposing them to the mercy of their Enemies. Yet it so fell out that the Governour without any recruits maintained the City and Castle, the *Persians* not being so urgent for the recovery of the same as was expected.

Upon notice of *Osman*s death, *Amurath* chose *Ferat* Bassa once more his General, who departing from *Constantinople* in the month of *April* 1586, and passed over into *Asia*, where having compleated his Army at *Sinas*, upon notice that *Tauris* was in danger, he marched thitherward, though with great caution the enemy should charge him at unawares, and by reason

reason of the dissensions arisen amongst the *Persian* Captains sent to oppose him, and the Treason of *Aliculican*, now alienated from his Prince, and holding secret correspondence with the *Turkish* General, he without any loss relieved *Tauris*, and having caused a strong Fort to be built at *Churchine*, near unto the said City, and two others at *Coy* and *Carn*, and left therein sufficient Garrisons, and store of provision, he sent succours to *Teflis* in *Georgia*, and so with little or no loss returned to *Erzurum*.

By this time the *Persian* Prince (who and *Mahomet* his father, now grown old, ruled the Kingdom) had notice of the Treason of *Aliculi Chan*, and *E-manguli Chan*, whom he had drawn into his confederacy, he prepared his Forces to march against them, whereupon the latter submitted, and was received into favour, but howsoever it happened, whether with his knowledge or not, the Prince the chief glory of *Persia* sleeping in his Pavilion, was by an Eunuch run through the body, supposed to be done at the instance of *Abas Miriza* his younger brother, to advance whom to the *Persian* Diadem, *Aliculi Chan*, had revolted from the obedience of the *Sophy*, and plotted with the *Turkish* General to betray *Emir Hamzes* the Prince into his hands, whose death so unfortunately happening, caused great miseries to befall the *Persian* State.

Christendom having thus long been Exempted from the fury of the *Turks*, who had their hands full of the *Persian* war, now as it were, destiny so ordering, they having time to breath by reason of the divisions in *Persia*, turned their restless Arms upon *Hungaria*, which storm the Christians perceiving, to hang black over their heads, resolved to provide against it; and therefore to show the Tyrant, that they

they dreaded not his utmost indignation, seized on the Castle of *Coppan* in *Hungary*, not far from the Lake of *Ballaton* over which being hard frozen, they passed undiscovered; to requite which, the Turks drawing five thousand horse out of several Garrisons, entered the Christian Territories, and destroying seventeen Villages, returned laden with great spoils, and many miserable Captives, whereof *George Count Serine Son* to the renowned Count of that name, slain at *Ziget*, having knowledge, raised such Forces as the time would give leave, which exceeded not two thousand, and laying the wayes by which the Turks must pass, encountered them ere they could recover any strong hold, and put most of them to the sword, recovering all the booty and Captives; amongst those that were made prisoners the *Sanzack* of *Quinque Ecclesia*, son to *Haly Bass*, slain in the Battle of *Lepanto*; the *Bassa* of *Ziget*, *Sanzack* of *Koppan*, and divers others, *Sinan Beg Sanzack* of *Mohaz*, endeavouring to escape, and his horse sticking fast, was shot through the head; of the Turks horses were taken, fifteen hundred, and of the Turks five hundred, besides three thousand slain. This bad beginning so discouraged *Amurath*, that in a rage he caused the *Bassa* of *Buda* to be strangled, for that he had began the hostilities in *Hungary*, and by that means violated the League between him and the Emperor; at what time a great fire happened at *Constantinople*, which consumed seven Temples, twenty five great Inns, and fifteen thousand houses, with their warehouses and shops, kindled as was supposed by the Janizaries a little before, in a tumult for want of their pay, due since their last *Persian Expedition*; which was the rather believed, for that it being their duty to endeavour the extinguishing any fire that should happen in the Imperial

perial City; They not only refused to put their hands thereto themselves but hindred such as attempted it.

These things hapning in *Anno* 1587 and 1588, the year following to prevent tumults which are usual where the souldiers are unimployed in the wars, the new Bassa of *Buda*, with *Amuraths* good liking, having drawn to him a strong power, invaded the upper *Hungary*, but being encountered by *Claudius Rufsel*, General of the Christians in those parts, he received a great overthrow, three thousand of his Turks being slain and drowned in the River *Scago*; upon which the General pursuing his good fortune, broke into the Turks Territories, and took from them the Castles of *Blavestine*, *Gestes*, and several Forts in the upper *Hungary*; upon which *Sinan* Bassa of *Buda* was called home, and *Ferat* the late General against the *Persians* appointed Bassa in his stead.

Amurath having not a little been terrified with the great preparations of King *Phillip* of *Spain*, in 1588, wherewith he invaded *England*, and now understanding that he had received a fearfull overthrow, with the loss of thirteen thousand of his Marriners and Souldiers, and most of his ships and Gallies; he sent a Letter to Queen *Elizabeth* to congratulate her happy victory, and to intreat her not upon any terms to make peace with the *Spaniard*, in which Letter he stiles her the most honourable Matron of the Christian Religion, Mirror of Chastity, adorned with the brightness of Soveraignty, and power amongst the most chief women of the people, which serve Jesus, Mistris of great Kingdoms, reputed of Greatest Majesty and Praise amongst the *Nazarites*; *Elizabeth* Queen of *England*.

Anno 1590 the *Tartars* having broken into the confines of *Polonia*, and taken a rich booty, were driven out by the *Cossacks*, who making of them great slaughter, recovered all, which *Amurath* taking in evil part as done to his confederates, but indeed seeking occasion to war upon the Christians, that had not the Queen of *Englands* mediation prevented it, he had turned his Arms upon *Polonia*; yet impatient of Peace he called his Bassas to consult what war was most expedient to be taken in hand, amongst whom there were eight sundry opinions, whereof the first was that the wars against the *Persians* should be renewed, the second for the Invasion of the Kingdoms of *Fess* and *Morocco*, the third was for a war to be taken in hand against the King of *Spain*, The fourth for the besieging of *Malta*, The fifth, to war upon the *Venetians*, The sixth to invade *Italy*, the seventh, to war upon *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, The eighth and last to invade the Territories of *Rodolphus* the Emperor; all which being patiently heard by *Amurath*, with the sundry reasons of the Bassas: at length, the eighth opinion was confirmed, and the Tyrant resolved once more to turn his Forces towards the West. Whereupon he caused great preparations to be made, resolving if possible to annex the remaining part of *Hungary* and *Austria*, to his other Territories, having by this time and for this purpose concluded a war with the *Persian* King, wherefore he commanded his Garrisons on the Frontiers as they saw occasion to molest the Christian Frontiers, with fire and sword, which they letted not to do, prone enough of themselves to act any great wickedness, nor was it long e'r they surprized *Willitz* the Metropolis of *Croatia*, and committed therein many outrages, and their Army still increas- ing, they upon an unexpected advantage inclosed

6000 Foot, and 500 Horse of the Christians (who had taken the Mountaines, Woods and Straight passages, and so hardly beset them that few of them escaped; those that were slain the Turks cut off their heads and therewith loaded six Waggon.

Upon this Alarum the Christians drew forth their Armies, and to put a stop to the Infidels, who by reason of the unexpected breach of the League had seized upon many Castles and Strong holds, in that security unprovided of such necessaries as would have rendered them impregnable, and least *Amurath* should alledge that those Hostilities were committed without his knowledge, the Emperour sent to him by his Ambassadors to understand the reasons that induced him to break the League, but being able to get no satisfactory answer, he thought it high time to stand upon his guard, and caused all his power joyned with Forces of the *German* Princes to march directly into *Hungary*, under the Command of *Rupertus Eggenber* his General, who approaching the Enemy consulted with his chief Commanders what was best to be done, who were all of opinion that to give speedy Battle was most convenient, thereby to prevent the Enemies for joyning the other Forces, coming to their Aid, so that upon a sign given the whole Army (in number 40000) forthwith removed and with great speed hastened toward the Turks, of which they having notice by their Espials, put themselves in Battle Array, and after their vain glorious manner dreamt of nothing but the spoil of the Christians, whom they already concluded overthrown by reason of the disproportion of number, they being indeed much inferiour in that nature to the Infidels. Yet had the Emperours General so ordered his Battles, that placing the *Crotians* and *Hassars* in the Vant-guard;

guard, those of *Carolstat* and the *Harquibnsires* of *Ke-*
rona in the Left wing. In the Right the Borderers of
Carania all Horsemen in the main Battle, the rest of
the Souldiers with the Horsemen of *Silesia*, under
the conduct of *Sigismund Paradise*, the Rereward
was incompassed with three Companies of the Em-
perours Souldiers, nor were the Turk idle but
Marshalled their Battle in the best wise, when as
the Charge being sounded the *Crotians* and *Hussars*
in the Vaunt-gard gave the first onset with such fury,
that being seconded by the Lord *Anersburgh*, they
after a cruel Fight obliged the Turks to give
ground, and with *Hassan Bassa* their General retire
towards the River *Odder*, after whom the Christi-
ans following furiously many endeavouring to save
themselves by passing over were drowned, and
those that stayed in a fearful manner on the Banks
overwhelmed by the continual Tempest of shot,
from the Flankers, so that within three hours space
all the Army was in a confusion, every man seeking
for his own safety, insomuch that 18000 Turks pe-
rished, either by the Sword, or in the Rivers *Odder*
and *Kulp*, and amongst the rest *Hassan Bassa*, *Ma-*
homet Beg, *Achmet Beg*, *Saffer Beg*, *Meni Beg*, *Fra-*
matan Beg, *Curti Beg*, *Operd Beg* and *Goschns* the
Bassa's chief *Counselor*, together with *Sinan Beg*, *A-*
muraths Nephew, the onely Son of his Sister, after
which signal victory obtained, the Christian Army
falling on their knees gave Thanks to God, to
whom alone they ascribed their miraculous preser-
vation. The news of which overthrow coming to
the knowledge of *Amurath* he like a frantick man
blasphemed the God of Heaven, and perswaded
thereto by the tears and intreaties of his Sister, to
revenge the death of her Son, sent a proud and
blasphemous denunciation of War to the Emperour
Rodol-

Rodolphus, wherein he stiled himself, *The onely Monarch of the World, a great and mighty God on Earth, an invincible Caesar, King of all Kings from the East unto the West, &c.* and proceeded to threaten the said Emperour and his People, with all the miseries that attend on War, impiously declaring that the Crucified God of the Christians long since dead and buried, had not been able to deliver his own Countrey out of his hands, much less the *German Empire*, which in despite of him he was resolved to take, knowing himself a subverter and sworn Enemy of the Christians, and of all that called upon the name of Christ. And thereupon the more to terrifie the Christians, he sent a great Army under the Command of *Sinan* Bassa their implacable Enemy, who upon his Arrival layed siege to *Ciseg*, which he took putting all he found therein to the Sword, and after that took several other places of lesser note; yet not without considerable loss, and breach of Faith to the besieged, who finding themselves oft too weak to defend places of little strength against so powerful an Enemy, would surrender them upon promise of Life and Liberty, but falling into the hands of the barbarous Infidels seldom obtained either.

These proceedings of the Turks did not a little alarm the Christian Princes, who having mustered 18000 Men under the Command of Count *Hardeck* Governour of *Rab*, he with marching from *Comara* came before *Alba-Regalis*, which by force of his Artillery he in a short time made faultable, to the relief of which the Bassa of *Buda* sent *Sinan* Bassa, with 20000 Horse and Foot, but he being encountered by the Christians was put to flight with the loss of most of his men, whereupon as victors the Christians returned to the siege, but finding the season

son far advanced, and a great number of Turks that escaped in the overthrow to be got into the City, the Count raised his Camp and returned again to *Rab*, but early in the Spring assisted by fresh supplies the Emperours Captains dividing the Army, took the strong Castle of *Sabatza*, the City of *Fileck*, the Towns of *Seeteschin*, *Blanestine*, and *Salleck*, the three latter being through fear abandoned by the Turks, having first set them for the most part on fire. At the same time the Lord *Palsie* with a strong party marching to *Dregel*, and *Palanka* found them likewise abandoned by the Turks, the which having furnished with strong Garrisons of his own he took by force *Ainacke*, *Sellecke*, *Westkee*, and divers other places, so that the Turks were in a manner driven out of the Lower *Hungary*, and new *Buda*, and *Alba-Regalis* the onely Strong holds, possessed by the Turks in those parts began to doubt their security, for whilst a party out of the latter coming forth to bury the dead, that lay scattered round the Walls, and by their contagion infected the City, they were so suddainly incountered by a Captain of the *Hussars*, Commanding a Troop of Light Horsemen, that near 200 of them were slain, and 50 taken Prisoners.

These proceedings coming to the Ears of *Amurath*, and he from all hands certified that the strength of the Christians daily increased, he began to doubt his Empire in *Europe*, and therefore to defend the same raised a puissant Army anno 1594. at the head of which he resolved to march in person, a thing he had not done since his taking upon him the Government, but on the 11th. of *January*, as the Army was upon its march, not far from *Constantinople* such a terrible Tempest of Hail, Rain, Snow, Wind, Thunder and Lightning arose, that by its impetu-

tuosity it overturned the Tents, Chariots, Wagons, Horse and Men, few being able to stand upright before it. The which the Tyrant taking as ominous to his proceedings, in great perplexity returned with his formidable Army to *Constantinople*, where casting himself upon his bed, after much tumbling and tossing, falling asleep he dreamed that he beheld a man of exceeding Stature, standing with one his feet upon the Tower of *Constantinople*, and the other over the straight fixed on the *Asian* shoar, who stretching out his Arms held the Sun in one hand and the Moon in the other, at whom whilst he was wondering the Monster with his foot struck the Tower, which forthwith fell down, and in its fall overthrew the great Temple with the Imperial Palace, whose Thundering awaking the Turk he much troubled with the strangeness of the dream immediately sent for his Necromancers and Wizards to Interpret it, who to curry favour with their Prince hypocritically answered, That for as much as he had not with all his Forces, as with a Tempest impugned the Christians, their great Prophet *Mahomet* threatned by that dream to overturn the Tower, Temple, and Imperial Palace, which by a symbolical meaning denoted the Turkish Religion and Empire: which vain and fictitious Interpretation so moved the superstitious Tyrant, that having first asked pardon of his Impostor Prophet, he swore from henceforth to turn all his Forces upon the Christians, and not to give over War till he had done his utmost to subdue them. These vain threats did not in the least dismay the Christian Princes, yet to engage a sure Friend on their side, they caused publique prayers to be put up in all Churches, and that people might perceive on what slender and impious grounds the Tyrant, had resolved the prosecution of the War, had the vain Dream and the vainer Inter-

Interpretation, read in the Churches of *Transylvania* and most of the Churches of *Hungary*.

The Christian Army having taken the Field, and a Present of the Turks spoiles, taken some time before sent to *Rodolphus* the Emperour, the Arch-Duke of *Austria* besieged *Novograde*, which after several assaults was delivered by capitulation, in consideration of Life and Liberty, which strong Town after it had been Turkish for the space of 60 years, was by the Arch-Duke committed to the care of Lord *Rebei* a Noble *Hungarian*, and the Turkish Governour upon his arrival at *Buda* was by the Bassa's Command imprisoned.

Whilst these things were in doing the Emperour sent his Embassadors to the great Duke of *Muscovy*, the King of *Poland*, and Prince of *Transilvania*, in all whose Courts their Negotiation proved successful, nor in the mean time was the young Count *Serinus* idle, for that he with 300 Harquibusires, and certain Troops of Horse, and Companies to the number of 10000 took the Castles of *Bresenza*, *Sigesta* and *Baboscha*, by the recovery of which strong holds he opened a safe passage even to *Ziget*, the Bassa of which standing at that time in no small doubt to be besieged. These things perplexing the Turkish Tyrant, who was preparing great Forces for the securing his Province on this side the *Danubium*, he in the mean while sent a Fleet into the *Adriatick* to besiege *Zegna*, an Imperial City, situate upon the Sea Coast in the Bay of *Quernero*, called in antient time *Flanaticus Sinus*, in order to the prosecution of which he sent his Ambassador to the *Venetians* to require the use of their Ports in those Seas, and that his Gallies might pass and repass without any molestation from the Gallies of that State, but the Senate doubting the fidelity of the

Turk, and loath thereby to disoblige the Christian Emperour would by no means consent, yet used the Ambassador honourably, and sent him away without obtaining his purpose.

In the Upper part of *Hungaria* the Lord *Tenffenbeck*, Commanding as the Arch-Dukes Lieutenant, with an Army of 20000 Horse and Foot besieged *Hatvan*, a strong Town of the Turks, lying about six miles from *Buda*, Fortified with a Triple Ditch and Bullwarks of exceeding strength, to the relief of which the Bassa of *Buda* came with fifteen thousand Souldiers, thinking at unawares to surprize the Christian Camp but was frustrated in his project, for the Lord *Tenffenbeck* drawing off from before the City, passed through with much difficulty the River *Sagijvay*, when setting upon the Bassa's Army after a hard fight he put it to the Rout, having the execution of the Turks for many miles, so that about Ten Thousand of them were slain and taken Prisoners, with a great Booty of Provision and Ammunition, after which the Christians returned to the siege, yet finding the hazards and difficulty that they should meet with in winning it, by the directions of the Arch-Duke who with Forty Thousand Men at the same time besieged *Strigonium*, the Siege of *Hatvan* was given over, yet upon the raising thereof the Lord *Tenffenbeck* discomfited the Bassa of *Buda* a second time, as he was again coming to the relief thereof, in which conflict Five Thousand Turks were slain.

Strigonium after a long siege, and the burning of the old Town, being relieved by the coming of *Sinan* Bassa with a great Army, the Arch-Duke thought it not yet convenient to let him take breath, but on the 28th. of *June* passed *Danubius* to expect the motion of *Sinan* Bassa with his huge Army

Army, composed of Turks and *Tartars*, and by frequent onsets daily weakned his Camp, nor were the *Rascians* slow to revolt from the Turkish obedience. So that having raised a confused power, to the number of Fifteen Thousand they took many strong Places, and obtained two notable Victories, one over the Bassa of *Temeswar*, in which himself and three of his *Sanzacks*, and about Nine Thousand Five Hundred of his Turks were slain. And the other over another Bassa that succeeded him, upon which they sent to the Arch-Duke to receive them and their Countrey into the Emperours protection, and that in consideration thereof they would maintain Ten Thousand Men in the Field, whose Proposals were by the Imperial General accepted.

About this time the Emperour the better to consult the defence of his Provinces, called a Diet at *Ratisbon*, where in the assembly of the *German* Princes, he declared how matters stood, and repeated the manifold injuries he had sustained by the Turks, contrary to the League made with *Amurath*, and that amongst the rest he contrary to the Law of Nations had imprisoned *Frederick Creckovitz* his Ambassador first at *Constantinople*, and caused the greatest part of his followers to be thrust into the Gallies, and afterwards to have sent him with a few of his attendants to *Belgrade*, and thereto have kept him in prison till he ended his dayes. To revenge which indignities those daily offered, and such as were like to ensue from the great Army at hand, he desired the Princes to consider a most speedy way, and not by delay to indanger the greatest part of *Christendoms* falling into the hands of the merciless Enemy. To which the Electoral Princes after a due consideration, replied, That they had

a regard to his Imperial Majesty, and for the preservation of *Hungary*, and others his Hereditary Countries, as also for repressing the fury of the Turks, yet by reason of the late dearth, they were not capable of maintaining such Forces as might be expected, yet besides their Annual Contributions they would for the space of six years, grant such further relief as they well hoped would prove sufficient for the maintenance of a defensive War, both for the present and for the time to come, after which resolves of the Princes the *Diet* broke up, and all diligence was used for increasing the Army, and Fortifying the strong Holds in *Hungaria*, *Austria*, *Styria*, and *Carinthia*, Countries most obnoxious to the Incursions of the Turks.

Sinan Bassa all this while not ignorant of the Emperors proceedings, lay with an Army of One Hundred and Fifty Thousand Fighting men, between *Buda* and *Alba Regalis*, frequently sending out Parties to waste the Countries in possession of the Emperour, yet with such indifferent success that he had no cause to boast, which made the Bassa to raise his Camp, and in sight of the Christian Army which still attended his motions, battered *Dolis* and *St. Martins* with such fury that within a short time they fell into his hands, the Imperialists at so great an odds not thinking it convenient to hazard a Battle to relief their besieged Friends, and after doing other mischief in their Territories layed siege to the City of *Rab* situate on the Southside of *Danubius*, where the River dividing it self makes a most fertile Island called *Schut*, about twelve German miles from *Vienna*, in which Island lay the Christian Camp. This City was defended by a Garrison of Five Thousand Men, under the Command

mand of Count *Hardeck* a more valiant then at this time faithful Friend, for when every one supposed the City impregnable, and that the Turks for many dayes had without intermission battered it with Sixty pieces of Cannon, and made several unsuccessful assaults with the loss of Fourteen Thousand of their men the said Count contrary to the minds of his Commanders and Souldiers capitulated with the Bassa, and in consideration of his departing with all his Treasure, delivered that strong piece in his hands. For which upon his arrival at *Vienna*, he by the judgement of Sixty of his Peers, had his Head and his right Hand stricken off, it being proved against him that he in leiw of the surrender had of the Bassa received two bags of Ducats.

During the siege of *Rab* the Christians in the Island of *Schut* received a great loss, for Ten Thousand Turks and *Tartars* getting over in Boats or swimming upon their Horses, came so suddainly upon their Camp, that having slain Two Thousand of them and put the rest into a great consternation, they entered their Trenches and carryed thence a booty valued at Five Hundred Thousand Ducats, which loss for a while after sore weakned the Christians. Nor were the Turks onely busie in spoiling *Hungary*, but *Italy* also, for with a great Fleet under the leading of *Ciala Bassa Amuraths* Admiral, they surprized *Rhegium* in *Calabria*, and utterly razed it, after which they spoiled all the Countrey about it, as likewise the Sea Coasts of *Italy* in many other places, taking several Ships richly laden in the sight of the Garrison of *Messina*, and carrying away a great number of poor people into miserable Captivity.

Sinan Bassa having by this time received new supplies and repaired *Rab*, putting therein a strong Garrison marched to *Comara*, before which he incamped, but upon the approach of *Matthias* the Arch-Duke with a puissant Army of *Germans*, *Bohemians*, and *Hungarians* to relieve it, he raised his siege not thinking it safe at that time to hazard a Battle, and by a Bridge of Boats Transported his Army over *Danubius* to *Dolis*, where he the following day dismissed them, upon which the Arch-Duke without any hinderance coming to *Comara*, caused the breaches to be Repaired, and then leaving it to the protection of the Governour, viz. The Lord *Bruun*, who had faithfully defended it, he departed to take a view of the other Cities.

About this time *Sigismund* Prince of *Transilvania*, weary of the grievous exaction and injuries they sustained at the hands of the Turks, resolved to cast off their servile yoke which being known to certain of the Nobility pensioners to *Amurath*, they secretly advertized him of the Princes purpose, promising to send him in Chains to *Constantinople*, and with the Turks good liking to set up one *Balthazor Bator* the Princes nigh Kinsman in his stead, but the Treason being discovered most of the Traitors were taken and executed, upon which the *Tatars* to the number of Forty Thousand brake into *Transilvania* burning and destroying all before them in a fearful manner, which obliged the Prince to raise the whole power of his Countrey, and to crave aid of the *Rascians* and other his Neighbours giving freely to his Subjects and Confederates what ever they could take from the Turks, who in their first interprize were so successful, that they

sur-

surprized seven of the Turks Gallies laden with Provision, Rich Merchandize, and store of Treasure, and missed but narrowly of the eighth, which was the Admiral which loss was so great to the Turks, *Sinan* Bassa upon notice of what had happened is reported to have said that if those Gallies had come to him in safety he could with the Treasure have bought *Vienna*, as he had done *Raab*, after which the *Transilvanians* hightened with this success marched towards *Temeswar*, but hearing that the *Tartars* were about to return, they retired for the defence of their own Countrey; yet by this time headed by their Prince they took many strong Holds from the Turks, and still following their returning Army in the rear cut many Thousands of them short, and by his example soon after the *Valachians* and *Moldavians* rose up in Armes against *Amurath* and Confederated themselves with the *Transilvanian* Prince who with one consent sent to *Rodolphus* the Emperour to make a League with him against the common Enemy which was accordingly concluded very Honourable to the Confederates which made *Amurath* begin to doubt his safety even in *Constantinople*, and much more when they with their victorious Armies overrun his Countries on every side, for grief of which, and the disorderly tumults he found amongst his *Janizaries* and his other Souldiers of the Court, he fell Sick, when greatly afflicted with the Stone and Falling Sicknes, his wonted Disease, as a man both in Soul and Body tormented, he with great Impatiency and Agony of mind gave up the Ghost, departing this Life on the Eighteenth of January, *Anno Domini* 1595. When he had lived

lived One and Fifty years, or as some say Two and Fifty years, and thereof Reigned Nineteen years. At the time of whose Death arose so Terrible a Tempest at *Constantinople* that many thought the world should have presently been dissolved, his dead Body within a while after was with all Funeral Solemnities used amongst the Turks, buried by the Body of *Mahomet* his Eldest Son, in the *Moschie* which himself had builded near unto his Palace.

C H A P. XVII.

*The Life of Mahomet Third of that Name,
seventh Emperor of the Turks.*

A *Murath* being dead, his death to prevent tumults was kept secret till such time that *Mahomet* his Eldest Son then living, came from *Amasia* to *Constantinople*, where contrary to the mind of the *Janizaries*, who generally affected *Amurath* his younger brother, he was saluted Exmperour; when by a wile getting his Ten Brethren into his power, he caused them to be strangled, nay so far extended his barbarity that at his Commandement ten of his Fathers Wives and Concubines, whom he suspected to be with Child were drowned in the Sea, one of which number as some affirm was his own Mother. These violent proceedings made the great Commanders envy him, and the better to wreck their spleen secretly to stir up the *Janizaries*, who committed for the space of several days such disorders that the like in no *Interregnum* had happened, and great had the disorder been even to outraging the Emperour himself, had not the Bassa Governour of the City caused all the great Ordinance to be bent against them, and swore by the head of *Ali* to discharge them amongst u'm.

Whilst these troubles happened at *Constantinople*, the Christian Princes were not wanting to revenge the injuries they had sustained by the Turks, especially

ly the Princes or as the Turks call them *Vayvod* of *Transilvania*, *Valachia*, and *Moldavia*, who with many fortunate inroads into the *Othoman* Dominions greatly enriched themselves and Souldiers, taking and Fortifying many strong Castles, and destroying an Army of Four Hundred Thousand *Tartars*, with which they had often conflicts. Nor was *Rodolphus* the Emperour behind with the forwardest, as well knowing that he had to deal with an implacable Enemy, who would have no peace any longer then it served his own purpose, wherefore the said Emperour, and th States of *Hungary* sent their Ambassadors to the King of *Poland*, who then had assembled a Parliament at *Cracovia*, to sollicit his Aid against the common Enemy; of which *Mahomet* having notice, sent likewise two *Chians* in nature of his Ambassadors to frustrate the negotiation of the Christian Ambassadors in the Polish Court, and to engage that King to take up Arms on his behalf, but passing through *Valachia*, they were contrary to the mind of the *Vayvod* slain by some of his followers; yet the Turk sent two others who fetching a greater compass through the *Tartarian* Dominions arrived safe in *Polonia*.

These proceedings of the Christians roused *Mahomet*, and inspired him who was of a fierce and froward nature, to take revenge, in order to which he sent for *Sinan* Bassa out of *Hungary*, to confer with him about the management of the war, which once stated, he returned again to *Belgrade*, where upon his first Arrival, by what mischance, yet supposed to be by the contrivance of the Janizaries, the cords of his Tent were cut, and it was let fall about his ears; now at his coming, so great was the dearth in all the parts of *Hungary*, where the Turks had their pos-

possessions, that several *Tartarian* women following the Camp, killed their own children, and ate them, which famine ingendered such a Pestilence, that the *Turks* and *Tartars* dyed in abundance, insomuch that of eighty thousand of the latter, which the year before came at divers times to the assistance of the *Turks*, not above eight thousand remained alive. And now the Christian Army hastened from all parts to the Imperial standard; so that of *Germans*, *Saxons*, *Bohemians*, *Hungarians*, *Spaniards*, *Italians*, *Romans*, *Flemings*, *Franks* and *Sweeds*, in a short time there were found fifteen thousand nine hundred horse, and fifty thousand foot, under the conduct of most resolute Commanders, of which *Matthias* the Arch Duke was General, and Count *Mansfelt* sent by the King of *Spain* with 2000 horse, and 6000 foot, was appointed by the Emperor his Lieutenant.

Thus all things being in a readiness, nothing wanting but an enemy, on whom to exercise those Arms, which long was not wanting, for *Mahomet* by this time had raised a great power, yet had but a bad welcome, for at first the Bassa of *Buda*, with a great number of *Turks*, attempting to doe some memorable exploit in *Transilvania*, was overthrown by *Gessius Ferents*, a valiant Captain, with the loss of most of his men; when almost at the same time a great power of the *Turks* under the leading of their General, entering *Valachia*, were incountred by the Lord *Nadaſti*, commanding there for the Emperor, who assisted by the *Valachians* and *Transylvanians*, and in a great battle discomfited, with the loss of ten thousand men, and their standard imbroidered with Pearls and Precious Stones, valued at 30000 Dollars, which the said Lord sent to the *Transylvanian* Prince, then at *Alba Julia*, and had it returned him again as

a re-

a reward of his good service, which evil success being perceived by the crafty Tyrant *Mahomet*, he dealt under hand by great promises with *Aaron Vayvod* of *Moldavia*, to revolt from the *Transylvanian* and by any means if possible to depose him, which thing coming to light, and made manifest by several intercepted Letters, the said *Vayvod* with his wife and children being then retired into *Transylvania*, were secured, and a while after by the consent of the *Moldavian* Nobility, one *Stephen Rozwan*, placed in his stead, which *Mahomet* perceiving, and that his practise was brought to nought, sent an Ambassador to *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania*, to be at peace with him, and suffer, as formerly, his Armies to pass through his Countrey into *Hungaria*, and that in lieu thereof, he should have peaceable possession of *Transylvania*, *Moldavia*, and *Valachia*, paying no more then a small acknowledgment which should not be exacted by the way of Tribute, but the Prince having too often experienced the perfidious dealings of the Turks, would in no wise accord to what was demanded, but resolved upon prosecuting the war to the utmost, the which his resolution once made known to the *Bulgarians*, they sent messengers in secret to assure him that if he proceeded with any good success, they would be ready to follow his fortune, and by joyning hands with him, against the cruel Tyrant, shut up all the passages that way into *Valachia*, *Moldavia*, and *Hungaria*.

The greatest part of the aid, promised by the Christian Princes, for the maintenance of the war, being come to *Vienna*, Count *Mansfelt* called a council of the chief Commanders, to consult whether they should lay siege to some place of Importance, or march to give the enemy battle, whom he said

he

he had Intelligence was on his way ; in which Council the former proposal being resolved on, the whole Army in number aforesaid, was mustered at *Altenberg*, after which he besieged *Dolis*, but at the same time had his eye upon *Strigonium*, the other being undertaken only to amuse the Turks, and exhaust the Garrison of *Strigonum*, both of men and warlike provision, to relieve their brethren in *Dolis*, which supply the Count permitted to enter the Town, and then when he was least suspected, suddenly raising his siege set down before *Strigonum*, to the great amazement of the Turk, who not in the least dreamed of any such matter, yet was it not carried so privately but e'r he could intrench himself, several *Walloon* Heidons, straggling from the main battle, were set upon by the Turks, and put to the rout, but the Pioniers having run the Trenches within half Musket shot of the wall, fired so smartly upon the defendants, many of them were slain, none being able to appear upon the wall, yet the Christians at the beginning of the Siege, having taken a little Island in the *Danubius*, and put on shoar several *Hungarian* Companies, of which the *Turks* of *Buda* having notice, they in several Boats and Gallies, coming down the River by night, landed three thousand men, who unawares setting upon the Christians, put most of them to the sword, and recovered the said Island, but that loss was soon repaired ; for after many furious assaults (notwithstanding the threats of the Bassa of *Buda* to Impail the *Strigonians* if they fought it not out to the last man) the higher City was laid open to the Christians, who just as they were about to enter, had notice that the Bassa of *Buda* (whom *Mahomet* had threatned with the loss of his head, if he suffered that City which he esteemed worth a whole Kingdom, to be lost) was coming

to relieve it with twenty thousand Turks, resolving to fight his way into it ; whereupon divers parties were sent out to skirmish, and by retiring to draw the enemy into the danger of the Christian Army, which project was not unsuccessful, for the resolute Bassa coming on between the hills of St. George and St. Thomas near to the Suburbs called the *Ruscian* City, put his Army in order of Battle, as did the Christians, when in the mean while the Lord *Paissi* with his *Hungarian* horsemen fetching a compass about the hill, on the one side and the Lord *Swartzenburg* with such horse as he had under his command, on the other side, so inclosed the Turks rear, that they could not without great danger retire, when as both Armies were orderly ranged, the signal of battle was given, the Turks without any great harm to the Christians discharged seventeen Pieces of Artillery, after which, with showers of Arrows and the smook of the Harquibuses the Sky was darkned, and in a trice, not without great slaughter, the battle was brought to the sword, at what time Victory declared for the Christians, the Turks being every where most miserably beaten down, crying out for mercy, and flying as they found opportunity, and in the end the Bassa himself from his stand, perceiving his Army in the rout, and that the day was irrecoverably lost, fled for his life, and about midnight recovered *Buda*, with not above twenty of his followers, filling that City with the laments of such as had in the battle lost their friend. The slain and those taken prisoners were fourteen thousand, and the spoil of the Camp consisting of rich Pavilions, Money, Plate, Ammunition, fair horses, provision, Camels, and the like, was valued at 300000 Ducates, part of which was sent to the Emperour, part to the Arch Duke, and part

part distributed amongst the Souldiers, to every one according to their deserts.

The Turkish Army thus overthrown, the Christians returned again to the siege, when as the Count sent to Summon *Alis Beg* the Governour to surrender the City, and that in consideration thereof, he and all that were with him should be suffered to depart, but the messengers finding the froward old man obstinate, notwithstanding the great dearth that was then in the City, he returned without effecting any thing; upon which a terrible battery being placed against the lower City, it thundred against the walls and Bullwarks so long, that laying open a fair breach, the Souldiers entred with such fury, that bearing down all before them, they upon the coming of the Marquess of *Burgave* with fresh Troops, they possessed themselves of it, driving the Turks into the Castle and upper City, with great slaughter, sparing in their rage none that came in their way, yet the malicious Turks e'r their departure, to deprive the Christians of the benefit they might reap by the spoil, had by Trains laid for that purpose, fired the building in several places, so that incensed by the wind, the flame could be hardly extinguished, till it had laid most of the goodly building waste, yet was this great Victory accompanied with sorrow for the death of the Count *Mansfelt*, who by drinking cold Liquors, after his great pains taken in the late battle, fell into a fever, which turning to the bloody Flix, deprived him of his life, to the great grief of the Christian Princes, who on his Courage and Conduct, had reposed next to God the success of their Arms, yet the Christians continued the siege, nor was it long e'r the besieged lost *Alis Beg* their Governour, who walking upon the wall to give directions in places of most danger, had

his arm struck off with a great shot, of which he dyed, when in his stead the Janizaries in Garrison chose the Bassa of *Naxolia*, who upon the overthrow of the Bassa of *Buda*, had escaped into the City with a hundred horsemen; when upon notice of the death of Count *Mansfeld* the Arch Duke came to the Camp, who when he had well viewed the Army, and the manner of the siege, he assembled his chief Commanders, to consult what was best to be done, who after some debate resolved to give a general assault, which was maintained with great resolution, but the besieged as obstinately defending their walls; the Duke caused the Retreat to be sounded, and then by his Espials understanding that the Turks near *Buda* were gathering together, to relieve the besieged, he commanded 8000 chosen horse speedily to march thither, who a little before sunset setting upon them, expecting nothing less, made of them a great slaughter, and taking a number of prisoners, and amongst the rest the *Sanzack* of *Copan*, returned again to the siege; when as the besieged finding there was no hope of relief, and that the famine was greivous amongst them, the Governour overcome with such like difficulties, and the continual cries of the Citizens and Souldiers, at length consented to parly upon reasonable conditions, so that in fine it was agreed that the Garrison and all the Citizens Turks should be sent with bag and baggage to *Buda*, and in consideration whereof *Strigonium* the Metropolis of *Hungaria*, which for the space of 52 years, had groaned under the oppression of the Turkish Tyrants, was delivered into the hands of the Arch Duke, and the conditions with the Turks accordingly performed, twenty Ships being for that purpose employed by the space of two dayes, after which the Duke sent 18 thousand to besiege Vicegrade otherwise called *Plindenburg*,

Jenburgh, a strong Castle of the Turks, situate upon *Danubius*, between *Strigonium* and *Buda*, which they took, and in their march brought such a fear upon *Buda*, that had not the Bassa shut fast the Gates, most of the Inhabitants had fled over the *Danubius*.

During this good success of the Imperialists the Prince of *Transylvania* was not idle, but with an Army of his best Souldiers, setting upon thirty thousand Turks (who as unbidden Guests were coming to his wedding, which he was then solemnizing with *Maria Christina*, daughter to *Charles* the late Arch Duke of *Austria*) he gave such a welcome, that few of them returned to tell the news, after which, prosecuting his victory he took *Lippa*, a strong Town, with divers other Towns and Castles of the Turks, out of which they had for a long time annoyed the Countries round about them; about the same time the Lords *Herbenstien*, *Lucowitz* and *Eckenburg* encountered with the Bassa of *Bosna*, as he was returning with ten thousand Turks and *Tartars*, from the taking of *Baborzka*, whom after a hard fight they overthrew, putting most of them to the sword, the Bassa himself, upon a swift horse hardly escaping.

These successfull proceedings of the Christians so enraged the *Turk*, that imputing several of the disgraces that had happened to the neglect of *Ferat Bassa*, he by the advice of *Sinan Bassa*, sent for him, who trusting to his innocency, boldly came to answer to what should be objected against him, though warned to the contrary, but he was scarce arrived ere by the command of *Mahomet* he was strangled and his goods to the value of five hundred thousand Ducats confiscated.

After the death of *Ferat*, who was somewhat a favourer of the Christians, *Sinan* the proud Bassa,

son to a Fisherman, and their mortal enemy, was sent with a great Army into *Valachia*, to reduce that and the other revolted Countries to the Turkish obedience, but being encountred by the *Transylvanian* Forces, his Army was overthrown with great slaughter, and himself in his flight falling into a Lime-pit, hardly escaped with life; after which he fled to *Constantinople*, to plead his own cause, having promised upon his undertaking that Expedition at the price of his head, to reduce *Valachia*, *Moldavia*, and *Transylvania*, to their former obedience.

Not long after the overthrow of *Sinan*, the Lords *Eckenberg* and *Leucowitz* overthrew twenty thousand who under the leading of the Bassa of *Bosna*, invaded the country of *Grotia*, and following their Victory, entred the Turkish Dominions and burnt 15 Villages, carrying away a great booty, and soon after took *Petrina*, which after a close siege, and some furious assaults was abandoned by the Turks. In the mean while *Sigismund* the *Transylvanian* Prince, raised a greater power than before, upon notice that *Sinan* Bassa was again upon his march to invade his Countries; at what time the *Ziculi* or *Sciculy*, a people bordering on the North of *Transylvania*, sent to him to offer him their service, as weary of the Turkish thralldom; who according to agreement, besides many rich presents, and store of provision, sent him forty thousand men well appointed, which no sooner joyned him, he had notice that *Sinan* had passed *Danubius*, by a bridg of Boats; whereupon he marched with all dilligence to meet him, and in another set battle, gave him a fatal overthrow, in which there were thirty thousand slain and taken prisoners, besides a rich booty; nor did the River *Danubius* upon their hasty repassing the bridge, which

which was near two miles over, devour a less number, insomuch that *Sinan* swore in a great rage, that the young Prince had in a short time Eclipsed all the renown he in the course of his whole life had got.

After this overthrow of the Turks, which they number amongst their great mischances, the Castle and Island in the River with little loss were recovered, and then in great Triumph laden with the *Turks* spoils the Prince returned to *Alba Julia*, at what time by his Captains he took the strong Castle of *Jenna*, and intercepted about 70 waggons richly laden, which they of *Temeswar* fearing to be besieged were sending, together with their wives and children, to places of greater strength.

These things perplexing the proud Turk, he sent his special Messengers to stir up the *Crimesian Tartars*, (a people living for the most part on spoil) to invade *Moldavia*, *Transylvania*, and *Valachia*, who were likewise encouraged thereto by the Chancellor of *Polonia*, he so far insinuating with the King, that *Moldavia* was taken from the *Transylvanian* Prince, and a new *Vayvod* placed therein, who opened (contrary to his faith given) three wayes for the *Turks* and *Tartars* to invade *Transylvania*, of which perfidious dealing Pope *Clement* the Eighth by his Letters to the King of *Polonia*, grievously complained; and likewise against Cardinal *Zamoskie*, the Chancellor, and first mover of this mischief, whom he cited to appear before him at *Rome*, there to answer to what should by the Ambassadors of the Christian Princes, be objected against him, charging them both with breach of faith, and disloyalty to the King of Heaven, by betraying the Christians into the hand of the sworn enemies of the Christian Religion, yet both the King and Chancellor

colour used such endeavours that they satisfied the Pope in the necessity of their writing better to him to that purpose, when at the same time *Chan Kazikieri* the *Tartarian* King wrote to *Sigismund* King of *Polonia*, to put him in mind of his promise to give his Army free passage, as likewise to destroy the *Cossacks*, who as he said by daily incursions wasted his Frontier, and to make a perpetual League with him yet onely the former request was observed.

The Christians not pleased with the proceedings of the *Polonian*, to shew how little they esteemed his Friendship, intraged as it were with his revolt burnt and destroyed all the Turkish Garrisons upon his Frontiers, whom he durst not protect for fear of having his own Dominions wasted in the like manner, but what happened this year 1599. advantageous to the Christians was the death of *Sinan* Bassa their sworn Enemy, who having by his Friends and many rich presents escaped the fury of the angry *Sultan Mahomet* who had vowed his death, soon after through grief and shame of his late overthrow died, after he had for Fifty years wasted the Earth with Fire and Sword, Yet the following Spring *Mahomet* with a great power purposed in person to pass into *Hungary*, but by reason of the Plague and Famine, that raged throughout his Empire he could not accomplish his design, but was more and more perplexed by the revolt of the *Georgians*, and the great Army the new King of *Persia* was raising for the recovery of *Tauris*, notwithstanding to prevent the worst the *Transilvanian* Prince in person went to the Courts of the Emperor and Pope to crave Aid, where he was with great kindness received, and promised such supplies of Men and Money as his occasion should require, but during

during his stay there the *Scirci* rose up in arms against him, yet the Rebellion was blown over by the execution of the chief Promoters of the Tumult, and Ten Thousand *Rascians* in a fit time proffered him their service, for the *Tartars* were by this time on their way, whereupon having received several rich presents he returned home, being every where joyfully received of his People. All this time the Lord *Palsi* with the Garrison Souldiers of *Strigonium* was not idle, but used his utmost diligence to surprize the Turks Convoys and Garrisons, nor was his expectation frustrated, for overrunning the Country as far as the Walls of *Temeswar* he got many rich booties, and removed such Christians as were in danger of the Turks Garrison nearer his own missing but narrowly of the Bassa of *Temeswar* with all his Treasure, as he was going to *Belgrade* to give place to a new Bassa, but however he fell into the hands of the *Hungarian Heidons*, who overthrew his Convoy, slew him, and took all his riches laden in Seventy Five Waggon to the value of Two Hundred Thousand *Hungarian Ducats*, which so enraged the Turks that gathering Forty Thousand strong they besieged *Lippa*, but after the loss of six Thousand of their number in many furious assaults, they left their Trenches and in great confusion retired, which flight was occasioned by the Governour of *Lugaz* his surprizing the Suburbs of *Temeswar*, and setting them on fire, which being seen in the Turks Camp caused amongst them that great consternation, as thinking the Prince of *Transylvania* with his whole Army was coming on, and even at their backs. After whose flight the *Hungarian Heidons* passing the *Danubius* took *Plenia*, in revenge of which the Turks took *Clissa*, out of which they had not long before been driven; not long after the Lord *Palsi* took the

Strong Castle Sombok, which the Turks in a rage upon the enterance of the Christians set on fire, but thereby so exasperated the Souldiers that they spared none they found therein, but put them all to the Sword without respect either to Age or Sex.

These continual currants of Victory carryed the **Transilvanian Prince** to the Siege of **Tameswar**, which he for many dayes furiously battered; but upon notice that the **Bassa of Natolia** the forerunner of **Mahomets Army**, was come to **Belgrade** with Fourteen thousand Turks, and **Mahomet** with an Army of One Hundred and Fifty Thousand was coming after him to the Relief of the City, and he not having yet received the supplies promised by the Christian Princes his Confederates, thought good to raise his siege and depart for **Lippa**, where having left a strong Garrison he kept on his way to **Alba Julia**, and assembled there the States of his Principality to consider the most expedient means for raising more Forces to repress so potent an Adversary.

Mahomet approaching with his Forces which daily increased, sent to **Michale** the **Vayvod** of **Valachia** to promise him great rewards if he would become his Tributary and revolt from the **Transilvanian Prince**, but finding nothing would prevail with the **Vayvod** to break his Faith he came with his whole Army now increased to the number of Two Hundred Thousand to **Buda**, yet ere he could attempt anything **Maximilian** the Emperours General, (made so in the stead of **Matthias** the Arch-Duke, who upon the Death of **Ferdinand** the Emperours Uncle, had the rich County of **Tirol** bestowed upon him whither he was retired) had taken **Vacia**, **Harstun**, and several other places, but long rested not **Mahomet** before, he with his huge Army besieged **Agria**, which

which after the loss of Twenty Thousand of his Men not by force but by surrender, for the Soldiers perceiving the new Castle, the place in which they only put their trust, undermined; and about to be blown up, and that all hopes of being relieved were vain, they layed hands upon *Paulus Niari* and *Terskie* the Captain of the Garrison Souldiers and Governour of the City, and casting them in Prison capitulated with the Turks to deliver the City and Castle, in consideration that they might depart with bag and baggage, but the faithless Infidels ere they had passed through the Camp contrary to their faith given cut them in pieces, after which the Bassa of *Bosna* with a strong power layed siege to *Petrina*, but upon notice that the Lords *Herbenstein* and *Leucomitz* were coming to relieve it, and in their way had overthrown Six Thousand Turks he raised his siege in great hast leaving behind him part of his Carriages. But now the two puissant Armies of the Christians and Turks coming in view of each other and nothing but a small River parting them, drew frequently up in Battalia, and had several skirmishes at a distance, but the vain glorious Turks not thinking it sufficient to discharge their great Artillery, and skirmish in small parties at the Command of *Mahomet*, Ten Thousand of them, and Six Thousand *Tartars* passed the River, but were so hotly welcomed that few returned, which advantage the Christians following pursued the flyers, and set upon the gross of the Turks Army, putting all into confusion and consternation; so that *Mahomet* fearing a total overthrow retreated to his Camp, whether the Christians as eagerly pursued, but whilst they disordered themselves to take the spoil, (although the General had caused Proclamation to be made, that none on pain of death should attempt

it

it till the victory was obtained.) They being afresh charged and many of them cut off by the Turks great Artillery, betook themselves to plain flight not to be stayed by the threats nor intreaties of their Commanders, so that the German Horse disordering their own Foot put all into confusion, which the Turks contrary to their expectation perceiving followed hard after them, making great slaughter, yet so conscious were they of their weakness, that fearing the return of the Christians, that in the night they secretly raised their Camp and returned to *Agria*, leaving their Cannon and Baggage in the Trenches for the space of three dayes, so slenderly guarded that Five Thousand men might have taken the spoil; *Mahomet* himself confessing that he feared to have been taken Prisoner, and would not for the future venture his person in places of such imminent danger.

In this Battle or rather running fight, called from the place where it happened, the Battle of *Kavesta*, Forty Thousand Turks and Fifteen Thousand Christians were slain most of the latter in the rash and unadvised flight, the which had it not contrary to all reason happened never had a more glorious victory been obtained over the Infidels. Yet *Mahomet* after he had furnished *Agria* with a Garrison of Ten Thousand choice Souldiers returned to *Belgrade*, and having divided his Army in two parts, the one he left in the Countrey to secure it against the Christians, and with the other departed to *Constantinople*, but by the way being set upon by *Barbelius Jancechie* the *Transilvanian* Princes Lieutenant, and the *Wayvod* of *Valachia*, who with a strong power for that purpose had passed the *Danubius*, they cut off seven Thousand of his men.

Early in the spring as ashamed of their disgrace the Christian Princes recruited their scattered Forces which meeting together near to *Passonium* and *Altenburg*, marched to *Papa*, which they besieged and after eight dayes battery took it, and so again returning to *Autenburg* the Army mustered, from whence they marched to *Rab* and besieged it, but upon the approach of the Turks Army under the Command of *Mahomet* Bassa, raised the siege, as finding it both difficult and dangerous, and so marched over into the Island of *Schur*, when in their sight they permitted the Turks to take *Dolin*.

Michael the *Vayvod* of *Valachia*, having his Countrey almost destroyed by the Turks, and they promising him great favours and bounties more then ever, if he would again return to his obedience; he to save his Countrey from utter destruction, complied with the Tyrants desire in part, viz. to own him for his Sovereign, and to pay him half the wonted Tribute, but denied upon any terms to aid him against the Christians, which the Turk for a while dissembled and seemed well contented with his submission, but afterward contrary to his Oath oppressing him with great Taxes, both he and the Prince of *Transilvania* recommended the protection of their Countreies to *Rodolphus* the Emperour, who thereupon called a *Diet* to consult about raising contributions sufficient for the management of the War against the Turks, and such success had his arms immediately thereon, through the good conduct of the Lord *Smartzenburg*, *Rab* was surprized for certain Engineers coming by night to the Gates, finding the Portcullises drawn up in expectation of Waggon's loaden with Provision to come from *Alba Regalis*, they fastened several Petards to the said Gates

Gates which deadly Engines once fired rent 'um in pieces, so that the Army which followed at their heels pressing in, after a long fight killed two of the Turks Bassa's, and put the rest to the flight, who such as could escaped over the Wall, and those that could not fell by the Swords of the enraged Soldiers, who in the City found so great a booty that many of them were greatly enriched thereby, besides One Hundred pieces of great Ordnance, and store of all manner of Provisions. That City though so easily recovered, being one of the strongest Fortresses in *Christendom*, the taking of which so encouraged the General of the Imperialists, that (upon notice that great differences were arisen between the *Janizaries* and the *Sphai*, the Turks best Footmen and Horsemen upon a point of preheminency) he resolved to besiege *Buda* the Turks chief strength in *Hungary*, and thereupon marching thither with all his Army, on the 16th. of *October*, 1598. he sat down before it, and for many days battered it with sixteen pieces of Cannon. But in fine seeing no hopes of winning it, and having notice that a great Army of Turks was hasting to its relief having plundered the Suburbs the General drew his Army out of the Trenches and departed to *Strigonium*.

The *Transilvanian* Prince having exchanged his Country with the Emperour for the Dukedoms of *Oppel* and *Ratibor*, and yearly Fifty Thousand *Jochim*, or the Revenues of the Bishoprick of *Uranislavia*, Territories lying in *Silesia* and repenting him of what he had done, he came again into *Transilvania* in disguise, and was joyfully received by his Subjects, at what time *Maximilian* the Emperors Generals was marching with the Army to take possession of it, which had like to have caused great dissen-

diffensions amongst the Christian Confederates had not the Prince by many submissive Letters pacified the Emperors displeasure. Now were the Turks Army arrived in *Hungary* and had layed siege to *Veradinum*, which City being at the point to be yielded, was relieved by the Lord *Bassa* the Emperours Lieutenant, who making semblance to give the Turks Battle, and by that means drawing them out of their Trenches, in the mean time by an unsuspected way, thrust Eight Hundred Souldiers into the City and so drew off, through which supply the City was so long defended that the *Turks* weary of the siege, and by reason of the approach of Winter departed, leaving for haist many of their Tents and great Ordnance as a prey to the besieged, after which the Imperialists spoiled that part of the *Lower Hungary*, which was in the possession of the *Turks* even to the gates of *Buda*, which brought a great fear upon the Garrison and Citizens. When at the same time *Michael* the *Vayvod* of *Valachia*, having gathered a strong power took and sacked *Nicopolis*, the rumor of which coming to *Constantinople* where the Plague then raged, it greatly perplexed *Mahomet* and brought a fear upon that great City. Yet to put a stop to the *Vayvods* proceedings, he caused a great number of *Turks* under the leading of *Taut Bassa* to march against him, who joyning the forces of *Mahomet Satergi* with which he had besieged *Veradinum*; yet the *Vayvod* not in the least dismayed, marched 100 Miles into the *Turks* Territories, and destroying all before him obtained a great Booty. But now contrary to the expectation of all men the *Transilvanian* Prince, instigated thereto by the *Polonian* King, resigned the right he had in that Principality, to his Cozen *Andrew Battor*, and thereby defrauded the Emperour of that which by way of
Ex-

Exchange was properly his, the *Transylvanians* having thereupon sworn him fealty, yet not to discourage his Confederates the Emperor set light thereby, though the proud Cardinal, to whom it was resigned submitted himself a Vassal to *Mahomet*, and thereby deprived the Christian Commonwealth of one of her surest Bulwarks.

Buda blocked up by the Christians, and thereby reduced to great extremity, the Bassa thereof upon notice that several waggons laden with provision, were on their way, issued out with six hundred horse to conduct them safe; but being set upon by the free Hadducks, his Guard was overthrown, his son slain, and himself taken prisoner; and within a while after the Lord *Palsie* encountering the Bassa of *Bosna*, who was coming with ten thousand men to relieve the said City, overthrew his power, slew the Bassa, and took all the waggons laden with provision, and at the same time five thousand *Tartars* being set upon by the Lord *Swartzenburgs* Regiment, were all cut in pieces; upon notice of *Ibrahim* Bassa with a great power set forward from *Constantinople*, but part of his Forces being encountred by the Imperialists under the command of the Lord *Palsis* Lieutenant, were overthrown, and rich booty taken, containing all the provision of the Camp, and one hundred thousand Dollars which were coming up the *Danubius* to pay the Souldiers, which loss greatly discontented the Bassa, and then when he had notice that the Imperialists intended again to besiege *Buda*, which he by reason of the said loss was not in a capacity to relieve, as also at the same time news came of a great slaughter of the Turks before the City of *Agria*, the which City had the Christians assaulted in any considerable number, the consternation was so great, that they might easily have sur-

surprised it, yet as it happened they took a hundred prisoners and five hundred horses; the free Haducks also entering the *Turk* Territories, did great hurt by burning their Villages and carrying away a great number of Inhabitants.

Buda now had not escaped falling into the hands of the Christians had not *Ibraim Bassa* received an unexpected supply, which increased his Army to the number of one hundred and thirty thousand, with which upon his approach the Christians too weak to encounter him were obliged to raise their siege, yet so much was the Bassa out of love with war, that having relieved the City, he by the command of *Mahomet* the Turkish Emperor, laboured to procure a peace with *Rodolph* the German Emperor, in order to which several great Commanders on either side met, but the Turks proud demands seem'd so unreasonable to the Christian Commissioners, that they rejected them with disdain, and so all hopes of peace vanishing, the *Vayvod* of *Valachia* invaded *Transylvania*, now wholly devoted to *Mahomet*, against whom Cardinal *Batter* prepared his Forces, being strengthened over and above with thirty thousand Turks and Tartars, sent by *Ibraim* yet in a mortal battle he was overthrown by the *Vayvod*, and the Cardinal in endeavouring to escape was slain, and his head sent to the Emperour, after which most of the Cities of *Transylvania* revolted from the Turkish obedience. The news of which greatly troubled *Sigismund* the late Prince, who resided in *Polonia*, but more *Mahomet* the Turkish Emperor, imbroiled in new troubles by the revolt of *Chusabin* or *Cassan* the great Bassa of *Carra-*
mania, who had caused most of the Countries in the lesser *Asia*, to cast off the Turkish yoke, but *Mahomet* sending great Forces against him under *Mahomet*

met

met Bassa, who after several conflicts spoiling the possessions of the Rebels in Arms, he so dealt with the chief of them, that by bribes and large promises, he prevailed with them to leave their ringleader, he was taken and brought in chains to *Constantinople*, where with most exquisite torments, he was put to death. The end of which dangerous Rebellion, gave the *Ottoman* Emperor more leisure to prosecute his wars in *Hungary*, to oppose whose Forces, the Christians were not wanting, for in an other Diet assembled, new supplies were granted by the Electoral Princes for the carrying on the war, toward which the Bishop of *Rome* contributed very largely, so that *Anno* 1600 the Christian Army early in the Spring took the field (though to breed delay therein the Turkish Bassa in the name of his master, had made many offers tending to peace) but e'r any notable action was performed, the renowned Lord *Palsie*, the greatest Commander of that Age dyed at his Castle of *Bibersperg*, whereupon the Lord *Swartzenburg* was by the Emperor appointed Governor of *Strigonium* in his stead, who to the great grief of the Army, soon after slain with a shot as he was reducing *Papa* to its obedience, it having a little before at the instigation of *De la Mot*, a seditious French Commander there in Garrison revolted from the Emperor, and yet stood neuter, not permitting the Turks to enter, yet was it again reduced notwithstanding the death of the Lord *Swartzenburg* and most of the Rebels Executed, after the severest manner that could be invented.

These things passing, the troubles in *Hungary* daily increasing, and the Turks were every where put to the worst, and amongst the rest the Bassa of *Sigeth* with five thousand of his Turks, and his head sent to the Emperor. *Jula* was likewise surprized, and

and the Bassa thereof with two *Sauzacks*, and Five Hundred common Souldiers slain, and now the Government of *Transilvania* being vacant (by the death of Cardinal *Battor* and the absence of the Prince) the Emperor confirmed it to the *Vayvod* of *Valachia*, who raising a great power went against the Prince who aided by the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonians*, was coming to try a field Battle for the recovery of his Inheritance, and in a set battle overthrew him with great slaughter of his men, himself hardly escaping; after which he seized upon the Countrey of *Moldavia*, causing all the inhabitants to swear Allegiance to him, when the better to incourage him to invade the *Turks* Dominions the Emperour not only confirmed him in that Principality also, but sent him six Thousand Men under the leading of *D. Petzen*, with a mass of mony to pay his Souldiers appointing him one of his Council, and cheif Intendant for those Countries, but he behaving himself roughly towards the *Transilvanian* Nobility, they sent Ambassadors to *Basta* the Emperors Lieutenant General praying, him to take then into the protection of the Emperor onely, and that they might obey no other Sovereign Prince, whereupon *Basta* after mature deliberation resolved to grant their desires, and to protect them from the fury of the *Vayvod*, whom he yet not able to appease by fair means he resolved to compel by force of Armes to acquiesce with what he determined, and therefore gathering such forces as he could with Eighteen Thousand well appointed Souldiers he awaited on the Frontiers of *Transilvania* his coming, and near to a Village called *Mivislo* adventured to give him Battle, though under his standard he had double the number, and after six hours desperate fighting put him to flight, with the loss of Ten Thousand of his men, taking likewise

several Prisoners, and a great spoil, yet nevertheless the *Vayvod* bating of his proud temper by the mediation of Friends they were afterwards reconciled. Yet the *Vayvod* jealous of the Imperialists as being also without cause perswaded thereto by the *Polonians*, to prevent as was suggested to him his being taken Prisoner, with a few of his followers fled into the fastness of the Mountains, whereupon one *Simon* was placed in his stead by the haughty Chancellor of *Poland*, which choice *Bassa* altogether disliking resolved to displace the upstart *Vayvod*, but the *Transilvanians* desirous of freedom, and in order to recover it raising many rumours portending the mischief intended against the Imperialists, at that time hindered his violent proceedings, so that for the future the whole matter was referred to the Emperour. The *Transilvanians* likewise casting themselves upon him, and when they perceived no remedy, desired that *Maximilian* the Arch-Duke might take upon him the Government of that Province; but whilst these affairs were in controversie, the Turks with a huge Army besieged *Canisia* a strong City of *Stira*, to the relief of which came the Imperial Army consisting of Forty Thousand Horse and Foot, composed of divers Nations, under the leading of Duke *Mercury* General of the Emperours Forces in *Hungary*, to oppose which *Ibrahim Bassa* drew out of his Trenches, thinking by their multitude to oppress the Christians, but was therein deceived, for after a bloody and doubtful fight for the space of eight hours victory declared her self against him, yet not so apparently but that the next day by reason of the discord amongst the Christian Captains, who at the Command of their General refused to charge the Turks in their strengths the scale was turned, and their

their Convoy of Provision upon its way to the Camp being taken by the *Tartars*, they were so straightned that after having layn still for the space of three dayes, they rose in the night but not so secretly but that the Turks following hard after them cut off Three Thousand of the rearmost, took several pieces of Cannon, and a great part of their Baggage, and afterwards had the City of *Canisa* yeilded to them upon condition that the Garrison should be safely convoyed over the River *Mur*, with Bag and Baggage, and hightened with this success they afterwards foraged the Countrey of *Stira*, for fear of whom the Inhabitants with such of their substance, as they conveniently carry with them fled to the Mountains, whereupon the Bassa sent forth a Proclamation commanding them to return, and that such as would willingly submit themselves to the Turkish obedience should be taken into safe protection, upon which Proclamation many of the half starved people returned and submitted themselves, but the ever renowned mirrour of Vertue and Valour, the Heroick Count *Serenus* being the man that the Bassa aimed at, as well knowing whilst he went free his new Conquests were slightly cemented to the rest, he the better to decoy the Noble Youth into his power wrote to him as followeth.

We *Ibraim* Bassa Chief Vizar Bassa, Cosen to the most Puissant Sultan *Mahomet*, to the Count *Serenus*, sendeth Greeting,

WE have often heretofore written to thee, concerning the matter thou knowest of, but what the cause is we received no answer we know not; yet could I not but write unto you again, that if thou canst be content to begin the matter aright, and to submit thy self to our protection we will be ready to receive thee: thou seest

what we foretold thee is now more then fulfilled, both upon thee and thine, which thou wouldest never believe; nevertheless for the staying the further effusion of blood as well of thy Subjects as ours, and to come to some good attonement, 'tis high time for thee to lay thine hand upon thine heart, and to consider how much more it concerneth thee then us, and that the benefit thereof redoundeth more unto thine then to ours, what our affections are towards thee Hierom the Vayvod can tell thee, &c.

This Letter the Count well enough knew were but an outward shew of Friendship, and therefore he thinking it not good to trust the Infidel, so long as he had his Sword in his hand, would not so much as dain to return him an answer, whereupon he in a great rage returned to *Belgrade* vaunting that if *Mahomet* so Commanded, he would the next year lay siege to *Vienna*, and so much extol'd his exploits to the great Sultan, that he commanded publick Triumphs for the space of four days in *Constantinople*, for joy of his good success in *Stira*, and sent the proud Bassa a Robe of Gold, and a leaders Staff set with Pearl and pretious Stones.

The loss of *Canisia* fore troubled the Christian inso much that *Paradiser* the Governour, who had so tamely yielded it into the hands of the Turks, coming to *Vienna* was there imprisoned, and many things being proved against him, his Ensign Bearer, Lieutenant, and the Mayor of the Town, they after many strict Examinations were at the command of the Emperour executed.

Notwithstanding the death of the Bassa of *Carra-man* in manner as aforesaid, the Rebellion was not altogether thereby extinguished but secretly kept alive by the countenance of the *Persian* Sophy, so that

that now it again began as if revived from its Embers to break out into a flame, and in a trice swept away several Towns, whereupon *Mahomet* sent to the *Persian* to demand for the more assurance of the League one of his Sons as Hostage, which was so evilly taken that the Sophy commanded the Turks Ambassador to be slain, and although that rigorous sentence was remitted, yet by the second Commandment of the Sophy he was bastinadoed, and in despite of him that sent him returned with great disgrace, the which though it highly offended *Mahomet*, yet he finding himself at that time not in a condition to revenge it, only blustered a little and to prevent the worst, put strong Garrisons into his Frontire Towns.

Anno 1601, The Christian Confederates brought a strong Army into the Field, for fear of which the Turkish General proposed many offers of Peace, but ere any was concluded, the said General *Ibrahim* Bassa died, when as the Christians not to omit any opportunity took divers strong places, and amongst the rest after a terrible battery, and the loss of Eight Thousand men *Alba Regalis*, one of the chiefest and strongest Cities of *Hungary*, into which the furious Souldiers entering through Streets of fire and over heaps of the slain, put all they met to the Sword, few or none except the Bassa being taken to mercy, enriched themselves with a great spoil, especially the Walloons, who spared not to rife the Tombs of the *Hungarian* Kings, which barbarity the Turks themselves had abstained from. Yet hardly was the spoil taken but news came that *Assan* Bassa made General in the stead of *Ibrahim*, was coming with a great Army to relieve it, whereupon Duke *Mercury* drew out his Forces and in a mortal Battle slew the Bassa, and most of his men, taking his

rich Camp, and a great number of Prisoners, and amongst the rest Fifty of the Rebels that fled from *Papa*, who yet at the instance of the said Duke were pardoned.

The Christians lightened with this success, were now resolved to attempt the recovery of *Canisla* from before which (after they had a long time besieged it, and layed open with their furious battery several breaches, killing in the several assaults a number of Turks) they were by the unseasonableness of the weather obliged to depart, to the great grief of the Commanders, though joy of the Souldiers, who through the excessive Cold that then happened were become unserviceable, many of them being frozen to Death in the Trenches. The Turks now greatly dismayed and almost driven out of *Hungary*, unhappy chance turned the Christians Swords, upon themselves for although *Michael* the *Vayvod* of *Valachia* was reconciled to the Emperour, yet the *Transilvanians* desirous to be Governed by *Sigismund* their natural Prince, cast *Basta* the Emperours Lieutenant, and by him appointed Governour of that Province, into Irons; and immediately submitted themselves to *Sigismund*, and likewise imprisoned several of the Nobility, whom they suspected to favour the Emperour, returning again to the Turkish obedience, and this by the contrivance of the Chancellor of *Polonia*. Yet at the mediation of Friends *Basta* was set at Liberty; who thoroughly enraged at the disgrace done to him, and the indignity offered thereby to the Emperour his Master, raised an Army and joyning with *Michael* the *Vayvod*, invaded *Transilvania*, and in a dreadful Battle overthrew Prince *Sigismund* with great slaughter of his men, upon which *Claudiopolis* and divers other Cities

ties of *Transylvania* returned to the Emperours obedience.

After this great victory the *Vayvod* still envying at the success of the Imperialists, and secretly grudging against *Basta*, by Letters held secret correspondence with the Bassa of *Temeswar*, intending in consideration of *Valachia*, *Moldavia*, and *Transylvania*, to become the Turks Tributary, and by the assistance of the Bassa's drive out the Imperialists, to prevent which it was agreed that he should be sent Prisoner to *Vienna*. In order to which a *Walloon* Captain was sent into his Tent with sixty followers, but he making resistance was by the said Captain slain, which caused a great uproar amongst his Souldiers, but when they understood the cause by Letters produced under his own hand, their anger was allayed, themselves protesting that had they known so much they would long before dispatched him. After the Death of the *Vayvod* the *Transilvanians* wholly submitted to themselves to *Basta*. Yet continued not long in that obedience ere stirred up by some restless spirits they again Revolted and Proclaimed *Sigismund*, denying obedience to any other; at which suddain mutation of this unstable people *Basta* not a little troubled to prevent his being again imprisoned, (as he had been formerly by them, withdrew himself with his Followers, into a strong Town on the Frontiers, from whence he by Letters advertized the Emperour of what had happened, and requested him to send him speedy Aid, whereby he might be able to reduce them to their former obedience.

During these troubles in *Transylvania*, the Turks taking the advantage did mischief in *Hungary*, yet were often met with by the Imperialists, and amongst the rest the Bassa of *Agria*, as he was going to besiege *Toccae* with ten thousand Turks, who being encountered by *Ferrant Gonzaga* the Emperors Lieutenant was overthrown, with the slaughter of almost all his followers; nor was *Mahomet* the Emperor less perplexed with the *Carramanian* and *Natolian* Rebels, who now getting to a great head under the leading of one *Scrivano*, had given several overthrows to his Bassas sent against them, and spread their borders wide, drawing into their Confederacy all *Asia* the Lesser, and a part of the Greater, and at the same time the *Janizaries* were in an uproar in *Constantinople*, threatening the Emperor and charging him with Cowardise, and the neglect of his affairs, to appease whom *Cicala* Bassa was obliged to bestow amongst them a great sum of money, and the Musti or chief *Mahometan* Priest declaring that all these disorders happened, for that *Mahomet* their Prophet was offended at the excess of wine that was drunk in the City; whereupon Proclamation was made that upon pain of death all those that had any wine in their houses, the Ambassadors of the Christian Princes excepted, should immediately bring it forth and stave it; whereupon such abundance was spilt, that boats in the high streets might have swam in wine of all sorts.

By this time *Bassa* having received Forces from the Emperor, had so straitned the *Transylvanians*, that *Sigismund* sent to offer him all the Towns that were in his possession, at the time of his being expelled *Transylvania*, of which offer *Zachel Moyses* the Princes Lieutenant, having notice, resolved not to suffer any agreement upon such conditions, and therefore

therefore with the Forces under his Command composed of *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Tránsvyvanians*, he hastened to oppress *Basta* in his Camp, but finding him as ready as himself, a dreadful battle was fought between them, wherein *Basta* with his *Germans* prevailed, making a great slaughter of the enemy; To excuse which rash action *Sigismund* sent several of his Nobility to the Imperial Camp, offering to perform what ever he had promised, and to go in person to the Emperor, which once put in practise all the Countrey returned again to the Emperors obedience, nor was *Valachia* at this time less troubled about Election of a *Vayvod*, that Province being divided into two Factions, the one was for choosing *Radol* a Noble man, affecting the Emperors interest, and the other for Electing *Jeremias*, who had promised to hold his Province Tributary of the Turk; whereupon many Battles were fought with various success, but in the end *Rodolph* assisted by the Emperors Forces overthrew his competitor, and obtained a great Victory; in which battle two of the Turkish Bassas were slain, with all their followers, and soon after, having overthrown a great power of the *Tartars*, he recovered the Principality; nor was *Hungary* free from the Turkish outrages, who bearing themselves upon their small success, attempted to surprize *Alba Regalis*, but were by the Christians overthrown with great slaughter, and soon after two hundred of their Waggon laden with provision and Amunition, was taken by Count *Serinus*, on its way to *Canisia*, and about the same time took *Ali* Bassa Governour of *Pesth* prisoner, and with him seventy thousand *Hungarian* Ducates, which Bassa for his ransom over and above offered 300000 Sultanies.

Maho-

Mahomet not a little troubled with the continual news of his Losses in *Hungary*, and resolving to revenge himself on the Christians sent *Hassan Basha*, with an Army of one hundred and fifty thousand *Turks* and *Tartars*, who upon their arrival, passing the *Danubius*, laid siege to *Alba-Regalis*, of which the Count *Ysolon* was Governour, when raising three Batteries, they incessantly thundered against the wall and Bulwarks, and was by the Defendants answered in the same Language, and by frequent Sallies, cut off a number of the enemies, but having all their walls on the West side beaten down, and most of the Souldiers either killed or disabled, the Count himself wounded in the thigh, their powder being almost spent, and no hopes of relief, they capitulated to deliver the Town upon condition that they should depart thence with all their Goods and be conducted in safety to the neighbouring Garrison, which was sworn to by all the Turkish Commanders; but having once entred the City, they not only spoil and plunder it, but destroyed and put to the sword all the Souldiers and Citizens, sparing none alive but the Count himself, and some few Captains, whom they sent in Chains to *Constantinople*, insomuch that the streets flowed with the blood of three thousand Christians, in revenge of this loss, the Lord *Rusworm* with thirty thousand men laid siege to the strong City of *Buda*, and took the base Town, where he got store of Riches, and afterwards laid hard siege to the upper City, but finding it a work of great difficulty, he resolved to turn his Forces upon *Pesth* a strong Garrison lying on the other side the River, from whence the Turks with their great Ordnance annoyed his Army before *Buda*, which place he without much difficulty won, and then again returned

turned to the siege of the upper City of *Buda*, but having lost eight thousand of his men, and having notice that the *Tartars* were at hand with a great Army, resolving to relieve it, he raised his siege, having first repulsed the *Vizar* Bassa before *Pesth*, with the loss of half his Forces.

Scrivano having rent the Turks Dominions in *Asia*, by taking from them their principal Cities, fell sick, of which sickness he dyed, to the great grief of the Rebels, who nevertheless chose his younger brother to lead them, who soon after in a great battle overthrew the Turkish Army, that was sent against him, under the leading of *Hassan* Bassa, and slew the Bassa himself, together with almost all his followers; whereupon *Mahomet* doubting his Empire in *Asia*, was obliged to withdraw his Forces out of *Hungary*, yet incited the *Tartars* by frequent inroads to busie the Imperialists, till he could be at leisure to return his Captains with a greater power, who according to their wonted mischievous natures committed sundry outrage, burning and destroying all in their way, but in the end were most of them cut off by the Christians against whose joynt Forces, they were no wayes able to stand, as being rather inured to spoil than fight.

Anno 1603 The Turks in the several Garrisons roaming abroad in the depth of winter, when *Danubius* it self was frozen over, committed many outrages in *Hungaria*, but in their return, being met by Colonel *Coblonitz*, a great number of them were cut in pieces, and all the booty recovered, so that for want of Victuals *Buda* was greatly distressed, but see again the change of fortune, for the Turks coming out of *Buda* upon the Frozen River, braving the Garrison of *Pesth*, the Souldiers sallied out upon them, but being overpowred were two hundred of them

them slain, yet this loss was shortly revenged by the Garrison Souldiers, who surprizing several of the Turkish Nobility, sporting with their wives in the hot Baths not far from *Buda*, put all the men to the sword, and suffered the women to escape naked into the City, to whose flight, fear added wings, and so with the spoil of their rich garments returned in Triumph, but want of Victuals increasing, they were obliged to feed upon all manner of unclean things, when at the same time their neighbours of *Buda* having received a great Convoy of Victuals, derided them, and sent three or four thundering Peals of Cannon over the river against the Town, but their mirth was soon spoiled, for by the carelessness of the Engenier several barrels of Powder taking fire not only killed a great number of them, but likewise overthrew four yards of their Wall, and thus the Winter passed over with many skirmishes, and the taking of several places in *Hungary* on either side; When early in the Spring the new Vayvod of *Valachia* over-run the rich Countrey of *Silistria*, reducing the greatest part of it to his obedience, and soon after *Colloninitz* gave the Turks another great overthrow, and took a great booty on its way to *Canisia*, and afterwards laid siege to *Baboz*, but finding it strongly Garrisoned, and furnished for a long siege, he withdrew from before it, yet he surprized many of the Turks and intercepted several Waggon laden with provision, about which time news came that the *Janizaries* were up in Arms at *Constantinople*, as likewise *Sphai*, and that they committed several outrages on the Bassas, and spared not to abuse their master, telling him they would (seeing he neglected to) reform his Government, swearing that unless he would deliver into their power the

Capi Aga, and such others as they should require, they would turn all into confusion, which threats so scared the Pusillanimous Tyrant that he was contented to yield to their demands, who having got those favorites they most inveighed against, they with all despight put them to death; whereupon the Tyrant not to be outdone in cruelty, caused several of the *Bassa's* and chief men of his Court, whom he knew the Souldiers affected, to be slain, which caused such a hatred against him, that many of his great *Bassa's* conspired to depose him, and set up his son *Mahomet* in his stead, which they were the more animated to put in practice, for that he had at the same time made a dishonourable peace with the *Asian* Rebels, giving most of their ring-leaders great Commands, whilst those that had faithfully served him were rejected, of which intent of his men of war, the Tyrant having notice, caused his son, and so many as he could understand were any wayes concerned therein to be put to death.

These things happening in the foregoing year, the year following the Tartars in great numbers intending to invade *Hungary*, were denied passage by the *Polonians*, whereupon they resolved to make their way through *Valachia*, with whom the *Vayvod* had many hard conflicts, killing at one time three thousand of them, but their number being great, he was forced at length to let them pass; who upon their arrival in *Hungary* and *Stira*, made great spoil e'r *Collonitz* could take the field, who at length joyning with Count *Serinus*, gave them a fatal overthrow, and recovered about five thousand Christian Captives; yet those that escaped from the battle roving about did great harm, till such time as they were met with by the Lord *Nadasti* and his *Hassars*, who with a furious charge overset their battle, and brought

brought them to final destruction, when soon after *Collonitz* returning fell upon Two Thousand Turks all or most of which he slew, and then passing on besieged the Castle of *Loqua* which in a short time he took, but by neglect of the Soldiers enjoyed not long, for the Palizadoes being fired set fire to the Castle and laid it wast. After which he marched towards the Castle of *Boulouvenar*, upon whose approach the Garrison fled, but in their flight being met were overthrown with great slaughter, and such as were taken Prisoners together withall their substance brought back to the Castle, into which the Collonel having put Four Hundred *Haducks*, and Two Hundred *Hussars*, returned to *Comara*, where with a great Booty he arrived in safety.

Turning a little from the troubles of *Hungary*, a Countrey subject to the continual Inroads of the Turks, I shall return to *Transilvania*, which by this time was for the most part reduced to the Emperours obedience. For *Moyse* the Rebel after his being overthrown by *Basta*, doubting his safety in the Castle of *Solemose*, delivered it to the Turks and fled to *Temeswar*, a City in their possession of which *Basta* the Emperours Lieutenant having notice resolved to recover the Castle, which the Turks supposed impregnable by reason of its scituation, as being founded upon a steep and hard Rock, but the *Germans* having by strength of Arms drawn their Cannon to the top of a little Hill, not far distant from it, after a terrible battery made had it delivered to them, the Turks well perceiving they were no longer able to keep it.

This strong place thus gained many of less account that held out against *Basta* surrendered, whereupon assembling the principal men of *Transilvania*,

Transylvania, he in a short Oration admonished them to be stedfast to the interest of the Emperour, and not to have any regard to the faithless and wavering Turks, &c. To which they replied, That they were willing to obey the Emperour in all things, but that their people in continual Wars being wasted, they desired him to consider how little able they were to keep an Army in the Field, without which the Countrey could not be defended; but if the Emperour would protect them, and secure them with a standing Army, they would yearly pay towards the defraying of the charges Fifteen Thousand *Hungarian* Ducats, and furnish them with all things necessary. It being a thing more Honourable and Profitable for a Prince moderately to use his Subjects, then for covetousness to devour them in one day, and in their loss to lose himself for ever. This their offer was by *Basta* accepted, and the minds of the people by many perswasive arguments kept in their dutiful Allegiance to the Emperour. But whilst peace was expected on all sides *Moyse* the Rebel, with a great power of *Turks* and *Tartars* entered *Transylvania*, at such time as *Basta* was absent dreaming of no such matter, and seizing upon *Wisceborongh*, some other places of small importance, his name began to spread wide. Inso-much that *Mahomet* the *Sultan* understanding what he had done, promised to send him more Aid, and to make him his Leintenant if he prospered in his Wars, which puffed up the Rebel to that height that hearing of *Basta* being with small Forces in the Town of *Somosfnar*, he resolved to march thither and besiege him, but that experienced Captain knowing how much it impaired the credit of a General, to be inclosed within Walls, upon notice of his approach, after he had put that place in a posture of

de-

defence departed thence, and after having received a supply of eight Thousand men from the *Vayvod* of *Valachia*, he went to oppose the Torrent, but ere he could prevent it the City of *Claudinople* fell into the Rebels hands, who used the Citizens with all manner of cruelties. Yet at length meeting with them before he was aware, fell into their danger, not expecting them to be above half the number, he found them so that he not exceeding Nine Thousand, and the Rebels not less then Thirty Thousand, when he had done all that became a valiant Souldier retired in good order, leaving his Baggage, Tents, and Artilery with the dead Bodies of One Thousand of his men as prey to the Conquerours; but they more greedy of the spoil then to pursue him, fell to plundering the Tents with such eagerness, that he thereof advertized, and turning his recollected Forces suddainly upon them, who dreamed of nothing less entered amongst them unarmed as they were, every one with his hands full of spoiles, made such a slaughter that scarcely a third part of them escaped, so that by their carelessness within less then four hours, the vanquishers were vanquished and amongst the slain fell *Moyse* himself, whose head was after fixed upon a Launce and set up upon the Walls of *Carolstadt*.

This Rebellion suppressed another Rebel aided by the Turks *Tartars* and *Cossacks* to the number of Six Thousand, made head about *Lippa*, but Three Thousand *Haducks* being sent out against him, his Forces were defeated and himself, for the safety of his own Life glad to fly, after which good success One Hundred of the Rebels Insignes, and the Horse on which *Moyse* fought, trapped richly with Gold and Pretious Stones were as a grateful present sent to the Emperour, and afterward the Army under the

the Command of *Bassa*, being increased to Twenty Thousand, he with Five and Twenty pieces of Cannon marched to besiege *Temeswar*, but ere he long had lain before it, by his Souldiers eating of green Fruit, the Bloody Flux raged so in his Camp, that death triumphing every where over his men he was forced to depart.

Spring being come the Christian Army in *Hungaria* being Five and Thirty Thousand strong took the Field, under the Command of the Lord *Rusworm*, who having carefully provided for the several Garrisons incamped near to *Pesth* at what time an Army of One Hundred Thousand Turks shewed it self on the other side the *Danubius*, for fear of which several of the Garrison Souldiers of *Pesth* fled over to *Buda*, and there were highly entertained by the *Bassa*, who thought to use them as decoys to train their fellows over, but this project failed though at that time their wants were great, though not long, for in spight of the Turks endeavours to hinder them, two Convoys of Provision and other necessities, the one by Water, and the other by Land were brought thither, at what time a Turkish Captain upon some displeasure flying from *Alba Regalis* to *Rab*, informed the Governour that if he would march thither he would shew him an easie way to surprize the Suburbs if not the City it self, whereupon the Christian Souldiers giving credit to the Infidel by his direction succeeded in taking the Suburb as they wished, and in it a great Booty, but despairing in any further advantage returned with great joy to *Rab*.

The Rebels in *Asia* being again in Arms, *Mahomet* finding himself not strong enough to suppress them by Force, laboured by his Ambassadors to re-

concile them offering such advantageous terms of peace as should to all men seem reasonable, but they not caring to trust the Tyrant rejected his offers and would have no peace, whereupon what the Infidels refused he thought fit to offer to the Christians, but on this side he demands so unreasonable (*viz.* that in consideration of his delivering up *Agria* and *Canisia* he might have *Transilvania*, *Strigonium* and *Pesth*) that the Emperour would not accord to any peace upon such terms, so that the treaty broke off, upon which Hostilities that for a while ceased began afresh, so that *Collonitz* with Six Thousand Imperialists falling upon the Rear of the Turks Army, cut off seven Hundred men, taking a great spoil and many Prisoners, amongst whom was *Saxur Beg*, a man of great repute amongst the Turks, who upon Examination confessed the design *Hassan Bassa* had to besiege *Strigonium*, and *Pesth*, and the number of Turks and *Tartars* that were daily expected to joyn him, of which General *Rusworm* being informed, as also of the state of the Turks Army, and also that upon some discontent the *Tartars* were returned into their own Countrey, to the great weakening of the Bassa's Forces, wherefore to prevent their putting a Convoy into *Buda*, he caused several Forts to be built, and permitting the Turks to pass over the *Danubius* by a Bridge trained them into an Ambush layed in the Flags and Officers for that purpose, so that with little loss on the part of the Christians, 10000 Turks were slain, drowned in the River, and taken Prisoners; so that a great booty consisting of eighteen Ensigns, two Cornets, four Brass peices, much rich Armour, and many Waggons loaden with Provision fell into the hands of the Christians, whereby the

Turks

Turks were so much discouraged that they for a long while attempted nothing.

Affairs standing thus in *Hungary*, *Asia* was still in a flame, especially upon the revolt of one of *Mahomets* great Bassa's, whom he had despightfully deposed from being General, of which confusion the *Persian* King taking the advantage, layed siege to *Tauris* a strong City, taken by *Amurath* from his Father, as is before-mentioned, the which by the Aid of several Christians, after a terrible battery made against it he took, so that the Turk on every side beset, was greatly perplexed in mind not knowing which way to turn himself, nor fared he better by Sea for the *Asian* Rebels, under pretence of a reconciliation and transporting themselves into *Europe* to serve him in *Hungaria*, seized upon many of his Gallies sent to Transport them, as also the great Duke of *Florence's* Admiral meeting with *Amurat Rais* an old Pirate and *Mahomets* Admiral overthrew his Squadron of Gallies, taking some and sinking others, so that few escaped: and his great Army in *Hungary* after the loss of Thirty Thousand Men in divers conflicts with the Christian, atchieving nothing worth mention, except putting a Convoy of Victuals into *Buda*, returned to *Belgrade* under the covert of darkness, in manner of a fearful flight which was no sooner perceived by the Lord *Rusworm* who had often in vain urged the Bassa to fight, but he sent his Light Horsemen to pursue them who cutting off the Rearmost for many Miles, returned with a considerable booty, after which he layed siege to *Harvan*, and had it (after several fierce assaults delivered into his possession, the Garrison and Citizens, as it was agreed on marching out were conducted by certain Troops of *Hussars* to *Solwork*, when having put a strong Garrison into it,

and relieved such other places as he thought convenient, and now the depth of Winter coming on he broke up his Army, sending as a certain token of several successful exploits sixty four of the Turks Ensigns, to the Arch Duke *Matthias*, so that till the next Spring nothing of moment happened.

No sooner was the frozen Earth freed from the cold embraces of Winter, but new stirs began in *Transilvania* as likewise in *Moldavia*, where the *Tartars* in great number destroying the Countrey were overthrown, and almost all of them slain; at what time *Zellali* the chief of the *Asian* Rebels whom *Mahomet* by great rewards had allured to his interest, entered the Kingdom of *Bosna* with a great power of his followers, where having trained *Zeffer Bassa* the Governour thereof into his danger, he set upon him and slew most of his men, and seized upon the Kingdom, upon notice of which *Mahomet* in a great rage sent his Letters to him, commanding him forthwith to repair to *Constantinople*, but he not thinking it convenient to trust the Tyrant with his head, he returned for answer that he was already possessed of the Kingdom promised him for his service, and that he as a Loyal Subject would keep it to his behoof, with which answer *Mahomet* was forced to content himself, as fearing that if he should go about to expulse him by force he would revolt to the Christian Emperour, and so prove a more dangerous Enemy to him in *Europe* then he had done in *Asia*. Wherefore to prevent the worst he resolved if he could obtain such conditions as might sute with his greatness to have Peace with the Emperour, in order to which Commissioners met at *Buda*, and many Presents were given and received on either side, the Turks expressing great joy for the hopes they conceived, that at length they should rest from
the

the toils of War but after many proposals on either side, the demands of the Turkish *Sultan* was so unreasonable that nothing was concluded, so that after a short truce Hostilities began afresh, when as the Turks seeking to wast *Valachia* were with great slaughter by the *Vayvod* overthrown, at what time the Lord *Nadasti* the Valiant and Renowned Captain of the Christians died, to the grief of all the Confederate Princes there not being a man left whose Council, and Conduct in Martial affaires equalled his, but this grief was somewhat alayed upon certain News that *Mahomet* the great Sultan was likewise departed this Life, dying about the latter end of *January*, Anno 1604. When he had lived 44 years, and thereof Reigned 8, being altogether pusillanimous and given up to pleasure, and lyes buried in a Chappel of white Marble at *Constantinople*, near to the Church of St. *Sophia*; in whose stead *Achmat* his Third Son was saluted by reason of the death of his two Elder Brethren, one of which was strangled by the Commandment of his unnatural Father and the other very young died a natural death.

CHAP. XVIII.

*The Life of Achmat the Eighth Emperour
of the Turks, and first of that Name.*

UPON the death of *Mahomet* the Third his Son *Achmat* then but fifteen years of Age, was by the great Bassa's and men of War saluted Emperour, having purchased the good will of the latter at two Millions and a half of Aspers ; upon which after he was solemnly Crowned , he sent Ambassadors to the King of *Persia*, as he likewise did to the Emperour , but according to the proud humour of his Predecessors his demands were so unreasonable, that they would not be accorded to, neither in *Europe* nor *Asia*, whereupon the Turks ere the Treaty was ended with the Emperour , under pretence of Friendship indeavoured to surprize *Pesth*, but by the vigilancy of the Garrison Souldiers were put by their purpose, which Treacherous dealing made manifest the Treaty was utterly broken off, whereupon great preparations were made for War on either side, during which time the *Persian* King was not idle, prosecuting his Wars had recovered almost all that the Turks had taken from his Predecessors. Yet the Turks lessened his victory, and the more to amuse the Christians spread a false report, that near unto *Babylon* his Army was overthrown, and himself taken Prisoner, not forgetting to magnifie the Forces of their Emperour, who indeed for his years was very active in the affairs of

Government though cruel withal towards his own Subjects, and farther they gave it out that at once he intended to invade with puissant Armies, both *Hungary* and *Persia*; purposing to annex them to the *Ottoman* Empire: but these great words (though in truth the Christians were more negligent in their preparations than the occasion required) proved but Air.

But leaving the Turks awhile I shall survey the miseries of the once fertile Countrey of *Transylvania*, which now through civil discord amongst themselves, and Rebellion against the Emperour was so spoiled, that Famine coming fast on them for want of the Earths due increase, it by long continuance reduced them to that extremity that the Peasants and poorer sort of people, having eaten up for dainties all the Dogs, Cats, Mice, Rats, and live Horses, fell to eating such starved Beasts as through want they found to have perished in the Woods and Fields, and at length when nothing was left they fed upon human flesh, men eating men, and Women their Children; yea Thieves and Malefactors hanged for their Villanies, were by the miserable people cut down and eaten, to remedy which the Emperour caused to be assembled the States of the Province, wherein it was accorded that all Hostilities set apart, the Gentlemen of *Transylvania* having by their Rebellion forfeited their Lives and Lands should be pardoned as to Life, with three fourth parts of their Lands reserved unto them, and that for ready money they might of the Emperour redeem the fourth part, but concerning the moveables of such as were dead in the time of trouble, and already confiscated to the Emperour, they should so remain, and that they should pay their tenths of their Wines and Fruits to the

Emperour, and that no other then the Romish Religion should be exercised in that Province, and that *Clausenburg* and *Cronstad* should within three weeks after pay the one Twenty Thousand Dollars, and the other Eight Thousand, and that the Governours of those Towns should put their Keys into the hands of the Emperours Lieutenant. And lastly, That the Gentlemen who would not be accounted in the number of the Rebels, should for the safety of their persons take Letters of Pardon from the said Lieutenant. This pacification gave some little hopes to the distressed *Transylvanians*, but it lasted not long, for the Nobility weary of the *German* yoke soon revolted from the Emperours obedience, and again took up Arms, which plunged them into their former miseries; wherein for a while I must leave them and return again to the Turkish affaires.

The several Hostilities having banished all hopes of Peace, several skirmishes passed between the Christians and Turks, in which the latter were for the most part put to the worst, and had been more distressed had not the Imperial Souldiers mutined, and for want of pay spoiled the Countrey of *Austria* even within the sight of *Vienna*, the Suburbs of which City they had sacked, had not the Governour come against them with a great power, and forced them to lay down their Arms, causing the Ring-leaders to be punished with death and imprisonment. But whilst these things were doing *Zellaly* was driven out of *Bosna*, by *Zeffer Bassa* sent in order thereto by the *Sultan* with a great power, yet the better to calm his high Spirit, and to make the *Asian* Rebels have a better opinion of the young Emperour, he was made Governour of *Temeswar*, and so became a mortal Enemy to the Christians,

his

his first undertaking being to surprize *Lippa*, but therein found such bad success, that he hardly recovered his own Garrison, leaving most of his men dead behind him, and soon after a terrible fire happening in *Canisia* layed it almost wast, firing the Magazine of Powder and blowing up the Cittadel, Towers, Houses, and Wall, so that had any forces of the Christians been near in that General consternation, they might easily have surprized it, after which lost the Turks sustained another for Two Hundred of the Garrison of *Buda*, going abroad to forrage, were by the sallying of the Garrison of *Pesth* all cut off.

During these stirs the restless *Transylvanians* having called to their assistance divers Turks and *Tartars*, had seized upon several strong places, driving out the Imperial Garrisons to repress whose insolency *Basta* sent the *Haducks*, under the leading of *Horwal* their Captain, who lying in ambush for them who were but few in number, and easily overthrown, as being by Famine bereaved of their strength, they were most of them put to the Sword; after which the *Haducks* robbed the poor Villagers at their pleasure, killing such as refused to contribute to their greedy desires. So that all was again reduced to the same extremity as before, and when the said Captain was by the Lieutenant Commanded to restrain his men from committing any more such outrages, he answered, that it was impossible to keep Souldiers in order amidst extremity of Famine, for that the belly was an inexorable usurer, which took pity upon nothing but with great rigor exacted that which it thought due for the nourishment of it self.

The Forces of the Christians increasing in *Hungary*, the Bassa of *Buda* to retard their proceeding made many fair shews of the great desires his Lord the Emperor had of peace, and the better to make it be believed, he wrote a dissembling letter signifying as much to the Governour of *Strigonium*, but his fair Glozing was not of force to lull the Christians into a security; which hypocrisie of the Bassa's soon after appeared by his surprizing *Simmin*, a Castle held by the Christians, upon the banks of the *Danubius*, and setting it on fire.

The *Persian* King having joyned hands with *Caracas* the chief Leader of the Rebels, a man of great power, in a set Battle overthrew *Cicala* Bassa, with the loss of almost all his Turks, taking the Bassa's son prisoner, by secret Messengers invited the bordering Nations to revolt from the Turkish obedience, to prevent which, the same Bassa was with another huge Army sent into those parts, where in a short space, he received two several overthrows, in which, besides what he lost in the first battle, seventy thousand Turks perished; so that now the Terror the *Persian* breathed even upon *Constantinople* it self, having over-run the greatest part of the Turks Dominions in *Asia*, at what time *Achmat* fell sick of the small Pox at *Constantinople*, and hardly recovered, when during the time of his sickness it was agreed amongst the Bassas that his brother *Mustapha* the only survivor of the *Ottoman* family if he had dyed, should have been taken out of the *Seraglio*, where he remained no better then a prisoner, and have been proclaimed Emperor, nor would the Souldiers believe but that he was dead, till such time as he recovering his strength, rode for their better satisfaction through most of the Principal streets of the Imperial City of *Constantinople*.

The *Persian* still prevailing, and it being rumoured, that he advanced apace at the head of one hundred thousand fighting men, to whom *Bagages* the discontented *Bassa* had joyned himself, *Achmat* sent *Hassan Bassa* his General to maintain the wars in *Hungary*, and *Cicala Bassa* (notwithstanding he had been thrice overthrown) against the *Persian* and *Asian* Rebels; but amidst his great preparation the *Tartarian Cham* sent him word that he could not come to his assistance in person, but that he would send his son with a great power into *Hungary*, (now the reason that this great Monarch is so ready at all times to serve the Turk, is for that they often interchange in Marriages, and that if the *Ottoman* family fail, the Empire descends to the *Tartar Cham*, and lastly, which indeed is the greatest motive, by reason of the large Pension that Prince living in a needy Country receives yearly from the Turkish Emperor.)

To oppose the *Turks* and *Tartars*, *Rodolphus* the Emperor sent *Maximilian* his nephew in the quality of an Ambassador to the Pope and Princes of *Italy*, to crave aid, who upon his arrival at *Rome*, was honourably received, and after having finished his negotiation, sent back with many presents and a full assurance of a speedy supply, the Pope for his part having promised out of his Treasury 150000 Crowns, to be paid towards the defraying the charges of the war, in which he was not less than his word; but by this time the *Tartars* being upon their march towards *Hungary*, (where *Hassan Bassa* was with a great power of *Turks* arrived) and denied passage through *Polonia*, brake violently into *Valachia*, miserably spoiling and destroying the Country, to abate whose fury the *Valachians* aided by *Bassas* Forces still following them in the rear, cut off a great number of them, yet at length they passed into *Hungary*, and there joyned the *Bassas* Forces, whereupon (after several

veral skirmishes, and the taking of some (not important) places on both sides) he set down with all his power before *Strigomium*, to prevent whose intrenching, the Christians Sallyed out, killing many of them, and driving the rest from their works, upon news of which siege, *Basta* taking a new oath of the *Transylvanians*, came with all his Forces to endeavour its Relief, who upon his arrival confronted the enemy, and raising a huge Fort of Earth, not far from their Camp, from thence with several Pieces of Cannon greatly annoyed them, so that what with continual sallies of the besieged, and the skirmishes *Bastas* Souldiers had with them after a tedious siege, and the loss of twenty thousand men, the haughty *Bassa* raised his Camp, and departed towards *Buda*, *Basta* still following them, and cutting off a great number of such as marched in the rear, and took several prisoners of note, yet such was the fear, that the Turks brought upon *Harvan*, during their besieging *Strigomium* that the Garrison abandoned it, carrying with them all their moveables, and several Pieces of Cannon, though the Turks had attempted nothing against it.

During these troubles in *Hungary*, *Bethlem Habor*, chief of the Rebels in *Transylvania* assisted by *Beckberes Bassa*, with four thousand *Turks*, entered the Province, to have taken possession thereof, in the absence of *Basta*, but being incountered by Count *Tambire*, when he suspected no such matter, he was overthrown, and a thousand of his men slain, himself and the *Bassa* hardly escaping, and three dayes after the said Count, lighting on several Troops of *Turks* sent to the assistance of the Rebels, by the *Bassa* of *Temeswar*, put most of them to the sword, yet the Rebellion ceased not so, for one *Botschaya* discontented *German*, having drawn a
great

great number of desperate fellows to take part with him, and countenanced by the Grand Signiour, took the field in the upper Hungary, against whom *Belgiasia* a valiant Captain advanced with such Forces as he in haste could muster up, but such was his ill hap, that joyning battle he was overthrown by the Rebels, and most of his Souldiers slain, after which defeat of the Imperialists the City of *Cassonia* was surrendered to the Rebels, upon notice of which *Basta* having gathered a considerable Army marched against *Botschay*, to put a stop to his proceedings e'r he possessed himself of any more of the Hungarian Cities, yet the people Generally favouring their cause which wore a mask of Religion and Liberty, the number daily increased, and notwithstanding the diligence of *Basta*, many strong holds were put into their hands, yet after a tedious march, the renowned Lieutenant, put to flight the forerunners of their Army, and after many difficulties, and the loss of several of his Souldiers, came to a pitched field, of which after a cruel and bloody fight he won, putting *Botschay* and his Rebel followers to flight, with great slaughter, and by that means recovered many Cities and Castles that had cast off the Emperors obedience, and taken part with the Rebels.

The Turks in *Persia* fared little otherwise then those in Hungary, for *Cicala* Bassa, with all his Forces were overthrown by the *Persian* King, and the City of *Babylon*, now called *Bagdat* taken, of which he sent to advertize the *German* Emperor, intreating him to joyn hands with him for abating the *Turks* pride, which he was resolutely determined to do, resolving not to give over the war till he had stripped him out of all his Cities in *Asia*, and therefore desired the Emperor to send an Ambassador to confer

confer with him about a lasting peace, which was accordingly done; nor were they all the troubles the Turkish Empire sustained, for by reason of some differences between the Bassas of *Damasco* and *Aleppo*, they wage mortal battle one with the other, wherein the latter was overthrown, and flying to his City, there besieged, till compelled therto by famine, he yielded to what the Bassa of *Damasco* demanded; about what time Sultan *Achmats* first son was born, for which there was great rejoycing at *Constantinople*.

Anno 1605. The troubles in *Hungary* and *Transylvania* more and more increased, the former being occasioned by the Bishops (in their late assembly) passing a decree that all of the reformed Religion should be burnt, or banished, against which wicked Decree, though the Nobility of the Kingdom openly protested against, yet were their Churches seized, and Publick and Private worship forbidden, as also the reading of the Bible; to redress which grievances, *Basta* promised redress, but *Botschay* having made them a stirrup to help him into the saddle would hearken to no peace, unless *Transylvania* might be delivered to him, and that the Lieutenant of *Hungary* might be a *Hungarian* born, and that all offices might be bestowed upon *Hungarians*, and the Souldiers of other Nations withdraw except such as were in Garrison, and those not to pass their appointed limits; and lastly, that *Hungarian* Souldiers should receive the Emperors pay, and that when ever an Assembly of the Estates was held at *Presburg*, the Emperor himself should be there in person. These proposals were sent to *Basta* by two *Hungarians*, but without success, whereupon all manner of Hostilities were used, and more spoil made

in a short time, then the Turks had done in many years.

These intestine troubles gave the Turks opportunity to possess themselves of the Cities of *Vacia* and *Vicegrade*, and committed great outrages in many places, and what was more to the disadvantage of the Emperor, the *Haducks* his chief strength favouring the Rebels, revolted from him, which *Basta* perceiving, and finding his Forces daily to decrease, procured of the Emperor a General pardon for all offences past, as well Temporal as Ecclesiastical, promising upon their submission to restore them to their Liberties, privileges, and Religious worship as formerly exercised, and that no man should be molested, by vertue of any Decree made by the Bishops, &c. this pardon was proclaimed with the beat of Drum and sound of Trumpet in several places upon which some of the Nobility, whose Estates lay in danger to be spoiled by the Souldiers, came in and submitted themselves, yet the Rebels Army was no whit lessened, but rather increased, insomuch that the *Haducks* drawing themselves apart besieged *Sacinar*, in which was an Imperial Garrison, and after divers assaults took it, and marching from thence indeavoured to have surpris'd the strong Castle of *Tocay*, but their design was frustrated by the stout resistance of those in Garrison; but that which had like to have proved worst of all to *Basta* was the mutiny of his own Souldiers, which he hardly appeased with a great sum of money.

The *Haducks* still roaming about as men greedy of prey, lay siege to *Fileck*, which after some loss they took, and placed a strong Garrison therein; upon which Ambassadors were sent to *Boscay* the head of the Rebels, to treat with him in the Emperors name, about a peace, but without receiving any satisfaction, they

they were forced to return, the Rebel declaring that if they came from the Estates of Hungary he would give them Audience, but if from the Emperor the Articles of peace he had proposed, he expected to be confirmed without delay, if the Emperor expected any, and after the departure of the Ambassadors; he sent forth his Letters mandatory to Assemble the Nobility at *Serentium*, on the seventeenth of *April* to settle the affairs of the Kingdom, many of which accordingly met, but concluded on nothing material, the Rebel and such as were of his faction still over-ruling them in all their consultations, as well knowing the Emperors Forces for the most part had their hearts with him, which caused them frequently to mutiny and reproach their Commanders, under pretence of wanting their pay. The Haducks now increased in number possessed themselves of *Newhawfel*, *Cibinium*, *Dorfeld* and *Schemnitze*.

Thus whilst all *Hungary*, *Austria*, and *Stira* were as it were in a flame. The Turks again besieged several Castles which at that time were governed by valiant Captains, so that they prevailed not greatly yet the General confusion made the Emperour desirous of Peace, in order to which he sent *Sigismund Forgat* with full instructions to *Kyrpa* where the Estates of *Hungary* were to assemble, thither likewise came several Commissioners from *Botschay* and the Turkish Bassa's of *Buda*, *Pesth*, &c. when as in the mean time other Imperial Ministers were sent to *Comara*, to Treat only with the Turks, they having so required but the demands of the Turks and Rebels were so unreasonable, that many believed they only set that treaty on foot to protract the preparations of the Imperialists, so that all hopes

an amicable conclusion vanishing, fierce War began to rage more terrible then before, all the Countreys round being covered with the smoak of flaming Villages by day, and illuminated with shining fires by night, nor did the Rebels spare to sell the poor Christians like beasts to the merciless Turk, by them to be carryed into perpetual slavery, nor desisted from committing such cruelties as even amazed the Infidels to see themselves out done. To prevent which outrages the Imperialists drawing together in a body, set upon a strong power of the Turks and Rebels, who thought to have surprized them in their Camp, and after a sharp dispute drove them with great slaughter to the Walls of *Canusfa*, and afterwards put strong Garrisons into most of the important Towns and Castles, which bad success made the Rebels again bethink themselves of a timely peace so that *Botscay* their Ringleader having received Letters of safe conduct from *Matthias* the Arch-Duke, came with his Wife and Children to *Vienna*, and there by frequent by conferring with the Imperial Commissioners, matters were so ordered that peace was concluded between the Emperour and his Rebel Subjects of *Hungary* according to the Tenour of these Articles.

Articles of Peace agreed upon Anno 1606. between the Emperour and his discontented Subjects of Hungary.

1. That from thenceforth it should be lawful for every man throughout the Kingdom of *Hungary*, to have the free use of his Religion and believe what he would.
2. That if the *Hungarians* so thought good, they might chuse a *Palatine* for their Governor, and that in the mean time the Arch-Duke *Matthias* should no more use the Title of Governour but Vice-Roy.
3. That the Crown of *Hungary* should still be left in the Emperours keeping.
4. That

4. That the Bishops that were nobly descended in *Hungary* and had Lands of their own, should be forthwith admitted into the Council but the other Bishops not to be so received.

5. That *Batsay* for himself and his heirs male should ever hold *Transilvania*.

6. That the same Countrey of *Transilvania* should be still subject to the Kingdom of *Hungary*.

7 That for his Arms he should bear three Royal Crowns, and three open Helmets.

8. That he should no more stile himself Prince but Lord of part of *Hungary*.

9. That they should pay the *Heyducks* their wages who had leavyed them.

10. That the harms done on both sides should for ever be forgotten.

11. That *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Lansnifum* and *Austria* should not only with their Letters and Seals confirm the Articles, but also swear at *Vienna* to keep the same, so far as they concerned them.

12. That the *Hungarians* likewise should send some to *Vienna*, who in their behalfs should with their Letters, Seals and Oaths, Confirm and Ratifie these Articles.

13. That the assembly of the States of *Hungary* should be referred unto a more convenient time for their meeting.

14. That these things being done this Agreement should be publickly confirmed and inrolled in the Records of the Kingdom of *Hungary*.

15. That it should be lawful for the *Hungarians* by their Ambassadors, to invite the Princes of the Empire to the Approving and Confirming of these Articles.

Peace thus concluded with the *Hungarians*, the Treaty of Peace between the Turkish Sultan and the

the Emperour went on, and with such good success that a Peace was soon after concluded to the joy of all the Emperours Subjects, who weary with the continual toils and miseries of War, were now desirous of nothing more then to repose themselves in the downy armes of Peace. After which *Botschay* called an assembly of the Estates of *Hungary* recommending to them the care of preserving inviolable the Articles, and the speedy Election of a *Palatine*, and that above all things they would maintain and encourage the Reformed Religion, and in the next Assembly labour to have the Article for burning Hereticks repealed, and as much as in them lay to restore the lost Trade of the spoiled Provinces.

These things done *Botschay* fell sick, which sickness increasing he greatly bewailed his late Rebellion, and the blood therein shed, wishing nothing more then that before he died, he could beg pardon for the same of the whole Roman Empire, yet had not his wish, but of that sickness died at *Cissovia*, on the 30th. of *December*, 1606. perswading in the time of his sickness such as had been his followers to adhere to the Emperours interest, yet his Counsel was not so well observed, but that after his death (notwithstanding *Matthias* the Arch-Duke had caused himself to be Crowned King of *Hungary*, including the Principality of *Transylvania*) there wanted not some who aspired to the Title of Prince, which caused new discontents, but with relinquishing of that Title they vanished.

Achmat having made Peace with the Emperour, resolved to turn his arms against the *Persian* King and *Asian* Rebels, against whom *Anno* 1607. early in the Spring he sent the Vizar *Bassa*, who by Policy more then strength appeased the latter, when upon notice that the *Bassa* of *Aleppo* had over-

thrown the Bassa's of *Tripolis* and *Daucasco*, and that at the request of the Sultan he refused to lay down his arms, he marched against him with One Hundred Thirty Thousand men, which puissant Army the Bassa of *Aleppo* incountered with Fourty Thousand, and in three Battles remained victor; but upon notice that the Bassa's of *Damasco* and *Tripolis*, were coming to the Aid of the Vizar Bassa with great Forces, and he by reason of the loss he had sustained not able to withstand their united power fled, with most of his Friends to the Mountains. Yet at the intercession of the Vizar Bassa but more for fear he should revolt to the *Persian*, he was afterwards pardoned and received into favour: upon which the King of *Persia* wrote to the King of *Spain*, intreating him to joyn Forces with him against the common Enemy, but more especially to send his Ships of War into the Gulf, and the rather to induce him so to do he sent him several rich presents.

Whilst these things passed the Turkish Garrisons, who for the most part lived by spoiles, impatient of Peace with the Christians committed some outrages, and secretly encouraged the *Heyducks* to commit more, of which *Achmat* having notice sent strictly to charge the Bassa of *Buda*, not (upon pain of his head) to infringe the Capitulation, whereupon Six Hundred *Heyducks* being abroad, and not assisted by the Turks as they expected, were intercepted by *Humanouis* an Imperial Captain and almost all of them slain; yet soon after the kind of proling men assembling to the number of Fifteen Thousand laid siege to *Tilesk*, having for their encouragement received Three Hundred Thousand Duccates, by the order of the Turkish Sultan, and great Ordnance

(the

(the better to inable them to take the Town, which they were to deliver to the Turks) from *Agria*, upon notice whereof the *Hungarian* Estates Assembled at *Presburg*, but by reason of the absence of the Arch-Duke, who by the Emperours appointment was to have sat as President, there was nothing worthy of mention transacted, whereupon an Imperial *Diet* was assembled at *Ratisbon*, where after debating many matters the Deputies of the several Princes fell at variance amongst themselves, which still increasing notwithstanding the indeavours used to prevent it, the Arch-Duke then President dismissed the assembly.

These great Councils proving fruitless, Troubles and Discontent in the unsettled Provinces of *Hungary*, *Austria*, &c. arose, to alay which the Arch-Duke came to *Presburg* and assembled the Estates, who out of themselves chuse Commissioners to appease the Tumults on foot, to hear and determine all Grievances, who so well performed their trusts that Peace for a while ensued.

Affairs *Ann* 1653. standing thus in *Hungary*, &c. about the beginning of Spring *Jerome* Prince of *Valachia* died leaving behind him a Son about 13 years of Age whom the Emperour admitted (as yet not being capable to manage the affairs of Government under Tutors) unto the Succession of the Principality, which thing the *Valachians* not being willing to endure, and bearing themselves upon the Turks, went about to Elect another Prince, for which cause the Princess, Widow to the deceased *Vayvod*, by Letters certified *Polloscie* her Son-in-Law of the intended outrage of her Subject, and having received of him a great summ of money, Leavied Ten Thousand good Souldiers to secure her Sons right, who

in a great Battle overthrew such forces of *Valachi-ans*, *Turks* and *Tartars* as the Nobility had raised to oppose the Succession of the young Prince, and by that means preserved the Principality to the behoof of her Son, but what had like to have proved fatal to *Christendom*, was the difference arising between the Emperour and the Arch-Duke *Matthias* upon the latter laying absolute claim to the Crown of *Hungary*, without acknowledging to hold it of the Empire, but when both parties had armed and matters had like to have come to extremity, several Princes laboured so far therein that a Pacification was made, and the Arch-Duke having received the Insigns of Royalty, from the Emperours Ambassadors upon acknowledging him his Sovereign, broke up his Camp and returned to *Vienna*, where he was joyfully received. Yet the Protestant Estates of *Austria*, refused to swear Allegiance to him, till he had confirmed the Article of free exercise in matters of Religion, which he for a considerable time refusing to do, great Troubles had thereupon like to have arisen; for the Protestant Estates not regarding his Regal Authority further then stood with the Articles of Pacification, for non performance thereof betook themselves to Arms, but the Estates of *Böhemia* and *Moravia* interposing, all was for a while quiet, the King promising that although for fear of displeasing the Pope and King of *Spain*, he could not tolerate the Reformed Religion, yet he would wink at the free exercise throughout his Dominions, and that as to the disposal of Offices and places of Trust, he would make no distinction in Religion, but bestow them according to the merits of his Subjects: Upon which the Estates proceeded to the Election of a *Palatine*, which honourable Dignity they bestowed on *Illishascius*, a Noble man of *Hungary*, who faithfully

discharged his trust for the space of one year and then died to the great grief of the *Hungarians*, of whom for his great Wisdom and Uprightness he was generally beloved; in whose stead the Nobility elected *George Turson*, who got a good esteem amongst them, by his pacifying the Troubles that immediately upon the death of *Illishascius* arose in *Bohemia* about Religion.

Anno 1608 on the 19 of *October*, the *Turkish* Ambassador came to the Emperors Pallace at *Prague*, having by the way visited the new King of *Hungary*, where being received with the respect due to his Character, he delivered the present sent by his Master the Grand Signeur, which were principally a Rich Tent of divers Colours most curiously wrought with Pearls of great value, four couragious horses trapped with Gold and precious Stones, certain *Turkish* weapons set and garnished with precious Stones, a Princely *Turkish* Robe, such as they use at their Marriages, Glistering with Gold and precious Stones, with divers other rarities of lesser value, together with which he delivered *Achmats* Letters, and withall desired the confirmation of the Peace before made for twenty years, to be again renewed; after which he was honourably treated and dismissed with the Emperors Letters to the *Sultan*, and many rare presents, no whit inferiour to those he brought, and with a train of two hundred horse conducted him to the *Turkish* Frontiers.

In the year 1609, nothing worthy of mention happened, but the year following, the King of *Persia* having overthrown the *Turks* Forces, sent to stay the current of his Victories, entred into the Province of *Babylon*, with an intent to annex it to his other Conquests, which so alarmed *Achmet*, that leaving a great power he sent them under the Leading of *Nassut* Bassa, to secure his Territories on

that side, but such was the evil fortune of the *Bassa*, that joyning battle, he was overthrown, and twenty thousand of his men slain; after which good success the *Persian* King sent other Ambassadors to the *Roman* Emperor, with many rich presents to incite him to break his League with the Turks, but notwithstanding the many pregnant arguments used by the Amassador, the Emperor could not be induced to break his faith, but dismissed him with a return of presents, and many thanks to his master, for the respect he had towards him, and his care for the Christian Commonwealth.

About the same time the Knights of *Malta* putting severall Gallies to sea, fought the Turks Gallies with various success, sometimes one prevailing, and sometimes the other; nor did the Duke of *Tuscany* less annoy them with a Squadron of Gallies, under the command of Admiral *Jughiraim*, who running along the coast of *Barbary* took many Turkish Gallies, and landing his men in divers places, spoiled the Country and took greate booties; nor fared the *Morisques* or new Christians in Spain this year to their contents, for the *Spanish* King upon a Capricio Banished them out of his Dominions to the number of 900 thousand persons, most *Moores* and *Jews*, who for profits sake had suffered themselves to be baptized, but now upon the Publication of the Kings Edict, they were forced to wander like vagabonds over the face of the earth to seek new places to reside in; at what time there happened a contest between *Muley Xequy* King of *Fess*, and *Muley Sidan* his younger brother, which increased to that height that mortal wars arose, when after many fields fought, the latter prevailed, and possessed himself of the Kingdom, which caused the former to fly into *Spain*, there to crave aid of King *Philip*, who in consideration of the *Barbarians* promise to deli-

deliver *Alarache* a strong Town seated on the mouth of the River *Lucus*, in the Kingdom of *Fests*, into his possession, furnished him with 100 thousand Duccates, therewith to leavy Souldiers in his own Countrey, and sent with him likewise his ships of war, under the conduct of the Marquess of *St. Germaines*, manned with ten thousand *Spaniards*, who coming before the Town, landed the King, who was received by several of his friends into a strong Castle that guards the mouth of the River, which he put into the hands of the *Spaniard*, but it was no sooner known that he had so done, but the *Mores* from all parts run to their Arms, so that e'r they could possess themselves of the Town, an obstinate fight was maintained for the space of three hours, in which space five hundred *Spaniards* and three thousand *Moors* were slain, but in the end the former prevailed, and possessed themselves of that strong place, which had by them been so often desired, the news of which caused great rejoicing in *Spain*. This year was fought a great battle between the Son of the late deceased *Cham* of *Tartary*, and his uncle, upon the latters usurping the Imperial dignity, during the formers remaining a hostage at *Constantinople*, in which 40000 men were slain, and the Victory rested upon the rightful Heir.

Anno 1611, such a Contagion happened in *Constantinople* that it ingendring a Pestilence, which raged so vehemently that thirty thousand died in one month, and amongst the rest, one of *Achmats* sons, nor did the Barron of *Salignac* the French Kings Ambassador escape, to succeed whom as soon as the Mortality ceased, the Barron of *Mole* was sent, who upon his arrival, after having visited the *Mufti* or chief *Mahometan* Priest, and the great *Bassa's* of the Court, himself and his retinue were attired in
Tur-

Turkish habit (no Ambassadors being permitted in the proper habit of their own Countrey to approach the *Sultan*) was conducted to have his Audience of the Grand Seignieur, through a litte Court paved with Marble; after which, he entred the Royal Chamber, which was enriched on one side with many Pillars of Marble, and square stones of the same, beautified with two Fountains, on either side the planchers were gilt with Gold, and the Walls Inameled with flowers, and the floor covered with cloath of Gold and silver, at the entery of which stood six *Capigi* or Royal Porters, two of which took the Ambassador by either arm to lead him to the Grand Seignieur (a Ceremony pretended for honours sake, but indeed to prevent any violence, that upon such near access may be offered, and has been in use ever since *Amurath* the first was stabbed in the fields of *Coffovia*) and the rest carryed the presents; so that the Ambassador having kissed the hem of the imperious Turks Garment, was carryed out another way backward, because it should not be said that the Minister of any Forrein Prince turned his back upon the Emperor, in like manner his attendants fared, being obliged to withdraw till the Infidel was more at leisure, for as then he stood peeping out at a window to view some disports that were made below for his diversion and a while after being admitted, he delivered his letters written in the Turkish Language, and in a pithy Oration, delivered what else he had in charge.

Notwithstanding the Peace between the Imperialists and the Turks, the latter ceased not covertly to stir up dissensions, by which means they procured the revolt of *Gabriel Battori Vayvod* of *Transilvania*, who raising a great power, chafed *Rachille* Prince

Prince of *Valachia* out of his Principality, who thereupon fled to *Constantine Vayvod* of *Moldavia*, when reinforced by the *Moldavian*, he returned again, and in a great battle overthrew *Gabriel*, forcing him to flye with his scatered Troops to *Hermstad*, where he committed many Cruelties under pretence that the Citizens went about to deliver him into the hands of his mortal enemies. The division stirred up *Fortgasse* the King of *Hungary* to pass into *Transylvania*, to reduce the revolted Cities to the Kings obedience, but being waylaid, he was forced to travel through desert places, where through famine and diseases that raged in his Camp, most of his men dyed; so that fearing to fall into the hands of those he intended to oppress, he fled into *Polonia* with a slender Train, yet ended not the trouble, for by this time the Turks had stirred up discontents in *Moldavia*, by sending thither a Competitor to wrestle with *Constantine* for his Principality, but finding himself too weak, and not assisted as he expected, fled to *Constantinople*, there to crave aid of *Achmet*, but finding many delays he travelled to the Courts of many Christian Princes, and amongst others came into *England*, and made his application to King *James*, who moved with his heavy complaints, and specious pretences of just claim to the Principality of *Moldavia*, that his Majesty was pleased bountifully to relieve him, and by his Letters to recommend him to the care of Sir *Thomas Glover*, his Ambassador then residing at *Constantinople*, who recommended him to the Grand Signeur, but such were the counterplots of *Constantine*, that by bribing the great Bassa's he not only prevented him in his purpose but greatly indangered his being made away, which had certainly happened had not Sir *Thomas* sheltered him under his protection, and by fortifying his house, daunted the blood-thirsty

thirsty *Janizaries*, whom the Grand Visier had imployed to take him thence by Force, but Sir *Thomas* being soon after recalled; The *Moldavian* despairing to obtain the Principality he so much desired, in a rage renounced the Lord that bought him, and embraced the Turkish superstition, whereupon he was made Bey of *Bursia* in *Asia*, but enjoyed not that dignity long e'r *Nassuf Bassa* returning from the *Persian* war, dispossessed him.

This year the Gallies of *Florence*, *Malta* and *Naples*, greatly endamaged the Turkish Dominions on the Sea-Coast, taking likewise several rich prizes, and amongst the rest the *Carravan* Gally coming from *Egypt*, to *Constantinople*, with the Tribute of that rich Kingdom, sinking at the same time five others, and descending upon the Isle of *Lango*, and took the Town from which the Island takes its name, putting a number of Turks to the sword, and taking a great spoil, and soon after entered the Bay of *Corinth* so secretly, that Landing they surprized the City, sacked it and carryed away, besides a rich booty five hundred slaves.

These things made the Turkish *Sultan* wish for peace with the *Persian*, that he might be at leisure to turn his Arms upon the Christians, especially upon the Knights of *Malta*, who greatly obstructed his Navigation, and that which furthered his purpose was the arrival of the *Persian* Ambassador at *Constantinople*, whereupon to welcom him he concluded a Marriage between *Mehemet Bassa*, son to *Cicula*, late deceased, and his Sister, and another between *Mechmet Bassa* his great Admiral, and his Eldest daughter, which were celebrated with all imaginable splendor, but soon after the Pestilence began again to rage in that great City, whereupon

Achmat

Achmat withdrew himself to his rural Palace at *Durat Bassa*, where whilst he was viewing the *Mosque* that he had caused to be built, a *Dariveler* or *Turkish Monk*, cast at him a stone with such force that it overthrew him; whereupon the Traytor was seized, and ordered by Torture to be constrained to confess what moved him to that outrage; but the officers of the Port with out further examination the next day executed him, which made some conjecture, that either they or some great men whom they favoured, set him on work.

During these Passages *Moldavia* groaned under Clandestine Tumults, the Turks still endeavouring to depose *Constantine*, and he with all his power on the contrary, labouring to support his dignity, so that the Villages in all places went to Rack, the Countrey for the most part being laid wast; to calm which differences the *Polonian Ambassador* came to the Court of *Constantinople*, expecting a sudden Audience, but was contrary to his expectation, after six weeks attendance clapt up in prison, with notice that he could not be delivered till such time as the two *Capigis* which *Constantine* carryed Captive into *Polonia*, nor was *Transylvania* free from fraction and civil dissension occasioned by one *Giezy* set up by the Bassa of *Buda*, to oppose the Palatine of *Hungary*, to whom that Province, according to the late Articles of peace does appertain, but the upstart finding his Forces too weak too grasp the Government soon after relinquished his claime.

Achmat the more to amuse the *Persian Ambassador*, and oblige him to wonder at his greatness, resolved to shew himself in all his pomp, and thereupon making as if he went to *Darat Bassa* to take the air, after a dayes stay, returned in this manner. Before him a great number of men at Arms marched on horse-

horse-back, and after them some Troops of Foot; The Cadies of *Constantinople*, or his chief Justicers; Then all the *Talismans*, or those of *Mahomets* Law in great number; then the Vizar Bassas in great splendor; after whom followed ten of the Sultans household, leading ten goodly horses in rich Caparisons, the last of which had a Bridle and Saddle pondered with precious stones, and unto the saddle was fastned the *Sultans Target*; and upon it were fastened Tassels of Pearls, hanging almost with the ground, and over these a horse-cloth richly imbroidered with Pearl, after which followed the rest of the *Sultans* household in divers Troops, first fifty *Janizaries* on foot, every one of them leading dogs in Leshes, for the most part Irish-greyhounds, presented to him a little before by the *French* Ambassador, next to whom in order succeeded the *Sultans* Footmen called Pelks, who were *Persians* born, all well attired, wearing on their heads bonets of Silver, after the *Indian* fashion, Then sixty Archers, in the midst of whom came *Sultan Achmat* attired in a rich robe of Cloath of Gold, imbroidered with Pearls and Diamonds, and his slave clad in the same manner, his Turbant was covered with a Plume of black Feathers, enriched with great Diamonds, and a chain of the same stones; about the lower part of it upon his fingers he had Diamonds of such largeness, as they cast admirable light; his horse had Caparisons imbroidered with Diamonds, Pearls, and other precious stones, the Ground being Gold, and the stirrups of beaten Gold set with Diamonds, and from his Horses neck hung great Tassels of Pearl, of a more than ordinary size; after him there followed three men on Horseback, the one carrying his Cloak, the other his arms, and the third his Imperial Turbant, and these were attended on by certain Esquires on horse-back.

back. Then came the Musick after the Turkish manner, consisting of sixty men on Horseback, which played upon Fies, Chardons and Trum-pets; next followed one hundred of the *Sultans* Pages bravely mounted, followed by as many Eunu-ches, fifty of which carryed each of them a Falcon upon his fist, having their heads enriched with Diamonds; after them came thirty Guards of the Port, and fifty Falconers and Huntsmen, richly attired, each of them carrying upon his saddle bow a Leopard covered all but the head with a Cloath of Gold attended on by an other train of Pages, very beautiful, chosen from amongst the Tribute infants, having their Garments beset with pretious stones, the ground being Cloath of Gold curled, and after these followed a Troop of youths in plain attire, who were appointed to serve the pages; The rear of which procession was closed with all the great Officers of the *Turkish* Empire, that were then resident at *Constantinople*, and to make the Magnificence more compleat, as the Archers passed by the *Sultans* lodging 100 pieces of Silk, were cast amongst them.

Four days after this pompous shew *Achmat* gave Audience to the *Persian* Ambassador, who presented him on the behalf of the King his Master, with 100 Bales of Silk, a Beazor stone, as big as a mans fist, 9 bags of Turquoises of a foot and half long, and above a finger broad, several rich pieces of Tapiltry, interwoven with Silk and Gold, with some other things of great price, amongst which he delivered his masters Letters; whereupon they began to treat of peace, which soon after was accorded principally upon these Articles: First, That the *Persian* King should pay unto the Turkish *Sultan* yearly by way of Tribute two hundred Camells Loads of Silk, That the King of *Persia's* Son should be called *Bassa* of *Iauris*, and that
the

the *Cadi* or Sovereign Judge of that City should be sent from *Constantinople*.

The Peace thus concluded to the advantage of the Turks and dishonour of the *Persians*, the Ambassador with many rich presents, was dismissed, leaving almost all his Retinue behind him dead of the plague; nor did he long survive them, for upon his arrival at *Tauris*, his master understanding upon what dishonourable Terms he had concluded the peace, caused his head to be cut off, and sent back the *Chiaus* that was come with his Ambassador to see him swear the peace, so that not long after all vanished into nothing.

During these Transactions, *Rodolphus* the Emperor died, to succeed whom the Electoral Princes made choice of his brother *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, who upon his taking upon him the Imperial sway, sent his Ambassadors to *Constantinople* to intreat a confirmation of the peace made between his brother deceased, and the *Sultan*, and to complain of the daily outrages committed in his Province of *Transylvania*, but the Turk who keep no League any longer then it turns to their advantage, not only refused to redress the grievances in *Transylvania*, but denied the Emperor to have any right to that Province, although in the League it was expressly mentioned, that *Botschay* dying with out Heirs male, the Principality should totally remain a member of the *Roman Empire*, but after all was said that could be said, the Ambassador was dismissed without the satisfaction he expected.

About the end of *September*, *Anno 1612*, great troubles arose in the Kingdoms of *Fes* and *Morocco* occasioned by a quarrel between the Prince *Xerif-Muley-Cidan* and *Xerif-Muley-Achet-Ben-Abdulla* his nephew, when after many battles fought between them,

them, the latter was overthrown, and in his flight slain, having drawn the people into Rebellion against his uncle under the pretence of a Propheſie that foretold his riſe, and the flouriſhing State of *Barbary* under his Government, which Prophecy himſelf not long before invented, yet many imagined that he dealt by inchantment, and often would he boaſt that no Bullet could hurt him, and indeed many were the Victories he gained over *Cidan*, even with a handful of men in compariſon to the great Armies which *Cidan* lead againſt him, his Allegation was that he was ſent from Heaven to purge the world of wicked men.

About this time the Eſtates of the United Provinces under Prince *Maurice*, ſent *Cornelius Hage* their Ambaſſador to *Conſtantinople* with Commiſſion to treat of the deliverance of the captive *Hollanders*, that had bin taken by the Turkiſh Gallies, and to require free Traffick in all the Ports of the *Ottoman Empire* in conſideration of which to propoſe perpetual Amity with the Sultan, in all which he ſucceeded ſo well, that the Spaniſh King was not a little grieved thereat, though himſelf was afterward obliged to enter into League with the Turk.

Transilvania altogether diſquieted, and weakned by civil diſcord, the *Sultan* thought it a fit time to reduce that Province to his obedience, and therefore raiſed a mighty Army and marched directly thither but whiſt he was on his way Fortifying all the important places in his paſſage, *Cosmo d' Medicis* the great Duke of *Tuſcany*, ſetting out a Fleet of Gallies ſpoiled the Sea Coaſts in the *Mediterranean*, and took many places from the Turks and amongſt the reſt the ſtrong City of *Agliman*, with 2 Gallies that lay in the Port putting a number of Turks to the Sword by whoſe example an. 1613. the Gallies of *Sicily* ſet out and deſtroyed the Turks Gallies in the *Levant*, making terrible ſpoil on the Sea-Coaſt landing ſeveral times on the Iſlands of *Chios*, *Samos* and *Cyprus*, taking rich ſpoils and freeing many Chriſtian Captives, to oppoſe whom Ten

Turkish Gallies came but after a terrible engagement, seven of them fell into the Christians hands, and one was sunk, the other two hardly escaping under the shelter of the night.

Achmats Army arriving in *Transilvania* committed many outrages, but upon notice that *Bethlem Gabor* was acknowledged Prince under the protection of the Sultan, and had sent his submission to him, the Tempest of War grew calm, and the Turkish power dreadful to the *German* Empire returned to *Constantinople*, at what time *Sigismund Battor* the Warlike Prince of *Transilvania*, who had deposed himself and was retired to *Prague*, there to lead a private Life died; but the Turks upon their arrival at *Constantinople* found the City almost desolate by reason the Plague raged there so, that *Achmat* and all his followers retired themselves to *Darut Bassa*, till the Contagion ceased, and then in great pomp entered the City, publishing an Edict that all the Dogs therein should be transported to *Scutary* in *Asia*, formerly called *Chirsopolis*, but the Inhabitants of that place, not willing to be troubled with such Guests, although provision was allowed them, humbly besought the Emperor to dispose of them elsewhere, so that they were to the number of Fifty Thousand put on shoar in a desolate Island where they all perished. The reason why they were not killed was for that the *Mufti* had told *Achmat* it was not lawful, alledging that Dogs had Souls.

To conclude this year 1613 the *Persian* King upon a suspicion that the *Armenians* were about to reconcile themselves to the Pope, and yield obedience to the See of *Rome*, which suspicion was grounded upon forged Letters, he caused Twelve Hundred of them to be put to death, and kept straightly impri-

imprisoned double that number which made the *Circassians*, *Georgians*, and *Armenians* with other Eastern Christians send their Ambassadors to *Achmat* imploring Aid to protect them from the rage of the *Persians*, to counterpoise which the *Persian* King sent likewise his Ambassador, but the *Sultan* would not admit him to Audience, till such time as he heard his Master had stayed the Persecution.

Anno 1614. divers direful Prodigies were seen in *Hungary*, *Silesia*, *Austria*, and other parts of *Christendom*, which greatly amazed most people, who supposed them to be the forerunners of great calamities but nothing followed except the downfall and death of the *Nassuf* the grand Vizir, who fell from the top of Honour into the depth of misery by offending his soon offended Master, and by the *Sultans* Command was by *Bestanges* Bassa slain in his own house, and that Head which during the time he stood high in the *Sultans* favour, had Governed the whole *Ottoman* Empire, stricken off and carried as a present to *Achmat*, and in his stead *Mechmet* who had Married the *Sultans* Daughter was made chief Vizir.

Transylvania now rent from the *German* Empire, the Emperour laboured to recover it, and for that purpose sent several trusty Councelors to deal with the Nobility to cast off the Turkish yoke, and to return to their former obedience; of which the Turkish *Sultan* getting notice, sent to the Emperour to admonish him to keep inviolate the peace concluded between them, and not to meddle in the affairs of *Transylvania*, though at the same time, by his Hostilities in *Hungary* he had manifestly broke it, to which the Emperour replied he was on his part

resolved to keep the peace inviolate though the *Sultan* had already broken the Articles of the League, but as to his tamely parting with his Province of *Transylvania* confirmed to him by the same League, he would resolve nothing therein till he had consulted Princes of the Empire, with which answer the *Chians* returning to *Constantinople*.

The Emperor Assembling the Estates, laid before them the just Grievances of his Subjects, and the indignities offered to himself, with the manifest breach of the League on the part of the Turks, in not only assisting his Rebels, but with great Companies of themselves, making great spoil in his Hereditary Countries. To which the Estates answered, that with all their power they would maintain the Dignity of the Emperor, and defend the Empire, of which resolve *Achmat* was no sooner advertized, but the better to encourage *Bethlem Gabor*, to invade the Emperors Frontiers, he sent him a strong power under the command of *Sander Bassa*, with which he besieged *Lippa*, and had it delivered to him, as he had also had several other places of less importance, which places were put into the possession of the Turks, but to remain part of the *Transylvanian* Principality.

Affairs standing thus in *Transylvania*, *Moldavia*, was at the same afflicted, and brought low by the Tyranny of *Stephano* their *Vayvod*, who the better to secure him in his Estate, had caused most of the Nobility to be cruelly and shamefully murdered, upon which the *Moldavians* disdaining the Tyrants rule, who was wont to say, that he valued not his Subjects love, so they feared him, rose in Arms against him, choosing for their Prince *Alexander* son to *Jeremy* their former *Vayvod*, who with a great power entering the Countrey, had many strong places put in-

to his possession, which the Tyrant understanding, and finding the hatred of his Subjects generally bent against him, he fled, till strengthened by a supply of Turks and Tartars, he again returned, and gave the Prince Battle, but was therein overthrown; after which *Alexander* was proclaimed with the consent of all the Nobility *Vayvod* of *Moldavia*, whereupon he sent Ambassadors to the Grand Seignior, to inform him that he would do nothing prejudicial to his Imperial Majesty, but that what he had done was at the instance of the Nobility, to free the Countrey from a Tyrant, but e'r these Ambassadors could arrive at *Constantinople* they were imprisoned, at the commandment of the Bassa of *Buda*, and being afterward put into the power of *Stephano*, he caused their heads to be cut off and their bodies to be cast into the *Danube*, and then having recruited his Forces, returned again into *Moldavia*, where in a second battle he was overthrown, and most of his Army slain, himself hardly escaping to *Michna* Prince of *Valachia*; but soon after *Alexander*, having notice that the said *Michna* and *Hebraim* a Turkish Bassa were raising great Forces to assist *Stephano*, he sent *Boyartskye* his Ambassador to *Michna* to make him his friend, or at least to perswade him to desist from taking part with the Tyrant, but the proud Bassa, contrary to the will of the *Vayvod* *Michna*, caused the Ambassador to be clapped in Irons, and sent prisoner to *Constantinople*, where upon his arrival, contrary to the Law of Nations he was condemned to the Gallies, to excuse which, the *Vayvod* sent an Ambassador to Prince *Alexander*, promising him that unless it were by the absolute command of the Grand Siegnior, which he durst not disobey, he would not assist his Competitor, and at the same time it being rumoured that *Bethlem Gabar*

was likewise raising Forces to invade *Moldavia*, the Prince sent an other Ambassador to him, who to the Ambassador protested his innocency therein, and that he intended no harm to *Alexander* his master, but on the contrary greatly desired his friendship, and for his fathers sake would assist him in what lay in his power, but that which caused a great trouble in *Moldavia* was the death of Prince *Visnowwiskie*, who was poisoned by a Greek Priest in receiving the Sacrament, for which the impious actor was fryed to death in a wyer chair, having first confessed that he was induced to commit that hellish exploite, at the instance of the Princes enemy, who upon the Priests detection were fled.

Anno 161.. at the incessant intreaty of *Stephano* the Sultan sent *Skinder* Bassa with a powerful Army to restore him to the Vayvod-ship of *Moldavia*, whereupon Prince *Alexander* sent to his friends as well in *Polonia* as in other parts of Christendom, to Aid him against the Common Enemy, and thereupon received great Aid, especially out of *Polonia*, under the leading of Prince *Coreski*, who shortly after Married the Princess *Alexandrina*, Sister to Prince *Alexander*, and having refreshed the Army, the two Princes as joynt Commanders, marched against the Bassa, and in a set battle overthrew him near unto *Cochona*, together with the Forces of *Stephano*, and pursuing their Victory entered *Valachia*, where entering *Bonzia* without resistance, he was by the Estates of that Province, intreated to take upon him the Vayvodship; for that they being weary of the Turkish thraldom, from which *Michna* their Vayvod had absolutely refused to free them, they resolved for that reason to chuse an other, but the Prince refused the charge, he would not deprive his friend of his possession, yet consented that
Prince

Prince *Cherbanne* son to the late *Vayvod* should take the charge upon him, but whilst these things were in agitation *Shindar Bassa* had gathered a great power; and proclaimed *Michna Vayvod* of *Moldavia*, *Stephano* by reason of his frequent overthrows, being now fallen into disgrace with the *Sultan*, and on a sudden the said *Bassa* with his multitude invironed the Princes Camp, where he together with his mother, Prince *Coreskie*, and his fair Princess *Alexandrina* were taken prisoners, as were all the Camp, except five hundred *Polonians*, who under the leading of the Lord *Tischevish* cut their way through the Army of the Turks, yet for a long time the Princes remained disguised amongst the common prisoners, in hopes of being admitted to their ransoms, but at length all except the Princess *Alexandrina* were carryed to *Constantinople*; but she falling into the hands of a *Tartarian* Captain, was carryed into *Tartary*, where she was hardly dealt with, till at length she was ransomed for 3000 *Chequins*, having during her Captivity been delivered of a fair son.

The year following the Turks spoiled the Seacoast Towns of *Italy*, taking many rich prizes, and had the like repayed them by the Christian Gallies in the *Mediterranean*, and greater mischiefs had ensued had not *Achmet* the Turkish *Sultan* died, having lived thirty years, and reigned fifteen, appointed by reason of his sons minority, his brother *Mustapha* whom he had a long time kept prisoner, to succeed him in the *Ottoman* Empire.

C H A P. XIX.

Muſtapha the firſt of that Name Ninth Emperour of the Turks his Life and Actions.

A *Chmat* being dead *Muſtapha* his Brother, (the Firſt that had been ſaved alive ſince the foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire) ſucceeded him by his appointment, his Children of which *Oſman* was the Eldeſt being too weak to ſway the Scepter of ſo mighty an Empire. So that this *Muſtapha*, brought from a ſtraight Priſon every day expecting Death, now advanced to a Throne to rule the Eaſt, forgetting his former devout Life, began to Tyrannize over his Subjects more then his Predeceſſors; which cauſed him to be hated of many, eſpecially for that he imprifoned the French Ambaſſador and his ſervants, breaking thereby the Law of Nations; upon pretence that they had been instrumental in the eſcape of Prince *Coreskie* out of the Black Tower, who by the aſſiſtance of a Greek Priest deſcended from the top thereof, on a rope Ladder drawn up by a bottom of Packthred brought in a Pie to the ſaid Prince by the Ambaſſadors Secretary, though contrary to his knowledge, with the Prince likewiſe eſcaped one *Rigaut* a French Captain, who by the aſſiſtance of the ſaid Priest, diſguiſed in Prieſtly Veſtments for that purpoſe prepared, got paſſage into *Italy*, notwithstanding all the Ports were beſet with their purſuers. Nor was the Ambaſſador only imprifoned but his ſervants and himſelf

Self evilly intreated, especially the former, two of which were put to the torture according to the Turkish manner, which is to lay them upon their Belly on a Table, and to beat their Buttocks, the Calves of their Legs, and Soles of their Feet, with a flat staff, giving them ere they cease 100 or 200 blows, yet the Servants confessed nothing, whereupon they caught a Weaver being a Turk, whose Shop was near the Ambassadors house: whom they tortured in the like manner, but he as the others had done could reveal nothing against the Ambassador, who for all that was obliged to pay 30000 Sultanies for his own release and his Servants. These and such like insolencies, together with the Imprisonment of young *Osman* and his Brethren, made the Grand Vizar, who was then on the Confines of *Persia* to haste to *Constantinople* with his Army, at whose approach *Osman* was taken out of Prison and Proclaimed Emperour (so suddain are the changes of fortune in great as well as little affairs) and the proud *Sultan Mustapha* inforced for fear of the intraged Souldiers to betake himself again to his Cell, or rather Prison, where for a while I shall leave him, and relate what happened during the Reign of *Osman*.

C H A P. XX.

*The Life and Actions of Osman the First
of that Name, Tenth Emperour of the
Turks.*

THE Uncle after he had proudly Tyrannized for the space of two Months, being deposed, the Nephew was advanced to his Fathers Throne, being not full Thirteen years of Age, wherefore he was wholly governed by the Vizar Bassa, as was also the whole *Ottoman* Empire, when the first thing of moment that happened was the complaint of the French King, by two Gentlemen sent for that purpose, by whom he demanded reparation of the new Emperour for the indignity he had sustained by the Imprisonment of his Ambassador, and the evil treating of his Servants, letting him understand that he could not send any other Ambassador to his Court to condole the Death of *Sultan Achmat* his Father, nor congratulate his coming to the Empire till he had received satisfaction from him becoming his dignity. and the wrongs he had received in his Ambassador.

The Grand Vizar and *Musti* hearing this Embassie, and considering what had passed, advertised the young Emperour to send an Ambassador to the most Christian King, to Confirm the League, and to testify both by Words and Letters, how much he was dissatisfied for his discontent; whereupon *Uri*
Chiaus

Chiaus was sent with ample instructions, and so great an acknowledgment of the wrong done to the Baron of *Mole*, that the French King rested satisfied, and calling the said Ambassador home, he sent the Earl of *Sezi* to succeed him as Ambassador at *Constantinople*.

The War continuing between the *Turks* and *Persians*, about this time a great Battle was fought between them, wherein the *Turks* prevailing put the *Persians* to flight with the lost of Ten Thousand of them, and thereupon the Bassa General of the Turkish Army, prosecuting his victory entered into the heart of *Persia*, wasting with Fire and Sword all that stood in his way, but at length having through daily skirmishes with the Enemy, and Diseases arising from want and evil Diet, lost a third part of his Army, he accepted of the *Sophies* proposals of Peace, which were that he would yearly pay the Tribute of Silks, and at present relieve his Army with all things necessary. This Peace concluded by the Bassa was allowed on by the Emperour and Ratified at *Constantinople*, whereupon Two Hundred Cammels laden with Silks were for many years after sent to the Emperour according to Agreement.

Anno 1618. A fearful Comet was seen over the City of *Constantinople*, in form like a Turkish Scimiter, placed near unto the *Zenith* under the Horizon, of a fiery colour, appearing very terrible for the space of eight nights which made many conjecture it the forerunner of great bloodshed.

Uri Chiaus returning out of *France* after he had dispatched his affairs at that Court, came into *England*, where he was received and conducted to the Court,

Court, and had Audience of King *James* his Speech being as followeth.

The Most True Incomprehensible and Most High God, increase and multiply your Majesties years, in all happiness, *Amen*, O Thou Lord of the World.

THE most invincible, most mighty, and most happy Sultan Osman Chan of the Othoman Empire Monarch, sendeth to your excellent Majesty a hundred thousand Salutations and Greetings, evermore praying the most High God, for your Majesties happiness, sendeth to your Highness with all possible Honour and Renown, this his Imperial and most Noble Letter, and with all hope that the Sacred bond of Peace, which hath been hitherto inviolably on your Majesties part kept and observed, your Majesty will be pleased still on your part, with daily increases of more and more Friendship earnestly to continue therein. And his Imperial Majesty on his behalf is also resolved in like manner evermore punctually to keep and continue the same.

Also the most Mighty Emperours Tutor, and his chief Visier Bassa, hath addressed to the dust of your Noble Feet, this his most Honourable Letter, with a Thousand commendations, praying everlastingly the Mighty God, for Your Majesties long Life and Happiness.

Also Your Majesties Ambassador at Constantinople, your slave Paul Pindar bowing his forehead to the dust of your Majesties Feet, and most humbly kissing your Highnesses blessed Feet, hath directed unto your Majesty this his submissive Letter.

This Speech ended, and the Emperours Letter delivered with such other as the *Chiaus* brought, he was by the Kings command in great splendor conducted

ducted to his Lodging, where after five or six days stay, he came again to *Whitehall* and made his conjue of leave upon his departure in these words, as near as they can be Translated out of the Turkish Language.

Most happy Emperour, as I have with my own hands bowing my self to the dust of your Princely feet, presented unto your Excellent Majesty, the most mighty and high Sultan Osman my Lord and Master his Imperial Letter, so likewise I beseech your Majesty, that you will be pleased in conformity thereof, to vouchsafe your Princely answer by your noble Letter, and to deliver the same into the hands of me your slave, and be ever partaker of all blessedness and happiness.

After he had made this Oration and received the Kings Letters, he was conducted to *Dover* by several of the Nobility, where imbarcking in one of His Majesties Ships he sailed to *Constantinople*.

Anno 1619 great trouble arose in *Bohemia* upon the Emperours sending an Army into that Country to suppress the Protestant Religion there flourishing, so that the Protestants tired with the cruelties of the popish Souldiers sent to *Bethlem Gabor* Prince of *Transilvania*, to acquaint him with the state of their affairs, who after he had obtained leave of the Grand Signeour, came with an Army of Eighteen Thousand men into *Hungary*, and took many Towns, spoiling the Countrey as he went, nor so contented but he entered *Ausiria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia*, subdued all before him without opposition, but fearing if the *Bohemians* should be subdued, the storm would fall upon him, he would not make a League with the *Bohemians* till he was assured of the Grand Signeours assistance in case his affairs required it

it whereupon he sent his Ambassador to *Constantinople*, who so dealt with the great Bassa's of the Court that by their advice *Osman* swore to protect him, and because the Oath for the strange wording of it will not be amiss to be recited I shall here insert it verbatim.

Sultan Osman,

“ **B**Y the Grace of God unconquerable Turkish
 “ Emperour Swears, by the highest Almightyes,
 “ and Almighty Gods Holiness, by his Kingdom,
 “ by the substance of the Heavens, the Sun, the
 “ Moon, and the Stars, by the Earth, and all under
 “ the Earth, by the Brains and all the hairy scalp
 “ of my Mother, by my Head, and all the strength
 “ of my Soul and Body, by the Holy and great *Mahomet*,
 “ and by my Circumcision, That I thee my
 “ Brother and Son *Bethlem Gabor* succeeding King
 “ of *Hungaria* in no manner of way in thy great and
 “ weighty affairs will leave, though it be to the
 “ overthrow of my Kingdom to be brought to nothing,
 “ until there shall be no more left but my
 “ self, or four or five Turks at the most, yet will I
 “ be still obliged to defend thee, and all those that
 “ do any ways appertain unto thee, and if thou
 “ shalt have need of me, I shall be always ready to
 “ go with thee, and in case this my promise shall in
 “ any wise be frustrated, then let Gods Justice fall
 “ upon my Head and destroy me and my posterity,
 “ and wipe away whatsoever belongeth unto me,
 “ and gather it together into a Rock of stone or
 “ substance of Earth, and that the Earth may cleave
 “ insunder and swallow me Body and Soul.

Dated at Constantinople the 5th. of Jan. 1619.

The

The *Transilvanian* by this Oath assured of the Grand Signeours favour sent his Ambassadors to *Prague*, where meeting with the Commissioners sent thither for that purpose by the States of *Bohemia*, a perpetual League was concluded, and in June following the Prince assembled the Estates of *Hungary* at *Newhausell*, where he proposed to them the necessity of raising an Army, to defend the Provinces, against the Forces of the Imperialists, who by their great preparations made it visible that they would no peace till they had destroyed all the Protestants, to this motion the Estates consented, when at the same time came their Ambassadors from the Grand Signeour, the *Venetians* and *Polonians*, all which made in the names of the respective principals a League with *Gabor*, which so much pleased the Estates of *Hungary*, willing to shake off the Imperial yoke that by the advice of their *Palatine*, the *Transilvanian* was proclaimed King of *Hungary*, upon which raising an Army of Fifty Thousand Horse and Foot, he subdued almost all *Austria*, *Carinthia*, and *Stiria*, before the Emperours Forces could take the Field in any fit number to make head against him, at what time such a fear was brought upon the great City of *Vienna*, that with the Emperours consent the Protestants remaining therein, sent their Deputies humbly to beseech him that he would spare the City and Countrey for theirs their Wives and Childrens sakes.

About this time a strange apparition was seen in the Air over *Medina Taluabi* in *Arabia*, where *Mahomet* the Impostor lyes buried, which terrified all the Countrey thereabouts, and was as followeth, about the 20th. of *September* at midnight there happened a terrible Tempest, accompanied with such prodigious Thunder and Lightning, that many think-

thinking the dissolution of all things was at hand leaped out of their Beds to gaze on the Element, at first seeming all on Fire, and then covered with thick darkness, after which all was serene and calm, when in *Arabian* Characters these words appeared in the Firmament, viz. *O why will you believe in lies*, and soon after a Woman beautiful to behold, arrayed in white and incompassed with rayes of Light appeared, holding in her hand a book, coming from the North, and opposite against her were seen Armies of Turks, *Persians*, and other *Mahometans*, being so conjectured by their garbs ranged in *Battalia*, ready to charge her, but she keeping her standing no sooner opened the book but they all fled, upon which a suddain murmur as of a Whirlwind troubled the Air, and immediately the lamps that were placed about *Mahomets* Tomb went out, and in this manner the Prodigy appeared for several nights together, whereupon a *Dervise* or Religious Turk undertaking to expound the meaning of that unusual sight, and declaring that it foreshewed the overthrow of the *Mahometan* superstition, he was therefore miserably put to death, calling to the last upon the Woman with the Book to save him, and he had no sooner given up the ghost but a fearful Tempest ensued.

Anno 1620 *Gasparo* the expelled *Vayvod* of *Moldavia* assisted by the Polish *Cossacks*, and such other Troops as he could raise invaded *Moldavia*, in which the *Sultan* had placed another *Vayvod*, and in revenge of a design the Turks had to strangle him during his *Vayvodship*, made great spoil putting all the Turks he found to the Sword, and reducing great part of that Province to his obedience, which caused the *Sultan* to raise a great power, drawing all his choice Forces out of both the *Asia's* to the num-

number of Two hundred thousand and caused a great Fleet of Gallies to put to Sea, which spoiled the Coast of *Sicilia* and Landing Five Thousand Turks in the Kingdom of *Naples*, surprized the strong Town of *Manfredonia*, carry 1500 Christians into miserable Captivity, and then joyning with the Pirates of *Argier* they made a descent upon the Island of *Janisa* near *Majorca*, possessed by the *Spaniards*, which Island they took making great spoil, putting to the Sword and carrying into Captivity all the Inhabitants.

The Turks thus successful at Sea made them the less doubt their success by Land, therefore having found an occasion of quarrel with the *Polonian* King, for that the *Cossacks* in revenge of the injury they sustained by the *Tartars*, had manned out many small vessels and spoiled the Turks Sea-Coast Towns upon the *Bosphorus*, giving an overthrow to their Gallies, and brought away great spoiles) *Osman* in person at the head of 300000 men, passing through *Moldavia* which he again reduced to the obedience of the new *Vayvod*, he entered *Podalia* Anno Dom. 1621. where he found the great Chancellor of *Poland*, and the Prince Son to the *Polonian* King strongly intrenched with an Army of 50000 resolute Souldiers, and because he could not draw them out of their strengths he with his multitude inclosed their Camp. So that by the frequent attacks and sallies that were made, a great number were slain on both sides, but especially of the Turks; during which the *Tartarian* Prince then assisting *Osman* with 30000 light Horsemen marched into the heart of *Poland* burning and destroying all before him in a most terrible manner, and upon his return to the Camp besides other spoils brought with him 25000 Prisoners of the poor Countrey

people which his ravenous crue had scraped together, but after two months besieging the Polish Camp, want growing great in the Sultans Army, and by reason of the advancement of the Season such terrible Rains fell, that Tents, Horses, Men, and Carriages were frequently carryed away by the impetuosity of the Torrents thereby occasioned. The Turks desirous to depart sent to the Chancellor to treat of Peace, which at the earnest instance of *Radula* Prince of *Valachia* was hearkened to, and soon after accorded the principal points being these.

First, That the Emperour should raise his Army, and retire from the Confines of *Poland*, and that the *Tartars* the occasion of this War, should send an *Emirze* (that is one of their Princes) to reside as a pledge to secure them from insuing incursions. The Chancellor in the Name of his Master promising to send another Pledge to reside in the Court of *Tartary*, with condition to pay yearly Forty Thousand Florins as a donative from the King of *Poland*, promising moreover for the better maintainance of the Peace to maintain a Resident in the *Ottoman* Court, and by every such Ambassador to send a rich Present, and as the Grand Signours Ambassador that was to reside in the Court of *Poland*, should undertake to secure the incursions of the *Tartars*, so the *Polish* Ambassador should undertake the same for the *Cossacks*, and that the Merchants of *Poland* should have free Trade with the Subjects of the Grand Signeour making their usual Presents, and this Peace not to be binding till such time as the *Achians* should arrive in the *Polish* Court with the overtures, and in the meantime a Parliament to be assembled for the Ratification of these Articles.

Affairs being brought to this pass *Osman* raised his Camp, and returned to *Adrinople*, having lost in this Expedition eighty thousand of his men, and of the *Poles* by reason of the unseasonableness of the weather, and their often skirmishes, no less than twenty thousand perished. Now upon notice of the Turks approach, at the request of the *Polonian* King, the Emperor of *Germany*, had sent to his assistance eight thousand high *Dutch* Souldiers, upon notice of which *Osman* in a great rage proclaimed war against the Emperor, charging him with the manifest breach of the League between them, though himself had been the first aggressor, by aiding the *Transilvanian*, but the King of *Poland* understanding, that what had happened was upon his account, (and that *Osman* kept his Army on foot about *Adrinople*, intending to invade the Emperors Countrey early in the spring, for that purpose having caused twenty thousand *Tartars* to stay upon the frontiers) he called the Turkish *Chiaus* before him, and declared that unless the Grand Seigneour his master changed his purpose, he could not conclude with him any peace, for as much as he was bound to assist the Emperor his confederate, if his Countries were invaded, which resolve of the Kings being made known to *Osman* by his *Chiaus*, he called a Council of his *Bassa's* where in it was concluded that he should leave *Adrinople*, and instantly set forward for *Constantinople*, which was accordingly put in execution, and the *Tartars* on the Frontiers dismissed, so that the war intended against the Emperor being laid aside, news came that the *Emir* of *Syria* was risen in Rebellion, and had possessed himself of the City and Castle of *Tripolis*; whereupon 60 thousand Chequins were delivered out of the Treasury, to repair the Grand Seigniors Pavillions and Carriages, himself with a power-

full Army intending to make an Expedition against the Rebel, though contrary to the advice of most of his *Bassa's*, and the *Mufti*, who alledged that it was altogether needless, for his Majesty to expose himself to the ill conveniencies of such a war, as by the meanest of his *Bassa's* might be expiated, it being certain, that the *Emir* would not stand his Forces, but upon their approach fly into some part of Christendom, and therefore if he set out his fleet of Gallies, he would either by Sea or Land fall into his hands, nor was it safe to leave *Greece* to the attempts of the Christians, who in his absence might spoil it at their pleasure, these and such like reasons caused him to decline going in person, yet he sent forth his Fleet and Army after the best manner sending for Aid to *Argire* and *Tunis*, to awe the *Spaniards* likewise, who had sixty Gallies and six Gallions at *Messina*, prepared as was then conjectured to revenge the taking of *Manfredo*, and the spoil the Turks had made upon the Coasts of *Italy* the year before, another Fleet of lesser consequence he ordered to keep the black sea, there to hinder the *Cossacks* from spoiling his Sea-Towns; after which, contrary to the Advice of his Council, he married the Grandchild of a *Sultan* a wife to *Pertan Bassa*, only for her beauty, being indeed the Paragon of her sex, which wedding was performed without any solemnity, and truly this marriage was greatly disliked, for that his Ancestors for many years past, had not married at all in respect of kindred, nor taken any women to their Concubines of the Turkish race, in respect of kindred, and that which rendred this young Prince more contemptible, was his walking up and down the City in disguise, with a Page or two at the most, and prying into Taverns, and other places like a petty Officer.

Things

Things being at this pass, news came from the *Bassa* of *Buda*, that *Bethlehem Gabor* had concluded a peace with the *Roman* Emperor, which greatly displeased the *Sultan* and his Council, especially for that the peace between himself and the *Polack* was not yet ratified, but the *Polish* Ambassador daily expected, in order thereto, when in the midst of his perturbations, Sir *Thomas Row* Ambassador from his Majesty of Great *Britain*, arrived at the Port, and had his Audience, delivering his Majesties Letter, wherein he demanded redress of the injuries his subjects had sustained by the Pirates of *Algire* and *Tunes*, then in subjection to the *Sultan*, as likewise the delivery of several of the *Polish* Nobility, and one *Scotch* Gentleman, which had been taken prisoners in the late expedition into *Poland*, and amongst them the Prince *Coreskie*, who had formerly made his escape, out of the black Tower, with several other things that might create a good understanding and a continuation of the League between them, some of which were granted, and the other denied, as the Grand Vizier (to whom the management of that affair was committed) thought fit, little to the satisfaction of his Majesties Ambassador, but soon after the Grand Siegneor sent his Letter to his Majesty, containing a satisfactory reply to all that was demanded, except the release of the *Polish* prisoners.

Anno 1622, The Grand Seigneur, not hearing of the Duke *Sbaraskie*, chosen Extraordinary Ambassador for the King of *Poland*, to consummate the Peace, he gave it out that he would go to *Mecha*, and from thence to *Medina* in *Arabia* to visit *Mahomets* Tomb, contrary to the Council of Viziers, who knew not the design, and even to the hazzard of a General Revolt, for they were jealous that under co-

lour of that Voyage he had some other project, and that the *Polish* Duke arriving in his absence, would not follow him at a venture, nor treat with his deputies left at the Port. So that thereby all hopes of Peace would vanish, which did not a little trouble the Turks, whose Trade was greatly impaired by the roving *Cossacks*, which the Emperor understanding, and resolving not to delay his journey, (or indeed his design to cut off the whole order of the Janizaries, for the insolencies frequently offered him, by those Masterful slaves) he sent to hasten *Sbaraskie*, upon whose arrival a peace was concluded, though much to the prejudice of his Territories in *Hungaria*, and now that obstacle being removed, he sent his Carriages over into *Asia*, with all his Treasure, not sparing the Plate and Ornaments of his Pallace, which made the Janizaries mistrust some design more then ordinary, whereupon they resolved to stop his proceedings, and therefore the day before he intended to depart, they with great clamour run to the Seraglio, though unarmed, and demanded *Delavir* the *Vizier* Bassa, *Hoja* the Emperors confessor, the *Castariago* Governour of the women, the *Deflardar* or Treasurer, the *Cadelescher* or chief Judge, with some other prime officers, whom they said had Counsell'd their Emperor to undertake this dangerous Voyage, for which they resolved to punish them with death, charging the Emperor strictly that he should neither go to *Mecca*, nor pass over into *Asia*.

To calm this Tempest the Emperor came forth in person, and used many arguments to perswade them to their duty and Allegiance, promising he should lay aside his purpose, but now nothing would serve these miscreants, but they must have the aforesaid Officers delivered to them, To which the Emperor replied, that

that his honour would greatly suffer if he should permit his friends to be torn from him, but if they had offended in ought, and it was proved against them, in the Divano, whether they should be brought to answer any accusation that should be objected against them, they should be punished by Law, but this did not pacifie them, for they clamoured yet louder, saying they knew them guilty, and that should be sufficient; whereupon they run to the house of the *Hoja*, and not finding him there, plundered it, and from thence passing to the Grand Viziers house, they thought to have done the like there, but finding it fortified, they set Guards in several parts of the City all night, and the next morning came before the Pallace with their Arms, making their demands as before; whereupon the *Hofa Cadeleschar* and *Tefterdar* fled, and were not for a time found, as likewise did the Grand Vizier, with the consent of the Emperor, who promised himself to weather this storm, though in the end he proved too weak, yet was the Vizier brought back by a Hermit, a reputed Saint, after he was got into *Asia*, who trusting to his innocence, resolved to face the Tempest, but the rude multitude without respect to his Reverend Age, and great Merits, having gotten him into their power, cut him to pieces in the sight of the Emperor, which he perceiving would, though too late, have fled over into *Asia*, for now all means were cut off, for the Janizaries had stopped the Port, and in a great rage demanded *Mustapha* the Emperors uncle, who was kept a prisoner in the Seraglio, and the first day of the Tumult by the Emperors command, put into a secret vault, with two *Negro* women, where after much search, and the racking of several servants to make them discover him, he was found and born in Triumph through

the streets, to the old *Seraglio*, having not yet been able to lay hands on *Osman*, by reason he kept himself within his strengths, but hearing they intended to proclaim his uncle Emperor, he at the perswasion of the *Mufti*, putting himself in mourning, went with a few of his followers, and amongst them the *Aga* of the Janizaries, to the old *Seraglio*, and presented himself to the enraged Souldiers with tears, beseeching them to return to their former obedience, and Loyalty, offering to make them any satisfaction, repenting him of his error, and finally invoked them by the merits of his Father and all his Ancestors, to have some pity upon him their true master, This submission a little calmed their fierce natures, so that they began to relent, and had again acknowledged their Lord, had not the *Aga*, supposing to Curry favour with the Emperor, sharply reproved them of ingratitude and disloyalty, which again raised the not extinguished fire, into such a flame, that it was no more to be subdued; but first having slain the *Aga*, and *Huzein Bassa*, with several of the Emperors followers of lesser note, they seized on his person, and carryed him before *Mustapha*, demanding sentence against him, when as the forsaken Prince, pleading for his life (and the new Emperor, not knowing how to condemn, only nodding in token that they might do what they pleased) They after a consult amongst themselves, determined only to imprison him whereupon they set him on horse-back, an insolent *Spahy* changing Turbants with him, and carryed him to the seven Towers, denying by the way a draught of water, and then returning placed *Mustapha* in the Throne proclaiming him Emperor, and went to Sack the Houses of those they had murdered.

Mustapha having once again mounted the Throne
and

and of a miserable Captive made the second time Emperor, was perswaded by *Darut Bassa*, a villaine raised to that dignity by the new Emperor, that if *Osman* lived he would sit uneasie in his throne, and that the Janizaries cooling on the matter, would again advance him the rightful Heir of the *Ottoman* Empire, whereupon it was concluded he should be made away, the charge of which was committed to this wicked Counsellor, who knowing his dignity would expire with *Mustaphas*, strangled young *Osman* in prison, after he had reigned three years and some odd days, not exceeding sixteen years of Age, and so an end was put to the design he had to subdue the *German* Empire, and afterwards all *Europe*, with such success he flattered himself, little remembring that when man proposes, God disposes.

One thing is worthy of note, a little before this Tumult happened, *Osman* dreamed that he rid a Camel, and being mounted he could not force him to go by fair means nor stripes, and that then descending in a rage to revenge it with his sword, the body of the beast vanished, leaving in his hand only the head and bridle, at which dream being exceedingly troubled, he the next day sends for one of his Wizards to interpret it, but he refused, perswading him to apply himself to the *Mufty*, which he did, and had this Interpretation, *viz.* That the Camel signified his Empire, his Riding his abuse in Government, his descension or alighting, his deposing, the vanishing of the body of the Beast, the revolt of his Subjects, the head and bridle remaining in his hand only a bare Title, and that he should shortly dye and lose his Empire, the empty name only of Emperor accompanying him to his grave. And thus much for *Osman* Tenth Emperor of the Turks.

· C H A P. XXI.

*Mustapha Reinthronized, with an Account
of his proceedings till his second Deposing.*

M*ustapha* having as has been related, caused his nephew young *Osman* to be strangled in prison, he made several new Bassas, displacing such as had been made by his Predecessor, least getting power they should revenge the death of *Osman*, nor were there some wanting that both desired and attempted it, especially *Mechmet* Bassa Governour of *Erzurum*, in *Asia*.

During the consternation of the *Asian Turks*, at the death of their Emperor, putting them in fear the Empire would be dissolved, the *Persian King* was not idle, but with a powerful Army recovered most places taken from him, by the Turkish *Sultans*, and the like might have been effected by the Christians, had they not been at discord amongst themselves, so that, that much dreaded Empire, would have been reduced into a small circumference, which many afterwards though too late repented.

The new *Sultan* altogether governed by his Impetuous Officer not yet supposing himself fast in the Throne, consented to the making away the brethren of *Osman*, and children to *Achmat* the late Emperor, in order to Execute which bloody purpose, the *Capi-Aga* or *Major Domo* of the Seraglio, went to their Lodgings, with a purpose to strangle them

them, but the children crying out, several of the Pages run to their rescue, and falling upon the messengers of death, slew the *Capi-Aga*, and evilly intreated the others that attended him, and thereupon sent word to the Janizaries and Spahis, who approved of their proceedings, commanding the body of the *Aga* to be hanged up in the *Hippodrome*, as a terrour to those that should attempt the like for the future, and in a rage went to the Pallace demanding Justice on them that had Counsell'd so wicked a purpose, but the new Emperor, who differed not much from an ideot, solemnly protested he was altogether ignorant of the matter, and if such command were procured, it was gotten by subreption, which Protestation was easily believed, yet *Darut Bassa*, and the Emperors mother were vehemently suspected, when to appease the angry souldiers, the *Bassa* was displaced from the Viziership, *Hazein Bassa* placed in his stead, and the Emperors mother hid in the Pallace till the Tempest was over, which could be no otherwise allayed then by a shour of Gold Chequins.

After which, the new Vizier protesting either to reform the affairs of the Empire, or fall a Sacrifice, did a little restore the face of Justice, by making examples of some, and terrifying others with threats, insomuch that he was looked upon as a man fit for those boisterous times, nor was that his only aim, but he resolved when once settled in his place, to remove *Mustapha*, and place *Morat* brother to *Osman* in the Imperial seat, not thinking himself safe, under a man that was altogether governed by an imperious woman, desirous of Rule, and was no further capable of the passions of love and hate then they were infused into him.

During these troubles of the *Ottoman* Empire, the Duke

Duke *Sbaraskie* lay upon the Frontiers, and would not advance to ratifie the peace between the King his master and the new *Sultan*, till such time as Sir *Thomas Rowe* his Majesty of Great *Brittain*s Ambassador, then resident at the Port had given him his faith for his security, which done, the Duke advanced, and upon his arrival at the Port, was magnificently entertained by the new Vizier, yet e'r any thing was absolutely concluded, a matter happened which had like to have turned all into nothing; for on the 17 of *June* 1622 Prince *Coreskie*, who had been taken in the late war between *Osman* and *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, was strangled in prison at *Constantinople*, which put all into murmur and deep consideration, to what intent it was done, when so great a ransom might have been had for his release, but most believed it was done out of a Politick end, for that the Prince being a mortal enemy to the Turks, if he should have been set at liberty, his restless nature would not have suffered the peace to have continued long inviolable, yet the urgent affairs of *Poland* so requiring, the Peace was concluded in nineteen Articles, much to the advantage of the *Polonian* King, the Turks greatly fearing at that juncture, the Christians uniting against them, might dismember their Empire.

The new Vizier by this time having won the affections of the Souldiers, resolved upon his former purpose of Deposing *Mustapha*, and setting up *Morat* Brother to *Osman*, then a child, and the better to forward his purpose, he caused the *Aga* of the Janizaries, and several Officers of the Court to be seized, as contrivers of the death of *Coreskie*, whom himself had commanded to be strangled, which raised another Tumult; for the Janizaries running furiously to the Court, demanded their Captain, whom

the

the *Bassa* had ordered to be put to death, and had done great mischief had he not been delivered, nor were they so contented, but peremptorily demanded the head of the *Visier*, solemnly protesting to sacrifice him for the affront done to their order; upon which escaping through the Emperors Garden, he took boat and passed over into *Asia*, whereupon they sacked his house, and found therein great store of Treasure, they likewise demanded the heads of several others, but in the end all was hushed, yet they proceeded to the Election of a new *Visier*, making choice of one *Mustapha*, a man of a soft nature and easily ruled, who scarcely durst do Justice for fear of offending any man, which proceeding of the insolent Janizaries nevertheless, caused the wiser sort of men to retire from office and employment, and to the insufficient daily change and ruine; for the Emperor durst not move but by the directions of the Souldiers whose creature he was, so many insolencies were frequently committed, and all *Asia* greatly endangered to be lost, for at *Bagdat* antiently *Babylon*, the Captain of the Janizaries killed the *Bassa*, burnt the *Mufti*, and gave his daughter in Marriage to one *Assan Beg*, pretender to an Antient Inheritance of a bordering Province, to cantonize that part nor *Asia* only stood in suspense what to do, but the Dominions of the Turkish *Sultan* in *Africk*, greatly wavered, as doubting whom to obey.

On the 22 of *August*, an Extraordinary Ambassador from *Bethlehem Gabor* Prince of *Transylvania* arrived at the Port, who amongst other instructions had order to excuse his master, and to declare the reasons, why he had made peace with the Emperor, without the knowledge of the *Sultan*, which were, that the war had continued three years in the Kingdom of *Hungary* and had so wasted the Country, that

it

it was impossible for him to stay longer in the field unless he would have exposed his Army to those wants, that would have reduced him to have accepted of an inglorious peace, or to have suffered a great part of his Souldiers to perish for want, and that if he had stood out upon the peace concluded between the Sultan and the *Polonian*, the whole stress of War would have rested on him and therefore he desired to be excused, adding that he meant not long to conserve the peace, therefore desired that he and the Bassa of *Buda* might have it in joynt Commission to raise such Forces as they thought convenient to invade the Empire, when opportunity offered, but this request not agreeing with the interest of the Sultan it was rejected.

About this time the *Janizaries* in a tumultuary way came to the Court and demanded all the Offices of gain, and to be Stewards of the Revenues of the Churches which are great as likewise to take the Farms of Customs wherein they committed many outrages, the Viliers not daring to deny them any thing they demanded. They drunk Wine in the streets without prohibition contrary to their Law, and exacted money of the Christians to purchase it, and if denied took it by force, and murdered without being punished, and when at any time complaint was made the Magistrates answered they durst not meddle with them, that had murdered their King, and the Bassa's themselves desired the complainants patience, telling them that they would bear a part with the general sufferance.

About the same time the *Janizaries* in the Gallies which rid before *Smirna* commanded by *Halil* Bassa, assault-

assaulted against his will the houses of the Christian Consuls, insomuch that the English Consul with all those of that Nation, were forced to run naked from their Lodgings, and save their lives by swimming to the Admirals Gally, upon which the masterless Turks ransacked the lower part of the house there, making spoil to the value of Two Thousand Dollars. The French sustained more loss, and the *Venetians* at least ten Thousand Dollars, the Consul having likewise one of his men cut in pieces, nor could the Admiral either by threats or intreaties restrain these outrages, but was forced for the prevention of further mischief to put to Sea.

In *Asia* there were three Rebellions, one at *Babylon*, another at *Arzurum* upon the borders of *Persia*, and a third at *Mesopotamia*, which threatened the ruine of all *Asia*; yet to prevent the worst several new officers were made, and an Army raised in *Grecia*, in order to pass the *Hellepont*, but in the end nothing was done more then assembling to little purpose, all the Turkish Forces on *Europe* side, which so impoverished the Treasury that the like had not formerly been known, nor were any Exactions and Extortions omitted to raise money for defraying the necessary charges.

About this time came to the Court of *Poland*, an Ambassador from the great Duke of *Muscovy* to intreat a peace, which was hardly granted by reason several Letters of the said Ambassadors being intercepted, plainly demonstrated that at his first setting out his designs were otherwise, upon notice that a Peace was concluded with the Sultan, he feigning himself sick upon the Frontiers, had sent for new instructions.

Darut Bassa who had married Sultan *Mustapha's* Sister falling into the displeasure of the Visier, he so dealt with the *Spahi*, that coming to the Court they demanded his Head for the murdering the late Emperour, and having gotten him into their hands were about to behead him, but whilst he was upon his knees, every woman expecting the fatal blow, the *Fanizaries* at the instance of the *Sultans* Mother rescued him and carried him to their Colledge, promising him their protection, for which he bestowed amongst them Forty Thousand Chequins. But that availed not, for soon after he was taken thence and carryed to the prison where he had murdered young *Osman* and there strangled, now the better to please the *Polonians* and obstruct the cause of War for the future, the Ambassador was not only dispatched with several Noblemen of *Poland*, who had since the late War remained Prisoners, but it was likewise concluded that *Jehan Begh*, the *Tartarian* Prince, Author of the War should be deposed, and *Michmet Geheray* his Cosen, and first of the Blood, late Prisoner at the *Rhodes*, should succeed him in that large Kingdom.

Asia was still in doubt to be lost for that *Abassa* Bassa Governour of *Arzirum*, with an Army of one hundred thousand Horse and Foot had siezed upon most of the Provinces, though without doing any harm to the inhabitants, but wheresoever he found any of the *Fanizaries* he sacrificed them to the Ghost of the dead Emperour, he as he said being by God appointed the revenger of his Death, and for that cause he had taken up arms declaring that he would come to the Port and demand Justice upon the Murtherers, and that if he was found a Traytor or
guil-

guilty, he would lay down his head willingly; but if those he accused were found guilty, he would see execution done, nor did the Nobility of *Constantinople* much disapprove of his march, rather esteeming him a friend then an Enemy, who came to deliver them from the Tyranny of the *Janizaries*, whose insolencies were insufferable. Yet to prevent the worst it was resolved that *Mustapha* should be deposed, the *Janizaries* not gainsaying it, for that they well knew they alone should be exposed to the fury of the Bassa, at the rooting out of whose order he chiefly aimed, though he had likewise other designs which were to wrest the Grand Viscership from him that held it, and make himself Governour of the young Prince Brother to *Osman*, whom he intended to advance to the Empire; yet rather for shew then otherwise the Souldiers were ordered to pass the *Hellespont* in great numbers, but the *Janizaries* would not stir for two reasons, first for that the time of receiving their pay was at hand, and secondly fearing alone to be exposed to the fury of the *Asian Army*, greatly doubting that if it came to a Battle their Fellows would revolt, and by that means easily bring them to destruction.

CHAP. XXII.

*The Life and Reign of Morat or Amurath
the 4th. the 11th. Emperour of the Turks.*

IN this distraction of the *Ottoman* Empire, the better to calm the tempest ere it turned all into confusion by Shipwrecking the State, the Grand *Vizier* going with the *Fanizaries* and *Spahi* to the *Seraglio*, demanded to speak with *Mustapha*, and that he would answer them a few questions, which he being no ways able to do, and refusing to appear they entered the Palace, and took thence *Morat* or *Amurath* Brother to *Osman*, and Son to *Achmat* then about 14 years of Age, and carrying him through the streets in triumph, caused him every where to be proclaimed Emperour to the great content of the *Constantinopolitans*, who by this mutation hope for peaceful times, and the face of Justice restored which for many months had abandoned the City, every man doing in a manner what he pleased.

Thed ay after this innovation the young Emperor made his publique entry, from whose lively countenance and apparent activity, every one promised great things during his Reign; but at that time such had been the policy of the covetous Souldiers whom *Mastapha* had continually supplied with the Imperial Treasure, to support his bad Title to the Turkish Diadem, that Money was wanting to supply necessary occasions. Infomuch that the *Fanizaries* were obliged to remit the Largesse usually bestowed

ed upon with an Augmentation of their pay at the Coronation of every Emperour, and that money which was found was for the most part adulterated, insomuch that the Visier sent to the Ambassadors of the Christian Princes residing there to borrow Thirty Thousand Dollars, and narrow search was made after the Treasure that had been conveyed away by the Bassa's that bore sway during the distraction in which search Eight Hundred Thousand Dollars were found that had been imbezled by the Visier *Darut*.

During these Transactions *Abassa* Bassa had possessed himself of all most all *Asia*, whereupon it was thought necessary by fair means to perswade him to lay down his Arms, and the rather to induce him so to do, the Emperour sent unto the *Capigi* Bassa with a Vest, Sword and Letters of Credence giving him thanks for the love he had shewed to his Brother and his Blood, but now the revenge belonged to himself of which he would take care, and therefore desired him if he were a true subject as he professed himself to be to return to his Government of *Arzurum*, after having dissolved his Army, and there to rest till further occasion required his service. Upon this order from the Emperour he excused himself, that the far advancement of the season would not permit him to retire, but promised to live in peace until the spring and then to return in obedience to his Government. Nor was this all for the Bassa or *Emir* of *Sidon* was up in Arms, and with an Army of Thirty Thousand men had seized the strong City and Castle of *Damascus*, and was supposed to hold confederacy with the Christian Princes being himself no favourer of the *Mahometan* superstition, and besides he was a Prince by descent and claimed a right to those Countries, as the antient inheritance of his Predecessors

sors nor was the Emperor in a condition to repress him by force, therefore intreaties were used as to the former with many large promises, nor was the *Transilvanian* Prince quiet though in a different nature, for contrary to his League with the Emperor in a hostile manner he entered *Hungary*, and possessed himself of several Towns: To oppose whom the Imperialists raised a considerable Army and incamped in the way he was to pass, yet was his coming so suddain that he cut off seven hundred straglers of the Imperialists, and had surprized the Camp had not the alarm been given by some that fled, yet with his whole Army he so pressed them, that they were forced to betake themselves to a small Town *Ghoding* upon the River of *Moran*, where they Fortified under a Castle that defended it; but in the end oppressed with cold and hunger they sent to the Prince to make truce which with the consent of Sultan *Murat* was accorded on these considerations. First, That the Emperour should disclaim all right to *Hungary*, and should leave the people free under the Government of the Prince of *Transilvania*. Secondly, That the Prince and all the Provinces that had sent their Ambassadors to the Port, and had made league with him, and had taken the Imperial protection should be restored to their antient Liberty and Estates. Thirdly, That the Emperor should pay an annual Tribute of forty thousand Dollars, pretended to be granted in the dayes of *Solyman* for *Austria*, and that the Prince, and the Bassa of *Buda*, should have full power, if they found it convenient at any time to conclude a Peace on the part of the *Ottoman* Emperor, and that all Cities, Towns, and Castles should remain in the hands of those that possessed them, a free intercourse of Trade being

allowed

allowed between the Subjects of the one and the other Empire.

This done the Prince of *Transilvania* made shew as if he would redeem all the poor Captives taken by the Turks at his own charge, with some small assistance from the Imperialists, upon whom he layed the fault, that it was not done, for as much as they failing to send their Commissioners to treat about the matter, the Turks in the night time decamped, and carried away with them contrary to his pleasure twenty thousand Christians into miserable Captivity. He likewise warned the Turks to keep in order and not to straggle in their retreat, nor to commit any insolency or spoil, for that the Country was all in Armes, and already intruded, but they not following his Council two thousand *Hungarian* Horse fell upon their Rear, and cut off six hundred of them; whereupon they turned head and destroyed many Villages, killing and taking Prisoners all that came to hand, and amongst the rest one of the *Hungarian* Lords.

By this time the *Persian* desirous to dismember the *Ottoman* Empire, with a powerful Army entred the Turkish Dominions in the Province of *Babylon*, and greatly Alarumed that City, whereupon a war was proclaimed against him at the Port, and all Souldiers in the Emperors pay commanded to repair to the rendezvous upon pain of Confiscation, and their wives and children being sold for slaves, it was likewise propounded that a reconciliation should be made between the Emperor and *Abassa* Bassa at any rate, least he should joyne with the *Persian*, and that being so gained he might be employed as General of Turkish Army, but the Janizaries would not hear of the advancement of their mortal enemy, but rather desired to be led against him and fight it out to the

utmost, but the *Spahi* were of another mind, as rather inclinable to the Bassa, yet the Janizaries displaced their *Aga*, for dissuading them therefrom, and set up in his stead a page of the Court.

Thus whilst it was unresolved how to proceed, the *Persian* King omitted no opportunity, but Conquered the Province and City of *Babylon*, put to flight *Hafis* Bassa, General of that defensive war, and took prisoner *Chur Hassen* Bassa a renowned old Souldier, and cutting in pieces all that opposed him, found means to seize upon *Mosul* (antiently called *Ninivie*) and *Laska*, on the *Persian* Sea, and dividing his Army, sent part towards *Van* and *Diarbeck*, and the other towards *Mecha*, incompassing by that means all that part of the Turks Dominions.

About this time his Majesty of Great Brittain, by his Ambassador residing at *Constantinople*, complained of the injuries his Subjects Trading in those Seas, had sustained by the Pirates of *Argier* and *Tunis*, who in two years space, had taken about one hundred English Vessels, most of them richly laden, wherefore the Ambassador demanded that they might be punished for violating the League, and be forced to restore such Vessels with their lading, as were found not to be imbezled, or that they might be left to his Majesty to punish without any offence to the Grand Seigneour, but many of the Bassas being interested in those Piracies, nothing more could be procured then a Letter to the Bassas of those two Cities, to send their Commissioners to the Port, to answer to what was objected against them, and at length to promise not any more to molest the *English*, in order to the confirmation of which, several Articles were drawn, and delivered to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, then residing at the Port, with the

the Grand Seigneours Letter of command to the Dage Bassa and Divan of *Argier* and *Tunis* to forbear assaulting or in the least injuring any *English* ships, or the Subjects of the King of *England*, in what part of the *Ottoman* Empire soever they resided, in so much that the fear of punishment, did for the space of five years deter those Pirates from molesting the *English*, either by Sea or Land, and the better to ingratiate themselves, they delivered six hundred *English* Marriners (which they had taken at divers times) without Ransom, but upon the Expiration of the years aforesaid they again robbed and spoiled the Merchants ships Trading in those parts, but were frequently met withall by the *English* men of war that were sent into those Seas to secure the Traffick.

Anno 1624 on the 24 of *March* Ali Bassa the great Visier, by whose means *Morat* was advanced to the Crown, was sent for into the *Seraglio*, where being questioned by the young Emperor about the affairs of the *Persian* Invasion, and not answering to the satisfaction of those present, he was then and there at the commandment of the Emperour beheaded, and his body cast out into the street (which caused much murmuring amongst his friends) and one *Cregues Mechemet* advanced to the Dignity of Grand Visier, but he was not settled in his place before news came that the Roman Emperour had entered *Hungary* with an Army of Fifty Thousand Horse and Foot, resolving to recover the Towns a little before take by *Bethlem Gabor* Prince of *Transilvania*, and that the *Cossack* with four hundred Boats were abroad in the Black Sea, and had taken many vessels laden with Provision, as likewise made great spoil upon the Coast. To prevent which the Bassas of *Buda*, *Temeswar*, *Bosna*, *Canisa*, and *Agria*, re-

ceived Orders to joyn with the *Transilvanian*, and several Gallies dispatched into the black Sea, nor were the preparations against the *Persians* slackned, who still marched on conquering, for by this time *Abassa* Bassa upon the receipt of the Grand Signeours pardon had submitted himself, and with the forces under his command marched towards the frontiers, to joyn with *Hafis Achmet* Bassa who made head on that side, by which the suspicion of the *Janizaries* being removed they to the number of Thirty Thousand were mustered for the Wars, and Forty thousand *Spahi*, their rendezvous being appointed about *Brussia*, and at the same time *Biram* Bassa was dispatched General of the frontiers of *Poland* and *Bug-dania* with Four thousand Souldiers, and Orders to command all the *Begs* and *Sanzacks*, to raise such forces as they could and joyn him to prevent the incursions of the *Cossacks*, and more Gallies sent into the black Sea, to transport *Jean Gheray Han* Prince of *Tartary* the year before deposed by *Mechmet*, and to re-establish him in his Kingdom, but *Mechmet* having notice of his arrival, raised an Army of Sixty thousand Horse, and drove him from the Land with the slaughter of many Turks, which so enraged the Grand Signeour that as he said, his honour being engaged he resolved to re-inthrone him, for *Mechmet* was suspected of holding correspondence with the *Persian*, to whose proceeding the Turks and *Arabians* had by this time put a stop, but failed therein, for the Captain Bassa with a great Army Landing the second time was routed, two Bassas and about Five thousand Turks slain, as many taken Prisoners, and Twenty pieces of Cannon, with much rich Furniture left to the *Tartars*, who by that means found that they were able to deal with the Turks.

Things falling out thus in *Tartary*, the *Cossacks* taking the advantage of the Turkish Fleets absence, with Eighty Boats or small Barks entered the straits of *Bosphorus*, where lying before *Constantinople*, they brought a general fear upon that great City, and after having plundered and razed several Towns upon the Sea Coast, they returned in Triumph unopposed, which good success imboldened them with a greater number of Vessels to adventure a second time, when as before they returned with a great booty, the Turks not being able to prevent it. About the same time the Pirates of *Tunis* and *Argiers* revolted from the Grand Signeours obedience, and robbed many of his Ports in the *Mediterranean*, taking such Ships as they found therein, and setting fire to a great number of Storehouses, so that the loss the Christian Merchants sustained by them in one Expedition amounted to 4 Millions of Ducates, nor did they less harm by Land to such as bordered on their Country, neither regarding Friends or Foes any longer then stood with their conveniency and profit, being indeed Enemies to all men; which intestine troubles obliged *Morat* to conclude a Peace with *Mechmet*, the *Tartar* Prince dissembling the intentions he had to depose him, laying all the fault of what had happened upon the Captain Bassa, whose head had like to have gone off to have rendered his Masters story plausible, such danger are those in that live under a Tyrant, whose will is his Law, not weighing Justice nor good deserts further then may serve his purpose. Yet blood was not wanting for *Huzein* Bassa who sometime before fled, being taken and brought to *Constantinople*, where (after in hopes to save his Life, he had confessed his Treasure) he was strangled. *Abassa* Bassa notwithstanding the specious shews he made to march against the *Persians*, linger'd

linger'd greatly, which gave the Janizaries a suspicion that he had contrived the matter only to draw them into his danger, and then to destroy them as he had formerly purposed, which opinion of theirs had turned all again into confusion, had he not at that instance reconciled himself to the Grand *Visier*, and protested that he would not hurt the *Janizaries*, but use his Arms in defence of the Empire. So that by swearing three times on the *Alcoran*, that no violence should be done on either side, all animosities vanished, the Government of *Arzirum* being confirmed to him, and he allowed a competent number of Souldiers to guard the frontiers, as likewise places of trust bestowed upon most of his chief Officers, but upon the *Janizaries* putting many of his Friends to the Sword who had yielded themselves to the Grand *Visier*, he in a rage fell into their quarter, making slaughter of three or four thousand of them, though not without the loss of as many of his own men, but finding that the *Visier* had drawn up his Army in Battalia, he founded the retreat and marched to his Government, and the *Visier* kept on his way towards *Diarbecher* to seek the *Persian*, when in the mean time the *Persian* General treated with *Abassa* to deliver up the City of *Arzirum*, to the King his Master promising in lieu thereof great rewards, but he knowing upon such terms he could at any time make his peace who ever was Conqueror, seemingly hearkened to that motion; so that gaining credit eight thousand *Persians* was sent to take possession thereof, who he no sooner got within his danger, but he set upon them, put one thousand to the Sword, and took most of the remainder Prisoners, which caused the Turk to have a better opinion of him then formerly, insomuch that they

they nominated him for Grand Vifler the enfuing year.

Anno 1625. a new Rebellion broke out in *Asia*, headed by an ordinary *Spahi*, who drew down ten thousand men before the City of *Smirna*, the which after some refiftance he entered, and pretending to reform abufes cut off the heads of two *Cadees*, punifhed divers others, place and displaced the Magiftrates as he pleafed, and then departed without fuffering any fpoil to be made, pretending the Grand Signeours order for what he had done, and indeed the Court connived at his proceedings, for awing corrupt Officers, he reftored the face of Juftice in thofe parts, but not long after, he with a greater power marched toward *Bruffia* in *Natolia*, uſing the Name of *Morat* to colour his purpoſe, pretending to work a Reformation in the State, but in the ending of great preparations were making to oppoſe him, he diſbanded his Army and retired himſelf. And now the mortality raged at *Conſtantinople* in ſuch fort, that Fifty thouſand died in a ſhort ſpace, ſo that the City was left almoſt deſolate; which known to the *Coffacks*, they came again in their Boats, and failing through the *Bosphorus* made great ſpoil on *Europe* ſide, attempting to burn the Arſenal, to prevent which all the Gallies and ſmall Veſſels in the Port were manned out, ſo that between them there happened a fierce ingagement; but the *Coffacks* Boats being ſmall though many in number, thirty of them by the ſhot of the Gallies were ſunk and overturned, inſomuch that five hundred *Coffacks* were drowned and taken Priſoners, and double the number of Turks ſlain, for the Boats being in all three hundred, and each Boat manned with thirty or forty Muſquetiers, they ſhowered
their

their Bullets so thick upon the Decks of the Gallies, that scarce a Turk peeped out but he was cut off; twice they boarded the Admirals Gally, and had taken it had not the Sea of a suddain gone high, and the Wind stood against them.

Upon the approach of great Visier towards the Province of *Babylon*, the King of *Persia* sent to desire a Treaty of Peace, which was only to protract time, it in the end coming to nothing, yet the Princes of *Georgia* sent their Ambassadors, as willing to be freed from the *Persian* yoke, which Ambassadors were kindly entertained by the Visier, their demands granted, and the Bishop of *Calcedon* their Countrey man sent back with them to see the Peace Ratified; upon which they raised a great Army, and invaded the Territories of *Persia*, to oppose whom the King sent part of his Army under the leading of his great Lieutenant, who joyning Battle was overthrown, with the loss of seven thousand of his men, which greatly encouraged the Visier, so that he resolved the next year to besiege *Babylon*, in which was a Garrison of eight thousand *Persians*, besides the Citizens who were five times the number, yet early in the Spring.

Anno 1626. having refreshed his Army, he pitched his Camp before that great City, but as they were making their approaches Twenty Thousand *Persian* Horse, who attended the motion of the Turks, fell into the Visiers quarter doing great execution, and by that means troubled the whole Army, but in fine the *Persians* were obliged to retire, yet not before they had slain about Six Thousand Turks, upon which a muster was taken of the Army, which was found much less then was expected for that a number of the *Spahi* and *Fanizaries* that were in-

inroled, had forbore to undertake that dangerous, and so often fatal Expedition, and seven Princes of the *Arabs* Tributaries to the Grand Signeour having raised their power, refused to advance any further then the Borders of their Principalities, alledging that they durst not displease the possessors of *Babylon*, but were ready to obey if the City fell into the hands of the Turks, which weakness known to the *Persian* King he drew thither the strength of his whole Kingdom, and running Trenches round about the Turks Camp, besieged it in such manner that all Provisions and Succors was cut off, and instead of hoping to win the City, they were solicitous of nothing more then how to retreat. This danger of the Army was made known to the Emperor and *Divano* at *Constantinople*, but nothing was done till it was too late, for through want and diseases the Army was so wasted, that they were no wayes able to make head against their Enemies; besides a great number of them were slain in the frequent sallies the besieged made out of the City, and the *Persians* Incurfions, who seldom failed to beat up one quarter or other of the Camp, and hearing of no supplies durst advance, or were in a probability to relieve the half starved Souldiers, who had left no unclean thing uneaten, it was resolved that under the favour of the night the Camp should rise and force a way through the *Persian* Squadron, rather choosing to die like men then pine with hunger; Whereupon they brake their great Artillery, and cast into the *Euphrates* all such things as they could not convey away, to prevent their falling into the hands of the Enemy, and then with as little noise as possible, broke through one quarter of the *Persian* Camp, yet not so suddainly but that the *Persians* taking the Alarum, overtook them ere they reached
Ninive

Ninive, and had the execution of the Army for the space of ten dayes, in which time seventy thousand Turks and *Tartars* fell by the Sword, when to cast the odium upon the Bassa's, and to save his credit at the Port the Visier caused three of their heads to be stricken off. This great blow caused the revolt of many Cities, upon the Frontiers of *Persia*, and indangered the revolt of all *Asia*. The Turks not having received the like blow, since the overthrow of *Bajazet* the first by *Tamerlane* the great, which caused a general heavyness throughout the City of *Constantinople*, few therein but lost one Friend or other in this unfortunate War, of which the Emperour of *Germanies* Ambassador taking advantage pressed for a speedy conclusion of Peace, and laboured to cross the purpose of the *Transylvanian* Prince, but in the interim the Imperial and *Transylvanian* Armies being abroad, on the 16th. of *October* near to the River *Gran* a mortal Battle was fought between them, wherein the latter was put to the rout, and in passing confusedly the River over two Bridges layed for that purpose, Six thousand were slain drowned and taken Prisoners, yet Winter coming on the Prince retired with his Troops, and without the consent of the Turks made a Truce with the Imperialists for three months, sending to the Port to excuse himself for so doing, by shewing the necessity that induced him so to do. But ere a Peace could be concluded as was intended Count *Mansfeld* and Duke *Ernestus*, who were the greatest inciters thereto died, so that nothing for a time was done therein, but it was left in the power of the Prince, and Bassa of *Buda* to War upon the Emperour, as they found it convenient or most advantageous, inso-much that they raised great forces intending to make *Austria* the seat of War, but upon further negotiation

negotiation that design was layed aside, all Parties being more desirous of Peace then War, and so matters were left doubtful.

About this time an Ambassador from the King of Persia, with overtures of Peace arrived at Aleppo, but could get no Audience of the Visier, who remained there with his broken Army till an other Ambassador with presents arrived at Constantinople, where he made such overtures that they were approved by many, but the non-delivery of Babylon a little before taken by the Persians, put a stop to the negotiation, the Turks not being willing upon any other Terms to hearken to Peace, for that their Army in Asia was by this time recruited and again entered into Persia, to avert which the Persians besieged Achiska a strong City near Arzurum, being encouraged thereto by Abassa Bassa, to whom the Visier sent to draw out his forces, and in conjunction with the Georgians, to joyn with such forces as he should send him which were three thousand Janizaries under the leading of twelve Captains, with whom he sent Provision and other necessaries, but for the hatred the Bassa had to that order he commanded them to be set upon in the night, and almost all cut in pieces, those that remained and were taken Prisoners he sent to the Persian King; and then with such forces as he had Fortified himself in Arzurum. The news of this disgrace coming to the ear of the Visier, he drew down with all his forces toward the Rebel, resolving to punish him if he could by any means get him into his hands.

Now the treaty between the Imperial Ministers, those of the Grand Signeours and Transylvanian Princes

Princes growing ripe, a Peace was concluded though severally, for the Prince having understood that the King of *Denmark* who was coming to his aid had been overthrown by *Walstein* the Emperours General, and that the Bassa of *Buda* bought with *German* Gold, had crossed all his purposes at *Constantinople*, and discovered his inmost Councils, he grew jealous of his own state, and therefore thought it best to make Peace whilst he was in a capacity to obtain honourable condition, which Treaty comprised in ten Articles were Ratified at *Presburg*. The chief points of which were, That either side should cease from Hostilities, and forbear directly or indirectly to assist each others Rebels, and that all the City and Towns taken in the late War, should be redelivered. Nor were the Turks slow in finishing their Treaty, as being no ways able to maintain an Army in *Europe* by reason of their troubles in *Asia*, so that much to the same purpose as the former contained in eleven Articles, the Peace was concluded at the Port, to the great joy of all parties especially of the Turks, who were now at leisure to recover their Towns, and quell the Rebellions in *Asia*.

Anno 1627. *Halil* Bassa the great Visier and General of the Turkish Army, in having for sometime besieged *Abassa* Bassa in *Arzirum*, and finding his attempts to win the City vain, by reason of the many inconveniencies in his Camp, he was forced to rise, which the Rebel perceiving sallied out and with all his forces followed hard after for seven dayes, cutting off all his Rear, and took his Treasure, Cannen and Baggage, which so discouraged the Souldiers, that they mutined against their General and sought to stone him, and long was it

ere they could be appeased, whereupon he wrote to the Grand Signeour informing him that there was no hopes of obedience unless the reverence of his person did revive it, yet he rested at *Tocat* and for the better quieting disorders disbanded a part of his Army, who almost naked to the great disgrace of the Visier came to *Constantinople*, which gave *Abassa* Bassa opportunity to hold correspondence with the *Poles*, *Tartars*, and *Cossacks*, whereupon *Husseruph* Bassa a Visier of the Bench, and late *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, was chosen conductor of the Militia, and passed over into *Asia* with such forces as could be instantly raised, and many great Ordinance cast for the service, Gallies were likewise fitted out, and all preparations made as far as the Treasure would extend, and it was further concluded that *Husseruph* should march directly to *Diarbecher* to oppose the *Persian*, and there remain as Bassa of the Province, and that on his way to prevent charge, the Seal should be sent him and he constituted great Visier in the room of *Halil* Bassa, whose credit therein was had in regard for that he was not sent for home as in disgrace, but in the head of the Army delivered up his charge and so retired to the Port, there to continue one of the Council Visiers.

Anno 1628, about the 5th. of *April* *Husseruph* was declared Grand Visier, and took upon him the charge of the Army with orders to march directly toward *Babylon*, for of *Abassa* Bassa they had had enough the year before. Yet he wrote to the Grand Signeour, terming himself his slave, promising him that he would hold the Province of *Arzurum* for him, but if he sought to expect him by force he would put it into the hands of the *Persian*, but if he might possess it he would defend it against him, and still hold him

as the capital Enemy of the Turkish Empire, nor should his forces be wanting to assist the new General in his Expedition for the recovery of *Babylon*, and this was accepted as a plenary submission.

Whilst the Grand Signeour was thus busied to settle affairs of *Asia*, and to reduce *Abassa* Bassa to obedience, the *Tartar Han* was openly declared a Rebel and Enemy to the Turkish Empire, and his Brother *Schachin Geberay* sent out of *Persia*, to raise troubles on that side, having exacted a Tribute of the Princes of *Bugdania* and *Valachia*, he was overthrown by Count *Emire* a *Tartar* Captain, who undertook to reduce him to the obedience of the Grand Signeour, whereupon it was suddainly resolved that it should be once again attempted to restore *Ghian Geray* to that Kingdom, and to expell *Mechmet Han*, in order to which the Captain Bassa once more prepared the Fleet of Gallies, so that for a year the *Mediterranean* was like to be incumbred, and the Turkish Empire ingaged in so many troubles, that every thing seemed to work towards its subversion, but great bodies have strong Luctations and die not with one fit, and such was the blindness and misery of the times that whilst the Christian Princes contended in ambitious and envious rather than just quarrels, none of them had leasure to push down that Enemy who stood tottering on the brink of ruine, nor to vindicate the Christian honour, nor the Holy Land oppressed and possessed by a Tyrant, that only subsisted by their dissentions.

About this time great differences arose between the Greek and Romish Churches, about superiority and forms of Worship, which was strongly maintained by either party, insomuch that for a long time (to the scandal of the Christian Religion) the

con-

controversie was debated before the Turkish Commissioners at *Constantinople*, who being Enemies to both alike, nay, even to the very name of Christ, moving no otherwayes then they were bribed, laughing to see the simplicity of the Christians, to make them Arbitrators of that which they nothing more desired then to destroy, but in the end after infinite Treasure spent, the Pope proved the richer, and therefore prevailed to have such of his Clergy as had been dispossessed of their Colleges, Monasteries, and the like in the Turkish Empire restored, especially the Jesuits who had been thrust out of St. Bennets Church and Monastery in *Galatia*, concerning the restitution of whom the Grand Signeour, at the instance of the French Ambassador sent his Letters mandatory to *Affan* Bassa Captain of the Sea, and to the *Cadee* of *Galatia*.

About this time Sir *Thomas Row*, Ambassador at the Port for His Majesty of Great *Brittain*, procured leave to depart, by whom the Grand Signeour sent this following Letter.

The Grand Signeours Letter to his Majesty of Great *Brittain*.

TO the most glorious amongst the greatest Majesties of the Princes of *Jesus*, most revered amongst the People of the *Messiah*, sole Director of the important affairs of the *Nazarean Nation*, Lord of the limits of Honour and Power, Patron of Grace and Authority Charles King of Great *Brittain* and *Ireland*, to whose last dayes we wish all compleat and true happiness.

Be it known unto your Majesty at the sight of this Letter, That your Ambassador Sir *Thomas Rowe*, respected and beloved amongst the Christians, to whom we wish a happy end, being heretofore sent to reside as your Ambassa-

dor at our happy Port, to be watchful over all offices of good correspondence between us, and that all requisite terms of honour should be fulfilled, and to renew the mantle of our affections, bath from his first arrival here until this present, most perfectly attended upon the charge imposed in him, and in all his actions proceeded with extraordinary diligence and industry, for the high honour and great fame of your Majesty His Sovereign, and now your Majesty having sent in his place one of the chief of your most esteemed Sir Peter Wyche, to reside at our Imperial Port, and that the said Sir Thomas Rowe hath taken resolution to return to your Majesty, with our Imperial consent we send him unto you, with these our Imperial Letters, hoping in the most High God, that when as he is most safely arrived with you, out of your abundant and innate clemency, and your singular and sincere goodness, in respect of his good and faithful service, that you will see him honoured and rewarded, and to see that the great affection and love which we nourish towards your Majesty, may be daily increased we desire you readily employ your benign care in the keeping and observing our Imperial Capitulation with every Article therein contained, as we on our part will likewise do in all things that are meet to be done, concerning their perfect observation, whereof you shall find a good and clear Testimony by our future effects.

Given at Constantinople, Anno 1628.

With this Letter and several presents, Sir Thomas Rowe imbarqued on the *Sampson Frigat*, in order to sail for *England*, but coming before *Malta*, and being there becalmed, four Gallies came out of the Haven and set upon the English Vessel, but after seven hours hot dispute were forced to retire with the loss of thirty six Knights of the Order, and two hun-

hundred sixty four common Souldiers and Rowers; when in the *Sampson* only one Jew a Passenger was killed, and about six men wounded, yet the Ship was grievously rent with Culverin shot, and had been lost had the Sea been outrageous.

Sir *Peter Wyche* His Majesty of great *Brittains* new Ambassador at *Constantinople*, had not long continued there before some disturbance happened, occasioned by one *William Bundock* an English Captains taking a Ship belonging to the Port, as she was sailing to *Messina*, which caused the owners to demand with much clamour reparation, insomuch that the *Chimacham* or Chief Officer of the Port, caused an Imbargo to be layed upon two English Vessels then riding at Anchor in the Haven of *Constantinople*, nor could the Ambassador procure their release without a promise of reparation for the dammages sustained, and that the Actor should be punished, nor would the insolent Souldiers though no way interested therein till five hundred Dollars were bestowed amongst them.

Anno 1629. The Grand Signeour after much debate in counsel, made Provision to renew the War in *Persia*, as the only design of Honour and Consequence, for though the Turkish Empire ingaged in many troubles required a judicious and more then common providence to support it, beset with dangers on every side, and bearing more apparent signs of its declination then ever. Yet the disgrace of *Halil Bassas* retiring from *Babylon*, and from before *Arzurum*, and the loss of the Treasure and Munition, so inspired *Husseruph* the new General with revenge, that he desired nothing more then to blot out those stains that Eclipsed the Turkish Diadem, whereupon having recruited his Army, he came be-

fore *Babylon*, but after some bravadoes retired to *Aleppo*, without performing any thing worthy mention, and there to satisfy his mutinous Souldiers, exacted money of all the Merchants strangers and native inhabitants, encouraging every base fellow to accuse Rich persons of one crime or other, and then himself sitting as Judge would lay great fines on them, which they must pay or be imprisoned, upon the like pretence he imprisoned the English Consul residing there, and hanged his *Bruggerman* or Interpreter, which insolencies made known to His Majesties Ambassador at *Constantinople*, he complained to the Grand Signeour but had no redress. Yet within a while after his ill conduct being made known he was displaced, and *Haffis Achmat* Bassa made great Visier in his stead, though not without much difficulty, could he be induced to render his charge, for having by large Bribes won the Souldiers, he fortified himself in *Mosul* or *Ninive* biding defiance to his Master, yet at length he was reduced to obedience, but would not trust himself in the City of *Constantinople*, but at a distance plotted innovation, and therein proceeded so far that he caused the *Janizaries* and *Spahi* to mutiny, and forced the Grand Signeour to deliver into their hands the new Visier, whom they instantly tore in pieces, and not so contented they made a further demand of the *Mufti* and *Testarder* put into their power, but at the earnest intreaty of *Morat* they were appeased, though not before he promised to make *Hussienph* a second time Visier, and that *Regeb* Bassa should officiate till his arrival.

The storm allayed the Grand Signeour began to consider that *Hussienph* had raised it by the Influence he had upon the Souldiers, and therefore least he should attempt any thing further, secret order was given

given to the Bassa of *Buda* in whose Government he resided to send his head to Court, which was done accordingly, but not so privately but that the Soldiers getting notice thereof, suddenly made up their many headed monster, and in a great rage came to the *Seraglio* demanding the heads of those that had been any way counselling or consenting to the death of *Husseruph*, otherwise they threatned all with ruin, but having no answer suitable to their minds they ran to the house of *Regeb*, demanding of him who it was that had counselled so great a wickedness. Whereupon to save his Life (which was then in no small danger) he protested he knew not, and that himself was innocent of the matter, yet they forced him with them to the Palace, and made him their Orator to demand what they desired, upon which the *Aga Musfi* and *Tektardar* with a private Servant of the Grand Signeours fled, but the latter being the next day taken and sent back, he was delivered up as a sacrifice to the insolent Souldiers, who after their usual manner in such like cases tore him in pieces. Yet they were not so contented, but upon a rumour that the Grand Signeour had put his three Brethren to death, they broke into the Palace and could hardly be quieted, although the young Princes were produced, and that several officers swore upon the *Alcoran*, that they see the grand Signeour lay his hand upon the book and swore they should have their demands satisfied.

In these Tumults the goods of Merchants strangers went to wrack, and divers affronts and indignities were offered the several Ambassadors residing at the Port, nor was this all, for about the same time *Eleas* Bassa Rebelled against the Grand Signeour, and siezed upon the City of *Amasia* about a League from *Smirna*, infesting all the Countrey with divers

outrages, his Souldiers living altogether upon spoil, infomuch that the Merchants and Consuls at *Smirna* were forced to remove with their goods to *Scio*, but an Army being sent against him, he was in a pitched Battle discomfited and had most of his followers slain, himself hardly escaping, and now the Grand Signeour supposing *Regeb* Bassa (though indeed he was not) the Author of the late tumults, sent for him into the *Seraglio* and there caused him to be strangled.

About this time a fight for the space of four hours was maintained by two English Merchantmen, against thirty of the Turks Gallies, till at last the English finding themselves too weak for such odds fired their Vessels and cast themselves over board, where many of them perished, and those that were taken up put to the Oares; in this fight a thousand Turks were slain, and amongst them several *Begs* and men of note, of this apparent injury done by the Turks, His Majesty of Great *Brittain* by his Letter complained to the Grand Signeour, requiring that those that were taken Captives might be restored to their Liberty, that so a right understanding might continue, but the Turks alledging that the Voyage of the two Ships were unlawful, by reason they Traded in the *Levant* for Corn, the Ambassador could little prevail, and had much ado to save the lives of the Captives. Yet in the end to hinder the dissolution of the Turkish Trade, and to please the Grand Signeour, a Decree passed in the Star Chamber prohibiting the Corn Trade in the *Levant*, upon which several of the Captives were set at Liberty.

Three dayes after this action, a Fire happened in *Constantinople* which consumed Seventy Thousand Houses.

The *Persian* War yet continuing, that King with a great Army besieged *Van*, a strong City upon the Confines of *Diarbecher*, the news whereof arriving at the Port, great preparations were made to prevent that important place from falling into the hands of the *Persians*, it being Decreed that all the *Beghs* of *Asia*, should repair thither with such forces as they could leavy, and endeavour its releif, and to joyn them the Grand Visier passed over with all *European* Souldiers, but ere any thing could be done the City was taken, whereupon the Visier marched towards *Aleppo*, exacting great sums of money, and the better to furnish himself, sent the *Gadee* a slave to *Cyprus*, and siezed upon all his Treasure.

Soon after the Turks under pretence of the Christians rising, siezed all their Arms, making it death to those in whose houses any were found after a time prefixed, nor content with this they hanged a *Venetian* Merchant only for his Money, and Imprisoned all the Christian Merchants in *Constantinople*, setting a ransom of two thousand Dollars upon each, and that if the money was not payed in four dayes they should be executed. The four Ambassadors of *England*, *France*, *Holland*, and *Venice* were likewise convented before the Bassas in the Arsenal, and charged for building a House and Chappel without leave from the Grand Signeour, to have done it in contempt of his Imperial Majesty, and much ado they had to escape being imprisoned, but in the end upon the Chappels being demolished, and all the Armes they had in their Houses delivered to an officer appointed to receive them, the Grand Signeour was pacified, though indeed this was used only as a trick to extort mony from them.

This being the present state of things in the Imperial Port, the English Ambassador in the behalf
of

of his King and Nation, made known the just resentments of his Master, for the affront offered in the person of him his Ambassador, as likewise did the rest exclaiming of injustice, insomuch that the Captain Bassa told them that indeed the proceedings were too rigid, and that for the future care should be taken to prevent the like, as for their Armes taken away he said they had been seen by the Grand Signeour, and therefore could not be restored, but that they had liberty to buy more, and the money exacted of the Merchants could not at that time be restored by reason of the urgent occasion of the state, and therefore intreated them to be pacified, but the French Ambassador was so far fallen into the Grand Signeours displeasure that his Death was determined, the execution whereof was with much danger to the dissuaders deferred, and upon second thoughts changed into an Imprisonment, the cause of which was for that he had siezed upon sixty thousand Dollars sent by the Town of *Marseilles*, to pay his Predecessors Debts contracted in *Constantinople*, which money he converted to his own use, thereby defrauding the Creditor and obliging them to clamour for Turkish Justice, which in it self is cruelty and oppression.

These intestine troubles gave the *Persians* Liberty to make themselves Masters of many strong places, which greatly alarumed the *Ottoman Empire*, insomuch that great preparations were every where made, the Grand Signeour in person intending to take the Field. But ere the Army could be raised and all things gotten in a readines, the *Persians* were far advanced, and taken many places of importance, and amongst the rest *Raiwan* a strong place, Garrisoned by the Turks, taken from the *Persians*

the year before, putting all they found therein to the Sword and Ransom.

The report of these losses arriving, ere the Grand Signeour had put himself in a readiness to accompany his Army, he layed aside his purpose of going in person, and full of discontents remained at home to consult his own safety, which was now threatned with such a storm, that to shun it was not imagined a possibility in humane Providence, for the Souldiers that were abroad began to express their discontents, refusing to receive their pay or to be commanded by the Grand Visier, for the Turks War with the *Persians* unwillingly, there being no other cause for their invading each other then the emulation of greatness, which has successively fired the Lords of those two mighty Empires. Besides the Turks seldom meet in *Persia* with any plentiful spoils, so that they are neither incited by their own freeness, nor allured by the hopes of any large reward. But on the contrary to the Wars of *Hungary* and *Poland*, they hast as to some delightful spectacle, induced thereto by a superstitious zeal, as making religion a ground for their attempts, and an assurance of large spoiles, where the Countries abound in all manner of Plenty.

This danger of the Souldiers mutiny abroad reached not presently the ears of the Grand Signeour to terrifie him with the apprehensions of a double storm, for he had enough to do with the *Janizaries*, who now began to suspect another design on foot for the extirpation of their order which made them cast off all obedience, and set the great City of *Constantinople* in an uproar, which obliged the Citizens every where to provide for their safeties, for the unruly Souldiers having gotten the knack of making and unmaking Emperors at their plea-

pleasure, were grown to that height of insolency that they supposed the center of Government to rest in themselves, and each individual man of them thought himself superior to any Officer in the Empire, insomuch that they accounted the Grand Signeour but as their Steward intrusted by them with the Government, and that his Life and safety wholly depended on their pleasure, which he well perceiving knew no better means to render them tractable, then by distributing large sums of money amongst them, which nevertheless at this time much availed not, for being bent on mischief they plundered the houses of several Merchants and rich *Burgbers* killing and wounding such as resisted them, and in a fury ran to the Palace demanding such Favourites as they named which being denyed, they presently fell into a consultation about deposing their Empeour. Nay, so far proceeded that many perswaded to take away his Life as they had done his Brother *Osman*, but so divided were they in their Councils, that they could come to no result at that time, but soon after assembling it was proposed, that if the Grand Signeour would make amends by some acknowledgment of his ill intents toward them, and confirm their Order and Priviledges, his Government (he being one that was not insensible of their power) might prove advantagious to them, but that if his disposition rested yet undiscovered, it might render the course of their Lives obnoxious to incertainties, for the Grand Signeour in the beginning of his Reign, not exceeding fifteen years of age expressed a natural inclination to action, which wits his years increased, and this had settled some good opinion of him in the unruly Souldiers, whose desire is War that by plunder they may enrich themselves. Though of late many of the *Janizaries*

(con-

(contrary to their first institution, and the long continued course that former Emperors had obliged them to) had married Wives settled themselves to Merchandize and were become both rich and effeminate.

In these and the like mischievous consultations many dayes were wasted, nor could the *Janizaries* wanting their usual Confederates the *Spahi*, who were then under the leading of the Grand Visier at *Arzurum* effect their purpose as they were wont which made them more cautious in their proceedings and to keep together in one strong and intire body as fearing to be destroyed by a general Massacre if they separated, such a rumour (whether spread by themselves to countenance them in their unlawful purposes or really intended) being spread about the City, and that in the room of them a new Militia should be established, less chargeable and more tractable, after the same method as *Delavire* Bassa had formerly purposed, and that many were for that purpose inrolled on the Frontires, especially *European* Horsemen that were continually in action to prevent the incursions of the *Cossacks* and free *Hedducks*, who living mostly upon spoil greatly endammaged the Turks, but in the end a right understanding being created between the Emperour and the *Janizaries* by the mediation of the great Officers of the Court a Reconciliation was made, though not without a wonderful mass of money distributed amongst the latter, who frequently mutiny for no other purpose then by such means to enrich themselves, well knowing that the Grand Signeour has no other way to appease them, then by distributing large summs of mony amongst them; nor were the Soldiers abroad satisfied till they had sacrificed to their revenge the chief Treasurer of the Army, the two *Agas* of the *Spahi's* and the *Chians* Bassa

Bassa of the *Janizaries*, nor till a new Visier was sent to discharge the Old one, and to lead them to the *Persian* War.

During these troubles an Ambassador from the King of *Persia* arrived at *Constantinople*, with many Rich presents, which caused him to have the speedier Audience, and promise of an honourable Peace, but whilst the Treaty held, the *Cossacks* driven out of *Poland* by King *Uladislaus*, had siezed upon *Asac* a strong City of the Grand Signeours, scituate upon the mouth of the River *Tanaïs*, upon the declining of a Hill, which they pillaged and afterward Fortified, keeping possession thereof for the space of four years, at what time the Turk again recovered it, as also great troubles arose in *Tartary*, upon the *Tartar Hans* putting to death the Bassa *Musti*, and Cadi of *Cassa*, for reproving him of Cowardise, for thereupon the Grand Signeour secretly maintained *Cautimeri* and his faction against him, who with Fire and Sword wasted his Countrey, and at length passing the *Niefter* siezed on the Countrey of *Budziack* near to *Beliegrade* and *Kilea* bordering on the Countrey of *Moldavia*, on which he likewise incroached drawing a World of People after him, which raised a jealousy in *Uladislaus* the *Polonian* King, who doubting they would prove troublesome neighbours, resolved to expell them by force of Armes, but whilst he delayed the *Tartar Han* executed his purpose, for setting upon *Cautimeri* with a great Army overthrew him, and followed the execution over the large Plains of *Dobruc*, so that despairing to appear any more formidable in the Field he fled to *Constantinople*, where the Grand Signeour contrary to his Faith given, to curry favour with *Tartar Han* caused him to be strangled, together

ther with his Son, when not long after a Nephew of this *Cautimeri* killed *Tartar Han* as he was Hunting, and by a misguiding path separated from his followers, for which Treachery he was applauded at *Constantinop.e*, as a man of admirable courage, and upon news of *Hans* death caused *Becher Gherey* his brother to be Proclaimed King of *Tartary*.

Notwithstanding the fair Promises of *Morat*, the *Persian* Ambassador was dismissed without any agreement of Articles in relation to a Peace, and order given to prosecute that War with all imaginable rigor, intending to go himself in person and knock at the Gates of *Babylon*, whereupon he hung out the Horse taile, a certain sign of his or the Grand Visiers taking the Field, and increased the number of his *Janizaries*, revoking a Decree he had made to the contrary, commanding his Bassas upon the Christian Frontiers to give no occasion of complaint in his absence that might oblige him to retire ere he had accomplished his purpose, and so with an Army of five hundred thousand Horse and Foot, whereof three hundred thousand were fighting men, he entered *Persia* about the end of *May* 1638. having joyned the Grand Visier with such forces as he had at *Iconium*; and in his way overthrew a *Shegh* who had drawn a great number of people into Rebellion under pretence of Religion, out of the Mountains of *Anatolia*, but the Impostor escaping *Morat* to prevent his further attempts, caused to be proclaimed that if he was not put into his hands he would destroy all the Countrey with Fire and Sword, for fear of which he was discovered by those that he trusted with the knowledge of his aboad, and by the Grand Signeours command fled alive, and with his skin off carried to the wheel; and there broken without expressing the least sence of pain.

This

This let removed *Morat* passed on, to oppose whose passage the *Persian King* took the Field with one hundred twenty thousand Horse, and put 30 thousand men into *Babylon*, with what was necessary for their subsistence, but at the same time his Countrey on the other side being invaded by the great *Mogul of India*, who in favour of *Morat* had raised a powerful Army, he did not think it convenient to give the Turks Battle but permitted them to pass the *Euphrates* over a Bridge, though not without great loss, for the Bridge giving way under so great a weight, many Men, Horses, and Camels perished in the Water, but it being repaired the remainder of the Army attained the further Bank, and in a short time came to *Mosul*, antiently called *Ninive*, where all the petty Princes whose Countries were near came to the Camp and tendered their Homage to the Grand Signeour, bringing many rich presents and promising to become his Tributaries.

The Army rising from before *Mosul*, *Morat* marched directly to *Babylon*, (otherwise *Bagdat* accounted the ancientest City in the World, reported to be built by *Nimrod* on the Bank of the River *Euphrates*) which he straitly besieged, ordering his Batteries in three places to be raised, and each Battalion to be appointed his quarter, himself being attired like a private Souldier to be the less exposed to danger, protesting he would never change his Cloathes unless he might do it within the Walls of *Babylon*, and with words and gifts so encouraged the Officers and Souldiers that within three dayes the Trenches were opened, himself giving Fire to the first Cannon, and after that with fifty great pieces he thundered against the Walls incessantly, being answered in the same Language by the Defendants, who were eighty thousand fighting men,

four

four or 5 thousand of which frequently sallied as they saw advantage making great slaughter of the Turks for the *Persian* had put into this important place his Souldiers of greatest courage, thinking by that means to prevent its falling into the Grand Signeors hands, either by their valour or protracting the time till he could be better at leasure to relieve it, but notwithstanding the continual skirmishes, the Turks numerous Army advanced the Trenches to the brink of the Ditches, raising several redoubts to secure themselves, and hinder the besieged from sallying, and so effectually they wrought, that within one months space they filled up the first and second Ditches with Woolfacks, Fagots, and the like; and then in great numbers assaulted the breaches the Cannon had made, but were strenuously repulsed by the *Persians*, who showed on them all manner of warlike instruments of death. The great Visier signalizing himself above all by his undaunted courage, commanding with his hand and voice was slain by a Musquet shot. This fight within the breach continued for the space of five days, where both parties fighting like men in despair, the dead bodies lay in heaps, and blood flowed like a Torrent. But at length the number of Turks prevailing they under the leading of *Mustapha* Bassa, on the 22th. of *December, Anno Dom. 1638.* entered the City, and set up the Royal standard, against whom notwithstanding four and twenty thousand *Persians* made head, but quarter being offered them they readily accepted it, throwing down their Armes and submitting upon the publick Faith of the Grand Signeour for their safety, who contrary to his promise caused them when disarmed most barbarously to be Massacred, not sparing either Man, Woman or Child.

The taking of *Babylon* caused great rejoycing at *Constantinople*, a twenty dayes Feast being thereupon proclaimed, and many Ceremonies used according to the Turkish manner, and the Grand Signeour having left a Garrison of thirty thousand Men in his new conquered City returned to the Port, having in this Expedition lost by the Sword, Famine, and Pestilence one hundred thousand of his best men, and himself very much afflicted with sickness.

Soon after his return and triumphant enterance, an Ambassador arrived from *Persia* with proposals of Peace, who being admitted to Audience, and the matter afterwards referred to the *Chimacam* a Peace was concluded, the chief Article being that *Reven* should remain to the Sophy, and *Babylon* to the Grand Signeour.

During the *Persian* War the *Venetians* having sustained great damage by the Pyrates of *Algier* and *Tunis*, set forth a Fleet of Gallies and destroyed many of those Rovers and amongst the rest seven in the Grand Signeours Port of *Valona*, which he highly resented, but in the end was by several rich Presents pacified, and the Peace renewed: and soon after an Envoy extraordinary from the Emperor of *Germany* arrived at the Port, to congratulate the Grand Signeours success in his late *Persian* War, but not bringing such Presents as were expected, he was not received with the honour due to his Character; and there happening a dispute between the English Ambassador and this Envoy about precedence, the Turks granted it the former, being made to understand the difference Christian Princes make between an Ambassador and an Envoy. And now *Morat* studying on whom to turn his Arms, at length concluded to invade *Germany*, and in order thereto called

called him the new Grand Visier *Mustapha*, whom he had left with a part of the Army in *Persia*, but death frustrated his project, for drinking excessively with several of his Favourites and pot Companions he fell into a Feavour, whereupon his Physicians being called were fearful to administer remedies, least proving unsuccessful their lives should be indangered, yet at length they concluded to let him blood which hastened his end, he dying the 8th. of *February*, *Anno Dom* 1640. of his Reign the seventeen, and of his Age thirty one, having ruled in the height of all excess and irregular disorders his youthful years inabled him to support having murdered *Orchan* and *Bajazet*, two of his Brethren and leaving himself no Issue, so that *Ibrahim* Son of *Achmat*, and his younger Brother, preserved by strange Providence from his fury succeeded him in the Empire.

C H A P. XXIII.

*The Life and Reign of Sultan Ibrahim, the
Twelfth Emperour of the Turks.*

M*Orat* being dead as is before recited, *Ibrahim* the onely Male survivor of the *Ottoman* Race, was taken from the Prison in which his Brother had confined him and proclaimed Emperour, though *Morat* in his Life time had by his will bequeathed his Empire to the *Tartar*. This new Emperour being of a soft nature suffered himself to be wholly governed by his Mother, and such Ministers as were about him, himself being altogether weak in his understanding. So that the War intended against the *Germans* was by the Council of the great Visier reverted on the *Cossacks*, yet for some reason for a while suspended, the great Visier in the mean while studying to take such out of the way that might Eclipse his grandure, and amongst the rest he caused the Captain Bassa, the deceased Emperors Chief Favorite to be beheaded in *Selistra*, whither he had sent him Governour for that purpose.

The news of Sultan *Ibrahim*s advancement to the Throne, being known to the Christian Princes, few of them deferred to send Ambassadors to congratulate him on that occasion, each making him large Presents as the manner is, for as'tis often said in this History none may have Audience of the Turkish Emperour that comes empty handed.

The Grand Signeour about this time greatly addicting himself to the use of Women, fell into an Apoplexy which put many in doubt of his recovery, and raised the greater confusion by reason he had no Children, and that it was given out by his Women with whom he had to do, that he was not capable of generation, therefore the Councillors consulted amongst themselves, that in case he died without Issue the Son of a Sister or Neece should ascend the Throne, and that in no wise the Succession should devolve to the *Tartar*, whose right it is upon the failure of the *Ottoman* Male-line, but he soon after recovering of his indisposition put them in some hopes, though that joy was damped by the advice that came to Court of the ruine of several important Cities on the Frontiers of *Persia* by a terrible Earthquake. Yet the Grand Signeour to show the World that he intended something, gave Order to the Grand Visier to besiege *Asac*, possessed by the *Cossacks* in the Reign of *Morat*, as is aforesaid which he did both by Sea and Land, and not without great loss of his best men, reduced it to the Turkish obedience, *Anno Dom.* 1641. at what time it was abandoned by the Garrison of *Cossacks*, who despairing to hold it long departed with all their substance.

About the beginning of the following year the doubt of the Grand Signeours improcreation vanished for one of his *Sultaneesses* brought forth a Son, who was named *Mahomet*, which replenished the Turkish Empire with joy, which Prince now sways the *Ottoman* Scepter, during the Triumphs for the birth of the young Prince, the *Persian* King by his Ambassador renewed his League with the *Sultan*, which was performed upon an additional Article, that the Sophy would demolish the Fortress of *Fortrina*, which

he had built contrary to Articles on the Frontires, not far from the *Caspian* Sea, which that it might assuredly be performed a *Capugibathee* was dispatched to see it effected, after which a considerable body of Turks gathering together in *Hungary*, endeavoured to surprize *Rab* a strong Garrison on the frontires in this manner, *viz.* one hundred men being trussed up in Carts, and covered with Hay and Straw in the habit of Peasants, who getting entrance, were to leap out and surprize the Centinels that guarded the Gate, at what time four thousand Turks for that purpose layed in Ambush were to enter and possess themselves of the place, but this Treachery succeeded not, the Ambuscado being discovered by an Officer of the Garrison that was abroad, he made it known to the Guards, who notwithstanding permitted the Carts to enter and then drew up the Bridge and unloaded the Carts, which rendred it apparent the intended Treachery in time of Peace, of which the Emperour sent and Ambassador to *Constantinople*, but the Turks being ashamed of what had happened, especially of their evil success would not admit the Ambassador to his Audience unless the Emperor would first agree to pay a yearly charge of one hundred thousand Rix-Dollars to the Port, not by way of Tribute but of Present, in which unreasonable demand they took more confidence for that they well perceived the Emperour was intangled in his Wars with *Sweden*, the Christians dissension being ever advantagious to the Turks. To these dishonorable demands the Emperour would in no wise condescend, supposing it less perilous to venture a War in *Hungary* then to comply with propositions so derogatory to the Majesty of his *Cesarean* greatness.

Ibrahim addicting himself to the Company of Women then in which he seemed in nothing more to delight, spent more Treasure in the soft Wars of *Venus*, than his Predecessor had done in his *Per-sian* Expedition, and so laboured he therein that *Anno Dom.* 1643. he had two other Sons born, which absolutely took away the reproach of his frigidity and impotency, proving afterward the most Lascivious and devoted *Sultan* that ever aspired to the *Mahometan* paradise, where the Company of fair Women is the chiefest felicity promised. Yet that he might not be forgot abroad, he sent out his Fleet of Gallies, under the command of his Captain *Bassa*, who after much Treasure spent without effecting any thing, except strangling the *Bassa* of *Cyprus* for his store of Wealth he returned.

About this time a great Plague raging at *Alexandria*, about six thousand slaves found means to escape and carry with them several Vessels that rode at Anchor in the road, in which they conveyed themselves to *Candia* and *Malta*, and from thence many of them found means to depart to their respective Countries, of which the Grand Signeour having notice, sent to the Signory of *Venice* to command their redelivery, which not being performed afterwards occasioned the loss of *Candia*, as shall in the Reign of *Mahomet* the fourth be discoursed of more at large.

Now the year 1644. beginning *Rogotskie* Prince of *Transylvania*, who succeeded *Gabor* in that Principality being of a turbulent nature, he so wrought with the discontented *Hungarians* and *Austrians* that he caused them to Rebel, to whom he joyning his Forces, drew after him fifty thousand Horse and Foot, with which he took *Solnock*, besieged *Filek* and *Cassovia*,

for suppressing of whom the Emperor caused his Troops to advance, who in divers skirmishes worsted the Rebels, and overthrew six thousand Turks, who were coming to the assistance of *Rogowski*, but at length both parties tired with the toiles of War, on the 14th. of *August* in the following year a Peace was concluded, and soon after the Grand Signeors Mother ruling all in effect caused the Grand Visier to be put to death, thereby to render her Authority more dreadful to the rest, and caused her Son to appoint *Mahomet Bassa* of *Damascus* Grand Visier in his stead, who was altogether at her devotion as being first promoted to the Bassa-ship of *Damascus*, at her instant sute to her Son *Morat* Predecessor to this Emperor.

Whilst these matters were in agitation the *Tartars* forgetful of their late Peace, made an incursion with thirty thousand men into *Russia*, against whom *Konispolski* having made head with twenty thousand Horse and Foot defeated them, killing twelve thousand, and taking three thousand Prisoners pursuing the remainder to the Borders of *Valachia*, in like manner *Wisnowick* a noble *Polander* happily encountering another party of *Tartars*, as they were returning from the spoil of a part of *Moscovia*, killed ten thousand of them, and recovered a great booty, sending the rest naked into their own Countrey. The *Polonians* thus prevailing the Grand Signeour to curry favour with the *Polonian* King, deposed the *Tartar Han* from his sovereignty, which caused various discourses, but upon the birth of the Grand Signeours fourth Son that wonder ceased, nor was that all which changed the scene of admiration, for about this time six Gallies of the Turks passing from *Constantinople* to *Alexandria* were taken by the Knights of *Malta*, which greatly incensed

caused the Grand Signeour against the *Venetians* who had it in charge according to the League concluded between that Signory and the Port, to guard those Seas, insomuch that under pretence of destroying the Island of *Malta*, this and former grievances induced the Grand Signeour to make great preparation for the Invasion of *Candia* formerly called *Crete*, yet the *Venetian Balio* or Ambassador was carested at such a rate as he suspected no such Treachery, but the state growing jealous upon notice of the great Naval preparation, provided cautiously for the safety of their Island.

During these preparations the Grand Signeour followed his Lascivious courses keeping his female Court in such splendor, that his greatest Treasure was spent therein, nor was all the Silks of *Italy* sufficient to suffice his Women, but upon the false rumour that the design was against the *Maltesians*, they were not idle but in the best manner Fortified their chief places of strength, yet in the end the storm fell not there but upon *Candia*, for the Fleet of a hundred Gallies, and fifty great Ships with three hundred Saicks, most of the latter being pressed for the transportation of Souldiers being arrived at *Scio* after refreshment of the Army consisting of seven thousand *Fanizaries*, fourteen thousand *Spahies*, fifty thousand *Timariots*, three thousand Pioners, besides Cooks, Bakers and other necessary followers set sail for *Napoli Di Romagna*, and having stayed there some time weighed Anchor and touching at divers Islands, some belonging to the *Venetians*, and others not, they at length came to *Candia* (having taken a *Venetian* Vessel laden with Ammunition, and bound for *Retimo* by the way) where no longer being able to hide their intentions they unmasked themselves, by publishing the War both there and at *Constantinople*, the

the latter of which was attended with the imprisonment of the *Balio* or *Venetian* Ambassador, and giving order through all the *Archipelago* for the enslaving and destroying all the subjects of that Republick, and here the Turk practised his usual beginning of War with more then ordinary caution, for though with other Princes whose Territories border on him by Land, he usually endeavours to strike at the same time when he gives the salutation of Peace. Yet here being to contend at Sea where he was conscious his forces were inferiour to those of *Venice*, he practised by a different method, making many vows and protestations that no such thing was intended till he had safely Landed his Forces, yet were not the *Venetians* so easie of belief, but that they likewise Armed thirty Gallies, seventeen English and Dutch Ships, two Galliaffes, and several other Vessels of force, raising a great power by Land to transport into that important Island, imploring the assistance of divers Christian Princes, who were not backward to their aid, sending their Fleet to Sea under the Command of *Antonio Capello*. *Francisco Molino* being made Proveditor General, whose good conduct in affairs caused him to be made Proveditor General, and afterwards Duke of *Venice*, and an exprefs sent to *Andree Cornaro* Inquisitor in *Candia*, to Arm out twenty Gallies from the Arsenal of *Canea*, and to promote this design the better, two English, and one Dutch Ship then in the Port of *Mallomocco* were hired to carry Timber, fitted and already squared for the completing the said number of Gallies, and *Francisco Erizzo* was appointed General of all the Naval Forces, but he being stricken in years, whilst he intended to crown the remainder of his dayes with glory was taken off by death, leaving sufficiently graced with

the memory of his past actions ; yet the Fleet was no ways obstructed, but with a prosperous gale sailed to *Corfu*, and from thence to *Candia*, where the Turks were arrived before them and had landed without opposition, occasioned by the difference (that antient *Remora*) amongst the Christian Princes Confederates, with the *Venetians* about bearing the flag, which was vigorously contended for by the *Genovays* and *Florentines*, nor could it be reconciled though the Pope earnestly laboured therein, advising them for the deciding the controversie at a time when the urgency admitted of no delay to wave Ceremonies, yet ere they could come to the assistance of the *Venetians*, the Turks had spoiled a great part of the Island, and after divers skirmishes with much blood and slaughter took *Canea*, the second City of importance, and after that *Retimo*, in defence of which *Andrea Cornaro* lost his Life by a Musquet shot.

Anno 1646. The opportunity was fair for destroying the Turks Fleet as it carelessly rod at Anchor near the Isle of *Theodoro* opposite to *Canea*, where had the advantage been improved it might easily have been burnt, but such was the contention amongst the Christian Commanders, that nothing was attempted worthy of mention, whereupon *Molino* General of the *Venetian* Land Forces was revoked by the Senate, and dismissed of his high charge, *Capello* being appointed to succeed him, who being strengthened with an additional supply of Gallies, Galliaffes and Ships of War he wasted the Island, whilst *Morosini* with two and twenty Ships faced the Towers of the *Dordanellis* in the *Hellespont*, and braved the *Ottoman* power incountring such Gallies as in a dead calm were sent out against him, which after

after a sharp dispute he obliged to retire, and then failed to joyn his Admiral perswading him to give the Turks Battle, but whilst he delayed they landed an additional strength of forty thousand men on the Island, and kept their Gallies so close within the Harbour that they could not be indammaged without great disadvantage to the Christians, nor did the Fire-Ships too late prepared to burn them succeed, by reason they took Fire too soon; yet the succeeding year *Morosini* having notice that the Turks were Landed at *Scio*, and that they carelessly romed up and down, came thither with divers Ships of War took several of their Gallies, and in them many prisoners of note, but soon afterward being separated from his Squadron in a storm, he was set upon by fifteen Gallies of *Rhodes* and boarded, where fighting valiantly he was slain by a Musquet Bullet, yet his Ship upon the coming in of two Galliaffes was rescued. The funeral solemnity of this renowned Captain was celebrated with all pomp at *Venice*.

Not by Sea only but at Land the Turks invaded the *Venetian* Territories, for pouring a multitude of men into *Dalmatia*, yet were not greatly successful for *Leonardo Foscolo* the *Venetian* General, on that side overthrew their Forces in divers conflicts.

In one of which he took the *Sanzack Licca*, and slew his Son, recovered *Saccovar*, *Polissano*, *Islan*, and *Novogrode*, the latter of which by order of the Senate he demolished, and pursuing his good success took all the Cities and Towns the Turks held on that side, utterly driving them out of *Dalmatia*, but this joy was palliated by the unwelcome news of the Fleets being wrecked in the *Archipelago*, and a great number of Ships and Gallies broken to pieces,
which

which so raised the drooping courage of the Turks that they advanced to the Walls of *Candia*, and straitly besieged it but were so valiantly repulsed by the Christians that had put themselves into it that after the loss of thirty thousand men they were obliged to retire as not being capable of gaining it, though *Foscolo* about this time proved successful in taking *Cliffa*, a strong Fort situate in the confines of *Dalmatia*, and overthrew *Feckeli* Bassa killing and taking Prisoners the greatest part of his Army, which caused *Morlaches* to revolt, and several of the principal inhabitants of *Scutary* to treat with the *Venetian* General about putting that City into his hands, to take possession of which seven thousand men were sent who seized some several small places, but ere they could arrive at *Scutari*, their design was discovered and they obliged for the preservation of their lives, to betake themselves to the Mountains for as many as were taken the Turks impaled them alive.

The Grand Visier enraged for the loss of *Cliffa* dispatched *Dervis* Bassa into part of *Bosna* with a powerful Army to assault *Spelatro*, against whom the *Venetian* General marched together with *Serich* Capt. of *Morlaches*, but by reason of the Christians disorderly march, in gathering the spoil of the Countrey, the Turks set upon a part of the Army and put it to the rout, though *Serich* and other *Dalmatian* Captains did all that men could perform In this conflict 400 Christians were slain and as many taken Prisoners, amongst the latter of which was the Captain of *Morlaches* whom the Turks slayed alive, and afterwards impaled, yet though they subdued his body they could not conquer his invincible mind, he bearing the same Constancy and Resolution in his torments as he had done in Battle.

Du-

During these transactions *Ibrahim* indulged himself in all manner of pleasures leaving the management of all his affairs to his Bassa, himself being wholly directed by a wench, who in the nature of a Baud or procurer went from bath to bath to take a view of the Ladies, and those she perceived fairest, she inquired out the places of their abode and recommended them to her Lord, who upon hearing her praise their beauty would instantly be enamoured of them, and send to fetch them either by fair means or force to his Bed. This course taken for a while without controul, she at length filled his ears with the commendation of a Sultaneſs, Widow to his brother *Morat* deceased, but this Woman could by no intreaty be won to his Lust, nor obliged with presents to comply alledging she had vowed perpetual Widowhood, and that her former Lord to her was living in conceit, which denial the more enraged *Ibrahim* now grown impatient of delay, wherefore he intended to snatch that by force that intreaty could not gain, wherefore watching her one day as she came out of the Bath, he siezed her in his armes, which she perceiving resolved upon the defence of her Chastity, and therefore drew her Dagger (a weapon which the Sultaneſs and Chief Lady wear at their sides) and offered to wound him in her own defence, which observing let go his hold, at what time the bustle causing a loud clamour his Mother came from her apartment, who understanding what had happened began to reprove her son of his lascivious behaviour, during which the Sultaneſs found means to escape, which so incensed *Ibrahim* that he confined his Mother to the old *Seraglio*, interdicting her his presence till with submission and many intreaties she had obtained pardon.

After

After the loss of this *Sultaneſs* his procurer called by him *Shecher Para*, caſting her eyes upon the Daughter of the *Muſti* a young Lady of excellent beauty, ſo warmed the heart of *Ibrahim* with the relation of her rare perfections, that he reſolved to have her at any rate, and therefore at firſt reſolved to ſend for her by force, but conſidering the power of the *Muſti*, he upon ſecond thoughts ſuppoſed it not convenient to incenſe him by ſuch a raſh action, but rather to ſend for him and to treat with him about taking his daughter to be one of his *Sultana's*, which he did, and reaſoned with him about that affair, but the old man who intirely loved his daughter and well conſidering the wandering loves of *Ibrahim*, and that he having already ſons her off-ſpring would be either poiſoned, ſtrangled or become ſad recluses after his death, inwardly reſolved not to conſent to his requeſt, yet diſſembled the matter in excuſing ſo great an honour to one that was unworthy of it, but withal concluded to deal with his Daughter in the beſt manner to the *Sultans* advantage, but by their Law could oblige her therein no further then her free conſent allowed.

Pleaſed with this answer *Ibrahim* diſmiſſed the *Muſti* with ſeveral rich preſents, thinking his wiſhes ſhould now be ſatiſfied, but the old man having hardened his Daughter not to accept this offer returned with the unexpected news next morning, that notwithſtanding his perſwaſion and paternal commands, his Daughter proved averſe contrary to his expectation, but the reaſon he knew not how to conjecture, ſince Women are commonly irregular and unreaſonable in their affections, *Ibrahim* in this manner diſappointed of what he moſt deſired, diſmiſſed the *Muſti* with neglect and diſdain, as one who had deceived his truſt ſoon after baniſhed him the Court and

and his presence, growing unsatisfied at all his administrations of Justice, and resolved another course for obtaining the young Lady, the management of which he committed to her who had recommended her to him, who assaulted her with promises of greatness, rich gifts, and many fair words, but finding the Virgin to be deaf to her *Sirens* song, she at last taking pitty of such innocence and vertue at her request and for a great reward, promised so to deal with the *Sultan* that he should put her out of his thoughts which she attempted but in vain, for *Ibrahim* who by this time had viewed her rare perfections was so inamoured of her, that sleeping or waking he fancied her Idea before him, whereupon finding fair means ineffectual he resolved to use those he had often done, wherefore he commanded the Grand Visier, that next time she came to the bath he set a Guard upon her, and by force bring her to his Bed, which was accordingly done, and *Ibrahim* for some dayes enjoyed her, but sullenness, tears and reluctancy much abated the pleasure he expected for she would by no means be comforted, wherefore with scorn and contempt he returned her to her father, who at first dissembled the injury and disgrace, but in the end making his resentments known to *Mahomet* Bassa a Principal member of the *Divano*, one of great Wisdom and practise in the conduct of affairs, as also to the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, both Enemies to the Grand Visier. It was concluded the Queen Mother should be drawn into the Conspiracy, but how to do it against her Son they knew not well, therefore resolved first the destruction of the Grand Visier by laying to his charge the contrivance of the Rape, as well as the forceable seizing of the Virgin, though they aimed at deposing the Grand Signcour.

The Plot thus layed the *Musti* begged an Audience of the Queen as if he would intreat her to become an humble Intercessor for him to her Son, and being admitted to her presence, after some conference he plainly perceived her inveterate hatred against *Ibrahim* which made him break his mind more boldly to her and in the end to propose the Imprisonment of the Grand Signeur yet palliated his discourse with this allay, that he should not be absolutely layed aside but only corrected a while, and thereby put in remembrance of his former state, that so for the future he might be instructed what moderation and Justice meant, and so insinuated that the Queen in hopes of Governing all consented to what he proposed, whereupon strengthening their party they so wrought that they caused the *Janizaries* to mutiny, and went at the head of them to the Grand Signeur, as seemingly forced to do by the rude Soldiers, and being admitted they boldly demanded that the Grand Visier should be deprived of his office, and that (as it had been before agreed amongst the Conspirators) *Mahomet* Bassa should succeed him in his office, which the Grand Signeur at first refused, but being perswaded by his Mother that it was at that time necessary so to do for appeasing the Tumultuary Souldiers he consented. *Achmet* the deposed Visier trembling at the consequences hereof, resolved to commit himself to the protection of his merciless Enemy the *Musti*, and therefore hastened to his house to attend his return, hoping to find him his protector, but the *Musti* returning with the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, and finding the deposed Visier in his house, the latter by the advice of the former delivered him up to the fury of the Souldiers who having strangled him threw his dead body before the gate of the new *Mosch*.

The next day the *Janizaries* arising in, like tumult as before, demanded of the *Musti* whether according to their Law *Ibrahim* as a Fool, Tyrant, and one unfit to wield the *Ottoman* Scepter, ought not to be deposed. To which the *Musti* gave answer in the affirmative, and caused *Ibrahim* to be summoned the next day to appear in the *Divano* to administer Justice to his Subjects, and Souldiers who expected it from him. But the Sultan supposing he had sufficiently satisfied the Souldiers by putting the Grand Visier out of office, laughed at the summons the *Musti* had made him which being seconded by a *Fetfa* (which is a point of Law resolved by the *Musti*, who is the mouth and Oracle of the Law, viz. that the Grand Signeour called to account is obliged to appear before the Justice.) The Sultan in high disdain tore the paper, threatening the head of the *Musti*, but it was now too late he having surely fortified himself with the power and strength of his rebellious companions. This *Fetfa* was immediately seconded by a summons of a higher nature which declared that whosoever disobeyed the Law of God was not a true *Mussulman* or believer, and though the Person of the Emperour himself, yet being become by his actions a *Rafir* or Infidel was *ipso facto* fallen from his Throne, and no further capable of Authority or Government. This *Fetfa* being seen by *Ibrahim* he likewise tore it, commanding the Grand Visier instantly to put the *Musti* to death as guilty of Treason against his Emperour, but having by this time lost his Authority, his commands were not obeyed, nor his person revered, for the *Janizaries* being assembled about five in the afternoon came with their usual tumults to the gates of the *Seraglio*, at whose approach *Ibrahim* losing all courage fled to his Mother for protection, begging her assistance

who

who being a bold and subtle Woman used all her Rhetorick and Eloquence to perswade the Souldiers not to offer any violence to the person of their Lord, promising that he should relinquish the Government, and retire himself with a guard into the Lodging out of which he was advanced to the Empire. *Ibrahim* comforted a little that his Life was spared willingly submitted himself a Prisoner, when in the mean time the Souldiers taking forth his eldest Son *Sultan Mahomet* placed him on the Throne, every where proclaiming him Emperour with loud Acclamations of which *Ibrahim* having notice grew impatient, and often with sad laments beat his head against the Wall, till at length to put a stop to his fury four Mutes were sent to strangle him, who on the 17th. of *August, Anno Dom. 1648.* performed that barbarous exploit, so that according to the saying of King *Charles the first* of Blessed Memory. *There is but little distance between the Prisons and Graves of Princes.*

Sultan Ibrahim being thus made away *Anno Dom. 1648.* in the 8th. year of his Reign, and 39 of his Age, the Government was committed into the hands of the Grand Visier, and the Queen Mother called by the Turks *Riosem*, and of 12 Bassa's, who were to manage all affaires with supream power during the Minority of *Sultan Mahomet*, whose Reign I shall pursue in the following chapter.

C H A P. XXII.

The Reign of Mehmet or Mahomet the fourth of that Name, and Thirteenth Emperor of the Turks, who now Reigneth.

I*brahim* deposed and murdered as in the foregoing Chapter is related, *Mehmet* or rather *Mahomet* his Eldest Son of the Age of seven years supplied the empty Throne, during whose minority which was to continue ten years longer, His Grand Mother, the Grand Visier and twelve Bassa's took into their hands the Reins of Government, and after many debates resolved to continue the War with the *Venetians* which *Ibrahim* designed to conclude the treaty of Peace in order thereto being far advanced and the Ambassador of that Signiory, then at the Port impatiently expecting an end of his negotiation, but whilst these affairs were in hand the unruly *Spahi's* not having received the Largess usually bestowed amongst them at the Installment of a new Emperour, making it their pretence the better to colour their discontents, that they were resolved to revenge the death of the murdered Emperour whose fall the *Fanizaries* had occasioned, insomuch that a great difference arose between those two orders, the former being the best Horsemen, and the latter the best Footmen, and although many laboured to appease that Tempest which threatned the dismembering the Empire. Yet many skirmishes happened between these contrary Factions in the streets

streets of *Constantinople*, in which some hundreds were slain, but the *Spahies* being for the most part worsted at length abandoned the City.

These animosities and divisions amongst the Turkish Souldiers, gave the *Venetians* opportunity to provide for their defence, as expecting nothing less than a War, for that their Ambassador had been clapped up in Prison for demanding Audience, and chains put upon him, but at the intreaty of the other Christian Ambassadors there residing he was set at Liberty. Yet to affront him the Grand Viscier caused his *Dugerman* or Interpreter to be executed, and his body thrown out at the Castle Window, which barbarous act is frequent amongst the Turks, either to put a disgrace upon the Ambassador, or to terrifie those Interpreters that they shall not dare to speak any thing after an Ambassador though upon his Audience, that should be ungrateful to the Grand Signeour, which causes them many times to mince their words and not render a true interpretation.

These matters widening differences between the *Venetians* and the Turks, great preparations were made on either side, the former with all diligence reinforcing *Candia*, and the latter to hinder it; so that many skirmishes happened by Land and Sea, till at length the Bassa Governour notwithstanding the *Venetian* Fleet blocked up the *Dardaneles*, having received a recruit of 1500 men laid siege to the strong City *Candia*, and battered it with many pieces of Ordinance, till at length having taken a small Fort that flanked it, he lodged his men therein just as 6 Gallies of *Malta* arrived with 600 Voluntiers, and 60 Knights of the Order, who beat out the Turks with great slaughter, yet they retook it again and planted the *Ottoman* colours upon the highest Bull-

wark which so enraged the Christians that falling with all their force they drove the Turks from the Walls with great slaughter, regained the piece, and caused the Bassa with shame and loss to raise the siege.

The Wars growing hot in *Candia*, the contents between the *Spahi* and *Fanizaries* that was before supposed to be appeased grew hot again, and much slaughter happened between those inveterate factions, when to pacifie the latter the great Visier was deposed and executed. Yet that little availed nor was that all for several of the Bassa's denied to return the Tribute of their Provinces, alledging they would reserve it till the Grand Signeour was of age, and then be to him accountable both for principal and interest, nor were the Wars in *Bosna*, *Dalmatia*, *Foscoto*, and other places on the *Venetian* Frontiers neglected, but continued with doubtful success, and great slaughter, yet part of the *Ottoman* Forces on that side were diverted by the *Cossacks*, who at the instigation of the *Tartar Han* covered the Black Sea, with their Boats and committed many outrages in so much that *Constantinople* trembled at their approach as fearing a sack by the hands of those resolute people, but in the end having gotten a rich booty they returned to their station.

The *Venetians* finding the Turks resolute bent to make themselves absolute Lords of *Candia* in which Island they had got strong footing laboured as earnestly to expell them, so that huge Fleets on either side were prepared that of the Turks consisting of 1100 Ships, Gallies, Galleasses, Saiques, Brigantines, and lesser Vessels furnished with Bombes, Mortar-pieces, and Fireworks, producing strange effects, and in that order set forward from the Port of *Constantinople*, with a strict command to give Battle of which *Mocenigo* the *Venetian* Admiral having notice

with

with the same willingness bore up with them, so that there began a bloody, and for a long time doubtful Fight, but the *Venetians* being better appointed than the *Turks*, broke and disordered their huge Armado, sinking and taking several Gallies, and putting the rest to flight, killing in one of them flying, the Bassa of *Anatolia*, who was sent to succede *Chusadin* Bassa, who had been made Grand Visier in the General Ship of *Candia*, yet the *Turks* having put in to the Islands, and conceiving it a shame for so great a Fleet to fly from one much inferiour in number, resolved to hazard another Battle, and therefore coming out of the several Harbours, and ranging in the form of a Crescent, the Captain Bassa fired two Guns a Stern, in token he was ready to engage, which *Mocenigo* perceiving, bore up with him, and began a second fight more dreadful than the former, playing with his Canon so furiously, that he broke off her Poop, and killed 100 of her Men, sinking two Gallies by her side, and greatly disabling several others; nor were the *Turks* idle, but used their utmost endeavour to blot out the disgrace they had sustained by their late flight, but it availed not; for by the Thundering shot and Fire-works, the *Venetians* plyed them with, they were every where put to the worst; so that flying in all parts, the *Venetian* General following the advantage, took 39 Gallies, 23 Ships, 3 Gallies, and 3000 Soldiers, 40 Gallies, Ships, and other Vessels were burnt, or sunk; and in them, and by the great and small shot, 9000 *Turks* perished in both Engagements, the rest hardly escaping to *Naxos*.

This great loss made the *Turks* out of heart with marine Affairs, and so far discouraged them, that ever since they have layd aside building Vessels of Force as useless, say that God hath given the Sea to Christians, and the Land to Turks.

About this time came news to *Constantinople* that the people of *Grand Cario* and *Damascus* taking the advantage of the intestine broyles, had rebelled, and shaken off the Turkish yoke ; and assembling to the number of forty thousand, had seized upon several strong places, many of the *Ottoman* Governours in those parts, conniving at their proceedings, which greatly perplexed the Bassas of the *Divan*, and obliged them to use their utmost Council to contrive a way to extinguish this Combustion , during which, the *Candiots* had rest, and Fortified their City in such a manner, that it became afterwards the wonder of the World, of which the Grand Vizier having notice, and fuming that his neglect had turned so much to the advantage of the Christians, he resolved to try if he could gain it by fair means, and in order thereto sent a Letter written in Letters of Gold to the *Venetian* Senate, requiring them to deliver *Candia* up to the behoof of the Grand Seignior, which was the only obstacle that hindered the conclusion of Peace, desiring that an Ambassador might be sent to treat about it ; but the *Venetians* remembring that the Turks never made any peace, but when necessity drove them to it, nor kept it longer than they found it advantagious, and withal called to mind how evilly they had intreated their Ambassador, generously refused to hearken to any Peace upon those terms commanding their Admiral with his Fleet to block up the *Dardanellis*, which he so strictly observed, that for want of succour the Turks in the Island of *Candia* were greatly distressed, and began to mutiny, being hardly with great rewards retained in due obedience, upon which, the *Divan* sent strict orders with many Menaces upon refusal to the Captain Bassa then in the Bay of *Rhodes* to force his way through the *Venetian* Fleet, and put men and

Pro-

that Provision on shoar at *Candia*, thereby to cease the loud complaints of the Souldiers, yet could not be induced thereto, but having plundered certain Islands, he returned to *Constantinople* with the Gallies, in hopes with his ill gotten booty to appease the *Divan*, but contrary wise he was seized on and the goods sealed up with the Grand Siegniours Signet, which none may on pain of death unloose without command, yet such was the presumption of his Sons that they broke it open, and putting the richest of the spoil, into a Galley, fled to distant Lands, thereby exposing their fathers life to the fury of his enemies, who having dispatched him constituted the *Bassa* of *Buda* Captain General in his stead, using all diligence to rig out a new Navy, which once done, the new Captain desirous to perform some exploit that might render him worthy of his place, taking his advantage, broke through the *Venetian* Fleet, but therein sustained such dammage that he had little cause to boast, for the *Venetians* following him even to the harbours mouth, plyed him so with thundering shot, that seventeen of his Gallies were sunk and taken, and four thousand of his men killed, yet he put twelve thousand men on shoar, and what provision he could spare, receiving order to return when he had repaired his dammage, though at the hazard of battle, the which he did, though with more loss then went, for that the *Venetians* having notice of what was intended, stood continually on their guard, nevertheless he so extolled his own exploits and demeaned the Courage of the Turkish *Bassa*, then General of the Forces in *Candia*, that he wrought the destruction of the latter, for none being present to plead his Cause, an Officer was instantly sent to fetch his head, whose place the foul detracter afterwards injoyed, as likewise that of Great Vizier,

Vizier, which he soon after resigned to the *Bassa* of *Aleppo*, a stirring active man, who after he had placed and displaced such Officers of the Court as he thought convenient, sent to all the Maritim Ports, Commanding those that were appointed to oversee them, with Expedition to hasten thence such Ships and Gallies as were fit for Service, determining to set forth a Fleet greater then what had for many Years before been seen in the *Levant*, which was accordingly done, but fared no better then those that had been formerly Equiped ; For *Mustapha* the New Captain *Bassa* joyning Battle with the *Venetians* was overthrown, and most of his chief Gallies and Ships of War so rent by the Cannon, that for the future they were rendered unserviceable, and many fell into the hands of the *Venetians*, the terror of whose Prowess was such, that those *Turks* that could, abandoned their Ship and fled to the shoar, leaving their Ships to the Christians, in which conflict the *Venetians* lost only one Vessel, which over-powered by a number of the *Turks* Gallies, was fired by her own men.

These unfortunate Losses much discouraged the Turkish Merchants, and Inhabitants of *Constantinople*, whose Trade was not only obstructed by reason of the Seas being shut up, but they were likewise oppressed with heavy Taxes for the maintenance of the War, which made them so desirous of Peace, that mutining in great Number, they ran to the Gates of the Pallace, Exclaiming against the Ministers of State for protracting the War, and hindring the procurement of a Peace, nor would be appeased till the Grand *Vizier* was made a Sacrifice to their Revenge, the *Muphti* hardly escaping with Life.

For the better quieting these Tumults, the Bassas of the *Divan* were obliged to enter into a further treaty with the *Venetians*, offering for Ten Millions to withdraw their Forces out of the Island of *Candia*, and grant them an intire peace, but this unreasonable demand was not accepted, the Senate knowing that the City of *Candia* was so well Fortified that the Turks despaired of winning it, and thereupon that they might seem the less to regard the *Ottoman* power, they revoaked their Ambassador Seignior *Capello*, but he through Melancholy and discontent occasioned by his hard usage at the Port, soon after dyed, leaving his Commission with his Secretary, but that Expiring, nothing more was done at that time, in relation to peace, which caused another Insurrection in the City, which had like to have turned all into ruine and desolation, for the *Spahi's* and *Tanizaries* joyning together, and pretending to reform abuses of State, deposed the Grand Vizier, discharged the Principal Officers of the Court, and obliged the *Muphti* to fly for his Life to *Jerusalem*, nor scarcely did the Queen-Mother remain secure in the old Seraglio, and to so great a height their Rebellion proceeded, that they proposed the deposing the Grand Seignior, and having thus cast off all duty and respect to their Prince, they entered the Pallace in a tumultuous manner, where forcing the Guards, they broke up the Treasury, and conveyed thence Two Millions of Sultanies.

Nor in this General combustion which continued many days, did the Shops and Ware-houses of the Merchants escape pillaging, none daring oppose the fury of the Licentious Souldiery, who had advanced a base fellow of their Faction to the Grand Vizer-ship, though afterward the storm alayed, he was de-

decently layed aside, and one *Kuperlee* a Grave Turk placed in his stead, who caused several of the Mutiniers to be Apprehended, and publiquely Executed.

Notwithstanding these troubles, the Turks desisted not to carry on the War against the *Venetians*, so resolutely were they bent to have *Candia*; In their possession therefore Equipping another Great Fleet, they put to Sea in order to relieve their men in the Island, but being again fought with by *Mocerrigo* the *Venetian* Admiral, all the Fleet was either taken, sunk or stranded, upon which the *Venetians* landed on the Island of *Tenedos*, and in four dayes became Masters of it, as also they did of *Stalimene* antiently called *Lemnos*, which losses so incensed the Grand Seignor (by this time grown to understanding, that he resolved to carry the War into *Dalmatia* part of the *Venetians* Seignory, but upon second thoughts resolved the recovery of the Islands, and in order thereto put another Fleet to Sea, who after a great dammage sustained by the *Venetian* shot, thrust their men on shoar in great numbers, and by that means the evil Fortified Islands so lately taken by the *Venetians*, were by the Turks recovered, in attempting the relief of which, *Mocenigo* the *Venetian* Admiral had his Ship blown up by his powder, accidentally taking fire, by which Accident himself, together with all that were on board perished.

These important places regained, the treaty of peace was offered to be renewed, and some overtures were made by the *Venetians*, but now the Turks would hearken to nothing unless *Candia* might be intirely put into their hands, with the Fortrefs of *Clissia* in *Dalmatia*, and payment made of three Millions of Gold, for the Dammmages sustained by the War, which unreasonable proposals, so prejudi-

cial to the honour of their Seignoury, the Senators Generously rejected, rather resolving to maintain the War, and defend themselves more vigorously then ever, which intention known, the Grand Seignour gave second orders for his Army to spoil *Dalmatia*, but in their March the Grand Vizier who headed them, having caused the Bassa of *Aleppo*s brother, who had a command in the Army to be put to death for coming later to the Randevous than was appointed, which so enraged the Bassa, that raising 40000 men, he advanced even to the Walls of *Constantinople*, burning up the Country before him, and there pitching his Tents, sent to demand the head of the great Vizier, in reprisal for that of his Murdered brothers, but not finding his expectations answered, he sent a second Messenger to demand the heads of 4 other Bassas of the Council, whom he said had been consenting thereto, and upon refusals threatened the destruction of the City, but the Plague raging there at that time, after he had burnt up all the Country about it, he retired into *Asia*, and there setting up a Youth of Twenty Years of Age, whom he gave out to be the Lawful Son of *Sultan Morat*, till that time hidden by his Mother from his Uncles fury; His Army was wonderfully increased, insomuch that he would hearken to no Proposals of an accommodation, though the Government of divers Provinces were offered, but Exhibited a Proclamation, wherein he declared *Mahomet* the unrightful Heir to the *Ottoman* Empire, upon which he was pronounced a Rebel, and all men commanded to rise up against him, and destroy him, but instead thereof most of the *Asian* Forces revolted to him, which made the *Divan* suppose it high time to give a check to the Progress of his Armes, and thereupon shipped over the Great Vizier with a puissant Army, composed

fed of the Flower of the *Ottoman* Chavalarie in *Europe*, who joyning with the Bassa, was in a great and mortal battle overthrown: and with his broken Forces obliged to retire, which made the Grand Seignior with such Forces as he could raise, pass the *Bosphorus*, and joyning with the Viziers rallied Souldiers Composed an Army of Thirty Thousand Horse, and Seventy Thousand Foot, with which he Marched against the Bassa, whose heart at the approach of so great a power began to fail him, and make him more pliable to hearken to Terms of Agreement, which he proposing to his Council of War, and they approving his Resolution, a place was Assigned for Treaty, and *Mortaza* Bassa made the Grand Seignours Plenipotentiary, the Grand Seignior promising to stand to what ever he should Act, as indeed he did, for the Bassa under pretence of a Treaty, being unadvised, drawn from his Army, was together with Seventeen of his Attendants strangled by the said *Mortaza*, and such as he had layed in ambush for that purpose, upon notice of which his Army that then consisted of Eighty Thousand Horse and Foot dispersed, every Man shifting for himself.

For this Exploit *Mortaza* was greatly applauded by the Grand Seignior and Grand Vizier, and had a considerable command conferred on him in the War, against *Rogotski* the *Transilvanian* Prince, whose Country about this time the *Tartars* had entered, at the instance of the *Sultan* with a great power, yet was not the *Asia* Rebellion thus extinguished, for a Nephew of the dead Bassas raising great Forces in the Territories of *Aleppo*, advanced with a Resolution to revenge his Uncles death, to whom joyned the two sons of *Chusaein* Bassa, whom the Great Vizier had caused to be put to death, as also the Bey of

Tor

Torgne, and many others, which rendred this Army as formidable as the precedent, gave new subject of fear at *Constantinople*, but the great Visier so managed the matter by sowing dissention among the chiefs, and bestowing large sums of Money on the Soldiers that the Army dayly diminished, till at length it came to nothing; leaving many of the Commanders to the mercy of the Visier, who never spared any man that was guilty of a crime, or suspected to be so.

Asia being again reduced to Obedience, the *Grand Seignior* had leisure to think of his Wars with the *Venetians*, and therefore gave strict command for part of his Army to march into *Dalmatia*, and the other part to be imbarqued for *Candia*; he resolving to besiege the Metropolitan City of that Name; nor were the *Venetians* slack for having received a reinforcement of Four Thousand *French* Foot, and divers other Aids sent them by the Christian Princes, their Confederates; They took the Forts of *Calamo*, *Calegro*, and *Epicarno*, hardly distressing the *Bassa* of *Canea* in the principal City of his Province; inso-much that he was obliged to write to *Constantinople* for speedy succour, lest that City should be lost; for the *Venetians* dayly battered it, and pressed it hard with continual Assaults; but a supply of Three Thousand fresh men being by Night thrust into it, the *Venetians* raised the siege, and marched to *New Candia*, (built near to *Old Candia*) in hopes to beat the *Turks* out of it, but prevailed not according to their expectation.

About this time, the Visier with a Great Army arrived at *Belgrade*, but there falling sick, he returned to *Adrinople*, to recover his Health; swearing, that if he found Death approach, he would cause all his Physitians to be put to Death; which self-preservation

servation rendered them double-diligent. These were the principal revolutions in the *Ottoman* Empire from the time *Mahomet* ascended the Throne, till the year 1660.

Anno Dom. 1661. About the beginning of this year, His Majesty of *Great Britain* sent the Earl of *Winchelsea*, his Ambassador, to *Constantinople*; who upon his arrival at the Port, was received, as became his Character, with all the Grandeur that the *Turks* allow to any Ambassador; and after his Audience, conveyed with due Ceremony to the prepared for his reception; and now the *Turks* being at leisure, invaded *Transylvania*, in order to depose Prince *Rogotski*, who after having deposed himself and made his submission, in hopes to be restored, but finding his hopes frustrated, and another advanced in his stead: Again he assumed his Government, and raising a powerful Army, made divers Inroads into the *Turkish* Dominions, till at last joyning Battle with the Bassas of *Buda* and *Temeswar* near *Julia Alba*; where being overthrown and wounded, he fled to *Varadia*, and there within Fifteen days, dyed of the Hurts received in Battle, yet was it no ways satisfactory to the proud Bassas, unless they might reduce that City, which as they alledged, had taken part with their Masters Rebels; whereupon drawing down their Army, they layed close siege, which so terrified the Citizens, that they sent their Deputies to the *Cæsarean* Emperor, to require aid, desiring him to take them into his protection; but whilst the *Imperialists* delayed, and made many scruples of breaking the League with the *Turks* after many furious Assaults, and great Slaughter on either side the City was surrendered. In consideration that the Garrison should march out with Drums beating, Colour flying, &c. and to go whither they pleased, which conditions

tions being performed, the *Turks* took possession of that strong Frontire City.

Varadin thus taken, the Citizens of *Vienna* were not a little alarmed thereat, though none used any endeavours either to relieve it when besieged, or to recover it when taken; nor in the least to annoy the *Turks*, unless Count *John Serini*, a Prince, who had a fair Sovereign Inheritance in those parts, & was under the Emperour made Governour, of *Croatia*, who raising a power laid siege to the strong City of *Canisia*, which at that time was almost destroyed by an accidental Fire; but upon notice thereof, the Emperour not only dejected to assist him in his enterprize, but sent an express Command to him to raise his siege; at which in a rage he cast his Scimiter on the Ground, and for a while stood mute, yet not thinking it convenient to disobey his Sovereigns Commands, though he might easily have taken the City, he raised his siege.

The *Transylvanian* blocked up as it were on every side by the *Turks*, about this time implored a second time the Emperors Assistance, resolving to shake off the *Turkish* yolk; and in order thereunto, they banished *Acatius Barklay*, who since the Death of *Ragotski* had governed in chief, greatly favouring the *Turks*, and in his stead constituted one *Kemenus*, sometimes General of *Ragotski's* Army; which plainly manifesting their hatred to the *Turks* the German or *Casarean* Emperor resolved to assist them; they consenting to admit Garrisons of German Soldiers into divers of their Cities, using them with all respect, and plentifully providing them with all convenient necessaries.

Yet the *Germans* made small shew of taking the Field to assist or protect the *Transylvanians*; but on

T t

the

the contrary wrote to the *Bassa* of *Buda*, to certify him that the peace should be kept inviolable; yet the *Turk* not contented, entered *Hungary*, and layed waste a great part of it that was subject to the Emperor; whereupon Count *Serini* built a Fortrefs in the *Turks* Dominions, near *Canisfa*, e're the *Turks* were aware, at which the Grand Visier was so enraged, that he sent an exprefs to strangle the *Bassa* of *Buda*, for permitting it; so that the League being apparently broken, or infringed on either side the *German* Army, under the Command of Count *Montecuculi*, and joyned with the *Transylvanians* under the Leading of *Kemenius*, their General; which Conjunction rendered them so formidable to the *Ottoman* Empire, that *Ali* *Bassa* durst not oppose their progress, till he had divided the *Transylvanians* amongst themselves, by advancing one *Apasi* to the principality, who being well beloved, caused by sundry means the Army of *Kemenius* for the most part to revolt; of which the crafty *Bassa* taking the advantage, set upon him, and in a bloody Battle overthrew his people with great slaughter, obliging him for his safety to fly into *Hungary*, from whence returning after he had recruited his broken Army, once more to try the fortune of a Field; he was in a second Battle put to the rout; and as he retired beaten from off his Horse by one of his own Souldiers where none relieving him, he was trodden to Death under the Horses Feet, and left the greatest part of his people a sacrifice to the enraged *Turks*.

Kemenius thus dead. *Apasi's* Party was greatly encouraged, insomuch that joyning with a Body of *Turks*, they besieged *Claudiopolis*, of which *David Rattani*, a right Valiant Souldier was Governour, having under his Command a Garrison of *German* Horse and Foot; yet the *Turks* and *Transylvanians* battered it

for a while, but upon the arrival of General Scherian, who in spite of them put a reinforcement into the Town, and made great slaughter of their outguards.

About this time the Plague raged in *Constantinople*, in the Camp at such a rate, that Fifty Thousand persons of all Ages and Sexes dyed, which leaving the City almost desolate, the Grand Signior retired to *Adrinople*, and there made his solemn entrance; which place so delighted him, that he had since for the most part resided there, where *Rupelee* the Old Visier so dealt with him, that he procured a promise that his Son *Ahmet* whom he had made Chieftain of *Constantinople*, should be assisting to him in his Visier-ship, and after his Death succeed him in that place of trust, the which though contrary to the Ottoman Custom, who hold it dangerous to, that any Office should go by Inheritance; accordingly came to pass, to the great grief of the Court Bassas, who are ever emulous of that place, &c. For old *Kuperle* (after he had been five years Visier, and in that time had caused Thirty Thousand Persons to fall by the hands of divers Executioners, being the bloodiest that ever officiated that place) dying, his Son *Ahmet* had the Grand Signiors Patent, and the Seal of the Empire delivered to him, taking upon him the Office of Great Visier at the Age of Thirty two years, a thing not usual, and not to be behindhand with his Father, established himself upon the destruction of such as he suspected to envy at his advancement; amongst whom, the Bassa of *Magnesia* fell a Sacrifice; he likewise procured the Banishment of *Solyman*, Bassa of *Damascus*, and that of the *Muphti*, and indeed caused to be made away, or displaced all that he suspected averse to his interest.

During the transaction of these miscalled state-policies: the *Venetians* had rendered themselves formidable at Sea, by taking and destroying many of the Turks Gallies, few escaping them in the *Archipelago*, which greatly discouraged the Turks in *Canea*, and put them out of all hopes of procuring an entire possession of the Island of *Candia*.

Anno Dom. 1662. About the beginning of this year, the Government of *Argiers* sent Deputies with presents to the *Ottoman* Court, to exhibit a complaint against the *English*; for that the Earl of *Sandwich*, with a Squadron of his Majesties Frigates, had destroyed several of their Ships, and beaten down, or dismantled their Castles; but the cause being rightly stated by the Earl of *Winchelsea*, they were so far from prejudicing the English by their complaint, that they were fain to sneak away for the preservation of their own heads. The Plague being now abated at *Constantinople*, the Grand Signior returned thither, and gave himself wholly to hunting, which above all other exercises he admired, having in the Chase of Wild Beasts many times Twenty Thousand Men attending him, who forelaid the Woods and Forrests to procure his Game; but whilst he thus gave himself up to Recreation, the Visier was as studious to remove all those that might Eclipse his Greatness, or any ways endanger him; so that in despite to the Queen-Mother, whom he knew was no favourer of his proceedings, he displaced the Testarder, or Chief Treasurer, and banished him the City; which so far incensed her, that she joining with *Ruzlir Aga*, chief Eunuch of the Women, procured the removal of his Chief Favourite or Counsellor; by whose advice he was ordinarily supported in the management of his Affairs, and greatly inveighed against the Visier, exhibiting

state- any complaints against him to the Grand Signior,
s for- and pressed them to that point, that the Grand
any of Signior began to have him in suspicion, and to make
Archib him more narrowly, which he perceiving, and
n Ca- knowing from what Fountain it sprung, endeavou-
ng an- red to reconcile himself to the Queen-Mother, but
in vain ; for her Spirit would not permit her to
f this make any Accommodation ; wherefore he fearing
with one day to fall by her means, was about to resign his
com- Viceriship ; but upon second thoughts, concluded it
rl of safer to face the Tempest, come what would come,
gates, and fall with Honour, rather than tamely expose
beaten himself to the mercy of his Enemies ; wherefore
cause he began anew to practice the Death of such as stood
they in opposition to his greatness ; and especially of
their *Mortaza*, Bassa of *Babylon*, whom he obliged to re-
ny for- linquish his trust, but could not get him within his
plague power : for having married one of the Daughters
Signi- of the Prince of *Gordean*, he retired to his Coun-
ly to- trey in the Mountain of *Amanus*, where he had a
admi- strong City assigned him, and there kept out of
times the Vicers reach, refusing all the feigned proffers
fore- of kindness which were made to decoy him into dan-
ame- ger ; but such was the restless indeavour of the
ation Grand Visier, that he desisted not, till he was put
that into his hands, who immediately caused his Head to
anger be stricken off, and sent to *Constantinople*, which was
other looked upon by many as a just Judgment of God,
lings for his treacherously murdering the Bassa of *Aleppo*,
r, and contrary to the Faith given for his security.

These things happening, the Turks after breath
taken, purposed to turn their Arms upon the *Cer-*
ch of *Famans*, but after many Consultations the matter was
s on- deferred to a fitter opportunity, by reason the Af-
and- fairs of *Transylvania* were not to the mind of the
g ma- Grand Signior, though the progress of his Arms

had put all that Principality into a fear of utter subversion, having seized most of the strong places nor durst *Apafi*: Prince only in name, interpose his Authority, or so much as intercede for the preservation of his bleeding Countrey; yet the *German* Commanders seeing all on the point of ruine, resolved to lay hold of the opportunity, and secure such places as were most commodious to the Empire when pushed forward by the renowned Captain Count *Serini*, they seized on *Claudiopolis*, *Somoswar*, *Sechilbid*, *Clewar*, alias *Coleswar*, and *Betlem*, with some other Towns and Fortresses of lesser note.

The outrages committed by the Turks in this Province were so great, that the oppressed Nobility were obliged to send their humble Petitions to divers Christian Princes, to take pity of their sufferings, and deliver them out of the hands of their barbarous Enemies, and to the minister of the Christian Princes, residing at the Port to intercede with the like supplication, to intercede for them to the Grand Signior, or Grand Visier, but all proved ineffectual, for the Turks had resolved a total subjection of that Principality, and to reduce it under the obedience of a Bassa.

Affairs standing thus in *Transylvania*, the War with the *Venetians* went on slowly; for the *Venetians* being Masters at Sea, intercepted all such Vessels and Ammunition as were sent to any of the Islands and amongst the rest, the Fleet bound for *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, consisting of Sixty Sail, most of which were taken, sunk, and burnt; a number of Slaves rescued, and prize made of a rich booty: Soon after which, Signior *Capello*, through grief and hardship induced in his Imprisonment, dyed; whose Body embalmed was with much difficulty sent to *Venice*, by the Earl of *Winchelsea*, His Majestie of Great Brit

Embassador, and there honourably Interrest
with his Ancestors.

The Great Visier being informed that the Christi-
ans had rebuilt several Churches, consumed by the
Fires that had happened in *Constantinople*, and *Gala-*
lia, by some malicious Pharisees, caused them to be
demolished, and that the Authors of those Buildings
should be Imprisoned; for as much as the *Mahome-*
tan Law tolerates the rebuilding of no Christian
Churches, nor Erecting new ones where none stood
before; but allows those to stand, that were found
standing, when the *Mahometans* took possession of
the City, Town, or Village wherein they are sci-
tuate; and so far proceeded he therein, that pro-
curing the Labourers of the Maimarbashed, or Ma-
ster-Builder, to accuse him of encouraging the build-
ing of those Churches; which done, he caused his
Head to be stricken off, and his Wealth to be seized,
which according to report, amounted to Two Thou-
sand Purfes of Money, every Purse containing Five
Hundred Dollars.

About this time, The *Sieur De la Haye*, the *French*
Embassador having received divers affronts at the
Port, was imprisoned, which had like utterly to have
dissolved the Communication between the two Na-
tions; but at the intreaty of the Merchants of *Mar-*
seilles and *Lions*, whose interest would greatly have
suffered, if by that means their Trading into the
Grand Signiors Dominions had been obstructed,
the *French* King was prevailed with to send another
Embassador with Letters to the Grand Signior, and
Grand Visier, to require in some manner a repara-
tion of the dishonour he sustained in the person of
his Embassador, greatly dissembling his resentments,
but in the end was obliged to rest satisfied with a
Complement or two, instead of other reparation.

and himself to make his own Ambassador amends the better to blind the Eyes of the Christian Ministers residing at the Port, and salve up the wounds his honour received by the disgrace.

The Emperor of *Germany* resolving on a War with the Turks after great preparation was obstructed, and obliged to come to a dishonourable treaty by reason of an accident that happened at *Rome* occasioning a wide breach between the Pope and the French King to the indangering of *Christendom*, which was thus, the French Ambassadors Coach passing the streets of *Rome*, was assaulted by the *Corfi* Natives of the Island of *Corfica*, which are retained as the Popes guard, the page killed in the boot, and the Ambassadors Lady wounded, but upon what instigation remains doubtful, yet the King took it so heinously that he resolved to War upon the Popes Territories in *Italy*, which discord did not a little rejoyce the Turks, who imputed it the merit of their Prayers as indeed they do all other divisions amongst the Christians.

The Treaty of Peace by reason of the divisions aforefaid having continued between the two Empires, without coming to any result, about the beginning of the year 1663. great forces were levied on either side, and all hopes of peace vanished, inso-much that the Turks squaring out the platform of the War on their part, resolved to recover the places they sometimes held in *Hungary*, but more especially *Rab* and *Komora*, and thereupon with a great Army passed the *Danube* over a Bridg of Boats, upon whom the Governour of *Newhensel* sallied with eight thousand men, though contrary to the advice of his Council, with which in the night he entered their Camp and made a great slaughter, but the gross of the Army having passed the River, and taken

When the alarm, Cressent-wise closing the horns at the back of the Christians made of them a miserable slaughter, who notwithstanding sold their lives at a dear rate, falling upon heaps of the Enemy till at last tired with slaughter, those that remained alive yielded themselves Prisoners, and were notwithstanding contrary to the Law of Arms by the Vissiers command barbarously murdered. In this disaster the Governour hardly escaped, and in his return was but coldly received, for that he by his rashness had exposed the lives of so many brave Soldiers, to the cruel Swords of their barbarous Enemies, but this cruelty was soon after revenged upon the Turks in like manner by Count *Serini*.

This fatal loss sounded harsh in the Emperours ears, and obliged *Forcatz* Governour of *Newhensel* to send to *Monticuculi* Governour of *Rab*, to advise him of his evil success, and that if a re-inforcement was not speedily sent the place must of necessity fall into the hands of the Enemy, whereupon one thousand select Souldiers were drawn out of *Rab* and sent thither, but scarcely were they entered before the Turk set down before it, and summoned the Governour to surrender, but upon his refusing on the 14th. of *August* they prepared for a General storm. In order to which about break of day Faggots and Rubbish were brought to fill up the ditch, and scaling Ladders to ascend the Walls, but although they were many in number, and the assault made with all imaginable vigor, yet they were received by the defendants with that courage and gallantry, that the Trenches were filled with their Carcasses, and at length obliged to retreat with the loss of six thousand of their men.

The siege still continuing the Turks angry and inflamed with the disgrace of their late foil, endeavoured

voured to redeem their honour by a second attempt filling up the Ditches as before, and furiously attacked the outworks, but was so miserably repulsed with the Flankers that they were forced to fall off with more loss and confusion than before, which so incensed the Visier, that drawing off a part of his Army to which he joyned some Companies of *Tartars*, he sent them over the River *Waag* to Forage the Countries of *Austria* and *Moravia*, which they did (after having defeated the *German* forces that (few in number) were appointed to guard the frontiers) in such a manner as the like desolation had never happened in those parts, running even to the Walls of *Vienna* with Fire and Sword, which put that City into a great consternation, and caused the Emperour to remove to *Limz*, yet for all this imminent danger the *Diet* brought nothing to perfection, in order to the enabling the Emperour to raise more Forces, but rather spent the time in cavilling at little niceties, during which *Newhusel* upon their Magazine of Powder accidentally taking Fire surrendered, upon Articles honourable to the besieged.

The Turks heightened with their success layed siege to *Levents*, which after many threats and fair promises was put into their possession by the Inhabitants, which so overjoyed the Turks that feasted they for several dayes, and then marched to *Schinta* the Magazine of the Emperours Arms, and Artillery, which they assaulted, but with great loss were beaten off, and forced to raise their siege, yet passing on they took *Novigrode*, a strong Castle situate upon a Rock, and Garrisoned with six hundred Soldiers, provided with all necessaries that might have encouraged them to a resolute defence, and not upon such easie terms have surrendered a place of such strength.

Win-

Winter approaching the Grand Visier with part of his Army marched back to *Belgrade* there to quarter till the Spring, ordering a flying Army of thirty thousand Turks and *Tartars* under the leading of the Bassa of *Temeswar* to pass into *Stira* and *Crotia*, the Countries of Count *Serini*, who was about that time returned out of *Hungary*, and there to fill all places with desolation of which the heroick Count having notice resolved they should not want a welcome and therefore raising such Forces which were not above six hundred, and with this handful betook himself to the banks of the River *Muer*, to give a stop if possible to the passage of the Enemy placing Centinels in all places where the River was fordable, yet two thousand Turks, passed undiscerned upon whom he set with such undaunted courage that he soon put them to flight, who in seeking to repass the River and missing the place they passed at and pressed by the Count they threw themselves headlong into the depths and there mostly perished, which the Turks on the further bank perceiving were so amazed at the stupendious valour of *Serini*, that their courage failing them they desisted from any further attempt upon his Countries. Yet the Count not satisfied raised against the Spring, viz. 1664. a considerable power and marched into the Turks Territories, destroying all before him taking many important places, and burning a bridge made over the Fenns six or seven miles in length, which cost the Turks six hundred thousand Dollars in building, and six years labour, he likewise took *Quinque Ecclesia*, and following the course of his victory taking in many small Towns and Castles in his way, he came before *Sigeth* a Fortres of the Turks, consisting of the new and old Town joyned by a bridge cross a famous marsh, and fell into the

the hands of the Turks in the Reign of *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Anno* 1565. he then besieging it with an Army of six hundred thousand Men, in defence of which *Nicholas Serini* great grand father to this Count, immortalized his fame and memory with the loss of his Life. This place the Count resolved to take and sacrifice such barbarous Turks as would not by a timely surrender submit to his mercy, to the Ghost of his Ancestors, but when he had a long time battered it, and it at a point to yield, news was brought that a great number of Turks and *Tartars* were on their way to relieve it, whereupon calling a Council of War it was therein concluded that it was not safe to hazard a Battle, and thereby indanger what was already acquired, but rather give place to necessity and return with such spoiles as they had which indeed were very great.

Whilst this renowned Champion in the Christian cause so bravely behaved himself on the one side, the affaires in *Transilvania* succeeded not so well for the Garrison of *Clovinopolis* wanting pay mutined and delivered up that important place to *Apafi*, which roused the *Germans* out of their Lethargy, and made them begin to bestir themselves, and the grand Signeour mad at the loss he had sustained by the Arms of *Serini*, sent sharply to reprove the *Visier* of negligence charging under severe penalties to be more vigilant for the future, but in spite of all he could do, the Count on whose plumes fledged victory sat perching, having a while taken breath plucked other plumes from the Turkish Empire; when to exasperate him the *Visier* sent several Troops to take his new Fort of *Serniswar*, yet not so covertly but that he had notice thereof, and immediately dispatched a messenger to his brother *Peter Serini*, (whom he had left to guard the frontiers himself
at

at that time prosecuting his good success in *Hungary*) to be in a readiness to receive them which young Prince no less couragious then his brother, setting upon the Turks as they were passing the straits of *Morlac* he killed two thousand of them, took fifteen hundred Prisoners and put the rest to a disorderly flight.

Upon news of this success the Count resolved to besiege *Canisfa*, and in order thereunto went disguised, onely accompanied with fourteen of his officers to take a view of its strength and scituation but was not so private therein, but that the Turks had secret intelligence of his purpose, and layed an Ambush of five hundred Horse some distance without the Walls to intrap him, but providence so ordered it, that by the swiftness of his Horse he broke through them, when at the noise 300 of his *Croatian* Horse coming up he faced about and valiantly at the head of his Troop, charged the Enemy and made of them such slaughter that few of them escaped death, or bondage. Amongst the slain one was found compleatly armed, with a silk twisted Cord of divers colours about his waist, who by the Captives was reported to have taken a solemn Oath to bring the Count bound in that Cord, and to have layed him at the Visiers feet, but in this as in most human affairs it was observed that when man proposeth God disposeth.

After this success the Count made known his intention of War against the Turks, desiring his approbation who by the advice of the Diet at *Ratisbon* approved of his proceedings, and sent him supplies of Men and Money, to persist in his enterprizes, whereupon he sat down before *Canisfa*, and battered it furiously, but for want of the supply promised he at the approach of the Turkish Army which was very numerous raised the siege.

The

The Diet was not idle in studying and contriving the preservation of the Empire, but finding themselves too weak, advised the Emperor to send his Ambassadors to his Majesty of Great *Brittain*, His Majesty of *Poland*, and the Princes of *Italy*, to contribute towards the defence of *Christendom*, who all freely, either with Men or Money, ingaging in the common cause an Army of Four Thousand Thirty Seven Horse and Sixteen Thousand Nine Hundred Ninety One Foot was Imbodied, and were promised success the rather by reason of the Rebellion in *Egypt*, where several of the *Begs* had taken up Armes, and driven out the Bassas, yet the difference amongst the Christian Commanders retarded their success, and especially some affronts put upon the renowned Count *Serini*, which not being taken notice of by the Emperor, he supposed he connived at them, and therefore retired from the Army, which put a great stop to their proceedings, upon which the Turks encouraged besieged many places, but with small success, for in the end *Hussein* Bassa, General of the Turks Army being incountered by Count *Soise* chief Commander of the *Imperials*, he was overthrown with great slaughter of his men, when flying to *Strigonium* he was denied enterance, and obliged to March to *Newhusel*, where he was received, the Garrison there being thin, and the tempest of War at that time threatening that place.

Soise animated by this success besieged *Barcan* a strong Garrison of the Turks, on the other side *Danubius* near to *Strigonium*, the which after a terrible assault he took, and after having plundered it, set it on Fire, and so marched back to *Romora*, the News of which made the Turks pass the River *Rab* with part of their Army, for Providence so ordered it, that in the night time abundance of Rain fell, and the

the River swelling kept the other part from passing, so that being divided, that part which had passed being set upon by the Christians was routed with great slaughter, most of them perishing by the Sword or the Water, the slain of note on both sides being these, on the Turks *Ismale* Bassa of *Buda*, the General of the *Spahies*, the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, the youngest Son of the *Tartar Han*, Three other *Bassas*, *Ali Beg* General of *Bosna*, Thirty *Capugibashes*, Thirty Five of the *Visiers* Pages, and Three Hundred of his Guard, Fifty *Janizaries*, Three Thousand *Spahes*, Fifteen Hundred *Bosnacks*, Eight Hundred *Albanians*. Six Hundred *Crotians* and *Hungarians* subject to the Turks, Two Hundred and Fifty *Valachians* and *Moldavians*, Six Hundred *Tartars*, Fifteen Hundred *Anatolians*, and Four Thousand other *Asiaticks*, in all Seventeen Thousand ; Of the Christians were slain about Three Thousand, the chief of which were the Count of *Nassau*, *Charles* Count *Bracondorf*, Count *Fulchire* General of the Artillery, and Collonel *Pleiter* with his Lieutenant Collonel, and Serjeant *Major*.

This great overthrow caused the Turkish Forces to Mutinye, declaring the War to be undertaken upon an unjust quarrel, alledging that the Total Eclipse of the Moon had before presaged their evil success, nor could the Visier appease them, or secure his own Life without a promise to use his utmost interest for an accommodation of Peace between the Empires, yet kept not his word, but immediately sent his Commands to the Princes of *Moldavia* and *Valachia*, who had retired to return to the War, whereupon though very unwillingly they returned, after which the Turks Turk *Serniswar*, the *Imperials* not so much as vouchsafing to relieve it, which so afflicted the Noble Mind of the Count *Serini*, that
grow-

growing Melancholly, to divert himself he often used Hunting, when one day Chasing a Bore, whom he wounded in several places, the furious Beast turned upon him, and with his Tusk struck him on the Knee, which made him fall to the ground, when before he could recover himself with a second stroke, he was mortally wounded in the head, and soon after dyed in the Armes of one of his Pages; This was the end of this valiant Captain, whom his Enemies could never subdue, to the great grief of all worthy Christians, and the joy of the Turks, whose Mortal Enemy he was, a man in dangers most courageous, in War valiant, and patient in labour, in peace courteous, and moderate in his pleasure, and in fine he was accomplished with all those vertues that renders a man compleat.

After the death of this Count, the Peace between the Empires was concluded, when as the Grand Seignior being at leasure, plotted the destruction of his Brothers, but at the perswasion of the *Muphti* altered his Resolution.

About this time the Grand Visier indeavoured to depose the *Tartar Han*, and place his Son in his stead, but the young *Tartar* though barbarous would not consent thereto, but sent his Father secret notice what was intended against him, which so enraged the *Tartar*, that he used his utmost indeavour at the *Ottoman* Court to overthrow the Visier, and promote another to that Office, in order to which he dealt with the Bassa of *Buda*, promising him his utmost interest at the Port to make him great Visier, by which, though contrary to his wish, he destroyed him for the Visier, having notice of what had passed, obtained a private Commission from the Grand Seignior, by which he Summoned the Bassa to appear before him, when immediately without any pro-

cells, proof or accusation, caused his Head to be stricken off.

Anno Dom. 1665. The *Genoese* sent the Marquess *Durazzo* as their Envoy Extraordinary to the *Ottoman* Court, where by gifts and other means, he so effectually wrote with the Grand Visier, that a peace ensued between the Grand Seignieur and that Republick, the which was the rather accorded to that the War against *Candia* might be the better carryed on, upon which the Turks seemed absolutely bent in order to the Equiping of Gallies and other things necessary, the Grand Seignieur came from *Adrinople* to *Constantinople*, but before his arrival great part of the *Seraglio* was burnt to the ground, fired by some of the women, to prevent the discovery of their stealing divers Jewels that garnished the Royal Cradle, and upon his arrival he desired of the Earl of *Winchelsea* Fifteen Sail of English Men of War, with the consent of His Majesty of Great Britain, but the Earl excused it, saying, that though his Majesty of *England* did always entertain a good affection and zealous disposition towards the affairs of the *Ottoman* Port, yet at present the Wars with *Holland*, and ill understanding with *France*, made his occasions for his own Shipping more urgent then usual, and the time most unseasonable to press his Majesty in that particular, whereupon the Grand Visier gave order for the building Sixty Gallies against the Spring, at what time a great Fleet was in a readyness, several English, French and Dutch Merchant Men, who were at that time found in the ports of *Aleppo*, *Smyrna*, and *Alexandria*, being pressed for the service.

These proceedings greatly alarumed the *Venetians*, insomuch that they delayed nothing that was requisite for the defence of their important City of *Candia*, the which who ever holds, commands the rest

of the Island, whereupon the Marquess *Ghiron Franciseo Villa* a brave Souldier, was entertained as General of Foot, and a Sallary of twelve thousand Crowns *per Annum* allowed him, with a large Commission not to be subject to any command, but that of the Captain Generals, who with a great train arriving at *Venice* made an Oration to the people, wherein he encouraged them to the utmost to fight against the enemies of their Country and Religion with weariness, and chearfully to provide all necessaries for so honourable a War, whereupon they fitted their Fleet with all things necessary, and strengthened their Forts both with Horse and Foot drawn out of their Garrisons on the *Terra Firma*, being assisted with Men and Money from other Princes and States; The Pope gave them permissions to levy four thousand men out of his Countries, the Emperor likewise notwithstanding the peace furnished them with considerable Forces, to which were additions made from other parts of *Germany*, and indeed from many of the Christian Princes, who were grieved to see an Infidel incroach yet farther into *Europe*, but above all the *French King* contributed largely, though at the same time he sent Mounsier d' *Vently* his Ambassador to the Port, who as the former received many affronts during his residence there; The Captain of the Ship that brought him thither likewise was ordered by the Grand Seignior to be Executed, for too rudely pressing into his presence, which Sentence had been put in Execution had not the *Rostangi* Basha interceded for him, yet he nevertheless was imprisoned and put in chains, nor could the Ambassador without a great Sum procure his Liberty, nor at his Audiences had of the Grand Seignior and Grand Visier was he received with such respect as became his Character, yet he made the best on it, boasting to

the other Christians, Ministers of the ample satisfaction he had received both for his own affronts, and the affronts put upon his Predecessors.

Whilst these things passed, the Marquess d' Villa passed into *Dalmatia* to take a view of the Forts and strong places on that side, as fearing whilst the Turks gave out for *Candia*, they might suddenly turn their Forces upon that Frontier Territory of the *Venetians*, but having given such necessary orders as he thought requisite, and being certified from Count *Lisse* the Emperors Ambassador at *Constantinople*, that the Grand Visier early in the Spring would with a puissant Army land on the Island he set over, with such Forces as he had, to joyn those already there.

About the beginning of the Year 1666. great troubles had like to have risen in the *Ottoman* Empire, occasioned by one *Sabatay Seni* a Jew, born at *Smyrna*, who impiously pretending himself to be the *Messia* drew after him a multitude of that unhappy nation, declaring that he came to restore them to their temporal Kingdom, and to gather the scattered tribes filling their heads with prophecies, dreams and false delusions, that they every where credited him, and laying aside all business, prepared for their march to *Jerusalem*, once more to possess the Land of Promise, and raise a Glorious Monarchy above what ever their Ancestors could pretend too, and to that purpose made themselves Garments according to the Levitical Ordinance, several of them affirming that they had seen *Elias*, and that he had expressly commanded it, writing to each other many Blasphemous Letters in commendation of their Impostor, whom they stile King of Kings, and Lord of all Lords, attributing to him many other vain Titles, nor was it long e'r he became Hydra headed, for other despicable Jews finding the cheat take so effectually took up the de-

ceiving Trade which caused the Turkish Ministers to nip them, ere they grew too popular, by confining the Ring-Leaders to divers Prisons; and amongst other things, the Jews being ashamed that so many Missias should at once appear, procured the Imprisonment of some of them, themselves, by accusing them of Adultery, and other heinous Crimes, as for *Sabati*, he finding his fraud too apparent, renounced the Judaism, and turned Mahometan, and drew many of his Nation to follow his Example, being for that purpose set at Liberty, and allowed a pension for his Maintenance in the Turks Seraglio.

About this time the Embassadors of either Empire exchanged, that is, the Turks Embassador returned from *Vienna* to *Constantinople*; and the German Embassador from *Constantinople*, to *Vienna*; during which, the skirmishes between the *Venetians* and the *Turks* grew hot, Hostilities being on both sides maintained with great fury, both by Land and Sea, though with various success; sometimes one side prevailing, and sometimes another; till at last it was resolved by the Marquess *D' Villa*, and the Admiral of the Gallies, that by reason of the great Inundations occasioned by the incessant rains, that the offensive War should be laid aside, and the Forces for better security, incamp near the Walls of *Candia*, as being the Metropolis of the Island, whilst the Gallies divided into two Squadrons scowred the Seas, and hindred any new succours from Landing; but ere they were incamped, Two Thousand Turks falling from their Trenches, set upon the out Guards, beating them from their Post, and pursuing even to the enterance of the Camp, but being reinforced, the Turk were obliged in disorder to retire; yet the Turks not contented, made another attempt, but with no better success than the for-

mer; though the Loss was considerable on either side; yet the Turks Camp was greatly annoyed by the shot, from which played furiously upon their Trenches; but the Marquess *D' Villa* having notice of the approach of greater Forces, thought it wisdom to remove his Camp to a place of more advantage, till new aids came to his assistance; the which after filling up the Trenches, and blowing up the Forts that they might not profit, the Enemy was performed.

During this Action, the Great Visier, with a numerous Army Imbarqued on the Gallies at *Constantinople*, and after touching at *Thebes*, arrived at *Candia*, though by the way, Twelve of his Galleys fell into the hands of the *Venetians*, mostly laden with Provision and Ammunition, taken near the Gulf of *Volo* by the Cavalier, *Grimani*, Captain of the Gallies; the Visier upon his arrival went to take a view of the City of *Candia*, that Bulwark then of Christendom, and finding the taking of it would require much time and labour, he returned to *Canea*, to consult the measures used in carrying on the siege; when in the mean time the Princes of Christendom being at discord amongst themselves, were not so ready in sending the promised succours as was expected, only the Pope and Great Duke of *Tuscany* kept their promise, and some few private men out of their proper Treasury, sent a supply of Money and Provision, insomuch, that the juncture did no ways promise success to the *Venetians*.

Anno 1667. The *Tartars* in the depth of Winter entering *Poland*, layed a great part of it desolate, carrying away One Hundred Thousand Christians into miserable Bondage, which made the *Polonian* King exhibit a grievous complaint to the Grand Signior; but with all desirous to renew the League be-

tween them: In order to which, he sent his Embassador with many rich Presents to the Port, but he being too peremptorie in his demands upon his Audience, and receiving no answer agreeable to his expectation, uttered such Speeches as caused the Grand Signior to confine him to his own House, and a Guard to be set upon him, which so increased his fury, that growing high, it casted him into a Favour, of which he dyed; when as his Secretary took upon him the character of an Embassador, expecting a reply to what had been proposed, and within a while after, had an Audience of the *Chimacam*, but in the end could obtain no other answer, then that no compensation or pretence should ever after be demanded for the damage sustained by the *Tartars* in *Poland*, nor that the *Polanders* should make War upon the *Cossacks* now revolted from the Obedience of that Crown; but that they should immediately make War upon the *Muscovite*, and permit the *Turkish* Merchants to Trade in their Countrey; with this answer the Secretary was obliged to depart, though it proved nothing grateful to the *Poles*, who did not vouchsafe to return thanks for this unesteemed favour, yet by reason of the differences amongst themselves, warred not on *Tartary*, though some of the bordering people with any Authentick Commission, joyning with a considerable party of *Muscovians*, entered *Tartary*, and running with Fire and Sword even to the Walls of *Coffa* their chief City, burnt Three Hundred Villages, and brought away a great booty of Prisoners, Cattle, and the like.

About this time the Bassa of *Basora* revolted from the Grand Signior, and with displayed Insignia marched with an Army of Forty Thousand Horse and to the great terror of those Countreys, which he pretended were of right, his Legal Inheritance

descended to him by his Ancestors; but the Bassas of *Erzurum*, *Aleppo*, and *Damascus* going against him, routed his Forces, and for the preservation of his Life, obliged him to fly to the King of *Persia*. The *Venetian* Gallies coasting the Island of *Candia*, to hinder what in them lay the Landing of Forces on that Island, encountered with Twenty Ships of the *Turks*, laden with Men and Provision; most of which they burnt, sunk, or took, and a while after had one of the Turkish Gallies brought to them by the Slaves, who had by stratagem taken it from their Masters, but these proceedings seemed small to what afterwards happened; for by this time the Visier having layed his siege to one of the strongest City in the World, fortified by the most industrious of men, as far as Humane possibility could render it impregnable, dismal things ensued.

The Town was fortified with seven great Bastions, viz. the *Sabionera*, *Vetturi*, *Jesus*, *Martinengo*, *Betlem*, *Panigra*, and *St. Andrea*, all encompassed with a large and deep Ditch, of which were the *Revelin* of *Spiritto*, the *Revelin* of *Panigra* flanked to the right, with the Half-Moon of *Mecenigo*, next thereunto, was the *Revelin* of *Betlem* bordering on the work of *St. Maries*, which to the left had the *Revelin* of *St. Nicholas*, and this joyned to the Fortification of *de Palma*, next whereunto was the *Revelin* of *Prinli*, with the redoubt of *Crepa Cuore*, and over all was the Royal Fort of *St. Demetrio*, which Commanded the work of *Molino*, and *Sabionera*, even to the very Sea.

Before this formidable place, the Visier pitched his Tents, raised his Battery, and provided all things necessary to approach the work, running his Trenches with great celerity to the border of the out-works, but there met with such blasts of *Atnean*

Fires from the Mines and Farnellos, that they hindered the *Turks* Traverses, and greatly discourag'd them, considering that if the Ground was unsecure at that distance, what Abysses and Chasmas must there be prepared to make them Graves under the Walls or entrance of the City, when not to let them breathe, the Christians sallied twice on them, making great slaughter of such as were far advanced in the works; when retiring in confusion, the Collonel of St. *Demetrio* fell upon them, cutting Two Thousand of them in pieces, e're they could recover their main strength; about which time, Captain General *Morosini* arrived in the Haven with his Gallies, and put One Thousand fresh men into the City, which so exasperated the *Turks*, that they resolutely advanced to hinder it, but being within danger by the springing of Mines, some hundreds of them were sent to cut capers in the Air; yet the *Turks* forced by their Commanders like Moles, continued there working under ground, where many of them dug their own Graves, never more appearing above ground; for being countermined, they were overwhelmed with the blasts of Powder and dreadful Wild-Fires prepared by *Castellan* (the most expert Enginere in the World) for that purpose, yet the *Turks* with their stink pots, which flaming, they threw into the works, so infected the Air with noisom vapours, that long it was e're it could be purged with the burning of *Juniper-wood*, and *Aquavite*.

During these dayly rancounters, arrived the Auxilarie Gallies from the Pope, and *Maltesians* commanded by Prior *Bichi*, and *Bali Del Bene*, as likewise the Gallies of *Naples* and *Sicily*, Commanded by *Gianettino Doria*, and the Duke of *Ferandina*, but such was the Cowardise of these Commanders which they

they imputed to, the straitness of their Commission, that they durst not come on shoar, nor at the instance of the Marquess *D' Villa*, send him so much as a man, except such renowned *French* Volunteers as would enter the City, not being under their Command, amongst whom was the Cavalier *D' Haycourt*, of the House of *Lorrain*, who did singular service by his Valour and Conduct; nor did these Gallies ought at Sea, but after some time, coasting the Island, ingloriously returned home to theirs, and their Masters Infamy.

These things happening, the Signior *Giavarina* surrendred his charge of Captain of the Gallies to Signior *Pasquelino*, and by the order of the Senate, went again to *Constantinople*, and from thence passed over to treat with the Great Visier about a truce, but nothing would be consented to, unless *Candia* was delivered, whereupon he generously scorned to treat further, though the Visier desired it, and appointed a place for that purpose, which so intraged him, that he commanded the Mines about *Panigra* to be sprung, and a furious Assault to be given, but it proved unsuccessful by the great slaughter of the Turks, whose bodys filled up the ruines of the Mine.

At the end of *July* arrived Six Hundred Foot, under the Leading of *Ottanio Alba*, a Noble *Venetian* bringing with him likewise Twenty Thousand Ducats, who entring the City, was joyfully received, during which spaces, the Fights between the Miners under Ground, were as bloody as those in the open Field, so that the Men seemed to make war in the Grave; nor were the Turks slow in placing their Mines to advantage, especially one, which taking Fire, blew up part of the Half-Moon, leaving thereby a passage Twelve Foot wide, at which the Turks pressing to enter, were miserably overwhelmed

med by the storms of shot that flew like Hail from the Flankers, whereupon the better to make their approaches, the Turks filled sacks of Earth, and planted them near the Walls, which the Christians with long Iron hooks drew away, and left them open to the fury of Musquitiars, who were the more encouraged by another supply of Five Hundred *Venetians*, under the Command of Signeour *D' Riva*, when on the Fifteenth of *September*, the Christians sallied, and after a hot skirmish, trained the Turk into the danger of a Mine, which being sprung, sent Three Hundred of them into the Air, yet they continued the Fight very bloody and doubtful, till at length the Christians retired under the Bastion of *Betlem*, and the Turks with the shot from thence were beaten off.

On the Eighteenth they made another salley, and trained the Turks into the danger of another Mine, though not without some loss of their own; their Captain being wounded, and Ten or Twelve of them slain, yet they again sallied, and sprung several Mines to the destroying of Six Thousand Turks, whilst the Enginere framed an Engine to rid the Ditch of the Earth that the Mines had thrown into it, but the Turks undermining where it stood, blew it into the Air, yet the Labourers with Baskets and Sacks supplied its place; and on the Twentieth of *October*, a Mine of Forty Barrels of Powder was fired by the Christians to destroy the Enemies redoubts, but on the contrary, it burst through an old Gallery with such force, as made the City tremble, as if an Earthquake had happened, and with the confused smoak stifled about Sixty Men.

About this time, the Grand Signior sent an Express to the Visier, to send him an exact account how the siege was carried on, and what hopes there was
of

of winning the piece, sending him a Sword, and a vest of Sables as a token of his favour; to merit which, and that the Grand Signiors Inquisitor might be a Spectator of the difficulty in winning the place, he commanded a General assault the next day should be made upon *Panigra*, which was carryed on with such desperateness, that the Turks entered the Ditches, but were soon dislodged by the Springing Mines, which made them spraul by Hundreds in the Air, and overthrew many of the Enemies redoubts, yet the Visier not satisfied with threats and promises, obliged them to renew the Assault, which they did with such eagerness, in hopes of great rewards, that notwithstanding the undaunted courage of the Defendants, *Panigra* had been taken, had not the General given order for the blowing it up, which was done with such a Thunder-crack from the breath of Seventy Barrels of Powder under a huge pile of stones, that the Turks Camp trembled, and in it perished Three Thousand Turks, amongst whom were Three Bassas, and many other of note. This for the present astonished the Turks, and gave a stop to the further proceedings of this Assault. This proof gave evident Conviction to the Grand Signiors Inquisitor of the strength of the place, and difficulty of the work; and having been an Eye-Witness of what had passed, returned with dismal stories of a cruel War, reporting (perhaps) and it was related in most parts of Christendom, that this was the place where blood was spilt day and night, where Gallant Men had forgot to sleep, living in perpetual labours, innur'd to intolerable sufferings, and hourly dangers, there being none secure in Church, House, or Street; for Granadoes spouted fire, Cannons thundred out their Iron Globes, Arrows and Stones fell like Hail, so that there were none in that place,

place but who quartered on the brink of the Grave.

Winter coming on Hostilities ceased not though their heat was somewhat abated, and to the wonder of all men the Visier could not be perswaded to forsake his Trenches, but proving when necessary he could to secure his Souldiers from the raging cold and prodigious Rains he immediately dispatched Letters to the Grand Signeour and *Divano*, to send him new supplies for that his Army was so wasted that of one hundred and fifty thousand with which he at first incamped not a third part of them remained adding that he was resolved to take the City or dye under its Walls, which resolution was highly approved by the Grand Signeour, and a speedy dispatch of Men, Provision, and Ammunition was made when to the Visier supposing to render the Officers of the City more negligent of their trusts sent to propose certain Articles of Peace and a flag of Truce, but his design being perceived he drew in his hornes, about which time arrived the new Proveditor *Bernardo Navi* (the other having been killed with a Musquet shot on the Fort of *Panigara*) bringing with him five hundred Souldiers, and *Matteo Matthews* Serjeant General with recruits from the Pope, as likewise three hundred Meddals, to bestow upon such Worthies as should best deserve them.

Anno Dom. 1668. in the month of *March* a sharp engagement happened between sixteen *Venetian*, and twelve Turkish Gallies, the latter not expecting such a number in those, tho indeed they had been sent to surprize yet entering into a sharp dispute six of the Turks Gallies were sunk or taken, and the rest much shattered escaped under the shelter of the night

night, having lost most of their Souldiers and Commanders, and soon after the Captain General of the *Venetians*, lighting accidentally of six other Turkish Gallies took and sunk them all save one that run her self on shoar.

Spring being now come the Turks began to creep out of their Trenches, having raised a Fort on the side of the *Lazaretto*, which so offended the Port that there was no harbour or access for Vessels, and the like they had erected on the other side near unto the Fort of St. *Andrea*, which greatly offended *Tramata* another harbour on the left hand, and in the night passing undiscovered of the Centinels they fixed a strong Cable to the Pallisado of St. *Andrea*, and strained it so hard with an Engine erected for that purpose, that they tore away several of the main beams, heightned with which success they continued to advance their Lines on that side, to prevent which the General commanded two hundred under the leading of Major *Motta*, to sally out upon them, which they effected with such expedition and secrecie, that they slew a great number of them and put the rest that were running the Line to flight, overthrowing their redoubts and filling up Lines for which good service the General bestowed amongst them fifty Zechins, and commanded the platform to be finished from whence with his Cannon he greatly annoyed the Enemy, and having destroyed several Redoubts by springing of Mines, sallyed about eight hundred strong, and made great slaughter of the Turks driving them out of their Trenches. Howsoever the Turks with admirable patience crept forward under the shelter of their Bastion, running their Traverses cross the Lines till *Maupassan* an Engineer by springing several Mines put a stop to their proceedings. But now what

was

was the greatest loss to this famous City the Duke of *Savoy* (whose subject the Marquess *D' Villa* was, recalled him home, his urgent affairs so requiring, notwithstanding many overtures were made for his continuance, but in obedience to his Prince he embarked and left his charge to the Marquess *St. Andree Montbrun* a Noble man of *France*, with whom the *Venetian* Ambassador at *Paris* by order of the Republick, had prevailed to take upon him the defence and protection of that deplorable reduced now almost to its ultimate crisis.

The new General established in his place of trust took a diligent survey of the Forts and Walls of the City, giving such necessary orders as he conceived most convenient, nor was his diligence without reason for the Turks dayly pressed nearer to the Walls of the City, raising many redoubts with such expedition, that they could not be destroyed so fast as they were raised, though the Miners ceased not to use their utmost diligence, and from them playing with their Cannon many brave men were killed on the Walls, and amongst the rest Provider General *Nani*, and *Francisco Bataglia*, Brother to the Duke of *Candia* were slain with Musquet shots.

The long continuance of this siege drew thither many Worthies, and amongst others *Monsier La Fuillade* Duke of *Roanez*. The Count of *St. Pauls*. The Duke *De Carderouffe*. The Count *D' Villa Maur*, and the Duke *De Chateau Tiery*, who came accompanied with six hundred Men most of them Gentlemen of note, to try their valour in the field of *Mars*, who like so many enraged Lyons by their frequent sallies killed a great number of the Turks, beating them through their Trenches, and terrifying them at that rate that they scarcely durst make
their

their approach, but these men came not to stay but only to see the Wars and so depart, which after good service done, such as escaped did ; when in their places several valiant Souldiers sent by the Dukes of *Lunenburgh* and *Brunswick* arrived under their leading of several valiant Chiefs, of which Count *Waldeck* was principle, who in a sally venturing into the Enemies Trenches too far, received several wounds of which he soon after died.

Between St. *Andrew* and the *Ravelin* of *Spirito*, where the Turks had planted a Battery of three pieces of Cannon, and raised several Doubts, a Mine of one hundred sacks of Powder was sprung, which not only overthrew the Battery and Redoubts, but vast quantities of Stones and Timber it carryed into the Air, destroyed a great number of Turks in their Trenches, and thereupon the Christians sallying put them into a great confusion, dismounting and spiking up their Cannon, but by the loss of the Duke of *Candia* who was slain by a Musquet shot, much of the joy for this success was abated, yet three thousand Turks were slain, and amongst them the Bassa of *Canea*, and Major General of the *Janizaries*.

This slaughter for a while greatly discouraged the Turks, but in the end recovering breath, they made a strong assault upon one of the Forts of St. *Andrea*, and gained it, pressing on to the Bastion of *Sabionera* to the West with a force of ten thousand men having the advantage of three batteries, each consisting of ten pieces of Ordinance, and the next night gave a general assault with all their Forces to the Bastions of *Panigra*, *Sabionera*, and St. *Andrea*, together with the great Fort of St. *Demetrius*, but the besieged were armed with all caution and vigilance against surprize, and with that conduct and valour

valour that they gave the Enemy three gallant repulses with much slaughter and confusion, but yet this success was diminished by the loss of the Count *de Maur* an experienced *Venetian* Captain, who after proofs of an invincible courage lost his Life in defence of the Christian cause, but not long after the Marquess *Cornaro* and the Barron *Spar* arriving with a recruit of three thousand men, as if they intended to requite the Turks last assault, made so resolute and successful a sally, that they killed about two thousand Turks, amongst whom were divers Commanders of note.

About this time whilst the Grand Signeour was at *Larissa*, news came of the near approach of the Excellentissimo *Abuisse de Molino* Ambassador from the *Venetian* Republique with Propositions of Peace, but the haughty Turks before they would admit him to a nearer approach then a days journey, would first be resolved whether or no he brought with him the Keys of *Candia*, to which it was replied by the Interpreter, that he was not capable of giving them satisfaction in that particular being but a menial Servant, to whom the secrets of State and resolutions of great men were not committed, his office being only to render faithfully the words and sense of his Master, and not to enter into the private thoughts, and Cabinet of their Councils. To which the *Chimacem* proudly and barbarously replied, That he should go tell his Master that unless he brought the Keys of *Candia* his head should pay for it, and that he presumed not in person to approach nearer unto the Court. So the Ambassador remained at a distance till he received orders to pass over into *Candia*, there to treat with the Visier, who weary of the tedious siege willingly gave

gave him Audience hoping that he came to treat about a surrender of the City, which in any case he desired as fearing notwithstanding his bravadoes he should be forced to raise his siege without success, but he only offered *Suda* and a considerable summe of money, which not redounding to the glory of the Visier, by reason that might have been had ere the War began, he would come to no agreement, for the Ambassador insisted that *Candia* being maintained by the Armes of Forreign Princes it could not without their consent be surrendered, but that all the rest of the Island should be the reward of their blood and labour, and although the Visier afterwards proposed in lieu thereof, the *Venetians* should have free Licence to rebuild *Paleo Castro*, yet the final answer of the Ambassador was, that *Candia* was capable of no conditions but what were imposed on it by force of Armes.

About this time the *French King* by reason of the many indignities put on him in the person of his Ambassador, recalled him without daigning to send another to negotiate his affairs at the Port, which greatly amused the Turks, as judging he intended to revenge the affronts received at *Constantinople* upon the *Ottoman Forces* before *Candia*, as indeed in some measure he did, and might have been the preserver of that important Bulwark of *Christendom* to this day, had not the *Caprice* of such as commanded his Forces sent there obstructed it; About this time likewise the Earl of *Winchelsea* Ambassador for his Majesty of Great Brittain, having had his Audience of the Grand Seignior at *Salonica* returned into *England*, and was succeeded by Sir *Daniel Harvy*.

Anno 1669. The Turks finding a great cheat through their Empire by light and false Moneys introduced by the *French*, *Dutch* and *Italians* (for in

Turky the Money of all Nations is currant to a certain value) they complained to the *Cadies* or chief Judges, who with the consent of the Grand Seignior, called it into the Mint, allowing no more for it than it was in true value, to the infinite loss both of Turks and Strangers, and soon after the Grand Seignior being greatly fearful that the people growing weary of his Government, might place one of his Brothers in the Throne, to secure any danger that way, sent an Officer to the Queen-Mother, under whose Tuition they were, to demand their heads, and bring them to him at *Larissa*, but she upon sight of his mandate abhorring the Fact, secretly gave notice thereof to the *Janizaries*, to whom she had sworn the protection of the Young Princes, which unexpected News blew up such a flame as had like to have turned all into confusion, and wrote worse effects than any the Grand Seignior had before causelessly imagined, but in the end, with large promises and larger Donations, the Tempest was allayed.

Spring approaching, the Turkish Army which for the most part had layn immured all Winter, twixt the Walls of earth, crept forth as Worms out of the ground, and again began to run their Trenches towards the Walls of *Candia*, before which Mountains and confused heaps of rubbish and Mold lay, which had been thrown up by the Mines and Frencellos, which so loosned the nerves and pores of the Earth, that all about it seemed hollow, insomuch that light appeared often out of one Mine into another, which gave either side frequent opportunities of stealing powder out of each others Mines, the Turks like Moles working still underground, so that the strongest City in the World was rather reduced to extremity by such as knew no use of any thing, but of the
Spade

Spade and Mattock, rather than by force of Armes, for many were of opinion that all the Forces of the Ottoman Empire could not otherwise have taken it, by this means being so near advanced that their Granadoes could easily be slung into the City, they did great mischief, wounding and killing many of the Prime Commanders, and beating down houses in abundance, when amongst the rest a Cannon shot fell into a Magazine of Fireworks, and striking upon a Granado shell that was filled with powder fired, that firing about a hundred more, containing thirty barrels of powder, which beat down most of the adjacent houses, and did great hurt to the Garison, and on the 28th. of May the Turks sprung 5 Mines in the mouth of the breach they had made on the Fort of St. Andrea, and pressed hard to carry it, now weak and almost turned into a heap of rubbish, which caused the Captain General the Marquess of Montbarn, and all the chief Officers to take up their quarters on that side.

The City of Candia thus in danger, the Princes of Christendom were not slow in relieving it, but above the rest Pope Clement the 9th. Expressed his zeal for the defence of this place, not only sending succours himself, but inciting and stirring up others to do the like, and mostly the present French King, who was best able to lend a strong power, who was not wanting to comply for the defence of the Christian cause, who in order thereto raised seven or eight thousand foot under the command of the Duke of Beaufort, near Kinsman to the King, the Duke of Navailles, the Marescais, Lambert and Colebert, with many others of note, who were desirous to signalize their vallour in the Field of Fame, who imbarquing on the Ships for that purpose prepared at Toulon, arrived before the City of Candia on the 19th. of Ju-

ly, where fourteen *Venetian* carnals laden with horse attended their coming, on which they were mounted, and now began the hopes of the besieged to rise high, and the Turks although within the City in a manner to despair, nor were the *French* slow in entering the City, for the night of the same day they arrived, the Duke of *Navailles* with the Regiment of old Souldiers Mounted the guard on the Fort of *St. Andrea*, the place of greatest danger, and the next day a council of War was called, wherein it was concluded that the Town was not Tenable, or to be long maintained without some extraordinary Enterprize attempted on the Enemy, and by some furious sally performed with resolution and stratagems of War, in order unto which it was resolved, that the 27th. should be the day for sally both with Horse and Foot, and the Fleet not to lose their part in this action, but should play their great Guns on that side next *St. Andrea*, making as it were a Wing to the Army.

The Sally agreed on, the Army was drawn up in four Battalions, the first called the Admirals, commanded by the *Sieurs Martel Vander* and *Graivier*, the second was the Vice-Admirals, commanded by the *Sieurs de la-Mothe* and *Planta*, the third was the Rear-Admirals, under the command of the Chevaliers *Bovillion Gabaret* and *Dailly*, the fourth was the Battalion of the *Sieur d' Almeras*, commanded under him by the *Sieurs Panetire de la-Rogne*, *Fontier Bitault*, and the Chevalier *de Nemond*; On the Left hand of these, were the Guards of the Duke of *Beaufort* himself, though thereto perswaded by all the Nobility, not refraining to make one in the Enterprize, who after he had given order for the Fleet to accoast the shoar on the side of *St. Andrea*, as near as consisted with their security, and from thence with
their

their great Guns to play upon their Enemies Camp, he resolved to fight at the head of the Forlorn hope, consisting of Four Hundred Men, preceded by Fifty Granadeers, flanked with Three Troops of Horse, Commanded by Count *Dampire*, and the Regiment of Guards, with Four Troops of Horse for their Wing flanked with Three Regiments of Foot : The reserve consisted of the Regiments of *Harcourt*, *Conti*, *Lignieres*, *Rosan*, *Mont-Pesat*, and *Vendosme*, flanked with Four Troops of Horse under the Command of Count *Choiseul*, which placed themselves on a rising-ground, to hinder all communications between the Villier, whose Camp was before St. *Andrea*, and the *Janizaries Aga*, who was Incamped before *Sabionera* : between the first and second Line were placed Fifty of the Kings Musquetiers to be assistant on occasion, and the other Troops of Horse were to take the left hand along the Trenches, leading to the *Sabionera*. The Regiment of *Montpeyroux* was appointed to mount the Guard of St. *Demetrius*, to second the retreat if occasion required it ; in like manner Five Hundred Pioneers were ordered to level the Trenches of the Enemy on the quarter of St. *Andrea*, whilst the Body of the Turks Army was employed in repulsing the violence of the Sally.

All things being in a readiness, the *French* about Two hours before day, in the secretest manner imaginable, sallied at St. *Georges* Gate, the Signal to fall on, being the springing of the Royal Mine, which through the Dampness of the Powder, or the timorousness of the Enginiere, took not effect ; the General impatient of delay, not staying for the onset of the forlorn-hope, which lay within half Musquet shot of the Enemy, assaulted two redoubts, took them, and put all he found in them to the Sword ; with the like courage the other Regiments

entered the Line, and after much blood, and slaughter, made themselves Masters of the Trenches, storming a Fort, on which was a Battery, directed against St. *Demetrio*, possessed themselves of it, and spiked up all the Cannon found therein, at what time day appearing, discovered the bloody Scene, which caused the Turks to hasten from the Hills near *New Candia* in great number to regain their Trenches, whereupon the Duke *D' Navailles* perceiving his forlorn hardly beset, came in with Two Troops of Horse, and two Regiments of Foot; who with great slaughter beat the Turks out of their Trenches, following the Execution even to the heart of their Camp, but whilst fortune seemed thus to favour the Christians, an unhappy accident fell out, which quite turned the scale of Victory; for a Magazine of Powder, containing One Hundred Thirty Four Kintals being won from the Turks, and possessed by the Christians accidentally, or as some suppose, by lighted Matches purposely dropped into it; upon its surrender, blew up with such a terrible noise, that it not only destroyed most of the Battalion of Guards, but terrified the rest of the Army, by making the Earth, as with a violent Earthquake, tremble under them, that they verily believing a great number of Mines were springing under them; opened in great confusion to the right and left, and in the end, notwithstanding the endeavours of the Commanders to restrain them, the Souldiers betook themselves to open and shameful Flight, nor could they be perswaded to rallie, or once more face the Enemy, but in great disorder, re-entered the City.

The Duke of *Beaufort* is said to have laboured much in resisting the shameful flight of his Men, and venturing his Person into danger, from whence he resolved never ingloriously to retreat, was oppressed

by Numbers, and fighting courageously amongst the thickest of his Enemies, expired on the heaps ; but by reason his Body, though much sought after, could not be found ; many conjectured him to have perished by the fatal blow of Powder, which so frightened and disordered the Christian Army, nor had the *French* Fleet much better success ; for being driven from shoar by a strong Wind, they little or nothing indamaged the Turks, but received considerable dammage for a great Ship of Sixty Brass Guns blew up, in which Two Hundred Ninety Two perished, and her shot passing through the Admiral, killed several on board, and indamaged other Ships, by the fall of her Timber and Splinters.

The Loss the Turks sustained is uncertain, but however, according to their own report, Eight Thousand are said to fall in the Trenches, Forts, and Redoubts ; the loss amongst the *French* consisted mostly in their Nobility and Officers of note, a fate incident to that Nation, the chief of which were the Duke of *Beaufort*, Count *Rosan*, the Marquess *D' Fabert*, the Chevalier *Villereceaux*, and the Chevalier *D' Quelas*, with about Twenty others, all Commanders, and a Thousand common Souldiers, many of note were likewise wounded, the Prisoners taken, exceeded not Seven or Eight, the chief of which were the *Sieur D' Bois*, Dauphin Son to a Marshal of *France*, of that Name, and the *Sieur D' Chateau Neuf* the first for his youth and beauty, and the second for his courage, being afterwards greatly esteemed by the Turks, and both entertained by the Visier with more generosity than ordinary.

These proceedings so amazed and discouraged the *French*, that the Duke *D' Navailles*, now their Commander in chief, could not be perswaded to stay any longer

longer in defence of the City, but pretending the Kings exprefs command for his return at a time prefixed, and that time being almost come, notwithstanding the earnest intreaty of the Captain General; he withdrew the greatest part of his Forces, and although he met further orders that injoyned his stay, yet imbarquing, he returned to *France*, where for his Cowardise he was forbid approaching the presence of the King, or entering the perlues of the Court for a considerable time.

The *French* thus departed, the Turks took courage, and attacked the quarter of *Sabionera*, and *St. Andrea*, where putting the out-Guards to flight, they advanced to the *Palisado* of the new retrenchment, but Volleys of Cannon, and showers of Musquet-shot, with quarries of stones thrown from the Engines pouring on them, gave a check to their proceedings; but the *Candiots* perceiving, they opposed the multitudes of the Enemy in vain, with one voice implored the Captain General to surrender the City that was not Tenable, and not to expose them to the fury of a Merciless Enemy, of whom the Marquess *D' Montbourn* taking pity, and finding himself too weak to oppose such powerful Forces as the Turks, by reason of new supplies had in their Camp, they as it were already having possessed the main strengths of the City, he assembled a Council of all the Chief Officers both in the City, and those that belonged to the Fleet, who after a serious consideration, concluded that the City could not by force nor policy be much longer held by reason of the small number of the Defendants, and the incroachment of whose number was ten to one; whereupon the General was of opinion, that having imbarqued all the unnecessary people, and those that were wounded, they should by firing of Mines
lay

lay the City waste, and so leave the Enemy a bloody and inglorious Victory, which Noble Resolution was seconded by several other Chiefs, but in the end it was agreed that a treaty should be had with the Turks about its surrender; the which after some debates was concluded on these Articles.

First, that for obtaining a good and lasting peace, it is agreed that the City of *Candia* with all its Cannon which were planted there before the time of the War, be consigned into the hands of the Visier.

Secondly, That the quiet possession be given to the Republicque of *Suda Carabusa*, *Spina Longa*, and the Territories thereunto belonging, together with the Fortres of *Calissa* and *Dalmatia*.

Thirdly, That the *Venetians* may carry away all the Cannon which have been brought into the Town, since the beginning of the War.

Fourthly, That for Imbarquing the Souldiers, Pioneers, and Inhabitants of all Qualities and Conditions, with their Arms, Provisions, and Baggage Twelve days shall be allowed.

Fifthly, That what shall remain unshipped, at the end of Twelve days, the Visier shall with his own Boats assist the Lading thereof.

Sixthly, That during this time of Truce, no Person whatsoever shall transgress his Limits, and he that doth, shall be treated as an Enemy.

Seventhly, That so soon as those Articles shall be subscribed under the White Flag, all Acts of Hostility shall cease under the one side, and the other.

Eighthly, That for security of performance of these Articles, Three Hostages be mutually given on the one side, and the other.

Ninthly, That for better assurance, that the *Venetians* will use all their indeavours to imbarque their Men;

Men; The Turks may employ two Officers for Eye-Witnesses of the same.

Tenthly, That for Effecting hereof all Ships, Gallies, and other Vessels may freely approach unto the shoar, and enter the Port, either day or night.

Eleventhly, That the *Venetian* Fleet may remain at *Standia*, or at any other Island in the *Archipelago*, until such times as they are dispatched, or that things are duly prepared for their departure.

Twelfthly, That all Commissions given by the one side or the other be revoked, and that whosoever within the space of Forty days shall commit any Hostility against the Tenour of these Articles, shall be punished with capital punishment.

Thirteenthly, That so soon as an Ambassador from *Venice* shall arrive at the Port, all Slaves and Prisoners taken under the *Venetian* Colours shall be freed and released.

Fourteenthly, That what Depredations shall be made at Sea or Land after these Articles, shall be subscribed, and before the publication thereof, shall be faithfully made good and restored.

Fifteenthly, That a General pardon be given to the subjects on both sides, who have acted contrary to their Faith and Allegiance during this War.

Sixteenthly, that in virtue of these capitulations, the former Articles be confirmed, which were made in the year 1571, and that no Tribute or Present be demanded by the Port, unless such as has formerly been payed for, such Islands as the *Venetians* hold in the *Archipelago*.

Seventeenthly, That two Copies of them be made, one in the *Turkish* Language subscribed by the Visier, Sealed with the Grand Signiours Signet, and another in the *Italian* Language, under-wrote by the Captain General, and Sealed with the Seal of the Republique of *Venice*.

These

These Articles being signed, the Hostages were given on both sides, those for the *Venetians* were *Faustino da Riva*, Lieutenant General, *Giovanni*, Commissary, and *Zacarìa Mocenigo*, who had been Duke of *Candia*. Those on the part of the Grand Signiour were these, viz. *Belir Assan*, Bassa, *Mahomet Aga* of the *Janizaries*, and *Gurgi*, Bei, *Testerder*, or Treasurer.

During this siege Three Thousand Eight Hundred Ninety Five Christians were killed and wounded, and of the Turks a Hundred and Eighteen Thousand, Seven Hundred Fifty Four.

The Batteries which the Turks raised against the *Sabionera*, and *St. Andrea* consisted of Fifty Nine pieces of whole Cannon, carrying most of them Bullets of a Hundred and Twenty Pound weight.

The Storms which the Turks made upon the City, were Sixty Five.

The Sallys made by the *Venetians* Ninety Six.

The Mines and Forneli sprang by the *Venetians* Eleven Hundred Seventy Three.

The Combates under ground Forty Five.

The Mines sprung by the Turks Four Hundred Seventy Two.

In this siege the *Venetians* spent Fifty Thousand Three Hundred and Seventeen Barrels of Powder, and Bombies of all sorts, from Fifty, to Five Hundred weight, Forty Eight Thousand One Hundred and Nineteen.

Granadoes of Brass and Iron One Hundred Thousand, Nine Hundred Sixty Eight, Granadoes of Glass Four Thousand Eight Hundred Seventy Four Cannon-shot of all sorts, Two Hundred Seventy Six Thousand Seven Hundred Forty Three Pounds of Lead, Eighteen Millions, Forty Four Thousand Nine Hundred Fifty Seven Pounds weight, and of Match Thir-

Thirteen Millions twelve thousand five hundred weight.

What quantities the Turks might consume of Ammunition is uncertain, but it was observable that the Brass taken up in the streets, which came from their Granadoes and Bombes filled a Warehouse imployed for that purpose, and was afterward sold for a hundred thousand Crowns.

Upon these Articles *Candia* was surrendred the news of which coming to the ears of the Grand Signiour he could not for a while believe it, till he had a further confirmation. Yet the City upon its delivery was so ruined, that it seemed rather a heap of confusion, then a place to dwell in, nor did any more then five able persons, and some that were so aged and decrepit as were not fit to travel, stay in it, so that the Turks gained this sixteen Acres of ground, for no more was that famous City in compass, with inestimable expence of blood and Treasure; yet the glory and fame which attended it being the consummation of five and twenty years, of which this last siege lasted two years, nine months, and seven and twenty dayes, was of greater value to the Turks, then any other consideration, and may with time prove a place of advantage to the further increase of their Western Empire, unless the Almighty give a stop to the progress of their Arms.

The News of *Candia's* surrender being published greatly rejoiced the Turk, who groaned under the Taxations levyed for the maintenance of that War, as likewise ridded the Grand Signeour of a great part of his care, insomuch that he gave himself only to Hunting and dalliance with his *Sultana*, who had born him the first Son, of whom he became so enamoured that he slighted all his other Women,

con-

contrary to the custom of other *Sultans*. Yet having notice that Sir *Daniel Harvy*, His Majesty of Great Britains Ambassador expected his Audience, he caused him to be introduced, acknowledging the reverence and respect for his Majesty, and the esteem he had of the English Nation, ordering the Capitulations to be renewed, commanding the *Chimacam* that if any one should break or enfringe them that he should cut him off without further argument. But as to the renewing the Capitulations the *Chimacam* falling at the Grand Signeours feet, implored, That that particular might be deferred untill the arrival of the great Visier, whose proper power and act it was to make War and Peace, and therefore for him to meddle about capitulations, was to invade the Visiers Authority, which he durst not do without putting his Life in danger, or at least rendering his person obnoxious to his irreconcilable displeasure; with which the Grand Signeour being satisfied, ordered that that particular should be referred to the Grand Visier, the renewing of which was reserved for the care and conduct of Sir *John Finch*, who succeeded in the Embassy after the death of Sir *Daniel Harvy*.

Anno 1670. the Grand Visier having disposed the affairs of *Candia*, embarked for *Scio*, where having stayed some dayes revelling in all excess and drunkenness he fell into a surfeit, which put such an enmity between Wine and him that by some other motives exasperated, he interdicted the drinking of it upon severe penalties throughout the *Ottoman Empire*. The Turks generally being given to take Opium, which sort of droulic intoxication they for the most part hold beyond the charms of Wine, but this prohibition continued not long.

The Visier passing from *Scio* sailed to *Rodesio*, and from

from thence to *Adrinople*, where he was received in a manner of Triumph by the Grand Signeour, who expressed the more then ordinary satisfaction he conceived not only in the conduct of his affaires, but that he was safely returned from a tedious and bloody War.

About the beginning of the following year the *Venetian* Ambassador arrived at the Port, to settle and confirm the Treaty, as to the establishing the Frontiers in *Dalmatia*, *Albania*, and other parts of the *Venetian* Territories, in which there arose such disputes between the borderers on either side, that some skirmishes happened after the Articles of *Candia* were subscribed; The Ambassador being introduced with all due ceremonies, complained of several outrages done to the Subjects of the *Venetians*, whereupon commissioners on either part were appointed to meet between *Climno* and *Cliffa*, to adjust matters as they saw convenient, but such was the fury of the people that without regard to the honour of the Grand Signeour or the Senate, they seized upon several places which they alledged to be their peculiar Patrimonies, swearing that no peace made to the advantage of their Superiours should exclude them their right, but in the end the Turks who were the chief Aggressors were put to flight by a power of *Venetians* sent for that purpose, and *Usuph Bey* their Commander and chief perswader to the infringement of the Peace was slain, after which the Commissions were granted and made more ample then formerly, for determining the right of the Signory and Empire on the confines of *Dalmatia*, and other Countries adjoyning, and on the 27th. of *July*, conferring in a Tent set up for that purpose, after much debate many boundards were affixed, but that which was most insisted on, was *Verpogly* a small Fortress on the

the top of a Hill once belonging to the *Venetians*, which at the beginning of the War they abandoned, as costing more to maintain or defend, than the value or consideration of it, which the Turks possessing averred it to be theirs by the Law of Arms, arguing strongly, that any other Nation might have seized on it to the prejudice both of the *Venetians*, and the Subjects of the Grand Signeour. These debates had like to have created new Hostilities, but *Mamut Bassa* dying in the middle of the Treaty, and *Chusaien Bassa* commissioned in his stead, who was of a milder and more flexible temper, difficulties that obstructed a conclusion were removed, and on the 24th. of *October*, 1671. in open *Divan* held in the *Campaigne* of *Salona* all things were concluded, and Coppies of the Agreement subscribed and interchangeably given. And in this manner the difference about the confines were concluded, and the long War between the *Venetians* and the Turks ended.

About this time a Turkish Envoy sent to the French Court returned, bringing with him an Ambassador from the King called *Monsieur de Nointel*, who with three Men of War and a Fireship sailing through the *Hellespont*, and coasting along the *Propontis* refusing to salute the *Seraglio* unless he was first saluted, a nicety not required by any Ambassador before him, which not being granted lay off at Sea, as being refused by the Officers of the City as Ambassador, but in the end the Visier prudently considering that for a meer punctilio it was not convenient nor safe to exasperate the French Nation, nor thereon to ground a War, whereupon he gave order he should be received with the usual Ceremony, and conducted to his Audience, nor was the insolency of the French Souldiers and Sailors who committed many outrages on the Coast taken notice of,
or

or if they were it was so that they were dissembled, and although whilst the Ships lay before the City a hundred slaves from on board the Turks Gallies, and out of the City escaped by getting on board and amongst them *Monsieur de Beau-jeu* a Knight of *Malta*, yet that was likewise dissembled, and not thought a sufficient ground for War with a Nation whose valour the Turks by fatal experience had tryed, but in the end the French became more moderate, and new instructions being brought the Ambassador by a man of War, he passed to *Adrinople* where the Grand Signeour was gone, and having his second Audience granted, his first being had of the Visier, he desired that the League so long continued between his Master and the *Ottoman* Princes might continue, and that the capitulation might be renewed only with the Alteration of the customs, imposed upon his Masters Subjects from five to three in the hundred according to that priviledge which the English and other Christian Merchants, whose league and Friendship was subsequent to theirs, but after many delays the Visier would not accord, but referred him to his return from the Wars of *Poland*, on which he was intent, which disappointment greatly perplexed the Ambassador.

The Grand Signeour having before missed his design in making away his Brethren for fear of the *Janizaries*, now in their absence most of them being busied in the Wars, renewed his resolution and under pretence of Friendship poisoned *Orcham* the Eldest with a bowl of Wine, though some affirm he was strangled with a Bow string, and that ere he fell he killed one of the Executioners, but howsoever it happened he was made away, whose death once known greatly incensed the people against the

Grand

Grand Signior, and prevented the like effects on the other Brother. All other matters now layed aside about the beginning of the year 1672. preparations were made for the Polish War though with such deliberation as expressed an unwillingness thereto on the part of the *Ottomans*, who having experienced the force of that warlike Nation moved thereto with caution. Yet their motives were not inconsiderable, but such as thereon a War might be grounded not only for the continual Piracy of the *Cossacks* on the Black Sea, and their assisting the bordering Princes in their opposing the Turkish Arms, and the little regard the Polish Ambassador had of the Port treating there with equal grandure, and assuming a Liberty above the Ministers of other Christian Princes, and now they lay more open to be assaulted by reason of the divisions amongst themselves, whereby an opportunity offered to the Grand Signeour to oblige the *Polonians* to a compliance of his demands, yet whilst preparatians were making on all hands an Ambassador was sent to the Visier, he advancing with his Army towards the frontiers named *Wisozsk*, a Noble man of *Poland* presuming upon his Power and Authority argued after such a lofty manner, and in terms so contrary to the methods of an Ambassador, that the Visier much incensed dispatched a *Chian* into *Poland* with Letters, desiring that this Ambassador might be recalled as being a person unable to manage matters of the least concernment, insinuating that if they supplied his place with another he should be received with due respect, and a plain way laid open to conclude his Negotiations to the satisfaction of both parties. Upon notice of which the Ambassador was so sensibly touched that he in a rage sent Letters to the assembly of the Polish Nobility to certifie them that he was not only debarred of the allowance usual to Ambassadors but also was imprisoned,

both of which (though untrue, for the former he refused as too little for one of his Character, and the latter being onely his confinement to the City of *Constantinople*, by reason of some outrages his servants committed at his house at *Pera*) being believed kindled such a flame that the *Poles* imprisoned the Turkish *Chians*, and ordered that all the Countrey should be put in Arms rendering the Visier no other answer then that when their Ambassador was set at Liberty and had License to depart, the like should be done to theirs. Of these proceedings the Grand Signeour having notice was highly offended immediately ordering that *Wisoski* should depart, and at the same time commanded his whole Militia to rise and follow him to the Wars, sending a Sword and Vest to the *Tartar Han* with orders to unite his Forces with the *Cossacks* that had revolted from the *Poles*, and speedily to invade *Polonia*, which accordingly he did and incountring near *Batowa* with a Body of *Polish* Horse, under the command of *Luzeski* Governour of *Podolia* he overthrew them, which was the first bad Omen of the ill success of this unhappy War.

The Grand Signeour having raised an Army of one hundred fifty thousand men marched towards *Poland* already sick and languishing with its own intestine distempers, and unable to contend with a body united within it self. The first enterprize he made was upon impregnable Fortress of the *Caminiack* which had so often baffled the *Ottoman* Force, but now being weakly manned unprovided of all necessities, and despairing of Relief, after fourteen days siege surrendered, the Garrison in it submitting to the will of the Conqueror, which opened a passage through all *Podolia* and *Volhinia* to the very Walls of *Leopolis*, which they passed over rather like Tra-

vellers

wellers then Enemies, not one man in armes appearing to oppose them delighting and sporting themselves in those the most fruitful and delicious Countreys of *Europe*, permitted so to do by the animosities and intestine broiles amongst the Nobility, who being divided into factions, regarding more their private quarrels then the safety of their Countrey, now ready to be devoured by the Infidels, and indeed it has been always seen that the divisions of the Christians have layed the foundation of the Turkish greatness, which they impute to the merit of their prayers. Yet such was the command of the Grand Signeour, that no Souldier spoiled or outraged any person, which so far won upon the affections of the *Polonians* that they in all places where he passed submitted, and put themselves under his protection, which so awakened the Nobility, that a Council being called it was resolved that to buy their Peace, and be shut of these new come guests.

That the King of *Poland* should quit all claim to the *Ukrain*, *Pedoli*, and *Russe land*.

That *Leopolis* and the Countrey thereabouts should pay a Tribute of seventy thousand Dollars a year, and all other Capitulations formerly made to stand in full force and vertue.

These Articles being signed the Grand Signeour committed the Government of *Veravia*, and *Podolia* to *Dorosensko* General of the *Cossacks*, and the defence of *Cominieck* to *Chusaein* Bassa, with a Garrison of twelve thousand *Janizaries*, and so returned to *Constantinople* dismissing the greatest part of his Army, poor and almost naked by reason of their being restrained from plundering.

About this time the *Tripolces* mutined against *Osman* Bassa their Governour, for refusing to divide

amongst them such booties as were taken by Piracy who thereupon with his Friends and slaves betook himself to the strong Castle, but in the end was strangled by his own slaves, and the gates opened to the Mutiniers who committed all manner of disorders, and resolved to take upon them the same form of Government with that of *Argire*, and to be Governed by a *Dey*, but at length to prevent the effects of the Grand Signeours just displeasure, it was resolved to send their Deputies with great presents to the Port there to excuse the matter, and to crave a new Bassa, aggravating the iniquities of the old, all which with some difficulty was obtained, and fair weather was made between them and their Lord though the Bassa's of *Tripoly*, have ever since been rather in name then power, those unruly Pirates doing what they list, to the great hinderance of Trade, and blemish to the *Ottoman* Empire, who living by Theft and Rapine keep peace with none longer then stands winn their advantage.

In *August* died the worthy Sir *Daniel Harvey* His Majesty of great *Britains* Ambassador at the Port, and soon after in his room succeeded Sir *John Finch*.

The League the Poles made with the Turk was not long observed, for after they had recollected themselves being ashamed of such inglorious conditions, dealt with the *Cossacks* to revolt from *Dorofensko*, who had ingaged them in the Grand Signeours interest, which put all again into hazard and confusion, so that the Grand Signeour was obliged to give over his pastimes, and betake himself to Armes, nor was the unexpected news of the loss of the *Alexandian* Fleet, taken by the Gallies of *Malta* and *Corisaries* of *Legorn* less unwelcome news.

The *Poles* encouraged by the motion of the *Cossacks* notwithstanding the Articles, refused to pay the Tribute agreed on, which by their Ambassador they certified the Grand Signeours Ministers, desiring to have it waved, but the Turk surprized thereat more earnestly demanded it, though at first many fair words were used but they not prevailing the Grand Signeour gave order for all his Forces to be in a readines, hanging out the Tough or Horses tail, and ordering his Tents to be pitched in the Field, & the more to frighten them sent a Letter filled with dreadful menaces agreeable to the Turkish stile, which threatened them with confusion, Sword, Famine, Fire, destruction and a thousand other direful punishments. Yet was not so forward, for though his Army was imbodied yet that Summer they only passed the *Danubius*, and the ensuing Winter quartered about *Silistria*, that they may terrifie the *Poles* the more with their approach, and for the diverting the French Kings Arms from being serviceable to the *Poles*, his Ambassador received satisfaction in what he demanded as to the lessening the customs and allowance of Jesuits and Religious Houses in *Jurusalem*, *Galatia* and other parts of the Turkish Dominions, and that in all respects the subjects of his most Christian Majesty should be every where well intreated, throughout the *Ottoman* Empire, after which the Ambassador obtained a license to travel and take a view of the Countrey, when in the mean while the Polish Army to the number of 20000 horse and foot were advancing from the Walls of *Leopolis* under the command of General *Sobieski*, and *Zircha* made General of the *Cossacks* in the room of *Dorisensko*, joyning with a party of *Muscovites* and *Calmuck Tartars*, made incursions into the parts about *Osac*, the news of which so amazed the Grand Signiour that he put off his intended march to

Kemenitiz, and again endeavoured to oblige the *Poles* by fair means to an observation of the Articles, and satisfy the contents therein concluded, but finding them averse, he resolved if possible to compel them thereto by the power of the sword.

The Grand Seigniors forwardness was not so great, but that the *Poles* were as earnest as he, and little regarding his Menaces resolved to be the first Aggressors; For General *Sobieskie* having increased his Army to the number of Fifty Thousand, boldly passed the *Niester*, to whom soon after revolted the Prince, or Vayvod of *Moldavia* with certain Troops of Horse and Foot, for that the Bassa *Chuseain* had reproached him, and at the head of his Troops struck him with his Battle Axe, and the Prince of *Valachia* was forced into the *Polish* Camp by his Soldiers, but he soon after made his escape, and was by the Grand Seignior received into favour.

The Armies now approaching, and the *Poles* having had exact Intelligence of what had passed in the Turks Camp; The Battle was begun at what time the Prince of *Moldavia* inspired with revenge charged furiously upon *Chuseain* Bassa and wounded him, requiting thereby the wound he had received of him. The heat of the fight continued for the space of fifteen hours, in which none behaved himself more valiantly then did *Solyman* Bassa the *Beglerbeg* of *Bosna*, yet having that day six horses killed under him, and finding himself overpowred, fled the Field, as did *Chuseain* Bassa, the Bassa of *Sinas* and *Chidd-Ogla*, but he in flight was slain, and the other three Bassa's wounded; The Generals of the Green and Yellow *Sangiacks* of the *Spahies* were taken Prisoners, and two other Principal Commanders of that Order killed. The *Zagergeebassa* who commanded Eighteen Chambers of the *Fanizaries* was likewise taken Prisoner.

soner together with the Standard of that Order, and of them Eight Thousand Five Hundred slain, all the Troops and Attendants of the Bassa's, with four *Sanzacks* were slain, so that together were computed to be slain on the part of the Turks in that Battle Twenty Five Thousand Two Hundred Men; The booty taken was very considerable, for besides the ordinary baggage they took Two Thousand Purfes of Money, newly brought for the payment of the Souldiers, and Twenty Five Thousand Waggons of Provision and Ammunition.

This victory thus happily obtained, the strong Fortrefs of *Chotin* was surrender'd to the *Poles*, and many other places of less importance, for the loss of which, and the overthrow of his Army, the Grand Seignior was so highly displeased with *Chussein* Bassa, that he caused him to be imprisoned, deprived him of all his Estate and Honours, and caused him to be layed in chains, denying him the ule of Physitians, or any others, unless such attendants as brought him necessaries, and thus was this proud Bassa, who but a while before Lorded it over Princes, plunged into the depth of misery.

The joy of this great victory that had so elevated the *Poles*, was soon damped upon the death of their King, who departing at a juncture, when the Enemy who by this time had recruited, was at hand with a powerful Army, and the Nation not well settled caused divers fears in the people, yet the Army not to be idle divided into divers parties, and in the depth of Winter, a time wherein they well knew the Turks would not travel, entered *Moldavia*, blocked up *Keminitz*, and brought away great booties, spoiling all in their way, till such time as the Spring coming on, the Turks with multitudes came against them, and obliged them to retire, at whiat time the *Tar-*

tars committed divers outrages upon their Frontiers, carrying away much People and Cattle, burning and destroying all before them, the which though it incensed the *Tartar Han*, yet feigning himself sick upon some displeasure received, he refused to take the field in person, though the Grand Seignior had commanded it, yet that that might not obstruct the progress of the *Ottoman Armes*, the Great Visier sent him his own Physitian, an *Italian* of great experience, who found him overwhelmed with deep Melancholly, but with Cordials and Medicaments soon raised him to his former vivacity.

Keminitz all this while blocked up, was by the approach of the Turkish Army relieved, which the Visier perceiving, caused his Troops to March to *Chuzim* a strong Fortrefs taken by the Christians upon the defeat of *Chusaein* Bassa, which was retaken, and the Garrison contrary to Articles put to the Sword, nor durst the *Muscovites* who were far advanced oppose his Forces, but retired before them, leaving *Asac* dismantled and plundered, which the Turks rebuilt and fortified.

About this time *Mahomet* Bassa being made at the instance of his Favourites Captain of a Squadron of Gallies, plundered and harassed most of the Islands in the *Archipelago*, which raised such hatred against him, and the loud complaints of the people being arrived at *Constantinople* before him, he at his return had his head stricken off, and all his ill gotten gains confiscated; So that like an *Indian* Cormorant, which being made tame, and taught to fish for the benefit of his Master, he was prevented from swallowing the prey.

Hungary being torn with civil dissentions, the Male-contents desirous to throw off the *German* yoke sent to the Port, desiring to be taken into the Grand Seig-

Seigniors protection, and to become his Tributaries, which made the Turks hasten to settle their affairs, that they might be the better at leisure to take the advantage of those intestine troubles, for the reducing the rest of that spacious Kingdom to the Ottoman obedience, and the better to secure his new conquests, he removed a part of the *Cossacks* with all their substance to the banks of the Black Sea, there assigning them Lands, and as for the *Armenians* and *Jews* that dwelt in *Reminitz*, he transplanted them to *Philopolis*, *Adrinople* and *Constantinople*, giving the youngest and lustiest of either Sex as a prey to his Souldiers, who sold them for slaves throughout the Turkish Empire, and then returning with his Army to *Adrinople*, there to watch all advantages, he soon after disbandoned part of his *Asian* horse as chargeable and troublesom, but whilst these projects in State were broaching, great differences arose between the Latin and Greek Church about the possession of the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, which had been so possessed by those of the Roman Catholick Religion for many years, but now at the instance of *Panajoti* the Vissiers Interpreter a zealous Greek, the latter were preferred, and after a long controversie and much Money spent, the Greek obliged the *Romanists* dwelling in those parts to pay them tribute for such places relating to Religion they there held, every Fryer paying a dram of Silver yearly to the Patriarch; So that now the *Romanists* have possession neither of the Chappel of *Bethlehem*, nor of the Sepulchre; The former of which had of a long time held, and the latter as earnestly contended for.

The Grand Seignior not unmindful of the affairs of *Hungary*, gave order to the Bassas on the Frontiers, secretly to encourage the Division till such time as he should be at leisure to imploy his Armes on that side

side, hoping that an accommodation with *Poland* would insue, but found not the *Poles* so forward therein as he expected, for the Wars still continued though not with such violence as before, which gave the Grand Seignior leave to Solemnize the Marriage of his Daughter with *Rul-ogli*, (which in the Turkish Language signifies the Son of a slave) who was his great Favourite and Bassa of *Magnesia*, as also to Circumcise his Son, the former being 17 years of Age, and the latter 12, to solemnize which, the Festivals were appointed on the 16th. of *May*, Anno 1675. when in the Morning the Grand Seignior with the young Prince his Son went to their Tents, which were pitched in a Plain before the City exceeding rich, round which all the great men of the Court had their Pavilions placed, amongst which was raised a stately Throne covered with a Canopy of Cloath of Gold, placed beneath the umbrage of two Elmes, which shining with many Lamps in the night made a glorious shew, and in this Seat of State the *Sultan* placed himself in the Morning, being accompanied thither by all the Bassa's then residing at *Constantinople*, and by the representatives of those that were absent, who according to their degrees kissed his Robe, and in silken Purfes deliver a note of what Presents they had brought, which were put into the hands of the Treasurer to see them duly received, opposite to the Tents were several Poles fixed, on which by night many Lamps were hung, giving a glorious Light, by which were exercised several tricks of activity, as Wrestling, Dauncing, Singing and Comedies, Fireworks there were in abundance, but not effectually made; The Night being passed, in the Morning the several Trades passed before the Tents one after another, every one making their Presents, and bearing Pageants, Musick all the while sounding,

after

after whom came a Cavilcade of all the chief Officers, and amongst them the young Prince flaming with Diamonds, Rubies, and other precious Stones, and before them passed Twenty Four small Nachils or Pageants, and two large, one higher than any Ship-Mast, supported by a Hundred Slaves, and were afterward set before the Seraglio. On the 27th. being *Mahomet* their Impostor Prophets birthday, the Grand Signior went publickly to the *Mosch* of *Sultan Selim*, with no other Attendance than those of his own Court, his Pages richly clad in Cloath of Gold, carryed each a Feather studded with Jewels of great value; after the Grand Signior rode the young Prince, who that night was circumcised: During this Festival, a great number of people had their Provision at the expence of the Grand Signior, and about Two Thousand being at that time circumcised, every one of them had a Quilt given him with a Pension of three Aspers a day for Life.

The Solemnity of the Circumcision ended, the Festival for the Marriage of *Rul-Ogli* with the young Princess, which Ceremony in forme and manner according to the Turkish fashion was thus, The *Kuz-lir Aga* or Black Eunuch of the Women was Bridegroom or Compere to the Princess, and the Lord Treasurer to *Rul-Ogli*, both which in the Name of the Bridegroom and Bride went before the *Kedelef-cher* or Chief Judge, who wrote the Articles of Marriage, and passed them into an Act, which done, the Presents were sent, and first those from the Bridegroom to the Bride, which were a great number of Beasts and Birds made in Sugar, Thirty Mules laden with two Chests of Sweet-Meats a piece, and about each of their necks a Sattin Vest for the Muliter; after them went several men, carrying Pots of Sherbet, or Water and Sugar boiled, which the Turks
for

for the most part drink ; next, a Hundred men carrying Vests of Silk, Sattin, Velvit, and Cloath of Gold, then five Horses laden with rich Furniture, followed by men, bearing Cloath of Gold Vests, with sable Loops richer than the former, for the Loops and Buttons were imbroidered with rich Pearl, and on the top of each were a Rubie Diamond, or Saphier: These likewise carryed Shoos, Boots, and Pattens for the Bagno, all covered with Pearl, as likewise two dressing Boxes with Chrystal Glasses, and a Cap in form of a Crown, a little Cabinet imbroidered all over with Pearl, Eight Girdles set with Emraulds, Rubies, and Diamonds, a large Diamond Ring, a pair of Pendants of two great Emraulds, with many other things of value.

These Presents sent by the Bride-groom, the Grand Signiour, as his Daughters Dowry, according to the custom of the Eastern Countreys, ushered with a Caval-Cade of all the Grandees sent to the Bride-grooms-house, two Gardens made of Sugar, Forty little Nachils, Eighty Six Mules laden with rich Furniture for a House, Ten Men with dressings, as Boots, Shoes, &c. Imbroidered with Pearl and pretious Stones, after them were carryed the Jewels set on Girdles, Bracelets, and the like ; then came Twelve Coaches laden with Slaves, and Thirty Six Black Eunuchs, these were succeeded by a Cavalcade, in which was the Bride riding in a Coach covered with Plates of Silver, and drawn by six Horses, the sides adorned with Golden streams ; before which, went the chief Eunuch of the Women, after followed four Coaches with six Horses a piece, each carrying two Eunuchs ; some distance from them, came the Brides Mother in a Coach covered with Plates of Silver, attended by Ten other Coaches ; the night following, the Bride was conducted to the

Nup-

Nuptial Chamber, in Ceremony only as not being yet ripe for consummation of Marriage, though in *England* of late, the Virgins think themselves wronged to stay to her Age unmarried.

The Ceremony thus performed, great was the rejoicing demonstrated by Fire-works, Shews, and sounding of Musical Instruments; After which, the Grand Signiour on some private considerations, though to the wonder of the whole Court, removed the great Treasurer to the Bassa-ship of Grand *Cairo*, and appointed the Efendi, or Judge-Advocate of the *Janizaries* to succeed him in the Office of Treasurer; and now the publick Treasury by the late Wars, and costly Ceremonies being almost emptied, divers ways were used to recrate it with Money, some was procured by the Sale of great places, from which those that would not largely contribute, were thrust, and some again extorted from the poorer sort, whilst to save charges the *Sedentary* Militia was abridged in their pensions, and some utterly cast off, so that in a while, a great mass of Money was heaped together, and Forces sent to the Frontiers of *Poland*.

About this time the Republique of *Genoa's* resident at *Constantinople*, for want of that due Income that was expected to accrue by Trade, contracting large Debts, and having several debts contracted by his Predecessors deceased, contracted likewise with the Turks of *Constantinople*, a great Man of War that brought him thither, upon the Republique refusing to pay, was seized, and layed up in the Arsenal, nor could a release be procured, till Thirty Three Thousand Dollars, part of the contracted Debt was payed and secured, which so discouraged the *Geno-ways*, that it has ever since damped their Trade in the *Ottoman* Dominions, and now the Grand Signe-
our

our moved by chief Customer resident at *Smyrna*, casting his Eye upon that Scale of Trade, brought him in great Revenues by way of Custom; the better to beautifie it, and restore its antient Lustre, built a *Basasteen* or Exchange, as likewise a Custom-House Erected on Piles in the Sea, sending his absolute Decree, that all Merchants Ships should there unlade, and make due enteries, which greatly perplexed the Merchants, who before were wont to land their Goods on their own Keys, but in vain was their complaints, for the Grand Signiour would not admit of any reversal, but by his *Ralya* declared that rather than he would be disobeyed in his own Dominions, he would blow up the Port and Town, upon which answer the Merchants despairing of success, were content to unlade their Ships at the Custom-House, or there to make a true Entery of the Goods in their Boats; for the Customer being sensible that there was not water enough for the Ships to ride at the Key, was content to dispense with divers matters that the Innovation might sit more easie on the Merchants.

Things being at this pass, the Grand Signior after sixteen years absence from *Constantinople*, which had rendered that City almost dispeopled, returned thither to the great Joy of the *Constantinopolitans*, and frequently took his pleasure on the River in his Barge, or on the *Bosphorus* in his Galley, strictly commanding that no Christian Minister should be suffered to dwell upon the Banks of the latter, a prohibition never before made by any of his Predecessors, when soon after his arrival, the Captain Bassa dyed, and *Zayd Ahmet Bassa Ogli* succeeded him, and soon after *Ibrahim*, Bassa General of the Forces on the Borders of *Poland* dyed, nor was the great Vicer far from the Brink of the Grave, by reason of his

his immoderate drinking of Wine and Strong-Waters, which made him incident to the Dropſie and Jaundice.

The new Baſſa of *Cairo* by this time having entered on his Office, uſed great diligence to ſettle the Revenues of that Kingdom, hoping thereby to pleaſe the Grand Signior, of whoſe favour ſince his removal from Treafurer, he ſtood doubtful, but ſo ſevere he was in his Exaction, that the *Egyptians* not accuſtomed to be ſo uſed, complained of his rigour to the Begs or great Lords of *Egypt*, who though they receive the Turkiſh Baſſas, pay Tribute, and own them their chief Governours, yet are They in themſelves Abſolute Lords in their reſpective Provinces; for that Kingdom is rather an Ariſtocracy, than a Monarchy. Theſe great Men much diſpleaſed at the proceeding of the Baſſa, which tended to Tyranny and Oppreſſion, took up Arms, and drew after them a great multitude, with which they aſſaulted the Baſſa's palace, entered it, and dragging him thence, caſt him into Priſon, which news flying with all haſte to the *Ottoman* Court, filled all with fear and confuſion, upon apprehenſion that *Egypt* was revolted; but a while after the truth of the matter being rightly underſtood, the Grand Signior with all ſpeed ſent a new Baſſa with gentle Letters to pacifie the Begs, and reſtore things to their former tranquility, promiſing that reſtitution ſhould be made for all injuries ſuſtained, which meſſage of Grace and Favour made all former diſcontents vaniſh, and reſtored a right underſtanding, inſomuch, that the impriſoned Baſſa was ſet at Liberty, and ſhipped to *Candia*, where the Grand Signiour had appointed him Governour; the people without any further diſturbance returning to their obedience.

About

About this time happened the unfortunate fall of *Chefme Aga*, a man of great repute amongst the Turks, which was after this manner, a woman called *Sultana Sporche*, with which Sultan *Ibrahim* had had to do with her in her youth ; being now turned Baud, bought many beautiful Female Slaves, which she brought up to Singing, Dancing, and many other Exercises, and then for money, yielded them up to the Lust of the Great Men of the Court ; one amongst which for her Wit and Beauty being greatly famed, the Grand Signior sent for her, but the Sultana fearing to loose her, by whom she got dayly gain, and doubting the Grand Signiour would put her into his Seraglio, admonished her to a sullen coyness, as likewise to declare that she was a free-woman, which by the Turkish Law ought not to be defiled, nor carnally know any man, unless she be married ; which part she played so well, that the Grand Signior sent her back with disdain and reproach to her Mistress, who was not a little glad of her escape ; but so it happened, that the aforesaid *Aga* soon after casting his Eyes on her, and delighted with her quaint Discourse, fell inamour'd with her, and treated of Marriage, which the Wench highly approved, but her Mistress would in no wise consent to it, declaring that she was her Bond-woman, and not at her own disposal, which for a time put a stop to the proceedings ; but soon after the Lover contrived away to bring their designs to pass, for the *Aga* having taken her private Lodgings, she under the shelter of the night made her escape, but upon her being missed, her Beldame charged him with conveying away, and concealing her slave, which he for a while denied ; but she setting many spies over him, at length found them together, and charging an Officer with them, caused them to be carried

ryed before the Great Visier, who sent to the Grand Signior to know his pleasure therein, of which the Aga having some mistrust, told the Visier that he expected no other sentence then that of Death from the Grand Signior, only he desired that his beloved Mistress might be spared, for he was sure he should live in her; nor were his fears in vain, for soon after came a fatal Decree for his Execution, and sent the Woman to the Seraglio. This cruelty of the Sultans as most conjectur'd, proceeded from the disdain, he conceived that the Wench should refuse his proffered kindness, and imbrace the love of his Slave, for such the Sultans account the greatest men in the Empire.

The Grand Signior having spent most part of the Winter at *Constantinople*, early in the Spring returned to *Adrinople*, though the better to comfort the *Constantinopolitans*, who by reason of the sensible decay of Trade that must thereon insue, mourned his absence; he presumed about Autumn to return again, and for his reception caused a new Seraglio to be founded, and so setting forward, accompanied with a great train of Nobility, and amongst the rest, the great Visier, he marched towards *Constantinople*, but by the way the Visier dyed, having destroyed himself by intemperate drinking Wine and Hot Spirits, his Body accompanied with a slender Train, was brought back to *Constantinople*, and there buried in the Sepulchre of Old *Ruperlee* his Father.

The Great Visier dead, the Seal was given to *Kara Mustapha*, Bassa, who for many years had exercised the Office of *Chimacam*, or Deputy to the Great Visier, being a Man of courteous behaviour, wise and affable, not given to Covetousness nor Cruelty, but as soon as he was promoted, he sent to

the deceased Vissiers Servants to condole the Death of their Master, promising them to take them into his care and protection; most of which he afterwards promoted to Honourable places, to such advantage, that by their dependency on him, they secured both him and themselves from the malice of such as envied the advancement: Long he had not been settled in his place, e're he cut off the Chief Pay-Masters head for bringing false Money into the Exchequer, and had given another the same measure, had not his Life been redeemed at Forty Pur-ses of Money, or Twenty Thousand Dollars, though thereby his place was not regained, nor was diligence less in looking after the corruption of Ministers of State, displacing and deposing all such as he found remiss in their duty, or that for lucre or gains-fake oppressed any of the Grand Signiours Subjects, or such strangers as traded in any part of his Dominions.

But by the Example of this man it may be seen how Power and Greatness can alter the disposition of Men, and make them swell with Pride almost to bursting, for finding the Reins on his neck, without restraint, he took upon him the Power and Office of the Sultan, it being more difficult to gain access to him, than to the *Sultan* himself, and in imitation of their Master, the sub-Officers grew proud and insolent; insomuch, that the face of things, contrary to most mens expectations were changed; and this haughty behaviour was shewed especially towards forraign Ministers, whose Interpreters were not admitted as formerly to private Audiences or Conferences about their Affairs, but only at the publick Divan where their Arzes or Memorials were to be preferred, which was always allowed to the Subjects of the Grand Signiour, and

those of Tributary Nations, when they Petition for Justice; which Judgment was not only cast upon Interpreters, but on the persons of the representatives themselves; an instance of which was seen in the *French* Embassador, who at the time appointed coming to receive his Audience, was rudely crouded and jostled by a company of unmannerly *Chiausfes*, who regarded the representative of so great a King at no other rate than they did one of the Grooms, or Laquies of the Sultan. Being come to the Seat of Audience, he perceived the Stool set for him, was set beneath the Soffra, and that of the Visiers upon it; whereupon he commanded one of his Servants to place it equal with that of the Great Visiers, which he had no sooner done, but it was brought down again by one of the Visiers Pages, whereupon the Embassador seizing the Stool, carried it up and sat upon it. The report whereof coming to the Visier, who was in his retiring Chamber, he sent word that he would not come into the Chamber of Audience till the Stool was set in the place appointed, whereunto the Embassador replied that he might dispose of his Chair as he pleased, but not of his Person, when in the interim *Chiaus Bashe* came in bauling *Calder, Calder*, which is take it away, take it away; at which unexpected noise the Embassador standing up to see what the matter was, had the stool taken from under him; whereupon he in a great rage flung out of the Audience Chamber, causing the Presents which he brought to be again returned with him, and so mounting his Horse, departed to his Lodging.

Soon after it was by some of the Officers intimated to Sir *John Finch*, His Majesty of Great Britains Embassador, that he might if he pleased, receive Audience of the Visier; but upon notice what had

happened to the *French* Ambassador, he excused his going, on pretence of an indisposition of body: But however *Venetian*, *Dutch* and *Genoan* Residents were content (the better to curry favour with the *Visier*) to be admitted to Audience on those terms which the *Visier* would vouchsafe to allow them; for though during the time, he was *Chimacam*, as is aforesaid; he was meek and humble, yet being placed in the highest dignity next the *Sultan*, the unexpected Exaltation made him so far forget himself, that his pride knew no bounds.

These things happening, and no hopes of accommodation with *Poles*, who by this time had Elected *Sobieski* for their King, great preparations were made for the carrying on that War. The *Tartar*, *Han*, in order thereto receiving express command to take the Field, which early in the Spring he did, and entering *Lithuania*, committed many outrages, but being incountered by Sixteen Thousand *Poles*, and *Cossacks* his Army was put to the rout, and in great confusion obliged to repass the *Neister*, leaving behind him all the booty, which consisted mostly of People and Cattle, during which, the *Bassa* of *Kemenitz*, with a great Body of Horse made an Inroad even to the Walls of *Leopolis*, which caused the King to send his Queen and Children to *Cracow*, resolving to give the *Turks* Battle, and in order to strengthening his Forces, summoned all the *Polish* Nobility to repair to his Standard, putting himself and such Troops as he had between the City and the Enemy, the better to alienate the fears of the people, who upon the approach of the *Turks*, who burnt up all before them, had fled, and left the City desolate, had not the Gates been closed upon them.

The *Turks* perceiving the great preparations that were making against them, thought fit with such
booty

booty as they had gotten to retire into *Uckrania*, but in their retreat were charged by the King with such bravery, that Seven Thousand of them were killed, and a great number of Captives rescued to their unspeakable joy.

They finding the Turks were resolutely bent to carry on the War, and that the Kingdom was greatly weakened by the Provinces they had already rent from it, the better to strengthen himself by Alliance, by the Advice of the Senate, sent his Embassador to the Court of the *Czar* of *Moscow*, to sollicit Aid against the common Enemy, who upon his arrival was received with great expression of Joy, and due Ceremony being dayly heightened with fair promises to expect great matters, but in the end, nothing worth mention came on it, yet it so wrought upon the Turks, that for the better preservation of what they had already required the Visier began to be intent on peace, but his propositions were so unreasonable, that the *Poles* generously refused them, and early in the Spring prepared to take the Field with a puissant Army, yet could not so soon draw them together, but that the *Tartars* living on the Frontiers, joyning with some, revolted *Cossacks*, committed divers out-rages, burning about Two Hundred Villages, carrying away a great number of Christians into miserable captivity, whilst *Podolia* groaned under the oppression of the Turks, who now turned their clemency into rigour, killing and carrying away great numbers of these distressed people, burning their Houses, and robbing them of the small matter they had left in such a manner that that fruitful Countrey was layd almost desolate; to oppose which Torrent, the King drew out his Forces and by fair promises and large gifts procured Three Thousand *Cossacks* to joyn him when passing the

Neister, and falling upon the Straglers as they at pleasure were ravaging the Countrey, expecting no such matter, and killed Five Thousand; amongst whom fell One Bassa and Two *Sanziacks*; but upon notice the *Tartars* in great number was entered the heart of *Poland*, leaving some of his Troops under the Command of *Witnowitzki*, his Lieutenant General, he posted to oppose them, but upon notice they were Forty Thousand lead by Expert *Turkish* Commanders; he drew near to *Leopolis* to encourage that City, which otherwise terrified at the approach of so great an Army might have been deserted, when finding the *Tartars* made divers halts, having put a Garrison into the City, and given such necessary orders as he thought convenient, he marched towards them, and having notice by his Scouts that they approached, he commanded his Army to extend large in Front, and the Wings of Horse to lie off, that they might seem more in number than they were; he resolutely descended from a small Hill into the Plain, and after having thrice proclaimed the Name of Jesus at the Head of his Troop, fell like an unexpected Tempest upon the Infidels, insomuch that the Front of their Army was overthrown, before the Rear could come up to their assistance; which putting them into a great confusion, when perceiving the reserves advance to charge them in the flank, and supposing the whole power of the Kingdom at hand, by reason of great shout from the Hills made by the Rustick, set there for that purpose; they first gave back, and in the end betook themselves to plain flight, casting away many of their Arms and Baggage to make the swifter retreat, upon whom the *Polonian* Horsemen followed hard, making great slaughter of them for the space of Twelve Miles; but night coming on, to prevent the pursuers from falling into any ambush that

that might for that purpose be layed, the King caused the retreat to be sounded, and returning to the City Victorious, he was received with all expressions of joy, and the next day commanded a publick Thanksgiving for the Victory so miraculously obtained.

In this Battle Ninety Thousand *Tartars*, *Turks*, *Moldavians* and *Valachians* were slain, Seven Hundred taken Prisoners, and a great booty recovered; of the Poles fell only Seven Hundred, their whole Force not exceeding Six Thousand. The reasons were gathered from some of the Prisoners why the *Tartars*, &c. were so suddenly discouraged, were two, first for that about ten in the Morning of the same day making a Halt, abundance of Snow and Hail fell upon their Army, and round about them none was seen to fall, which they took as a bad Omen. Secondly, that when they perceived the large Front of the *Polish* Army which extended near a Mile; they verily believed it to be the fore-runner of the Forces of the whole Kingdom, which they had heard were in Arms, and therefore having so far advanced into the Countrey, and left many Enemies at their backs, they feared to be inclosed, which occasioned their hasty and disorderly retreat.

These reiterated Losses, and the desire the Grand Signior had to possess himself of the rest of *Hungary*; whose divisions gave him a prospect of reducing it to his Obedience, made him more willingly hearken to the proposals of the *Polish* Embassador, so that in the end, upon much the same Articles as those that had before been broke, the Tribute accepted, a peace was concluded, in which the *Moscovite* would fain have been included, but he failing to help his Neighbour Prince in his greatest

Extremity, was thought unworthy both by the *Poles* and *Turks*; infomuch, that soon after divisions arising amongst the Bowyers, and great Men of that Dukedom; the *Tartars* taking the opportunity thereof, over-run a great part of the Countrey, carrying away all that came to hand; but another party soon after attempting the like, were fought with, and most of them cut off, or drowned in repassing the *Borysthenes*.

About this time the differences between the Visier and the *French* Embassador greatly encreased, notwithstanding the mediation of divers Christian Ministers then residing at the Port. The one Insisting to take his place during his Audience on the *Saffora*, and the other as obstinately refusing to permit it, infomuch that the Embassador grew greatly discontented that the Honour of his Master should be so much impaired, yet in hopes of a better treatment, he once more resolved to attend his Audience, being introduced, the Chair was brought and set at the Foot of the *Saffora*, the which while he was with his own hands about to remove, the Vissiers Servants hindred him, wherefore in a rage he took up the Cushion and flung it over his head, which happened to fall upon the Great Visier, who grievously resenting the Affront, caused him head and Shoulders to be thrust out of the Audience-Chamber, whereupon the rude Officers (without respect to his Character, or the Law of Nations, which renders the Person of an Embassador Sacred and Inviolable) so roughly handled him, that he kept his Chamber for several days.

These are the most remarkable occurrences that have happened since the beginning of this Emperors Reign over the Eastern Empire, till 1680, the relation of which I have partly received from Authors
of

of undoubted Credit and Reputation, and partly asserted of my own knowledg, many of the Transactions of this Emperors Reign happening during my abode in those Countries; But to proceed.

Anno 1680. the Grand Seignior arriving at *Adri-nople* about the middle of *December*, and being recovered of an Ague that had sometime afflicted him, he commanded his Visier Bassa to draw his Forces together from all parts of his Empire, causing the horses tail to be hung out, which is a certain sign that the Grand Seignior or Grand Visier intends to take the Field, and in order to defray the charges, great sums of Money were every where exacted, the Grand Visier labouring more earnestly therein that he might again recover the Grand Seigniors favour, from which he was fallen, with these Forces he intended to invade *Muscovy* early in the Spring, and to prosecute that War till he had compelled the *Czar* to submit to such terms of peace as he himself should propose, and at the same time dispatched *Achians* to the Emperor of *Germany*, to treat on the behalf of the *Hungarian* Male-contents, whom he declared he must take into his protection, if their proposals for liberty of Conscience was by the Imperial Diet then sitting at *Ratisbon* rejected, and soon after him followed the Bishop of *Sebestini*, the Count *D^r Petrozi*, and two or three others of less note Deputed by the *Hungarians*, to treat about the same matter, but their demands seeming unreasonable, they were dismissed without the satisfaction they expected.

About this time *Muley Hamet* Nephew to *Mu'ey Ismale* King of *Morocco* and *Fess*, assisted by a number of Renegado *Turks* and *Moors*, mustered his Army near *Suz*, and advanced to give his Uncle battle, but near *Morocco* many of his followers deserting him, and his horsemen in which his chief strength consisted,

ed, being overthrown near to *Alarach* he fled to *Tunis*, and was there received into protection by the Governour, from whence he sent divers of his Favourites and followers to *Constantinople* to pray the Grand Seigniors aid against his Uncle, who as he alledged unjustly detained those Kingdoms, but he being a Prince of no Fortune, and less power, he nothing prevailed therein, yet his Rebellion proved advantageous to the Garrison of *Tangier*, the *Moors* being thereby diverted; whilst the *English* rebuilt many of their Forts ruined a few months before, and were disincumbered of those troublesome neighbours, who had so long beleagured them, nay more in the end, it occasioned a firm and lasting peace.

The *French* Merchants Trading in the *Levant*, having sustained great damage by the Pirates of *Tripoly*, and amongst other Vessels the *Santa Sophia*, laden at *Alicant* with Salt and *Spanish* Wool on her way to *Venice*, a great brigantine bound for *Messina*, and a Petach of *Ragus*, &c. to revenge that injury, and reduce those *Turkish* Pirates to obedience, several Ships and Gallies were fitted out at *Marselles*, under the command of the Barron of *Quefne*, who coming before the Port of *Tripoly* sent his Boat on shoar, and in it several Officers, in the Name of the most Christian King, to demand Restitution for the damages sustained by the *French* Merchants, but receiving no other answer then that of the Cannon from the Castles that guard the Port, he caused the boat to be haled back, and with many broad sides fired upon the Town, but by reason of the distance did no considerable damage, but whilst he was cruising, he had notice that seven *Tripolean* Men of War rid at Anchor in the Port of *Scio*, or *Chios*, an Island belonging to the Grand Signior, whereupon he stood away from the Coast of *Barbary*, and sailed thither upon

upon whose approach the *Turks* slipped their Anchors, and snuggled close under the Castle, where notwithstanding they were miserably torn by the shot from the *French* Gallies, which their Admiral perceiving put out a Flag of Truce, and offered to deliver without ransom all the *French* slaves that were on board, with two prizes he had lately taken, but the Barron would not hearken to these offers, well knowing they could not escape him, yet not thinking it safe to venture too near the shoar, he blocked them up; and sent to *Tripoly* to let the Governour understand what danger their Ships were in, and that nothing could deliver them out of his hands, but satisfaction for the wrongs sustained, and a delivery of all the *French* Captives ransom free, and immediately to conclude a peace, but receiving no satisfactory answer, he resolutely entered the Port with his Gallies, and after having beaten down a great part of the Castle, and demolished many stately Edifices, he sunk two of the Ships, took one, and fired the rest, in which Action he lost but Thirty of his Men, but of the *Turks* there perished Eight Hundred.

This News made known to the Grand Visier, he instantly sent for the *French* Ambassador residing at *Constantinople*, and after having rated him, and severely threatned him with death, unless reparation was speedily made for the dammage sustained in the Grand Seigniors Port, he caused him to be confined, imprisoning likewise many of his servants, nor could he obtain his Release till he had purchased his peace at the price of Three Hundred Purfes of Money, each Purse being accounted Five Hundred Dollars, yet the loss of these Ships wrought such effects, that the *Tripoles* soon after concluded a peace with the *French*.

Matters being at this pass, and the troubles increasing in *Hungary*, Count *Teckely* still opposing himself against the Emperors Interest, and using his utmost endeavours at the Port to have himself proclaimed Prince of *Transylvania*, the Emperor thought good to send an Ambassador to the Grand Seignior to put him in mind of the league between the two Empires, desiring that it might be kept inviolable, not any ways infringed by his giving countenance to his Rebels in *Hungary*, which Ambassador upon his arrival had his Audience of the Grand Visier, and a promise made him, that a strict command should be sent to all his *Beglerbegs* and *Sanzacks* on the frontiers, not upon pain of losing their heads to aid or countenance the Male-contents, and being afterwards with the Grand Visier, he assured him that the Grand Seigniors resolution should be maintained, that thereby the peace and friendship Established between the two Empires might continue, yet these specious pretences were to no other end intended then to protract time, to make their own terms with the Rebels, for soon after without the least provocation the Tables were turned, and not only assisted them with all manner of Warlike provision, but with Men and Money, in consideration of several Towns to be put into their hands when taken; They likewise made great preparations at *Belgrade* and *Buda* under pretence of deposing *Abasti* Prince of *Transylvania*, and causing divers *Janizaries* to be attired like *Hungarians*, and to serve Count *Teckely* as his guard.

The *Turkish* Pyrates of *Argiers* having broke the peace sometime since made with his Majesty of Great *Brittain*, and taken several English Vessels (and amongst others, these by name, viz. the *Anne* of *London*, the *John* of *Exeter*, the *Thamar* of *Col-*

Colchester, the Post-horse of London, the Rosemary of Yarmouth, the William of London, the amity of Plymouth, the Forture of London, the Unity of Barnstable, and the Mary Land Merchant, which last fought two *Algerine* Men of War almost one whole day; but at last taking fire, she, together with most of her men perished) To curb their insolency, the Vice-Admiral *Herbert* with the Squadron of his Majesties Frigates under his command was appointed to cruze in those straights, who with such success happened on those roving thieves, that within the space of two years he took and destroyed forty of their Ships, recovering a great number of Christian Captives, and brought those Pyrates so low, that not only they, but those of *Tripole* and *Sally* were obliged to truckle, and receive such terms of peace as the Victor would allow; Amongst the many engagements that happened, during the space aforesaid, this is remarkable, on the 8th. of *April* 1681. Captain *Booth* in the Adventure Frigate, cruising to the *Leward* got sight of a great Turks Man of War, with a prize, which she towed at her Stern, the which upon a more full discovery, proved to be the Golden Horse of *Argiers*, mounted with upwards of Forty Guns, and Five Hundred and Eight Men, commanded by one *Morat Raiza* a Dutch Renegado, with which about Ten in the Morning near *Cape de Gal*, he began a sharp fight, which continued till about Three in the Afternoon, when the *Algerine* having her Main Mast shot by the Board, and her Captains Thigh broken with a Musket Bullet, the *Turks* were about to yield, but seeing a fresh Ship with *Turkish* Colours (which afterwards proved to be his Majesties Frigate, the none-such Captain *Wheeler* Commander) they took new courage, and continued the fight with extraordinary Resolution till night, at
what

what time the *Algerine* had One Hundred and Twenty of her men wounded, and near as many killed, all her Masts shot by the Board, and five or six foot deep of water in the Hold, Captain *Booth* having likewise all his rigging cut in pieces, and every thing out of order, and apprehensive of ingaging in that condition with the said fresh Ship, which he supposed to be an Enemy, commanded the *Calabash* Fireship (then attending him lest the prize should escape) to burn which of them she could most conveniently grapple, which had been put in Execution, had not the Fireships Boat been in the night time accidentally staved, next Morning by break of day Captain *Wheeler* came up, and being within half culvering shot, put out the *English* Colours, and bearing directly upon the *Algerine*, siezed her without firing a Gun; By this action thirty seven *English* Captives were redeemed, and of *Dutch* and *Spaniards* One Hundred and Thirteen.

The *Muscovite* by this time beginning to dread the Tempest of War that was ready to fall upon him, and not able of himself to resist such a power as the Grand Seignior had raised by reason of intestine troubles, and despairing to be aided by the *Polonians*, whom he had some years before deserted in their greatest necessity, he thought it the safest to conclude a peace, which by Presents, and many intreaties he procured to be ratified for the space of twenty years; It being the rather consented to by the Grand Seignior, that he might be at leisure to turn his Armes upon *Hungary*, in which so many of his Predecessors have been foiled.

Leopold the Emperor finding by experience that he had given too much credit to the Faithless *Turks*, and it was but too apparent that they aided his Rebels; He thought it convenient to call a Diet at
Oden-

Odenburg, there to endeavour a Reconciliation, and put an end to the intestine troubles, which the *Hungarian* Nobility likewise urged, and requested him to be present in the like Royal Robes as the Kings of *Hungary* were wont to apparel themselves in, but he not consenting thereto, after some debate, and many particulars offered, the Assembly broke up without concluding any thing, whereupon Count *Tekely* siezed on several Garrisons on the Banks of the *Waga*, and sent to the Bassa of *Buda* to hasten the Forces he had in a readiness, for that he would have no peace with the Emperor unless his own proposals were granted, upon receipt of which Letter, Seventeen Thousand *Turks* passed the *Danubius*, and made great spoil, burning and destroying all the Villages for the space of Fourteen Miles, till *Tekely* moved with the cries of the poor Country people, who fled like Sheep before them, he sent an express to the Bassa that commanded them, to restrain them from spoiling the Countries.

The news of these proceedings greatly troubled the Emperor, then infested with the *French* who incamped upon the *Rhine*, and had seized upon *Straßburg* a free City of the Empire, yet like a prudent Prince he used many perswasions to reduce the Rebels to their former obedience, publishing his declaration, wherein he promised them all convenient liberty for the exercise of their Religion, and that they should have a *Palatine*, a native of *Hungary* offering likewise a general pardon for all that had passed, but this availed not, for *Tekely* aiming at the principality of *Transilvania* (which he must utterly despair of obtaining if he displeased the Grand Seignior) rejected all these reasonable concessions, alledging that he would not trust to promises which were not likely to indure longer than he had power
to

to right his Countrymen, upon which the Emperor caused a detachment of Seven Thousand Horse and Foot to be drawn out of his Army, then incamped along the *Rhine*, to have an eye upon the motions of the *French*, to these Seven Thousand he added three new raised Regiments, and sent them to joyn with Count *Caprara* his Lieutenant General in *Hungary*, which reinforcement made the Rebels keep in a body, who before had divided themselves in several parties, and took in many small Towns, possessing themselves of two Silver Mines, and one of the strongest *Berg* Towns daily expecting Six Thousand *Tartars*, who were on their way, under the leading of *Hames Emir Han* their Captain.

About this time the Grand Seignior fearing the power of the *Muscovite* should refund on part of his Dominions, used great diligence by his Agents to procure a Reconciliation, the which was the easier hearkened to by reason of the differences arising between the *grandees*, threatened an intestine War, whereupon in *May* 1681. a Truce was concluded for the space of Twenty years, though contrary to the opinion of the *Polenians*, who by a conjunction with the numerous Forces of that Dukedom, were in hopes to gain more easie conditions at the Port then in the Articles between them and the Grand Seignior were included, in order to which that King had assembled a *Diet* at *Warsaw*, which after Sixteen weeks consultation, by reason of the perverseness of a deputy of *Lythuania*, broke up without resolving on any one point referred to their consideration.

About the beginning of the year 1682. The Emperor dispatched a Minister to Count *Teckelej*, who was fortifying divers places against him, to treat of an accommodation as himself had required, but he having received an Assurance from the Port of the

Grand

Grand Signiours protection declared that he had not full power to treat of himself, but must be obliged to take the advice of the Bassa of *Offa* in that affair, and move according to the directions he should receive from the Port, having wholly thrown himself upon the Grand Signiours, and therefore referred all to the success of Count *Caprara's* Negotiation at *Constantinople*.

Vice Admiral *Herbert* having obliged the *Algerine* Pirates to a compliance, the treaty of peace was about the latter end of *April* brought by Captain *Almyer* for his Majesties Approbation and Ratification, both which being had, the Treaty both Honourable and advantageous to the *English* Nation was returned, the success against these Rovers having been such as has given reputation to his Majesties Arms in those parts, and will past doubt give them cause to value his Majesties Friendship for the future.

The season for Action advancing, the Emperor caused Six Regiments of Foot, and two of Horse to march for *Hungary*, to inable Count *Caprara* to oppose the Turks that had embodied themselves near *Offen*, as likewise about *Sonluck*, between great *Waradin*, and the River *Theis*, which parties upon their uniting were further inforced by the Troops of Count *Teckelej*, and *Abastie* Prince of *Transylvania*, and for the better assurance of the former, the Grand Signiour caused to be placed about him One Thousand *Janizaries* as a Guard to his person, which many did at that time believe it was to no other end then to secure him in the interest of the Port. These Forces of *Turks*, *Hungarians*, and *Transylvanians* meeting, it was in the Bassa's Tent concluded that since the *German* Forces were not considerable on that side, they should divide into two Bo-

dies, and act separate, one to be commanded by the Count, and the other by the Bassa of *Waradin*, upon which the former immediately besieged *Chascaw*, a strong City near the *Waag*, battering it for many days with twelve pieces of Cannon, carrying the out-work by storm, but perceiving his Camp annoyed by the shot from the City; into which Count *Strasoldo* had put Five Hundred Men he removed his Battery to a small Hill which commanded it, and from thence playing furiously, he beat down a great number of Houses, and layed open a great breach in the Wall, which obliged the besieged after many Sallies, and a resolute defence to capitulate for their Lives and Liberties which were granted, and leave given for as many as would, to take service under his Ensigns, but whilst the Soldiers hastily entered, whether of purpose, or by chance, a Mine near the breach took Fire, and blew up several of the *Teckelejans*, which so enraged them, that they fell upon the Garrison, and put many of them to the Sword ere their fury could be stayed; the Citizens to redeem themselves from being plundered, payed Fifty Thousand Crowns, and two days after *Espiers* surrendred to the Count.

During this Action, the Bassa besieged *Zathmar*, which after divers attempts they carried by force, putting many to the Sword, and carrying away a considerable number of all Sex and Ages into miserable captivity.

Count *Teckelej* upon this success, sent Summons from his Camp near *Lewentz*, to summon the *Hungarian* Nobility to appear in Arms, but by the Industry of the *Imperial* Ministers, he failed for the most part in his expectation, few obeying his Orders, yet many of the inferiour rank came to increase the number of his Forces; upon notice of which Count

Caprara,

Caprara, and Count *Strasoldo* joyned their Forces, and marched to oppose the Torrent e're it swelled too high. The Emperor sent likewise an Express to the *Palatine of Hungary* to raise the Ban and Areirban of that Kingdom, and to march with all speed against the *Turks* who had passed the *Wag*, and caused the Governour of *Chascaw* to be imprisoned, as being accused of not having defended that City to Extremity, and now the Armies being within view of each other, there was great expectations that the Issue would have been a foughten Field, but it proved otherwise; for after some light skirmishes had past, the Imperialists finding themselves too weak, quitted their Camp at *Arzol*, and retired toward *St. Croix*, which so discouraged the Garrison in *Lewentz*, that they abandoned it, and retired to places of greater strength, so that it became a prey to the Enemy.

All this while the *Turks* having besieged *Villecke*, after divers Assaults and great slaughter of their Men, had it delivered into their hands on the Sixteenth of *September*, the Garrison making articles of surrender without the consent of the Governour, who upon his refusing to sign the capitulation, was made a Prisoner of War, and the *Turks* unwilling to put this Fortrefs into the hands of the *Hungarians*, as by Articles was agreed; and on the other side the *Hungarians* being loath that the *Turks* should possess so strong a place in the heart of the Kingdom; it for some time occasioned great contest, but in the end both parties concluded to demolish it, which was accordingly done.

During these Transactions, his Imperial Majesties Embassador at the Port was flattered with a promise of renewing the League between the two Empires, and conducted to his Audience with the usual

Ceremonies, which was only to protract time till the Turks had possessed themselves of such strong places as might render them formidable, and give them hopes of annexing all *Hungary* to the *Ottoman* Empire; but the *German* Princes perceiving their drift, sent several of their own Troops to reinforce the *Imperial* Army under the Command of Count *Caprara*, with whom the Count *Strosoldo* refusing to joyn, in order to give the Turks Battle near *Lewentz*, fell into the Emperors high displeasure being sent for to *Vienna*, and for a while is suspended, but upon his submission was again restored to favour.

Winter approaching, Count *Teckely* sent Four Hussars to Count *Caprara*, to procure of him a passport for the safe passage of such Deputies as he intended to send to the Emperor to treat of a Truce which Hussars were by the Counts express Command Imprisoned till such time his *Imperial* Majesties pleasure was known therein; but in the end they were released, and the Deputies permitted to pass uncontrouled, when after many debates a Truce was concluded for two Moneths, whereupon Count *Teckley* by reason of the Difference between him, and the Prince of *Transylvania* retired with the greatest part of his Troop to a strong place, which together with some others in dowrie with the Prince *Ragotski*, whom this year he had married. The Turks for the most part Wintered in *Temeswar*, *Buda*, and *New Hausel*, and the *Imperialists* on the Frontiers of *Austria*, and so ended the Campaign for this year.

Anno 1683. Early in the Spring, the *Imperialists* and *Turks* taking the Field, and several skirmishes happening between parties, with various success. The Count *Wallastain*, his *Imperial* Majesties Minister

fter residing in the *Polonian* Court, dealt so effectually with that King, that he resolving no longer to sit still, and see the Infidels and Rebels insult over his Neighbouring Countries, on the second of *April*, pursuant to a treaty on foot signed an alliance with the Emperor, by which he obliges himself to take the Field with between Thirty and Forty Thousand Horse and Foot, to act offensively against the *Turks*, and defensively against all other enemies to the *German* Empire, in consideration of which, the Emperor binds himself to have an Army of Sixty Thousand Men in readyness upon all occasions, immediately to pay Twelve Hundred Thousand Florins, and that himself, and the Queen Dowager of *Poland* disclaim all Pretensions to the Crown of *Poland*, and that neither Potentate enter into a treaty with the *Turks* tending to Peace, but with a joynt approbation; And that both Armies act separate, unless *Cracow* or *Vienna* be besieged, and then with United Forces to fall upon the Enemy, into which Alliance it is expected the *Czar* of *Muscovy* will shortly enter to revenge the outrages done him by the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who since the late Divisions have made divers incursions into his Countries. This Alliance made known to the Grand Seignieur greatly perplexed him, insomuch that he sent orders to all the *Bassa's*, *Begs* or *Sanzacks* of *Europe*, to raise what Forces they could to attend him in the Field, himself resolving instantly to march to *Belgrade*, whither the Great Visier with an Army of 60000 Horse and Foot marched before to joyn with the *Tartars*, under the leading of *Tartar Han* or *Cham*, and then to cover such places as Count *Teckely* (who now seems jealous of the *Turks*) shall besiege.

The better to take measures for the carrying on the War, his Imperial Majesty on the 8th. of *April*

called a Council of War at *Vienna*, where it was concluded that the Duke of *Lorraine* should be *Generalissimus* of all the Forces on that side, and the measures concluded on were these, that the Imperial Army the third of *May* should muster near *Presburg*, to the number of 40000 men; That General *Schutz* shall with 7000 men, joyn with 6000 *Polish* Horse already on their march, under the command of the Prince *Lubomerski*, and that the *Hungarian* troops in conjunction with those, making a body of 25000 men act in the upper *Hungary*, and another body of 6000 Incamp near *Leopoldstadt* on the *Waag*, and in case they find the Turks have a design upon that place, to put themselves into it, and besides these 10 or 12000 men to be posted on the confines of *Moravia* and *Silesia*, to secure those Countries against the incursion of the Enemy.

This being the state of the Imperial Army designed against the Turks, and *Hungarian* Rebels Count *Teckley* the better to secure himself and reinforce his Army sent out summons to the Nobility once more to be in Armes and as occasion served to oppose the Imperialists, but most of them seemed unwilling to comply therein as abhorring to bear Armes against their Lawful Sovereign.

Whilst matters were thus carried on that side the King of *Sweden* has obliged himself to assist the Emperour with seven thousand Horse and Foot, four thousand of which he intends to raise in *Germany*, and the rest in his own Countries, nor will the Elector of *Bavaria* who is in all likelihood shortly to marry the Emperors Daughter, be wanting to send his Forces against the common Enemy.

The King of *Poland* the better to compleat the Quota, he intends to summon the Arrearban of that Kingdom, all the Nobility shewing a ready compliance

ance to attend in the Wars, his Army to the number of thirty thousand mustering near *Leopol* he advanced against the Turks, who made divers incursions into his Territories on the *Ukrain*, a party of whom advancing too far he cut off killing three hundred and taking a like number of Prisoners, and following the success of his Arms, he is preparing to besiege *Caminieck*, a strong Fortress taken from the Poles by the Turks some years before, and sent an Express to Count *Teckley* to inform him of the Alliance made with the Emperor, and to let him know that unless he does immediately make Peace with his Imperial Majesty, he shall be obliged to treat him as an Enemy.

These Menaces caused *Teckley* to draw up his Troops with great diligence, and send immediately to the Visier of *Buda* for such Forces as by the Grand Signeours appointment were to joyn him, that he might the better be able to defend himself till the gross of the *Ottoman* Army (reported to consist of one hundred and fifty thousand men) could arrive, and immediately dispatched his Secretary to the Emperors Court to crave a truce, but the proposals were so insignificant that he nothing prevailed. For the Emperor in person having been at the Rendezvous near *Presburg* in *Hungaria*, was so well satisfied with the order of his men that he altogether contemned the Forces of the Enemy. Yet to appear like himself he caused a general Pardon a third time to be published indemnifying all *Hungarians* and *Germans*, that have been actually in Armes against him, and any ways concerned in the *Hungarian* Rebellion both in Person and Estate, in consideration of their speedy submission and obedience for the future, upon which many layed down their Arms and made an ingenuous acknowledgment of their disobedience

ence to the *Palatine* whom the Emperour impowred to receive their submissions.

About this time a *Crotian* having put himself into the service of the Turks at *Zigeth*, a strong Garrison on that Frontiers, and intimated himself into their confidence he put what he had before designed in practice, which was to set their Magazine on Fire, and having succeeded therein made his escape during the general consternation thereby occasioned. This Magazine stored with all manner of Provisions as well as warlike Furniture, was computed sufficient for the maintenance and furnishing thirty thousand men for the space of two years, which the Turks desirous to save, flocked about it to extinguish the flame but to their fatal cost, for the powder consisting of two thousand Barrels taking fire, destroyed five hundred of them, and beat down most of the houses in the City, renting in sunder the walls in divers places, the blow being heard 6 leagues distant from that place.

The Duke of *Lorraine* having been to take a view of *Rab* and *Comorra*, on the 6th of *May* returned to the Army, at what time it was greatly augmented by voluntary supplies, who not able to see their bleeding Country over run by barbarous infidels, whilst they stood unconcerned for its defence, joyned with their Lawful Sovereign to oppose the coming tempest of destructive foes, willingly joyned in the defence of the Christian cause, which a few rash men, under pretence of Conscience, though indeed out of an ambitious desire of Sovereignty, have exposed them to all the calamities that attend on miserable War.

The Grand Visier arriving with part of the *Ottoman* Forces at *Belgrade*, the place appointed for the General Rendezvous, the Grand Seignior on the 20th.

of

of *April* set forth from *Adrinople*, attended by a numerous train of his great Officers, and 80000 *Janizaries*, *Spahies*, *Timariots*, *Asaphies*, and others inured to the Turkish Wars, and by speedy marches came to the place appointed, though by reason of the excessive rains and noysom vapours thereby occasioned, 6000 of his men perished by the way, nor fared that part of the Army the great *Visier* lead much better, for passing the *Dravus* many of the Souldiers were drowned, and much of the baggage lost.

The *Polonian* King desirous to bring Count *Teckely* over to the Emperours interest, sent an Agent to treat with him about a Reconciliation, to hearken to which at first he seemed inclinable, but upon pressing the matter more home, it appeared he did it only to gain time, till he could joyn with the *Tartars*, which the *Visier* of *Buda* had assigned to act in conjunction with him in the upper *Hungary*, but part of the imperial Troops not to give him that opportunity, under the command of Major General *Schutz*, have posted themselves between him and the *Niester*, which the *Tartars* who march in two bodies must pass before they can enter that part of *Hungary*, who a little before their taking, that post had defeated a party of Turks belonging to the Garrison of *Newhensel*, killing 7000, and taking 200 Prisoners; The *Polish* Troops of Voluntiers on the Banks of *Danubius*, meeting with 5000 *Tartars*, the fore-runners of the Army overthrew them, killing 1000 of them, and forcing the rest to take the River, in passing which most of them perished, which success so heightened the *Poles*, that pursuing their good fortune they passed the River, at a place fordable they fell in with a Turkish Convoy of 600 Mules, laden with Provision and Ammunition, going to the Camp
at

at *Belgrade*, which they took and converted to their own use, killing and putting to flight such as had the charge of them, upon notice of which the *Polonian* King, to appear more formidable to the *Turks*, *Tartars* and *Hungarian* Rebels, commanded 2 new Regiments to be raised, one at the charge of his Queen, and the other at the charge of Prince *Alexander* his Eldest Son, himself allotting out of his Patrimonial Estate 100000 Crowns to be distributed amongst his Army, and to raise 800 *Hussars* expert at handling Launces.

On the 11th. of *May* the Imperial Army after having Randizvouzed at *Presburg*, passing from *Keiser* marched towards, and incamped between that Fortress and *Comorra* to observe the motions of the *Turks*, who were imbodyed near *Newhausel* to the number of 15000, daily expecting a detachment of the Visiers Army upon its march to joyn with them, the Visier at the same time being incamped at *Greick Weissenburg*, expecting the arrival of the Grand Seignior, who was some days marching behind.

During these proceedings *Teckely* suddenly collecting his Troops, layed siege to the strong Castle of *Dowowitz*, in which was the Barron *Joannel* with a Garrison of 250 *Imperialists* and *Hungarians*, yet after a furious battery with 8 pieces of Cannon, he made himself master of that important place, making the Governour and the *Germans* found therein Prisoners of War, when to prevent his further proceedings on that side, the *Pallatine* of *Hungaria* received orders to joyn Major General *Schutz*, who had passed the *Waag* to meet the Prince of *Lubomerski*, who advanced with the 6000 *Polonian* Horse before mentioned, whereupon the Visier of *Buda* summoned Count *Teckely* to joyn the Turkish Troops under his command, which he refused to do, making several pre-

tences

tences to excuse it of which the King of *Poland* taking notice sent a Letter to the Count to advise him to quit the engagement he has with the Turks, (which in conclusion will turn to his ruin) and make his peace with the Emperour, whilst his free grace is offered him ; the which had such an effectual operation that many were of opinion he would have closed with the Imperial offered Grace, but after some debate and new incouragement from the Grand Signior, he resolved to persist in his rebellious purpose of opposing the Emperours interest, whereupon the Duke of *Lorrain* who has absolute power to act as he sees convenient for the advantage of the Empire, sent orders to the *Palatine* to draw down his Troops and intrench himself on the banks of the *Waag*, to secure the passes where the River is Fordable, as likewise to the Vice-Roy of *Crotia* to raise new Forces for the increase of those already under his command, and to keep diligent watch upon the Frontiers of that Province to prevent any incursions.

About this time *Zathmer* was regained, and young Count *Serini* (true Heir to the valour of his immortal Ancestors) appointed Governour thereof which has put the Turks out of all hopes of recovering it.

The Duke of *Lorrain* having notice that the Turks were embodying themselves near *Gran*, raised his Camp on the 24th. of *May* and marched towards them, resolving to give them Battle before the Grand Visier (who together with the *Ag*a of the *Janizaries*, was on his march) could arrive in those parts, having for that purpose stored his Army with all necessary Provision and Ammunition sent up the *Danubius* in boats from *Vienna*, but during these preparations the Turks had so strongly lodged themselves upon the Counterscarp to the number of 25000, that he thought it not convenient to attack them in their strength,

strength, but having made a detachment of 13 men commanding them to pass the *Danubius*, and invest *Newhausel* a strong place about 2 Leagues from *Komora*, whilst the rest of the Army followed in good order, with a train of 80 pieces of Artillery, most of which carry bullets of between 30 and 40 pounds weight, which made Count *Teckelej* draw off towards *Tokay*, still declining to joyn the Turks under the command of the Visier of *Buda*, insomuch that the Bassa of *Offen* fearing to be exposed to the Fury of the Imperialists sent a Messenger to the Duke of *Lorraine* to propose a Cessation of Arms for 14 days, which the Duke would in no wise hearken to, as well knowing it was but to protract the time till a greater power arrived in *Hungary*, and when it was urged that the Grand Signeour intended to observe the Peace with the Emperor, till the prefixed was expired, but the Duke replied that the Turks by their unjust Hostilities and manifest outrages had broken it long since, so that now they must expect no other favour then the Sword would allow them, whereupon he dispatched orders to Count *Caprara* to batter *Newhausel* resolving to carry it by storm, if it should fail to be delivered by capitulation having already overthrown a party belonging to that Garrison, who were returning from ravaging the Country laden with great booties, upon which success 2 parties were sent out to burn the Bridges of *Gran*, and *Esseiniek* which they successfully attempted burning the former, and possessing themselves of the latter, guarded by 700 Turks, most of which were killed or taken prisoners.

The Count *Caprara* His Imperial Majesties Ambassador at the Port, is by order of the Grand Signeour looked narrowly after, not differing much from a confinement, least during these Hostilities he should
with-

withdraw himself, nor could the intercession of the Lord *Shandois* His Majesty of Great Brittain's Ambassador residing at the Port on his behalf remove the suspicion conceived, &c. Thus far having related impartially the success of the Christian Armes against the Turks, I shall leave them engaged in a bloody and doubtful War, and conclude so much of this years Campaigne as to the 4th. of *June*, 1683. has occurred with an exact account of all the Imperial Forces. The List whereof take as followeth, viz. The Emperor has in pay 27 Regiments of Foot, making together 55700 men, whereof 25296 follow the Duke of *Lorraine*, 4692 are appointed to secure the upper *Hungary*, 2040 posted at *Jabluncka* on the frontiers of *Hungary*, 2040 at *Leopoldstadt* on the *Waag*, 3640 in *Austria*, 2040 at *Vienna*, 13912 in the Empire, 2400 in *Bohemia*, 17 Regiments of Horse making together 13600 men, 7 Regiments of Dragoons containing 5600 men, & 4 Regiments of *Croats* making 3200, whereof 15200 are at the Camp, 800 in the Upper *Hungary*, 400 at *Jabluncka*, 2400 at *Leopoldstadt*, 800 in *Austria*, and 2800 in the Empire. So that the general List of Horse and Foot stands thus, viz. at the Camp 39696, in the Empire, 16712 in the upper *Hungary*, 7532 making in all 78540 men not accounting the *Hungarian* Troops under the command of the *Palatine*, nor those in *Crotia* commanded by the Vice-Roy, nor the 6000 *Polonian* Horse brought into the Emperours service, by the Prince of *Lubornirski*, which in conjunction will render the Emperors total Forces no less then 100000 fighting men. The Turks Army together with the *Tartars* and *Hungarians* under the command of Count *Teckley*, being accounted no less then 250000.

But thou, O Lord, on whom all things depend,

In gentle Peace let these dire discords end.

Or let firm Concord with the Christians dwell,

To turn their Swords on the proud Infidel.

A De-

C H A P. XXV.

A Description of the Power, Policy, Forces, Revenues, Religion, and Greatness of the Ottoman Empire; and by what Means it subsists and maintains its Grandeur, &c.

HAVING in the succinct Series of this History related the Original of the *Ottoman Empire*, and its Growth from time to time, till it arrived to the vast Extent it at this Day is found; I shall now proceed to give the Reader a View of the Grandeur of it, and by what means it is supported, in the Description of the *Grand Seignior's* Port or Palace, Government, Officers, Riches, Forces, Religion, and the like.

The *Turks* originally a People of *Scythia*, supposed to have sprung from the Ten Tribes carried into Captivity, as is in the former Part of this History related, began their Second Empire in *Asia* under *Othoman*, about 1300; and spreading wide, entred *Europe*, seizing at length upon the pleasant City of *Constantinople*, expelling the *Greek Emperour*, and making it the Imperial Seat of the *Othoman Sultans*, now dignified by the Title of *Grand Seigniors*: A Description of which City, and of the *Seraglio*, or Imperial Port or Palace, take as followeth.

Constantinople, built by *Constantine the Great*, is according to the Opinion of many, sixteen Miles in circuit, called by the *Turks*, *Stambul* or *Stombolda*; the Sea bearing upon it on the North and South sides, and on the East

East it is divided from *Asia* by a large Channel, which runneth from the one Sea to the other, being seven Miles in length, called the *Straights of Bosphorus*. The City is built upon the declining of a Hill; for Buildings comparable to any in the World: But above all, beautified with seven *Mosques* standing upon seven little Hills, founded by seven of the *Ottoman Emperors*; of which, that of Sultan *Solyman* is most famous: And the *Seraglio*, now made the *Grand Seignior's* Palace, which is three Miles in circuit, standeth on the North side, having on the one side of it the Sea, and on the other the Haven; the other two Parts being encompassed with the Building of the City. This Palace, Port, or *Seraglio*, which you please, (for all these Names it bears) has within it many Gardens, Orchards, Meadows, Woods, pleasant Groves, Fountains, and all things else that can render it delightful. The Entrance is through a Gate of Iron into a large Court, where on the left hand stands a Building like a *Turkish Mosque*, which is used as a Store-house for Arms and Provision; on the Right, are several fair Gardens palazadoed in, from which they pass to another Court, with a Gate like unto the former; upon which hang many Targets, Scymitars, and other Weapons of War, many Porters attending; through which they pass into another large Court, planted with *Cyprus-Trees*; where many Deer are kept: which Court is surrounded with a Cloyster, which is in length 680 Foot, and in breadth 500; paved with Marble, leaded over, and supported by 140 Pillars of White and Gray Marble curiously wrought, standing upon Basis of Copper, with Capitals of the like Metal. On the North side stands the *Divano*, or Council-House, where the *Grand Vizier*, and such others as are by the *Grand Seignior* appointed his Councillors, four times a Week, or oftner if Occasion require it, sit to consult the Important Affairs of the Empire; to hear and

and determine all Matters of Controversie, and give Audience to Ambassadors, and other Forreign Ministers.

In this *Seraglio* the *Grand Seignior* has many Chambers hung with Cloth of Gold, gilded Skins, and Tapestries made of Silk and Gold; wherein are lively represented the Wars of the *Ottoman Emperours*. His Lodging-Chamber is garnished with divers Precious Stones of great value; and constantly attending him six young Men, who do Service in his Chamber, and watch his Person all Night, two and two by turns, with lighted Torches; the one sitting at the Head, and the other at the Feet of his Bed: And when he attires himself, they put into his Pockets a thousand *Aspars*, and twenty *Ducats* of Gold; the which, if he does not distribute that Day, at Night is their Fee; for he seldom or never puts on one Suit of Apparel twice; and whensoever he goes to Hunting, or any the like Exercise, (besides the Money in his Pockets) his *Casnadar Bassa*, or Chief Treasurer, follows him with great store of Money to give away: Of these six Young Men, who are changed at Pleasure, their Offices are distinct; for the first carries his Shoes, the second his Bow and Arrows, the Third his Vest, the fourth a Vessel with Water, the fifth his Seat, and the sixth, called *Oda Bassa*, is Head of the Chamber.

He hath daily a great number of Persons resident in his Palace, employed in their several Charges; the chief of which are these:

First, The *Capi Aga*, by whom the *Grand Seignior* speaks to such as have any Important Business; for no Ambassador can be admitted to his Presence, but at his first Arrival, when he delivers his Letters of Credit and Presents: But if afterward any matter arises, he must address himself to the *Capi Aga*, that is the *Grand Vizier*, or his Substitute.

Secondly

Secondly, The *Casnadar Bassa*, or Chief Treasurer of the Household.

Thirdly, The *Chilergi Bassa*, or Chief Cup-Bearer.

Fourthly, The *Seragli Agasi*, Steward or Master of the Household.

Fifthly, The *Chiller Agasi*, or *Seraider Bassa*, Overseer of the *Seraglio* of Concubines; who is always an Eunuch.

Sixthly and lastly, The *Bostangi Bassa*, or Chief Gardiner; who is Captain of the *Janoglans*, and steers the *Grand Seignior's* Barge. When ever he goes by Water, he hath a *Protogero* or Lieutenant, and many Gardiners, to attend him, which are called *Bostangi*; who are frequently listed in the number of *Janizaries*, when fitted thereto by hard Labour, &c.

These Six Officers have no Authority out of the *Seraglio*; yet the greatest Bassa's fear them, for that they being always near the Emperour, frequently incense him against them to their Destruction.

Near unto the *Grand Seignior's* Person, are commonly six Mutes, Men born both Deaf and Dumb, with whom he makes himself Pastime. There are found likewise about thirty four more of the same Tribe, which he keeps as Executioners of his Wrath; for upon the least Command, they will strangle the greatest Bassa of the Court, or otherwise make him away, it being their frequent Practice.

Within the *Seraglio* are kept to the number of five hundred, such Youths as are taken up for Tribute-Children in *Gracia*, and other Parts of the Empire; all Sons of Christians, who taken young from their Parents, are instructed and brought up in divers Arts; and taught more especially to manage all sorts of Weapons, and to be perfect in the *Mahometan* Superstition; few of them being above eight Years of Age at their first Entrance. Of these, some they make *Janizaries*; others

B b b

are

are preferred to Offices of Trust, and come to great Preferment : But none of them may, on Pain of Death, stir out of the *Seraglio*, till the *Sultan* thinks them of a fit Age, and sufficiently qualified for his Service. He has in like manner eighty *Mutaferache*, or Launce-Bearers, who carry his Launce ; and are subject to the Command of none but himself.

He hath in continual pay a thousand Eunuches, whom the *Turks* call *Hundurri* ; many of which are employed to attend his Virgins and Concubines in the *Seraglio*. They are not only deprived of their Genitors, but in their Youth they have their whole Privities smoothed off by their Bellies : And in their Turbants they bear a Silver Quill or Crue, through which they evacuate their Urine. This Inhuman Barbarity was first commanded by *Solyman* the Magnificent, who grew jealous of them upon his observing a Gelding back a Mare ; gathering from thence, that his Eunuches though they had lost their Genitor, might yet dalliance with his Females.

The *Seraglio* of Women is within the Palace, in which are constantly five hundred Virgins, the choicest Beauties that can be procured, being all Daughters to Christians, taken from their Parents when they are about eight Years of Age or under ; none above are admitted, lest they should be debauched e're they enter. These are brought up to curious Works : And when at any time the *Grand Seignior* is desirous to have any of them brought to his Bed, he the Day before gives notice to the Captain of the Eunuches ; who commands those under him to put them in order, and array them in their best Attire. Which done the *Grand Seignior*, attended by the said Captain, walking between them as they stand demurely in rows on either Hand ; and where he likes, drops his Handkerchief, of which he has many hanging at his Girdle ; which the Eunuches that follow, observing, put her (or as many as his Plea

fur

sure is to signifie by such Tokens) into a Coach, and carry them to his Lodgings ; where they are gorgeously attired, and used as he has occasion for them: After which they return, not to the *Seraglio* of the Virgins, but have other Lodgings appointed them. And when by reason of the Failure of Tribute-Virgins, the *Seraglio* grows empty, they purchase the Fairest they can find in the Market of *Constantinople*, whither they are brought to be sold as Slaves.

Another *Seraglio* there is, in which the *Grand Seigneur* keeps his *Sultana's* or *Sultaneſſes*, and their Children; as likewise, such other Concubines, of whom for his delight he hath chosen from amongst the Virgins. He never marries; but when any one is brought to his Bed side, he gives her a Golden Head-tire, and ten thousand *Aspers*; causing her to live apart, daily increasing her Maintenance. The first that bears him a Child, is called the *Sultana* or *Sultaneſs*, and is accounted Mistress of the rest of his Women; and by him, for the most part, best beloved. The rest that hath been brought to his Bed, and with whom he hath dallianded, are returned back to their several Apartments, there to expect the Issue; and if they prove not with Child, then are they given in Marriage to his Slaves; whom for their sakes he advances to great Dignity, for the most part.

He hath three hundred *Sollacchi*, who march continually about his Person; and make (as it were) his Guard, being under the Command of the *Aga* of the *Fanizaries*; all of them attired in Linnen-Garments hanging down beneath their Knees; and over them quilted Waist-Coats, with half Sleeves of Taffety, Damask, or Sattin; and on their Heads Caps and Feathers, carrying Bows and Arrows. There are another sort of Foot-men, called *Peichi*, wonderful swift of Foot; whom he employs in the nature of Lacquies, or Foot-Posts; being attired in Cloth of Gold, with a Girdle

of the same tyed fast about them; upon their Heads wearing Caps like Butter-pots; with a Silver Pike standing out before, in the nature of a Horn.

The Porters of the Court, that give Attendance there, are four thousand; and are attired like the *Janizaries*, having over them three *Capigi Bassa's*.

The *Grand Seignior's* Power is so absolute, and his Government so tyrannical, that his Subjects term themselves his Slaves; none of them being sure of his Life or Goods beyond his Pleasure; for without any Tryal or Process, he puts to Death whom it pleaseth him, unless restrained by the Souldiers, who often rescue their Minions out of his Hands, and oblige him to pardon them.

Their Sutes are few, and those very short, they rarely being permitted the Favour of Advocates to procrastinate Matters from coming to a speedy Result; tho' commonly he who can bribe most, fares the best: For the *Turks* are of all Nations the most Avaricious, doing no Man a Kindness unless they are fee'd; though they have the least Certainty of any People, to keep what they have gotten, all (as is aforesaid) being at the Disposal of the Prince. They punish Crimes with great Severity, and so speedily, that it is observed that seldom any Theft or Murther is committed by any private *Turk*; but what Outrages do happen in the City, or elsewhere, are committed commonly by the *Grecians*, and those that are not of the Progeny of the *Turks*.

The *Grand Seignior's* Chief Councillor is the Great *Vizier*; who wears his Signet, and is stiled his *Lieutenant*; every *Divano-day* giving him an exact Account what is said and done: Nor dare he dissemble in ought; for that the *Grand Seignior* has a Window, from whence he can see and hear, and yet not be seen himself; which Window looks into the *Divano*. When this *Vizier* is
sent

sent abroad, which never happens unless to be General of an Army, or upon some such like important Occasion; at what time he appoints his Lieutenant to officiate in his Absence, who is called the *Chimacham*.

Next unto the *Bassa's*, (of which there are many dispersed throughout the Empire, to manage the Affairs thereof) are the *Beglerbegs*, or Lords of Lords: They are Men of great Authority, and have the Command of great Kingdoms and Armies; under whose Obedience are divers *Sanzacks*, which are sent as Governors into Provinces, during the Princes Pleasure; being Men of great Experience; for the most part, commanding over the *Spahi* and *Timariots*, the *Turks* chief Horsemen, whom they continually exercise to render them the more expert. The Chief of these *Beglerbegs*, is the *Beglerbeg* of *Romania* or *Grecia*, under whose Command are twenty one *Sanzacks*; next to him is the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*, who hath under his Command thirteen *Sanzacks*: The *Beglerbeg* of *Temeswar* has under his Command eight *Sanzacks*: The *Beglerbeg* of *Bosna* hath under his Command nine *Sanzacks*: The *Beglerbegship* of *Coffe* or *Capha*, who resideth in *Taurica Chersonesus*, and commandeth over the *Sanzack* near unto the great River *Tanais*, and the *Fenns* of *Maotis*, which was at first but a *Sanzackship*, and depended upon the *Beglerbegship* of *Grecia*; and is indeed rather a *Beglerbegship* in Name, than in Power. These *Beglerbegs*, or Lords of Lords, great Governours of the *Turkish* Empire in *Europe*, besides the *Sanzacks*, have under their Command 257000 *Timariots* or Horse-men, who are bound for certain Lands allotted them by the Grand Seignior, out of his Conquests, to serve in the Wars upon all Occasions.

The *Beglerbegs*, or Great Commanders of the *Turk's* Empire in *Asia*, are thirty in number; under whom are a proportionable number of *Sanzacks*, and not less than

400000 *Timariots*. The *Beglerbegs* commanding the Turk's Empire in *Africa*, are four; and have under them fourteen *Sanzacks*, and sixty two thousand *Timariots*. Besides these *Timariot*-Horsemen, there are the *Spahi*, who are for the most part *Europeans*, being such as were brought up in their Infancy, or taken Captive: As likewise, *Spathoglanians*, *Siliitarians*, and *Olofagians*; who have likewise Lands, or Annual Pensions assigned them; for which they are bound to serve in the Wars: for no Man in the *Ottoman* Empire can have any Lands, or Yearly Revenues that way, but must be ready, or send others in his stead; it being held, that the whole Empire in Fee simple, is the Grand Seigniors: No Man being permitted to buy or injoy any Lands longer, than it pleases his Prince: Nor can any one claim a Propriety to a Foot, unless by the Donation of the Grand Seignior, or his Assignment; and that last, at longest, but during the Natural Life of him, to whom it is so given or assigned. These Horsemen march under a white Banner, being armed with strong Coats, Bows, and Arrows, Culeverings, Scymitars, and Battle Axes.

Another sort of Horsemen there are, called *Caripices*, not exceeding eight hundred; who still ride near the Grand Seignior, as his Life-guard, in the middle of the Battalion of the *Janizaries*; and are the best Horsemen accounted of all others, being (for the most part) Sons of the Great Commanders.

As for his Foot Forces, the chief Strength consists of *Janizaries*, who are Children taken from their Christian Parents, and inured in their Youth to all manner of Hardship, taught all the Use of Arms, and trained up in all Warlike Discipline, till they are adjudged fit to be inrolled for the War. These are taken up in *Europe*, no Children born either in *Asia* or *Africa* being admitted into their Seminary. These Men always

ways inclose the Person of the Grand Seignior at what time he marches with his Army; and are the last that fight, unless urgent Necessity require it. They wear white Caps, carry Harquibusses, and sharp Scymitars; who since their first Institution have been the chief Supporters of the *Turkish* Empire; but of late they are much degenerated from their former Discipline, giving themselves up wholly to Ease and Pleasure; yet keep themselves in good order, for the most part. There remains twenty four thousand of them in *Constantinople*, and a far greater number in divers Places of the Empire. They are commanded by their *Aga*, or Captain, to whom nothing is so fatal as their Love for him; for then the Grand Seignior has him in mistrust, and well is it if he be not made away. They sleep together in great Halls, their Beds being placed on either side; and all those of a Squadron feed at one Table; the Younger ever serve the Elder: And if any one of them be absent from his Lodging in the Night, unless upon publick occasion, then is he the next day severely cudgelled, and nevertheless obliged to kiss the Hand that beat him. Their Impleys are different in time of Peace; for some wait upon Ambassadors, others upon Merchants and Consuls, others again upon such as travel through the *Turkish* Empire. They likewise arrest Malefactors, and see good Order kept, being feared of all Men; insomuch that if they buy any thing, they will have it at their own Price, the Vender not daring to refuse it. They have great Power in their Princes Election; no Emperour thinking himself safe in his Throne, till they approve of him: So that to gain their good Opinion, every new Emperour at his entring upon the Government, distributes large Sums of Money amongst them, and increases their Stipends.

Though the chief Strength of the *Turkish* Foot Forces rests in the *Janizaries*; yet are there another sort

of Foot-Men, called *Aconices*; which is a Forlorn Hope. These receive no Pay, but have free liberty to plunder; so that they deliver the fifth Part to the Grand Seignior. Another kind there are, called *Asapi*; who are but of small Account, and rather used as *Pioneers*, than to encounter the Enemy; yet are they often thrust into the Front of the Battle, with their Bodies to blunt the Enemies Swords, or to scale the Walls of Towns; that by being slaughter'd, their Dead Bodies may fill up the Ditches, and so give the *Janizaries* opportunity on their Dead Carcasses to mount the Bullwarks.

The Grand Seignior keeps in continual Pay six thousand Gunners, whom the *Turks* call *Topegi*; and for the Guard of the Powder and Shot, upon the March of the Army, twelve thousand Men are kept in pay, called *Jebezi*.

The Grand Seignior hath likewise certain Officers attending on him, to the number of three thousand, whom they call *Chiaus*; which act in the Nature of Serjeants at Arms. These Men are well esteemed, and are often employed in Embassies to Forreign Princes: They also carry Letters or Commendations from the Grand Seignior, or his Chief Vizier; and are impower'd to apprehend Malefactors: But never go to the Wars, unless the Grand Seignior be there in Person. They are commanded by a *Chiaus Bassa*; who is of such Credit with all Men, that when he is sent by the Grand Seignior to any *Bassa*, *Sanzack*, or *Caddi*, to have any Man's Head cut off, though he have no Warrant in writing, yet his Authority is not disputed.

Thus have I set down the Land Forces of the *Turkish* Empire; in number so great, that in shew they should breed Confusion, and ruin themselves; yet such is the Order and Discipline, that in that point they give place to none. They live (for the most part) on a little Bread
baked

baked in the Ashes, with Rice and Powder of Flesh dried in the Sun. Wine is forbidden them by their Law, though 'tis often drunk by them in private, especially the Great Commanders. No Women are seen in their Armies. In their March they observe a wonderful Silence; and all the Soldiers are governed by the Beck of the Hand, or Shew of the Countenance. Quarrels and Thefts are severely punished. When they March they dare not enter any Corn-field or Vineyard. The Valiant are assured of Preferment, and the Coward of Punishment.

As for the Grand Seignior's Naval Forces, they are great; he having of late, for Gain-sake, allured many Christian Carpenters and Shipwrights to his Arsenal, and hath a great number of Men trained up in Marine Affairs, by being continually employed aboard his Gallies at *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and *Mitylene* and *Alexandria*. He has also at his Beck the Pirates of *Tunis*, *Tripoley*, *Sally*, *Argire*, and other Places; from amongst whom he chooses his prime Commanders in Marine Affairs.

To maintain these great Forces, it is requisite a wonderful Mass of Money should be employed, which is the Sinews of War, and without which so great an Empire could not be kept in frame, though many are of opinion, that the Grand Seignior's Annual Revenues exceed not eight Millions; meaning thereby, that which is collected of his Subjects, and upon the account of Customs: For which they give these Reasons: *First*, That the *Turks* have no care but of Arms; the which do rather ruin, than enrich a Country. *Secondly*, They consume so many Men in their Enterprizes, that they scarce leave a sufficient number to manure the Land; insomuch that the Subjects despairing to enjoy their Wealth, and necessary Commodities, which they might get by their Labour and Industry, employ not themselves to work
nor

nor traffick, more than by necessity they are constrained: For they argue, 'tis to no purpose to labour for another, their Lives and Estates being daily exposed to the Mercy of their Prince: And for this Reason, many spacious Countries in the *Turkish* Empire lie waste; which neglect frequently causes a Dearth. A *Third* Reason that is given, why the Grand Seignior's Revenues are no greater, is, for that when he Conquers any Country, he assigns the Lands therein to his *Timarists*, who serve in the Wars, and are no otherwise liable to accommodate their Prince.

But although his ordinary Revenues amount to no great Sum, in consideration of the large Circuit of his Empire; yet his extraordinary Profits accruing by Confiscations, Presents, (for no Stranger may approach his Presence empty handed) and Money raised upon Places and Offices of Trust, amount to a far greater Sum than what has been mentioned. Nor are the Sums small, which he draws from the Princes their Tributaries, that are not absolutely under his Jurisdiction; as *Moldavia*, *Vallachia*, and *Transylvania*, with many more. So that in all, moderate Writers affirm, That his Coffers are yearly supplied with twenty Millions: The Management of which is left to the *Defterdarsi*, or chief Treasurer, who has many Sub-officers under him.

Thus much having been spoken of the Forces, Revenues, and great Officers; I shall now proceed to give the *Reader* a View of their Religion, if it may without offence be so termed; which they call the Law of their great Prophet.

As for their Religion, it began in the time of *Heraclius* the Emperor; at what time the Heresie of *Arius* and *Nestorius* spread it self: to whose Infamous Proselytes *Mahomet* the Impostor, born in *Arabia*, joyned himself; impiously denying the Divinity of *Christ*, and proclaiming himself a Prophet sent from *God*, drawing

ing

ing a Multitude after him : Insomuch that such as would not receive his impious Tenents by fair means, he compelled by force : And the better to ingratiate himself with the lewd and licentious sort of People, he tolerated all manner of Lust, and Worldly Delights. By the Law this Impostor left, and that now has overspread two Parts of the World, a Distinction is made between clean and unclean Meats, to content the *Jews*, who are the greatest Merchants in the *Ottoman* Empire. They also maintain Circumcision, but not at the Expiration of Eight Days, according to the *Jewish* Custom ; but at the End of Eight Years, when the Infant is able to make a Confession of his Belief ; and lifting up his Finger to speak these words in the *Arabick* Tongue, viz. *There is but One God, and Mahomet is his Prophet ; one God, and equal Prophets.* The Circumcision ended, they feast three Days. As for the Female Children, they at eight Years old speak the same words ; but are not capable of Circumcision. If any Christian turn Apostate, and deny his Redeemer, which (to the loss of their Souls) too many do, only to avoid Taxations and Tribute, they are led through the Town or City, where they dwell in great Triumph, many People presenting them with Gifts, as they pass, to encourage them to persevere in what they have undertaken. And for the Men, at what Age soever they are, they must be Circumcised.

The Law of *Mahomet* is contained in his *Alchoran* ; wherein he confesseth *One God, and honoureth Jesus Christ as a great Prophet* : But impiously denies him to be the Son of *God*.

The *Turks* by their Law are forbid to worship Images, or to have any placed in their *Mosques* : The whole Series of the *Alcoran* being full of Fables and Fictions, much like to those the Poets feigned of the *Elizium-Shades* ; indulging Men in all Sensuality during this Life,

Life, and promising them a *Paradise*, where they shall enjoy the like more perfectly after Death.

Their Sabbath is kept on our *Fryday*. They keep Lent thirty Days; during which space they eat nothing in the day-time, but take their Repast after Sun-set, abstaining from Wine and Women. This Lent is called by them *Ramaden*.

They likewise observe an *Easter*, called *Bayran*; which continues for the space of the three Days, though not always prefixed by reason they begin it in the New of the Moon.

They have no Bells in their *Mosques*; neither do they suffer the Christians to have any that live amongst them. When they enter the said *Mosques*, they leave their Shooes at the Door, and take them again when they return. Where soever they sit or stand in their Religious Houses, they have Tapestry or Mats under them, as not thinking their Feet holy enough to stand in that Place, during the Reading their Law; and if they look back, or scratch their Head till the Orizon is ended, they think they have lost the Benefit they were at that time to receive by their coming thither. They are not much addicted to Learning; yet of late they have brought up their Children to use the *Arabick* Tongue, in which their Law is written.

By this Law they have leave to marry as many Wives as they can maintain; and when once any of them proves with Child, her Husband may not carnally know her till she is delivered. They have certain Marriages contracted during Pleasure, which they call *Kebin*, mostly practised by Strangers; who may, for a certain Sum of Money, have the Use of a Woman during his Pleasure: Yet when he turns her off, if she have any Children, he is bound to keep them. A *Turk* having had to do with a *Christian* Woman, both of them upon Conviction are to suffer Death, unless

less she add sin to sin, by renouncing her Faith. The like is to be observed between a *Christian*, and a *Turkish* Woman; though either Offence, by bribing the *Caddi's* or Judges, may be omitted.

They allow of Divorce in case of Barrenness or Incontinency.

The chief Interpreter of these Laws, is the *Muphti*, or *Arch-Priest*, who is chosen by the Grand Seignior; and is greatly revered amongst the *Turks*, being Head of their Church, and Decider of all Controversies arising in matter of their Superstitious Religion. His Eminency is such, that all the *Bassa's* are subject to his Direction. He abaseth himself not so much as to sit in the *Divano*; only passing through it, when he is sent for by the Grand Seignior; who at his approach riseth from his Seat, (an Honour not allowed to any other) and then they sit together, and familiarly discourse of their Affairs.

The next to him are the *Cadilesquires*, or *Talismen*: Two Doctors of the Law, whose place it is to Examine the *Caddi's* or Judges, who are dispersed throughout the Provinces of the Empire, and are always attendant upon the Grand Seignior: The one of them having Jurisdiction over all the *European Caddi's*, and the other on those residing in *Asia*; there being few Cities, or great Towns, in which one of the *Caddi's* have not their Residence there, to hear and determine Matters of Controversie arising between Man and Man. The *Cadilesquires* are likewise Sovereign Judges within their own Jurisdiction, in all Causes belonging to their Religion, as it were Patriarchs. They are of great Authority, and have places in the *Divano*, and in Council with the *Bassa's*, consult the weighty Affairs of the Empire.

There is a third Degree of Church-Men, not belonging to their Law, called *Mulli*; which they account their

their Bishops, and are directed in their Affairs by the *Muphti*. Their Office is to place and displace Church-Men as they see it convenient.

Another sort there are, called the *Nuderisi*, who act in the nature of Suffragans, and have under them several young Doctors of the Law, who are their Disciples, called *Naipi*; who are, in the Absence of the *Cad-di's*, constituted to hear and redress Grievances.

After these are the *Hagi*, who are employed to write their Books, they in no wise allowing them to be Printed; and inferior unto these are the *Cassi*, who read unto them what they write, &c.

These are their several Degrees of Lawyers, and Church-Men; for the *Turks* are governed by a kind of Ecclesiastical Law, according to their *Alchoran*. Many Colledges they have, which they call *Medressa's*, situate not only in *Constantinople*, but in divers other Cities.

And thus, *Reader*, have I related the Succinct Series of *This History*, as near as can be gathered from Authors of undoubted Credit, and my own Knowledge: And now nothing more remains, but to make known the Vastness of the *Ottoman Empire*; which is, for the most part, the Subject of *This History*.

Know then, that since the Reign of *Ottoman*, first Founder of the *Turkish Empire*, it has proudly built it self upon the Four Monarchies of the VWorld, viz. the *Assyrian*, *Grecian*, *Persian*, and *Roman Empires*; for they enjoy *Babylon*, and all *Chaldea*, with the Kingdom of *Media*, a great part of *Persia*, all *Greece*, with the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and the greatest Part of *Arabia*; the Islands of *Cyprus*, *Rhodes*, *Mitylene*, *Negropont*, *Chio* or *Scio*, *Candia*, and many others: The
Empire

Empire of *Trepezond*, the Kingdoms of *Colchis*, now called *Mingrelia*, *Tunis*, and *Argeirs*, *Dalmatia*, *Illyria*, and *Triballenia*; the Countries of *Transylvania*, *Wallachia*, *Moldavia*, and *Bulgaria*: A great part of *Hungary*, and many other Countries, which hold of the Empire, and pay Tribute to the Grand Seignior; who in *Europe* hath all the Sea-Coast from the Confines of *Epidaurus*, the utmost Boundard of his Empire in *Europe*, Westward, unto the Mouth of the River *Tanais*, now called *Don*; with all that lieth between the City of *Buda*, and *Constantinople*: and Southward, all the Sea-Coast from *Velex* or *Belis*, the Boundard of the Kingdom of *Fez*, unto the *Arabian* Gulph, or *Red-Sea*; and so proportionably every way: The Greatness of which may be better conjectured by the Greatness of some part thereof; for the *Meere* of *Maris*, which is all at the Grand Seignior's Command, is in Compass one thousand Miles; and the *Euxine*, or *Black Sea*, in Circuit two thousand seven hundred Miles: The *Mediterranean-Coast*, which is subject unto him, is in Compass upward of eight thousand Miles. But to speak of his whole Territory together, he passeth in his own Dominion from *Tauris* to *Buda* three thousand two hundred Miles; and the like Distance from *Derbent* to *Adena*: From *Balsera*, upon the *Persian-Gulph*, to *Tremisena* in *Barbary*, is accounted little less than about four thousand.

Yet that this great Empire will not long consist, but like those that have preceded it, be again brought to nothing, the *Turks* themselves have divers Prophecies: Nor is Sacred Writ silent in this Matter; many of the Prophets plainly foretelling its Rise and Fall; which will undoubtedly be manifested; when God (in whose deep Counsels the Great Revolutions
of

of Empires and Kingdoms are from Eternity shut up) shall in his Infinite Wisdom see fit time, to the unspeakable Comfort of the poor afflicted *Christians*, that groan under the Oppression and Tyranny of those proud Infidels, Enemies to the Name of our Lord and Saviour *Jesus Christ*, God blessed for ever-more, *Amen.*

F I N I S.

Advertisement of Books.

The Works of Josephus, Translated out of French, newly Amended; Illustrated with Copper-Plates, and a New Map of the Holy-Land; Folio. Printed for Tho. Passenger, and Tho. Sawbridge.

Cosmography in four Books, containing the Chorography and History of the whole World; by Peter Heylyn. Printed for Tho. Passenger, Tho. Sawbridge, and Benj. Took.

The Third Part of the Present State of England, relating to its Trade and Commerce within it self, and with all Countries, as it is found at this Day established; giving a most exact Account of the Laws and Customs of Merchants, relating to Bills of Exchange, Customs, Coyns, Weights, Measures, &c. To which is added, England's Guide to Industry or Improvement of Trade. Printed for Tho. Passenger, and Benj. Took.

Ecclesiastical History epitomiz'd, deduced to this Present Time. Printed for Tho. Passenger, and W. Thackeray.

Physick Refin'd, or a Little Stream of Medicinal Marrow flowing from the Bones of Nature, &c. Printed for Thomas Passenger.

